



NCEES

shift

This document may be printed from the NCEES Web site for your personal use, but it may not be copied, reproduced, distributed electronically or in print, or posted online without the express written permission of NCEES. Contact permissions@ncees.org for more information.

Reference Handbook

9.5 Version for Computer-Based Testing

Copyright ©2013 by NCEES®. All rights reserved.

All NCEES material is copyrighted under the laws of the United States. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of NCEES. Requests for permissions should be addressed in writing to permissions@ncees.org.

PO Box 1686
Clemson, SC 29633
800-250-3196
www.ncees.org

ISBN 978-1-932613-67-4

Printed in the United States of America
Fifth printing June 2018
Edition 9.5

PREFACE

About the *Handbook*

The Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) exam is computer-based, and the *FE Reference Handbook* is the only resource material you may use during the exam. Reviewing it before exam day will help you become familiar with the charts, formulas, tables, and other reference information provided. You won't be allowed to bring your personal copy of the *Handbook* into the exam room. Instead, the computer-based exam will include a PDF version of the *Handbook* for your use. No printed copies of the *Handbook* will be allowed in the exam room.

The PDF version of the *FE Reference Handbook* that you use on exam day will be very similar to the printed version. Pages not needed to solve exam questions—such as the cover, introductory material, index, and exam specifications—will not be included in the PDF version. In addition, NCEES will periodically revise and update the *Handbook*, and each FE exam will be administered using the updated version.

The *FE Reference Handbook* does not contain all the information required to answer every question on the exam. Basic theories, conversions, formulas, and definitions examinees are expected to know have not been included. Special material required for the solution of a particular exam question will be included in the question itself.

Updates on exam content and procedures

NCEES.org is our home on the web. Visit us there for updates on everything exam-related, including specifications, exam-day policies, scoring, and practice tests. A PDF version of the *FE Reference Handbook* similar to the one you will use on exam day is also available there.

Errata

To report errata in this book, send your correction using our chat feature on NCEES.org. We will also post errata on the website. Examinees are not penalized for any errors in the *Handbook* that affect an exam question.

CONTENTS

| | |
|--|-----|
| Units | 1 |
| Conversion Factors..... | 2 |
| Ethics..... | 3 |
| Safety..... | 11 |
| Mathematics | 27 |
| Engineering Probability and Statistics | 42 |
| Chemistry | 59 |
| Materials Science/Structure of Matter | 65 |
| Statics | 72 |
| Dynamics..... | 77 |
| Mechanics of Materials | 85 |
| Thermodynamics..... | 92 |
| Fluid Mechanics | 108 |
| Heat Transfer..... | 122 |
| Instrumentation, Measurement, and Controls | 129 |
| Engineering Economics | 136 |
| Chemical Engineering..... | 144 |
| Civil Engineering | 152 |
| Environmental Engineering | 185 |
| Electrical and Computer Engineering | 205 |
| Industrial and Systems Engineering..... | 234 |
| Mechanical Engineering..... | 243 |
| Index..... | 257 |
| Appendix: FE Exam Specifications | 263 |

UNITS

The FE exam and this handbook use both the metric system of units and the U.S. Customary System (USCS). In the USCS system of units, both force and mass are called pounds. Therefore, one must distinguish the pound-force (lbf) from the pound-mass (lbm).

The pound-force is that force which accelerates one pound-mass at 32.174 ft/sec². Thus, 1 lbf = 32.174 lbm-ft/sec². The expression 32.174 lbm-ft/(lbf-sec²) is designated as g_c and is used to resolve expressions involving both mass and force expressed as pounds. For instance, in writing Newton's second law, the equation would be written as $F = ma/g_c$, where F is in lbf, m in lbm, and a is in ft/sec².

Similar expressions exist for other quantities. Kinetic Energy, $KE = mv^2/2g_c$, with KE in (ft-lbf); Potential Energy, $PE = mgh/g_c$, with PE in (ft-lbf); Fluid Pressure, $p = \rho gh/g_c$, with p in (lbf/ft²); Specific Weight, $SW = \rho g/g_c$, in (lbf/ft³); Shear Stress, $\tau = (\mu/g_c)(dv/dy)$, with shear stress in (lbf/ft²). In all these examples, g_c should be regarded as a force unit conversion factor. It is frequently not written explicitly in engineering equations. However, its use is required to produce a consistent set of units.

Note that the force unit conversion factor g_c [lbm-ft/(lbf-sec²)] should not be confused with the local acceleration of gravity g , which has different units (m/s² or ft/sec²) and may be either its standard value (9.807 m/s² or 32.174 ft/sec²) or some other local value.

If the problem is presented in USCS units, it may be necessary to use the constant g_c in the equation to have a consistent set of units.

| METRIC PREFIXES | | | COMMONLY USED EQUIVALENTS |
|-------------------|--------|--------|--|
| Multiple | Prefix | Symbol | |
| 10 ⁻¹⁸ | atto | a | 1 gallon of water weighs 8.34 lbf 1 cubic foot of water weighs 62.4 lbf 1 cubic inch of mercury weighs 0.491 lbf The mass of 1 cubic meter of water is 1,000 kilograms 1 mg/L is 8.34 lbf/Mgal |
| 10 ⁻¹⁵ | femto | f | |
| 10 ⁻¹² | pico | p | |
| 10 ⁻⁹ | nano | n | |
| 10 ⁻⁶ | micro | μ | |
| 10 ⁻³ | milli | m | |
| 10 ⁻² | centi | c | |
| 10 ⁻¹ | deci | d | |
| 10 ¹ | deka | da | |
| 10 ² | hecto | h | |
| 10 ³ | kilo | k | |
| 10 ⁶ | mega | M | |
| 10 ⁹ | giga | G | |
| 10 ¹² | tera | T | |
| 10 ¹⁵ | peta | P | |
| 10 ¹⁸ | exa | E | |
| | | | TEMPERATURE CONVERSIONS |
| | | | $^{\circ}\text{F} = 1.8 (^{\circ}\text{C}) + 32$ |
| | | | $^{\circ}\text{C} = (^{\circ}\text{F} - 32)/1.8$ |
| | | | $^{\circ}\text{R} = ^{\circ}\text{F} + 459.69$ |
| | | | $\text{K} = ^{\circ}\text{C} + 273.15$ |

IDEAL GAS CONSTANTS

The universal gas constant, designated as \bar{R} in the table below, relates pressure, volume, temperature, and number of moles of an ideal gas. When that universal constant, \bar{R} , is divided by the molecular weight of the gas, the result, often designated as R , has units of energy per degree per unit mass [kJ/(kg·K) or ft-lbf/(lbm·°R)] and becomes characteristic of the particular gas. Some disciplines, notably chemical engineering, often use the symbol R to refer to the universal gas constant \bar{R} .

FUNDAMENTAL CONSTANTS

| Quantity | | Symbol | Value | Units |
|---|--------|-----------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| electron charge | | e | 1.6022×10^{-19} | C (coulombs) |
| Faraday constant | | F | 96,485 | coulombs/(mol) |
| gas constant | metric | \bar{R} | 8,314 | J/(kmol·K) |
| gas constant | metric | \bar{R} | 8.314 | kPa·m ³ /(kmol·K) |
| gas constant | USCS | \bar{R} | 1,545 | ft-lbf/(lb mole·°R) |
| | | \bar{R} | 0.08206 | L·atm/(mole·K) |
| gravitation–Newtonian constant | | G | 6.673×10^{-11} | m ³ /(kg·s ²) |
| gravitation–Newtonian constant | | G | 6.673×10^{-11} | N·m ² /kg ² |
| gravity acceleration (standard) | metric | g | 9.807 | m/s ² |
| gravity acceleration (standard) | USCS | g | 32.174 | ft/sec ² |
| molar volume (ideal gas), $T = 273.15\text{K}$, $p = 101.3\text{ kPa}$ | | V_m | 22,414 | L/kmol |
| speed of light in vacuum | | c | 299,792,000 | m/s |
| Stefan-Boltzmann constant | | σ | 5.67×10^{-8} | W/(m ² ·K ⁴) |

CONVERSION FACTORS

| Multiply | By | To Obtain | Multiply | By | To Obtain |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------|---|---|------------------------|---|
| acre | 43,560 | square feet (ft ²) | joule (J) | 9.478×10^{-4} | Btu |
| ampere-hr (A-hr) | 3,600 | coulomb (C) | J | 0.7376 | ft-lbf |
| ångström (Å) | 1×10^{-10} | meter (m) | J | 1 | newton•m (N•m) |
| atmosphere (atm) | 76.0 | cm, mercury (Hg) | J/s | 1 | watt (W) |
| atm, std | 29.92 | in., mercury (Hg) | | | |
| atm, std | 14.70 | lbf/in ² abs (psia) | kilogram (kg) | 2.205 | pound-mass (lbm) |
| atm, std | 33.90 | ft, water | kgf | 9.8066 | newton (N) |
| atm, std | 1.013×10^5 | pascal (Pa) | kilometer (km) | 3,281 | feet (ft) |
| | | | km/hr | 0.621 | mph |
| bar | 1×10^5 | Pa | kilopascal (kPa) | 0.145 | lbf/in ² (psi) |
| bar | 0.987 | atm | kilowatt (kW) | 1.341 | horsepower (hp) |
| barrels-oil | 42 | gallons-oil | kW | 3,413 | Btu/hr |
| Btu | 1,055 | joule (J) | kW | 737.6 | (ft-lbf)/sec |
| Btu | 2.928×10^{-4} | kilowatt-hr (kWh) | kW-hour (kWh) | 3,413 | Btu |
| Btu | 778 | ft-lbf | kWh | 1.341 | hp-hr |
| Btu/hr | 3.930×10^{-4} | horsepower (hp) | kWh | 3.6×10^6 | joule (J) |
| Btu/hr | 0.293 | watt (W) | kip (K) | 1,000 | lbf |
| Btu/hr | 0.216 | ft-lbf/sec | K | 4,448 | newton (N) |
| | | | | | |
| calorie (g-cal) | 3.968×10^{-3} | Btu | liter (L) | 61.02 | in ³ |
| cal | 1.560×10^{-6} | hp-hr | L | 0.264 | gal (U.S. Liq) |
| cal | 4.186 | joule (J) | L | 10^{-3} | m ³ |
| cal/sec | 4.184 | watt (W) | L/second (L/s) | 2.119 | ft ³ /min (cfm) |
| centimeter (cm) | 3.281×10^{-2} | foot (ft) | L/s | 15.85 | gal (U.S.)/min (gpm) |
| cm | 0.394 | inch (in) | | | |
| centipoise (cP) | 0.001 | pascal•sec (Pa•s) | meter (m) | 3.281 | feet (ft) |
| centipoise (cP) | 1 | g/(m•s) | m | 1.094 | yard |
| centipoise (cP) | 2.419 | lbm/hr-ft | m/second (m/s) | 196.8 | feet/min (ft/min) |
| centistoke (cSt) | 1×10^{-6} | m ² /sec (m ² /s) | mile (statute) | 5,280 | feet (ft) |
| cubic feet/second (cfs) | 0.646317 | million gallons/day (MGD) | mile (statute) | 1.609 | kilometer (km) |
| cubic foot (ft ³) | 7.481 | gallon | mile/hour (mph) | 88.0 | ft/min (fpm) |
| cubic meters (m ³) | 1,000 | liters | mph | 1.609 | km/h |
| | | | mm of Hg | 1.316×10^{-3} | atm |
| electronvolt (eV) | 1.602×10^{-19} | joule (J) | mm of H ₂ O | 9.678×10^{-5} | atm |
| | | | | | |
| foot (ft) | 30.48 | cm | newton (N) | 0.225 | lbf |
| ft | 0.3048 | meter (m) | newton (N) | 1 | kg•m/s ² |
| ft-pound (ft-lbf) | 1.285×10^{-3} | Btu | N•m | 0.7376 | ft-lbf |
| ft-lbf | 3.766×10^{-7} | kilowatt-hr (kWh) | N•m | 1 | joule (J) |
| ft-lbf | 0.324 | calorie (g-cal) | | | |
| ft-lbf | 1.356 | joule (J) | pascal (Pa) | 9.869×10^{-6} | atmosphere (atm) |
| ft-lbm | 2 | slug-ft/s ² | Pa | 1 | newton/m ² (N/m ²) |
| ft-lbf/sec | 1.818×10^{-3} | horsepower (hp) | Pa•sec (Pa•s) | 10 | poise (P) |
| | | | pound (lbm, avdp) | 0.454 | kilogram (kg) |
| gallon (U.S. Liq) | 3.785 | liter (L) | lbf | 4.448 | N |
| gallon (U.S. Liq) | 0.134 | ft ³ | lbf-ft | 1.356 | N•m |
| gallons of water | 8.3453 | pounds of water | lbf/in ² (psi) | 0.068 | atm |
| gamma (γ, Γ) | 1×10^{-9} | tesla (T) | psi | 2.307 | ft of H ₂ O |
| gauss | 1×10^{-4} | T | psi | 2.036 | in. of Hg |
| gram (g) | 2.205×10^{-3} | pound (lbm) | psi | 6,895 | Pa |
| | | | | | |
| hectare | 1×10^4 | square meters (m ²) | radian | $180/\pi$ | degree |
| hectare | 2.47104 | acres | | | |
| horsepower (hp) | 42.4 | Btu/min | slug | 32.174 | pound-mass (lbm) |
| hp | 745.7 | watt (W) | stokes | 1×10^{-4} | m ² /s |
| hp | 33,000 | (ft-lbf)/min | | | |
| hp | 550 | (ft-lbf)/sec | therm | 1×10^5 | Btu |
| hp-hr | 2,545 | Btu | ton (metric) | 1,000 | kilogram (kg) |
| hp-hr | 1.98×10^6 | ft-lbf | ton (short) | 2,000 | pound (lb) |
| hp-hr | 2.68×10^6 | joule (J) | | | |
| hp-hr | 0.746 | kWh | watt (W) | 3.413 | Btu/hr |
| | | | W | 1.341×10^{-3} | horsepower (hp) |
| inch (in.) | 2.540 | centimeter (cm) | W | 1 | joule/s (J/s) |
| in. of Hg | 0.0334 | atm | weber/m ² (Wb/m ²) | 10,000 | gauss |
| in. of Hg | 13.60 | in. of H ₂ O | | | |
| in. of H ₂ O | 0.0361 | lbf/in ² (psi) | | | |
| in. of H ₂ O | 0.002458 | atm | | | |

ETHICS

CODES OF ETHICS

Engineering is considered to be a "profession" rather than an "occupation" because of several important characteristics shared with other recognized learned professions, law, medicine, and theology: special knowledge, special privileges, and special responsibilities. Professions are based on a large knowledge base requiring extensive training. Professional skills are important to the well-being of society. Professions are self-regulating, in that they control the training and evaluation processes that admit new persons to the field. Professionals have autonomy in the workplace; they are expected to utilize their independent judgment in carrying out their professional responsibilities. Finally, professions are regulated by ethical standards. (Harris, C.E., M.S. Pritchard, & M.J. Rabins, *Engineering Ethics: Concepts and Cases*, Wadsworth Publishing company, pages 27–28, 1995.)

The expertise possessed by engineers is vitally important to societal welfare. In order to serve society effectively, engineers must maintain a high level of technical competence. However, a high level of technical expertise without adherence to ethical guidelines is as much a threat to public welfare as is professional incompetence. Therefore, engineers must also be guided by ethical principles.

The ethical principles governing the engineering profession are embodied in codes of ethics. Such codes have been adopted by state boards of registration, professional engineering societies, and even by some private industries. An example of one such code is the NCEES Rules of Professional Conduct, found in Section 240 of the *Model Rules* and presented here. As part of his/her responsibility to the public, an engineer is responsible for knowing and abiding by the code. Additional rules of conduct are also included in the *Model Rules*.

The three major sections of the *Model Rules* address (1) Licensee's Obligation to the Public, (2) Licensee's Obligation to Employers and Clients, and (3) Licensee's Obligation to Other Licensees. The principles amplified in these sections are important guides to appropriate behavior of professional engineers.

Application of the code in many situations is not controversial. However, there may be situations in which applying the code may raise more difficult issues. In particular, there may be circumstances in which terminology in the code is not clearly defined, or in which two sections of the code may be in conflict. For example, what constitutes "valuable consideration" or "adequate" knowledge may be interpreted differently by qualified professionals. These types of questions are called *conceptual issues*, in which definitions of terms may be in dispute. In other situations, *factual issues* may also affect ethical dilemmas. Many decisions regarding engineering design may be based upon interpretation of disputed or incomplete information. In addition, *tradeoffs* revolving around competing issues of risk vs. benefit, or safety vs. economics may require judgments that are not fully addressed simply by application of the code.

No code can give immediate and mechanical answers to all ethical and professional problems that an engineer may face. Creative problem solving is often called for in ethics, just as it is in other areas of engineering.

Model Rules, Section 240.15, Rules of Professional Conduct

To safeguard the health, safety, and welfare of the public and to maintain integrity and high standards of skill and practice in the engineering and surveying professions, the rules of professional conduct provided in this section shall be binding upon every licensee and on all firms authorized to offer or perform engineering or surveying services in this jurisdiction.

A. Licensee's Obligation to the Public

1. Licensees shall be cognizant that their first and foremost responsibility is to safeguard the health, safety, and welfare of the public when performing services for clients and employers.
2. Licensees shall sign and seal only those plans, surveys, and other documents that conform to accepted engineering and surveying standards and that safeguard the health, safety, and welfare of the public.
3. Licensees shall notify their employer or client and such other authority as may be appropriate when their professional judgment is overruled under circumstances in which the health, safety, or welfare of the public is endangered.
4. Licensees shall, to the best of their knowledge, include all relevant and pertinent information in an objective and truthful manner within all professional documents, statements, and testimony.
5. Licensees shall express a professional opinion publicly only when it is founded upon an adequate knowledge of the facts and a competent evaluation of the subject matter.
6. Licensees shall issue no statements, criticisms, or arguments on engineering and surveying matters that are inspired or paid for by interested parties, unless they explicitly identify the interested parties on whose behalf they are speaking and reveal any interest they have in the matters.
7. Licensees shall not partner, practice, or offer to practice with any person or firm that they know is engaged in fraudulent or dishonest business or professional practices.
8. Licensees who have knowledge or reason to believe that any person or firm has violated any rules or laws applying to the practice of engineering or surveying shall report it to the board, may report it to appropriate legal authorities, and shall cooperate with the board and those authorities as may be requested.
9. Licensees shall not knowingly provide false or incomplete information regarding an applicant in obtaining licensure.

10. Licensees shall comply with the licensing laws and rules governing their professional practice in each of the jurisdictions in which they practice.

B. Licensee's Obligation to Employer and Clients

1. Licensees shall undertake assignments only when qualified by education or experience in the specific technical fields of engineering or surveying involved.
2. Licensees shall not affix their signatures or seals to any plans or documents dealing with subject matter in which they lack competence, nor to any such plan or document not prepared under their responsible charge.
3. Licensees may accept assignments and assume responsibility for coordination of an entire project, provided that each technical segment is signed and sealed by the licensee responsible for preparation of that technical segment.
4. Licensees shall not reveal facts, data, or information obtained in a professional capacity without the prior consent of the client, employer, or public body on which they serve except as authorized or required by law or rules.
5. Licensees shall not solicit or accept gratuities, directly or indirectly, from contractors, their agents, or other parties in connection with work for employers or clients.
6. Licensees shall disclose to their employers or clients all known or potential conflicts of interest or other circumstances that could influence or appear to influence their judgment or the quality of their professional service or engagement.
7. Licensees shall not accept compensation, financial or otherwise, from more than one party for services pertaining to the same project, unless the circumstances are fully disclosed and agreed to in writing by all interested parties.
8. Licensees shall not solicit or accept a professional contract from a governmental body on which a principal or officer of their organization serves as a member. Conversely, licensees serving as members, advisors, or employees of a governmental body or department, who are the principals or employees of a private concern, shall not participate in decisions with respect to professional services offered or provided by said concern to the governmental body that they serve. (Section 150, Disciplinary Action, NCEES *Model Law*)
9. Licensees shall not use confidential information received in the course of their assignments as a means of making personal profit without the consent of the party from whom the information was obtained.

C. Licensee's Obligation to Other Licensees

1. Licensees shall not falsify or permit misrepresentation of their, or their associates', academic or professional qualifications. They shall not misrepresent or exaggerate their degree of responsibility in prior assignments nor the complexity of said assignments. Presentations incidental to the solicitation of employment or business shall not misrepresent pertinent facts concerning employers, employees, associates, joint ventures, or past accomplishments.
2. Licensees shall not offer, give, solicit, or receive, either directly or indirectly, any commission, or gift, or other valuable consideration in order to secure work, and shall not make any political contribution with the intent to influence the award of a contract by public authority.
3. Licensees shall not injure or attempt to injure, maliciously or falsely, directly or indirectly, the professional reputation, prospects, practice, or employment of other licensees, nor indiscriminately criticize other licensees' work.
4. Licensees shall make a reasonable effort to inform another licensee whose work is believed to contain a material discrepancy, error, or omission that may impact the health, safety, or welfare of the public, unless such reporting is legally prohibited.

Model Law, Section 110.20, Definitions

A. Engineer

1. Engineer—The term "Engineer," within the intent of this Act, shall mean an individual who is qualified to practice engineering by reason of engineering education, training, and experience in the application of engineering principles and the interpretation of engineering data.
2. Professional Engineer—The term "Professional Engineer," as used in this Act, shall mean an individual who has been duly licensed as a professional engineer by the board. The board may designate a professional engineer, on the basis of education, experience, and examination, as being licensed in a specific discipline or branch of engineering signifying the area in which the engineer has demonstrated competence.
3. Professional Engineer, Retired—The term "Professional Engineer, Retired," as used in this Act, shall mean an individual who has been duly licensed as a professional engineer by the board and who chooses to relinquish or not to renew a license and who applies to and is approved by the board to be granted the use of the title "Professional Engineer, Retired."
4. Engineer Intern—The term "Engineer Intern," as used in this Act, shall mean an individual who has been duly certified as an engineer intern by the board.
5. Practice of Engineering—The term "Practice of Engineering," as used in this Act, shall mean any service or creative work requiring engineering education, training, and experience in the application of engineering principles and the interpretation

of engineering data to engineering activities that potentially impact the health, safety, and welfare of the public.

The services may include, but not be limited to, providing planning, studies, designs, design coordination, drawings, specifications, and other technical submissions; teaching engineering design courses; performing surveying that is incidental to the practice of engineering; and reviewing construction or other design products for the purposes of monitoring compliance with drawings and specifications related to engineered works.

Surveying incidental to the practice of engineering excludes the surveying of real property for the establishment of land boundaries, rights of way, easements, and the dependent or independent surveys or resurveys of the public land survey system.

An individual shall be construed to practice engineering, within the meaning and intent of this Act, if he or she does any of the following:

- a. Practices any discipline of the profession of engineering or holds himself or herself out as able and entitled to practice any discipline of engineering
 - b. Represents himself or herself to be a professional engineer by verbal claim, sign, advertisement, letterhead, or card or in any other way
 - c. Through the use of some other title, implies that he or she is a professional engineer or licensed under this Act
6. Inactive Status—Licensees who are not engaged in engineering practice that requires licensure in this jurisdiction may be granted inactive status. No licensee granted inactive status may practice or offer to practice engineering in this jurisdiction unless otherwise exempted in this Act. Licensees granted inactive status are exempt from continuing education requirements.

B. Professional Surveyor (Professional Land Surveyor, Professional Surveyor and Mapper, Geomatics Professional, or equivalent term)

1. Professional Surveyor—The term "Professional Surveyor," as used in this Act, shall mean an individual who has been duly licensed as a professional surveyor by the board established under this Act and who is a professional specialist in the technique of measuring land, educated in the basic principles of mathematics, the related physical and applied sciences, and the relevant requirements of law for adequate evidence and all requisite to surveying of real property, and engaged in the practice of surveying as herein defined.
2. Professional Surveyor, Retired—The term "Professional Surveyor, Retired," as used in this Act, shall mean an individual who has been duly licensed as a professional surveyor by the board and who chooses to relinquish or not to renew a license and who applies to and is approved by the board to be granted the use of the title "Professional Surveyor, Retired."

3. Surveyor Intern—The term "Surveyor Intern," as used in this Act, shall mean an individual who has been duly certified as a surveyor intern by the board.
4. Practice of Surveying—The term "Practice of Surveying," as used in this Act, shall mean providing, or offering to provide, professional services using such sciences as mathematics, geodesy, and photogrammetry, and involving both (1) the making of geometric measurements and gathering related information pertaining to the physical or legal features of the earth, improvements on the earth, the space above, on, or below the earth and (2) providing, utilizing, or developing the same into survey products such as graphics, data, maps, plans, reports, descriptions, or projects. Professional services include acts of consultation, investigation, testimony evaluation, expert technical testimony, planning, mapping, assembling, and interpreting gathered measurements and information related to any one or more of the following:
 - a. Determining by measurement the configuration or contour of the earth's surface or the position of fixed objects thereon
 - b. Determining by performing geodetic surveys the size and shape of the earth or the position of any point on the earth
 - c. Locating, relocating, establishing, reestablishing, or retracing property lines or boundaries of any tract of land, road, right of way, or easement
 - d. Making any survey for the division, subdivision, or consolidation of any tract(s) of land
 - e. Locating or laying out alignments, positions, or elevations for the construction of fixed works
 - f. Determining, by the use of principles of surveying, the position for any survey monument (boundary or nonboundary) or reference point; establishing or replacing any such monument or reference point
 - g. Creating, preparing, or modifying electronic, computerized, or other data, relative to the performance of the activities in items a–f above

An individual shall be construed to practice surveying, within the meaning and intent of this Act, if he or she does any of the following:

- a. Engages in or holds himself or herself out as able and entitled to practice surveying
 - b. Represents himself or herself to be a professional surveyor by verbal claim, sign, advertisement, letterhead, or card or in any other way
 - c. Through the use of some other title, implies that he or she is a professional surveyor or licensed under this act
5. Inactive Status—Licensees who are not engaged in surveying practice that requires licensure in this jurisdiction may be granted inactive status. No licensee granted inactive status may practice or offer to practice surveying in this jurisdiction unless otherwise exempted in this Act. Licensees granted inactive status are exempt from the continuing education requirements.

- C. Board—The term "Board," as used in this Act, shall mean the jurisdiction board of licensure for professional engineers and professional surveyors, hereinafter provided by this Act.
- D. Jurisdiction—The term "Jurisdiction," as used in this Act, shall mean a state, the District of Columbia, or any territory, commonwealth, or possession of the United States that issues licenses to practice and regulates the practice of engineering and/or surveying within its legal boundaries.
- E. Responsible Charge—The term "Responsible Charge," as used in this Act, shall mean direct control and personal supervision of engineering or surveying work, as the case may be.
- F. Rules of Professional Conduct—The term "Rules of Professional Conduct," as used in this Act, shall mean those rules of professional conduct, if any, promulgated by the board as authorized by this Act.
- G. Firm—The term "Firm," as used in this Act, shall mean any form of business or entity other than an individual operating as a sole proprietorship under his or her own name.
- H. Managing Agent—The term "Managing Agent," as used in this Act, shall mean an individual who is licensed under this Act and who has been designated pursuant to Section 160.20 of this Act by the firm.
- I. Rules—The term "Rules," as used in this Act, shall mean those rules and regulations adopted pursuant to Section 120.60 A, Board Powers, of this Act.
- J. Signature—The term "Signature," as used in this Act, shall be in accordance with the Rules.
- K. Seal—The term "Seal," as used in this Act, shall mean a symbol, image, or list of information in accordance with the Rules.
- L. Licensee—The term "Licensee," as used in this Act, shall mean a professional engineer or a professional surveyor.
- M. Person—The term "Person," as used in this Act, shall mean an individual or firm.
- N. Authoritative—The term "Authoritative," as used in this Act or Rules promulgated under this Act, shall mean being presented as trustworthy and competent when used to describe products, processes, applications, or data resulting from the practice of surveying.
- O. Disciplinary Action—The term "Disciplinary Action," as used in this Act, shall mean any final written decision or settlement taken against an individual or firm by a licensing board based upon a violation of the board's laws and rules.

Model Law, Section 130.10, General Requirements for Licensure

Education, experience, and examinations are required for licensure as a professional engineer or professional surveyor.

A. Eligibility for Licensure

To be eligible for licensure as a professional engineer or professional surveyor, an individual must meet all of the following requirements:

1. Be of good character and reputation
2. Satisfy the education criteria set forth below
3. Satisfy the experience criteria set forth below
4. Pass the applicable examinations set forth below

5. Submit five references acceptable to the board

B. Engineering

1. Certification or Enrollment as an Engineer Intern
The following shall be considered as minimum evidence that the applicant is qualified for certification as an engineer intern.
 - a. Graduating from an engineering program of 4 years or more accredited by the Engineering Accreditation Commission of ABET (EAC/ABET), graduating from an engineering master's program accredited by EAC/ABET, or meeting the requirements of the NCEES Engineering Education Standard
 - b. Passing the NCEES Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) examination
2. Licensure as a Professional Engineer
 - a. Initial Licensure as a Professional Engineer
An applicant who presents evidence of meeting the applicable education, examination, and experience requirements as described below shall be eligible for licensure as a professional engineer.
 - (1) Education Requirements
An individual seeking licensure as a professional engineer shall possess one or more of the following education qualifications:
 - (a) A bachelor's degree in engineering from an EAC/ABET-accredited program
 - (b) A master's degree in engineering from an institution that offers EAC/ABET-accredited programs
 - (c) A master's degree in engineering from an EAC/M-ABET-accredited program
 - (d) An earned doctoral degree in engineering acceptable to the board
 - (2) Examination Requirements
An individual seeking licensure as a professional engineer shall take and pass the NCEES Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) examination and the NCEES Principles and Practice of Engineering (PE) examination as described below.
 - (a) The FE examination may be taken by a college senior or graduate of an engineering program of 4 years or more accredited by EAC/ABET, of a program that meets the requirements of the NCEES Education Standard, or of an engineering master's program accredited by EAC/ABET.
 - (b) The PE examination may be taken by an engineer intern.
 - (3) Experience Requirements
An individual seeking licensure as a professional engineer shall present evidence of a specific record of progressive engineering experience satisfying one of the following described below. This experience should be of

a grade and character that indicate to the board that the applicant may be competent to practice engineering.

- (a) An individual with a bachelor's degree in engineering per (1)(a) above: 4 years of experience after the bachelor's degree is conferred
 - (b) An individual with a master's degree in engineering per (1)(b) or (1)(c) above: 3 years of experience
 - (c) An individual with an earned doctoral degree in engineering acceptable to the board and who has passed the FE exam: 2 years of experience
 - (d) An individual with an earned doctoral degree in engineering acceptable to the board and who has elected not to take the FE exam: 4 years of experience
- b. Licensure by Comity for a Professional Engineer^{1,2}
The following shall be considered as minimum evidence satisfactory to the board that the applicant is qualified for licensure by comity as a professional engineer:
- (1) An individual holding a certificate of licensure to engage in the practice of engineering issued by a proper authority of any jurisdiction or any foreign country, based on requirements that do not conflict with the provisions of this Act and possessing credentials that are, in the judgment of the board, of a standard that provides proof of minimal competency and is comparable to the applicable licensure act in effect in this jurisdiction at the time such certificate was issued may, upon application, be licensed without further examination except as required to examine the applicant's knowledge of statutes, rules, and other requirements unique to this jurisdiction; or
 - (2) An individual holding an active Council Record with NCEES, whose qualifications as evidenced by the Council Record meet the requirements of this Act, may, upon application, be licensed without further examination except as required to examine the applicant's knowledge of statutes, rules, and other requirements unique to this jurisdiction.

C. Surveying

1. Certification or Enrollment as a Surveyor Intern

The following shall be considered as minimum evidence that the applicant is qualified for certification or enrollment as a surveyor intern.

- a. Graduating from a surveying program of 4 years or more accredited the Engineering

Accreditation Commission of ABET (EAC/ABET), the Engineering Technology Accreditation Commission of ABET (ETAC/ABET), the Applied and Natural Science Accreditation Commission of ABET (ANSAC/ABET), or meeting the requirements of the NCEES Surveying Education Standard

- b. Graduating from a program related to surveying of 4 years or more as approved by the board and with a specific record of 2 years of progressive experience in surveying
 - c. Graduating from a program of 4 years or more as approved by the board and with a specific record of 4 years of progressive experience in surveying
In addition to satisfying one of the above requirements, the applicant shall pass the NCEES Fundamentals of Surveying (FS) examination.
2. Licensure as a Professional Surveyor
- a. Initial Licensure as a Professional Surveyor
A surveyor intern with a specific record of 4 years or more of combined office and progressive field experience satisfactory to the board in surveying, of which a minimum of 3 years of progressive field experience satisfactory on surveying projects under the supervision of a professional surveyor, shall be admitted to the NCEES Principles and Practice of Surveying examination and any required state-specific examinations. Upon passing these examinations, the applicant shall be licensed as a professional surveyor, if otherwise qualified.
 - b. Licensure by Comity for a Professional Surveyor
The following shall be considered as minimum evidence satisfactory to the board that the applicant is qualified for licensure by comity as a professional surveyor:
 - (1) An individual holding a certificate of licensure to engage in the practice of surveying issued by a proper authority of any jurisdiction or any foreign country, based on requirements that do not conflict with the provisions of this Act and possessing credentials that are, in the judgment of the board, of a standard not lower than that specified in the applicable licensure act in effect in this jurisdiction at the time such certificate was issued may, upon application be licensed without further examination except as required to examine the applicant's knowledge of statutes, rules, and other requirements unique to this jurisdiction; or
 - (2) An individual holding an active Council Record with NCEES, whose qualifications as evidenced by the Council Record meet the requirements of this Act, may, upon application, be licensed without further

¹ Jurisdictions (boards) that do not license by discipline may license an individual as a professional engineer.

² Jurisdictions (boards) that license by discipline may license an individual in any discipline in which the individual can verify his or her competency.

- examination except as required to examine the applicant's knowledge of statutes, rules, and other requirements unique to this jurisdiction.
3. Grandfathering of Photogrammetrists—In the event that the board chooses to license photogrammetrists as professional surveyors and a photogrammetrist does not qualify under the sections above, the board may license the photogrammetrist as a professional surveyor using the following requirements and procedure.
 - a. The individual was practicing surveying using photogrammetric technologies in this jurisdiction as of *[insert date]* and has at least 8 years' experience in the profession, 2 or more of which shall have been in responsible charge of photogrammetric surveying and/or mapping projects meeting ASPRS Aerial Photography and Mapping Standards or U.S. National Mapping Standards.
 - b. The applicant files an application with the board by *[insert date]*. Thereafter, no photogrammetrist shall be licensed without meeting the requirements for licensure as a professional surveyor set forth by the board for all other applicants.
 - c. The applicant submits certified proof of graduation from high school, high school equivalency, or a higher degree; or certified proof of a bachelor's degree in surveying or a related field of study approved by the board, which may be substituted for four of the above required years of experience; or certified proof of a master's degree in surveying or a related field of study approved by the board, which may be substituted for a maximum of five of the above required years of experience.
 - d. The applicant submits proof of employment in responsible charge of photogrammetric surveying and/or mapping projects, practicing within any jurisdiction, including itemized reports detailing methods, procedures, amount of the applicant's personal involvement, and the name, address, and telephone numbers of the client for five projects completed under the supervision of the applicant within the United States. A final map for each of the five projects shall also be submitted.
 - e. The applicant submits five references as to the applicant's character and quality of work, all of which shall be from professional surveyors or professional engineers currently practicing within the scope of their license in an area of surveying, practice of engineering or surveying
 3. Conviction of or entry of a plea of guilty or nolo contendere to any crime that is a felony, whether or not related to the practice of engineering or surveying; and conviction of or entry of a plea of guilty or nolo contendere to any crime, whether a felony, misdemeanor, or otherwise, an essential element of which is dishonesty or which is directly related to the practice of engineering or surveying
 4. Failure to comply with any of the provisions of this Act or any of the rules or regulations of the board
 5. Discipline (including voluntary surrender of a professional engineer's or professional surveyor's license in order to avoid disciplinary action) by another jurisdiction, foreign country, or the United States government, if at least one of the grounds for discipline is the same or substantially equivalent to those contained in this Act
 6. Failure to provide information requested by the board as a result of a formal or informal complaint to the board that alleges a violation of this Act
 7. Knowingly making false statements or signing false statements, certifications, or affidavits in connection with the practice of engineering or surveying
 8. Aiding or assisting another person in violating any provision of this Act or the rules or regulations of the board
 9. Violating any terms of any Order imposed or agreed to by the board or using a seal or practicing engineering or surveying while the licensee's license is inactive or restricted
 10. Signing, affixing, or permitting the licensee's seal or signature to be affixed to any specifications, reports, drawings, plans, plats, design information, construction documents or calculations, surveys, or revisions thereof which have not been prepared by the licensee or under the licensee's responsible charge
 11. Engaging in dishonorable, unethical, or unprofessional conduct of a character likely to deceive, defraud, or harm the public
 12. Providing false testimony or information to the board
 13. Habitual intoxication or addiction to the use of drugs or alcohol
 14. Providing engineering or surveying services outside any of the licensee's areas of competence
- B. In addition to or in lieu of any other sanction provided in this section, any licensee or intern that violates a provision of this Act or any rule or regulation of the board may be assessed a fine in an amount determined by the board of not more than *[insert amount]* dollars for each offense
1. Each day of continued violation may constitute a separate offense.
 2. In determining the amount of fine to be assessed pursuant to this section, the board may consider such factors as the following:
 - a. Whether the amount imposed will be a substantial economic deterrent to the violation

***Model Law, 150.10, Grounds for Disciplinary Action—
Licensees and Interns***

- A. The board shall have the power to suspend, revoke, place on probation, fine, recover costs, and/or reprimand, or to refuse to issue, restore, or renew a license or intern certification to any licensee or intern that is found guilty of:
1. Any fraud or deceit in obtaining or attempting to obtain or renew a certificate of licensure
 2. Any negligence, incompetence, or misconduct in the

- b. The circumstances leading to the violation
- c. The severity of the violation and the risk of harm to the public
- d. The economic benefits gained by the violator as a result of noncompliance
- e. The interest of the public
- f. Consistency of the fine with past fines for similar offenses, or justification for the fine amount

Model Law, 150.30, Grounds for Disciplinary Action—Unlicensed Individuals

- A. In addition to any other provisions of law, the board shall have the power to fine and recover costs from any unlicensed individual who is found guilty of:
 - 1. Engaging in the practice or offer to practice of engineering or surveying in this jurisdiction without being licensed in accordance with the provisions of this Act
 - 2. Using or employing the words "engineer," "engineering," "surveyor," "surveying," or any modification or derivative thereof in his or her name or form of business activity except as licensed in this Act
 - 3. Presenting or attempting to use the certificate of licensure or seal of a professional engineer or professional surveyor
 - 4. Engaging in any fraud or deceit in obtaining or attempting to obtain a certificate of licensure or intern certification
 - 5. Impersonating any professional engineer or professional surveyor
 - 6. Using or attempting to use an expired, suspended, revoked, inactive, retired, or nonexistent certificate of licensure
- B. A fine assessed under this section may not exceed *[insert amount]* dollars for each offense.
- C. Each day of continued violation may constitute a separate offense.
- D. In determining the amount of fine to be assessed pursuant to this section, the board may consider such factors as the following:
 - 1. Whether the amount imposed will be a substantial economic deterrent to the violation
 - 2. The circumstances leading to the violation
 - 3. The severity of the violation and the risk of harm to the public
 - 4. The economic benefits gained by the violator as a result of noncompliance
 - 5. The interest of the public
 - 6. Consistency of the fine with past fines for similar offenses, or justification for the fine amount

Model Law, 160.10, General Requirements for Certificates of Authorization

- A. A firm that practices or offers to practice engineering or surveying is required to obtain a certificate of

authorization by the board in accordance with the Rules.

- B. This section shall not require a certificate of authorization for a firm performing engineering or surveying for the firm itself or for a parent or subsidiary of said firm.
- C. The secretary of state of this jurisdiction shall not accept organizational papers nor issue a certificate of incorporation, organization, licensure, or authorization to any firm which includes among the objectives for which it is established or within its name, any of the words "engineer," "engineering," "surveyor," "surveying," or any modification or derivation thereof unless the board has issued for said applicant a certificate of authorization or a letter indicating the eligibility of such applicant to receive such a certificate. The firm applying shall supply such certificate or letter from the board with its application for incorporation, organization, licensure, or authorization.
- D. The secretary of state of this jurisdiction shall decline to authorize any trade name, trademark, or service mark that includes therein such words as set forth in the previous subsection, or any modifications or derivatives thereof, except licensees and those firms holding certificates of authorization issued under the provisions of this section.

Model Law, 160.70, Grounds for Disciplinary Action—Firms Holding a Certificate of Authorization

- A. The board shall have the power to suspend, revoke, place on probation, fine, recover costs, and/or reprimand, or to refuse to issue, restore, or renew a certificate of authorization to any firm holding a certificate of authorization that is found guilty of:
 - 1. Any fraud or deceit in obtaining or attempting to obtain or renew a certificate of authorization
 - 2. Any negligence, incompetence, or misconduct in the practice of engineering or surveying
 - 3. Conviction of or entry of a plea of guilty or nolo contendere to any crime that is a felony, whether or not related to the practice of engineering or surveying; and conviction of or entry of a plea of guilty or nolo contendere to any crime, whether a felony, misdemeanor, or otherwise, an essential element of which is dishonesty or which is directly related to the practice of engineering or surveying
 - 4. Failure to comply with any of the provisions of this Act or any of the rules or regulations of the board
 - 5. Discipline (including voluntary surrender of a professional engineer's or professional surveyor's license in order to avoid disciplinary action) by another jurisdiction, foreign country, or the United States government, if at least one of the grounds for discipline is the same or substantially equivalent to those contained in this Act
 - 6. Failure to provide information requested by the board as a result of a formal or informal complaint to the board that alleges a violation of this Act

7. Knowingly making false statements or signing false statements, certifications, or affidavits in connection with the practice of engineering or surveying
 8. Aiding or assisting another person in violating any provision of this Act or the rules or regulations of the board
 9. Violating any terms of any Order imposed or agreed to by the board or using a seal or practicing engineering or surveying while the firm's certificate of authorization is inactive or restricted
 10. Engaging in dishonorable, unethical, or unprofessional conduct of a character likely to deceive, defraud, or harm the public
 11. Providing false testimony or information to the board
- B. In addition to or in lieu of any other sanction provided in this section, any firm holding a certificate of authorization that violates a provision of this Act or any rule or regulation of the board may be assessed a fine in an amount determined by the board of not more than *[insert amount]* dollars for each offense.
1. Each day of continued violation may constitute a separate offense.
 2. In determining the amount of fine to be assessed pursuant to this section, the board may consider such factors as the following:
 - a. Whether the amount imposed will be a substantial economic deterrent to the violation
 - b. The circumstances leading to the violation
 - c. The severity of the violation and the risk of harm to the public
 - d. The economic benefits gained by the violator as a result of noncompliance
 - e. The interest of the public
 - f. Consistency of the fine with past fines for similar offenses, or justification for the fine amount
- C. In addition to any other sanction provided in this section, the board shall have the power to sanction as follows any firm where one or more of its managing agents, officers, directors, owners, or managers have been found guilty of any conduct which would constitute a violation under the provisions of this Act or any of the rules or regulations of the board:
1. Place on probation, fine, recover costs from, and/or reprimand
 2. Revoke, suspend, or refuse to issue, restore, or renew the certificate of authorization

Model Law, 170.30, Exemption Clause

This Act shall not be construed to prevent the following:

- A. Other Professions—The practice of any other legally recognized profession
- B. Contingent License—A contingent license may be issued by the board or board administrator to an applicant for licensure by comity if the applicant appears to meet the requirements for licensure by comity. Such a contingent license will be in

effect from its date of issuance until such time as the board takes final action on the application for licensure by comity. If the board determines that the applicant does not meet the requirements for issuance of a license, the contingent license shall be immediately and automatically revoked upon notice to the applicant and no license will be issued.

- C. Employees and Subordinates—The work of an employee or a subordinate of an individual holding a certificate of licensure under this Act, or an employee of an individual practicing lawfully under Subsection B of this section, provided such work does not include final engineering or surveying designs or decisions and is done under the responsible charge of and verified by an individual holding a certificate of licensure under this Act or an individual practicing lawfully under Subsection B of this section.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY

Intellectual property is the creative product of the intellect and normally includes inventions, symbols, literary works, patents, and designs.

A number of options are available to individuals who wish to protect their intellectual property from being claimed or misused by others. There are four products that are commonly used to offer varying degrees of protection to owners of different types of intellectual properties: trademarks, patents, copyrights, and industrial designs.

Trademarks

A trademark is a "brand" name for an intellectual asset. A trademark includes a word, name, symbol, or device that distinguishes and identifies the source of a good or service. Registration offers protection from misuse by unauthorized groups and provides the holder with exclusive use.

Patents

A patent grants legally protected rights to the owner of the item being patented. To be eligible for patent, the item must be new, useful, and inventive. The patent is granted to the first applicant.

Copyrights

Copyrights apply to original literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic works. The work is protected by copyright from the moment that it is created. Copyright can be registered, and the registration serves as proof of ownership. Others who wish to use work that is copyrighted must generally gain permission to use it from the copyright holder.

Industrial Designs

Industrial design rights protect the appearance of new products. This includes shapes, colors, and any other visual features. Registering an industrial design protects the new design from being used or sold by others.

United States Patent and Trademark Office, uspto.gov/patents.

SAFETY

DEFINITION OF SAFETY

Safety is the condition of protecting people from threats or failures that could harm their physical, emotional, occupational, psychological, or financial well-being. Safety is also the control of known threats to attain an acceptable level of risk.

The United States relies on public codes and standards, engineering designs, and corporate policies to ensure that a structure or place does what it should do to maintain a steady state of safety—that is, long-term stability and reliability. Some *Safety/Regulatory Agencies* that develop codes and standards commonly used in the United States are shown in the table.

| Acronym | Name | Jurisdiction |
|---------|---|--|
| ANSI | American National Standards Institute | Nonprofit standards organization |
| CGA | Compressed Gas Association | Nonprofit trade association |
| CSA | Canadian Standards Association | Nonprofit standards organization |
| FAA | Federal Aviation Administration | Federal regulatory agency |
| IEC | International Electrotechnical Commission | Nonprofit standards organization |
| ITSNA | Intertek Testing Services NA (formerly Edison Testing Labs) | Nationally recognized testing laboratory |
| MSHA | Mine Safety and Health Administration | Federal regulatory agency |
| NFPA | National Fire Protection Association | Nonprofit trade association |
| OSHA | Occupational Safety and Health Administration | Federal regulatory agency |
| UL | Underwriters Laboratories | Nationally recognized testing laboratory |
| USCG | United States Coast Guard | Federal regulatory agency |
| USDOT | United States Department of Transportation | Federal regulatory agency |
| USEPA | United States Environmental Protection Agency | Federal regulatory agency |

SAFETY AND PREVENTION

A traditional preventive approach to both accidents and occupational illness involves recognizing, evaluating, and controlling hazards and work conditions that may cause physical or other injuries.

Hazard is the capacity to cause harm. It is an inherent quality of a material or a condition. For example, a rotating saw blade or an uncontrolled high-pressure jet of water has the capability (hazard) to slice through flesh. A toxic chemical or a pathogen has the capability (hazard) to cause illness.

Risk is the chance or probability that a person will experience harm and is not the same as a hazard. Risk always involves both probability and severity elements. The hazard associated with a rotating saw blade or the water jet continues to exist, but the probability of causing harm, and thus the risk, can be reduced by installing a guard or by controlling the jet's path. Risk is expressed by the equation:

$$\text{Risk} = \text{Hazard} \times \text{Probability}$$

When people discuss the hazards of disease-causing agents, the term *exposure* is typically used more than *probability*. If a certain type of chemical has a toxicity hazard, the risk of illness rises with the degree to which that chemical contacts your body or enters your lungs. In that case, the equation becomes:

$$\text{Risk} = \text{Hazard} \times \text{Exposure}$$

Organizations evaluate hazards using multiple techniques and data sources.

Job Safety Analysis

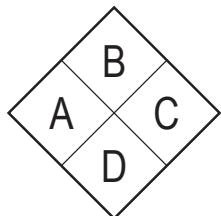
Job safety analysis (JSA) is known by many names, including activity hazard analysis (AHA), or job hazard analysis (JHA). Hazard analysis helps integrate accepted safety and health principles and practices into a specific task. In a JSA, each basic step of the job is reviewed, potential hazards identified, and recommendations documented as to the safest way to do the job. JSA techniques work well when used on a task that the analysts understand well. JSA analysts look for specific types of potential accidents and ask basic questions about each step, such as these:

- Can the employee strike against or otherwise make injurious contact with the object?
- Can the employee be caught in, on, or between objects?
- Can the employee strain muscles by pushing, pulling, or lifting?
- Is exposure to toxic gases, vapors, dust, heat, electrical currents, or radiation possible?

HAZARD ASSESSMENTS

Hazard Assessment

The fire/hazard diamond below summarizes common hazard data available on the Safety Data Sheet (SDS) and is frequently shown on chemical labels.



Position A – Health Hazard (Blue)

- 0 = normal material
- 1 = slightly hazardous
- 2 = hazardous
- 3 = extreme danger
- 4 = deadly


Position B – Flammability (Red)

- 0 = will not burn
- 1 = will ignite if preheated
- 2 = will ignite if moderately heated
- 3 = will ignite at most ambient temperature
- 4 = burns readily at ambient conditions

Position C – Reactivity (Yellow)

- 0 = stable and not reactive with water
- 1 = unstable if heated
- 2 = violent chemical change
- 3 = shock short may detonate
- 4 = may detonate

Position D – (White)

- ALKALI = alkali
- OXY = oxidizer
- ACID = acid
- Cor = corrosive
- W = use no water
-  = radiation hazard

GHS

The *Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labeling of Chemicals*, or GHS, is a system for standardizing and harmonizing the classification and labeling of chemicals. GHS is a comprehensive approach to:

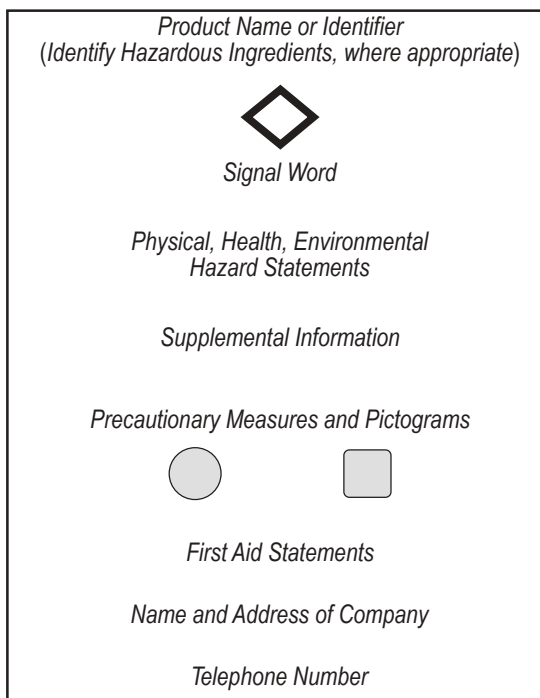
- Defining health, physical, and environmental hazards of chemicals
- Creating classification processes that use available data on chemicals for comparison with the defined hazard criteria
- Communicating hazard information, as well as protective measures, on labels and Safety Data Sheets (SDSs), formerly called Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDSs).

GHS label elements include:

- Precautionary statements and pictograms: Measures to minimize or prevent adverse effects
- Product identifier (ingredient disclosure): Name or number used for a hazardous product on a label or in the SDS
- Supplier identification: The name, address, and telephone number of the supplier
- Supplemental information: nonharmonized information

Other label elements include symbols, signal words, and hazard statements.

GHS LABEL ELEMENTS



Occupational Safety and Health Administration, *A Guide to The Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labelling of Chemicals (GHS)*, United States Department of Labor, <https://www.osha.gov/dsg/hazcom/ghsguideoct05.pdf>

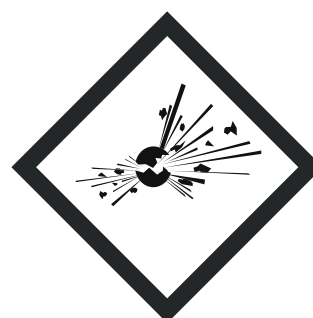
GHS PICTOGRAMS AND HAZARD CLASSES



- OXIDIZERS



- FLAMMABLES
- SELF-REACTIVES
- PYROPHORICS
- SELF-HEATING
- EMITS FLAMMABLE GAS
- ORGANIC PEROXIDES



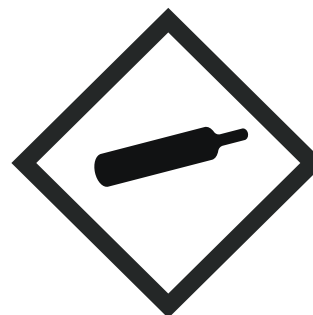
- EXPLOSIVES
- SELF-REACTIVES
- ORGANIC PEROXIDES



- ACUTE TOXICITY (SEVERE)



- CORROSIVES



- GASES UNDER PRESSURE



- CARCINOGEN
- RESPIRATORY SENSITIZER
- REPRODUCTIVE TOXICITY
- TARGET ORGAN TOXICITY
- MUTAGENICITY
- ASPIRATION TOXICITY



- ENVIRONMENTAL TOXICITY



- IRRITANT
- DERMAL SENSITIZER
- ACUTE TOXICITY (HARMFUL)
- NARCOTIC EFFECTS
- RESPIRATORY TRACT IRRITATION

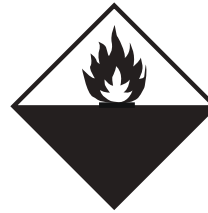
TRANSPORT PICTOGRAMS



FLAMMABLE LIQUID
FLAMMABLE GAS
FLAMMABLE AEROSOL



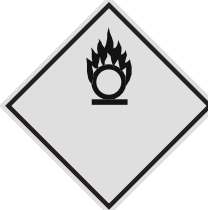
FLAMMABLE SOLID
SELF-REACTIVE
SUBSTANCES



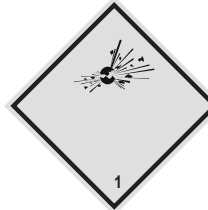
PYROPHORICS (SPONTANEOUSLY
COMBUSTIBLE)
SELF-HEATING SUBSTANCES



SUBSTANCES, WHICH IN
CONTACT WITH WATER,
EMIT FLAMMABLE GASES
(DANGEROUS WHEN WET)



OXIDIZING GASES
OXIDIZING LIQUIDS
OXIDIZING SOLIDS



EXPLOSIVE DIVISIONS
1.1, 1.2, 1.3



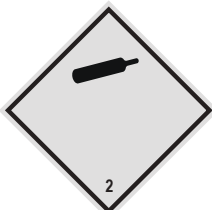
EXPLOSIVE DIVISION 1.4



EXPLOSIVE DIVISION 1.5



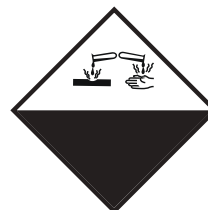
EXPLOSIVE DIVISION 1.6



COMPRESSED GASES



ACUTE TOXICITY (POISON):
ORAL, DERMAL, INHALATION



CORROSIVE







MARINE POLLUTANT



ORGANIC PEROXIDES

ACUTE ORAL TOXICITY

| | CATEGORY 1 | CATEGORY 2 | CATEGORY 3 | CATEGORY 4 | CATEGORY 5 |
|------------------|---|---|---|---|-----------------------------|
| LD ₅₀ | ≤ 5 mg/kg | > 5 < 50 mg/kg | ≥ 50 < 300 mg/kg | ≥ 300 < 2,000 mg/kg | ≥ 2,000 < 5,000 mg/kg |
| PICTOGRAM |  |  |  |  | NO SYMBOL |
| SIGNAL WORD | DANGER | DANGER | DANGER | WARNING | WARNING |
| HAZARD STATEMENT | FATAL IF SWALLOWED | FATAL IF SWALLOWED | TOXIC IF SWALLOWED | HARMFUL IF SWALLOWED | MAY BE HARMFUL IF SWALLOWED |

◆ Safety Data Sheet (SDS)

The SDS provides comprehensive information for use in workplace chemical management. Employers and workers use the SDS as a source of information about hazards and to obtain advice on safety precautions. The SDS is product related and, usually, is not able to provide information that is specific for any given workplace where the product may be used. However, the SDS information enables the employer to develop an active program of worker protection measures, including training, which is specific to the individual workplace, and to consider any measures that may be necessary to protect the environment. Information in an SDS also provides a source of information for those involved with the transport of dangerous goods, emergency responders, poison centers, those involved with the professional use of pesticides, and consumers.

The SDS has 16 sections in a set order, and minimum information is prescribed.

◆ The Hazard Communication Standard (HCS) requires chemical manufacturers, distributors, or importers to provide SDSs to communicate the hazards of hazardous chemical products. As of June 1, 2015, the HCS requires new SDSs to be in a uniform format, and include the section numbers, the headings, and associated information under the headings below:

Section 1, Identification: Includes product identifier; manufacturer or distributor name, address, phone number; emergency phone number; recommended use; restrictions on use

Section 2, Hazard(s) identification: Includes all hazards regarding the chemical; required label elements

Section 3, Composition/information on ingredients: Includes information on chemical ingredients; trade secret claims

Section 4, First-aid measures: Includes important symptoms/effects, acute, and delayed; required treatment

Section 5, Fire-fighting measures: Lists suitable extinguishing techniques, equipment; chemical hazards from fire

Section 6, Accidental release measures: Lists emergency procedures; protective equipment; proper methods of containment and cleanup

Section 7, Handling and storage: Lists precautions for safe handling and storage, including incompatibilities

Section 8, Exposure controls/personal protection: Lists OSHA's Permissible Exposure Limits (PELs); Threshold Limit Values (TLVs); appropriate engineering controls; personal protective equipment (PPE)

Section 9, Physical and chemical properties: Lists the chemical's characteristics

Section 10, Stability and reactivity: Lists chemical stability and possibility of hazardous reactions

Section 11, Toxicological information: Includes routes of exposure; related symptoms, acute and chronic effects; numerical measures of toxicity

Section 12, Ecological information*

Section 13, Disposal considerations*

Section 14, Transport information*

Section 15, Regulatory information*

Section 16, Other information: Includes the date of preparation or last revision

*Note: Since other Agencies regulate this information, OSHA will not be enforcing Sections 12 through 15 (29 CFR 1910.1200(g)(2)).

◆ Occupational Safety and Health Administration, *A Guide to The Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labelling of Chemicals (GHS)*, United States Department of Labor, <https://www.osha.gov/dsg/hazcom/ghsguideoct05.pdf>

Signal Words

The signal word found on every product's label is based on test results from various oral, dermal, and inhalation toxicity tests, as well as skin and eye corrosion assays in some cases. Signal words are placed on labels to convey a level of care that should be taken (especially personal protection) when handling and using a product, from purchase to disposal of the empty container, as demonstrated by the Pesticide Toxicity Table.

Pesticide Toxicity Categories

| Signal Word on Label | Toxicity Category | Acute-Oral LD ₅₀ for Rats | Amount Needed to Kill an Average Size Adult | Notes |
|----------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| Danger–Poison | Highly Toxic | 50 or less | Taste to a teaspoon | Skull and crossbones; Keep Out of Reach of Children |
| Warning | Moderately Toxic | 50 to 500 | One to six teaspoons | Keep Out of Reach of Children |
| Caution | Slightly Toxic | 500 to 5,000 | One ounce to a pint | Keep Out of Reach of Children |
| Caution | Relatively Nontoxic | >5,000 | More than a pint | Keep Out of Reach of Children |

LD₅₀ - See Risk Assessment/Toxicology section on page 13.

From *Regulating Pesticides*, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

Flammability

Flammable describes any solid, liquid, vapor, or gas that will ignite easily and burn rapidly. A flammable liquid is defined by NFPA and USDOT as a liquid with a flash point below 100°F (38°C). Flammability is further defined with lower and upper limits:

LFL = lower flammability limit (volume % in air)

UFL = upper flammability limit (volume % in air)

The LFL is also known as the lower explosive limit (LEL). The UFL is also referred to as the upper explosive limit (UEL). There is no difference between the terms *flammable* and *explosive* as applied to the lower and upper limits of flammability.

A vapor-air mixture will only ignite and burn over the range of concentrations between LFL and UFL. Examples are:

◆

| Gas/Compound | LFL | UFL |
|------------------|------|-------|
| Acetone | 2.6 | 13.0 |
| Acetylene | 2.5 | 100.0 |
| Ammonia | 15.0 | 28.0 |
| <i>n</i> -butane | 1.8 | 8.4 |
| Carbon disulfide | 1.3 | 50.0 |
| Carbon monoxide | 12.5 | 74.0 |
| Cycloheptane | 1.1 | 6.7 |
| Cyclohexane | 1.3 | 7.8 |
| Cyclopropane | 2.4 | 10.4 |
| Diethyl ether | 1.9 | 36.0 |
| Ethane | 3.0 | 12.4 |
| Ethyl acetate | 2.2 | 11.0 |
| Ethyl alcohol | 3.3 | 19.0 |
| Ethyl ether | 1.9 | 36.0 |
| Ethyl nitrite | 3.0 | 50.0 |
| Ethylene | 2.7 | 36.0 |
| Gasoline 100/130 | 1.3 | 7.1 |
| Gasoline 115/145 | 1.2 | 7.1 |
| Hydrazine | 4.7 | 100.0 |
| Hydrogen | 4.0 | 75.0 |
| Hydrogen sulfide | 4.0 | 44.0 |
| Isobutane | 1.8 | 8.4 |
| Methane | 5.0 | 15.0 |
| Propane | 2.1 | 9.5 |

◆ From *SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering*, 4 ed., Society of Fire Protection Engineers, 2008.

◆ **Predicting Lower Flammable Limits of Mixtures of Flammable Gases (Le Chatelier's Rule)**

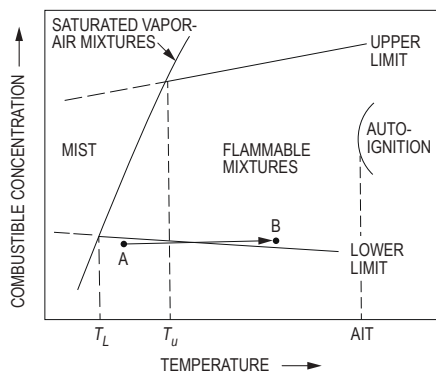
Based on an empirical rule developed by Le Chatelier, the lower flammable limit of mixtures of multiple flammable gases in air can be determined. A generalization of Le Chatelier's rule is

$$\sum_{i=1}^n (C_i / LFL_i) \geq 1$$

where C_i is the volume percent of fuel gas, i , in the fuel/air mixture and LFL_i is the volume percent of fuel gas, i , at its lower flammable limit in air alone. If the indicated sum is greater than unity, the mixture is above the lower flammable limit. This can be restated in terms of the lower flammable limit concentration of the fuel mixture, LFL_m , as follows:

$$LFL_m = \frac{100}{\sum_{i=1}^n (C_{fi} / LFL_i)}$$

where C_{fi} is the volume percent of fuel gas i in the fuel gas mixture.



◆ *The SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering*, 1 ed., Society of Fire Protection Association, 1988. With permission.

Granular Storage and Process Safety

Some materials that are not inherently hazardous can become hazardous during storage or processing. An example is the handling of grain in grain bins. Grain bins should not be entered when the grain is being removed since grains flow to the center of the emptying bin and create suffocation hazards. Bridging may occur at the top surface due to condensation and resulting spoilage creating a crust.

Organic vapors and dusts associated with grain handling often contain toxic yeasts or molds and have low oxygen contents. These organic vapors and dusts may also be explosive.

Confined Space Safety

Many workplaces contain spaces that are considered "confined" because their configurations hinder the activities of employees who must enter, work in, and exit them. A confined space has limited or restricted means for entry or exit and is not designed for continuous employee occupancy. Confined spaces include, but are not limited to, underground vaults, tanks, storage bins, manholes, pits, silos, process vessels, and pipelines. OSHA uses the term "permit-required confined spaces" (permit space) to describe a confined space that has one or more of the following characteristics: contains or has the potential to contain a hazardous atmosphere; contains a material that has the potential to engulf an entrant; has walls that converge inward or floors that slope downward and taper into a smaller area that could trap or asphyxiate an entrant; or contains any other recognized safety or health hazard such as unguarded machinery, exposed live wires or heat stress.

OSHA has developed OSHA standards, directives (instructions for compliance officers), standard interpretations (official letters of interpretation of the standards), and national consensus standards related to confined spaces. The following gases are often present in confined spaces:

Ammonia: Irritating at 50 ppm and deadly above 1,000 ppm; sharp, cutting odor

Hydrogen sulfide: Irritating at 10 ppm and deadly at 500 ppm; accumulates at lower levels and in corners where circulation is minimal; rotten egg odor

Methane: Explosive at levels above 50,000 ppm, lighter than air, odorless

Carbon dioxide: Heavier than air, accumulates at lower levels and in corners where circulation is minimal, displaces air leading to asphyxiation

Electrical Safety

| Current Level (Milliamperes) | Probable Effect on Human Body |
|------------------------------|---|
| 1 mA | Perception level. Slight tingling sensation. Still dangerous under certain conditions. |
| 5 mA | Slight shock felt; not painful but disturbing. Average individual can let go. However, strong involuntary reactions to shocks in this range may lead to injuries. |
| 6 mA–16 mA | Painful shock, begin to lose muscular control. Commonly referred to as the freezing current or "let-go" range. |
| 17 mA–99 mA | Extreme pain, respiratory arrest, severe muscular contractions. Individual cannot let go. Death is possible. |
| 100 mA–2,000 mA | Ventricular fibrillation (uneven, uncoordinated pumping of the heart). Muscular contraction and nerve damage begins to occur. Death is likely. |
| > 2,000 mA | Cardiac arrest (stop in effective blood circulation), internal organ damage, and severe burns. Death is probable. |

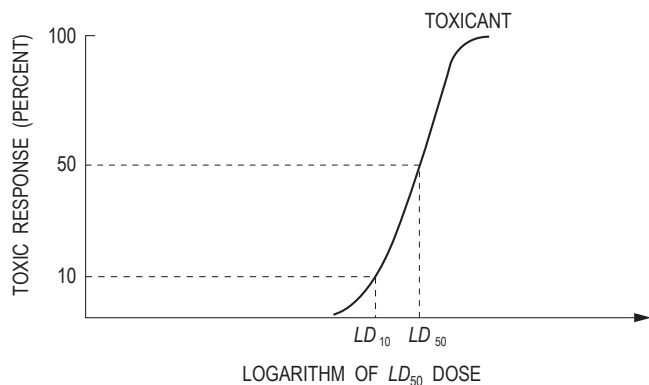
Worker Deaths by Electrocutation: A Summary of NIOSH Surveillance and Investigative Findings, U.S. Health and Human Services, (NIOSH), 1998.

Greenwald E.K., *Electrical Hazards and Accidents—Their Cause and Prevention*, Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1991.

RISK ASSESSMENT/TOXICOLOGY

Dose-Response Curves

The dose-response curve relates toxic response (i.e., percentage of test population exhibiting a specified symptom or dying) to the logarithm of the dosage [i.e., mg/(kg·day) ingested]. A typical dose-response curve is shown below.



LC_{50}

Median lethal concentration in air that, based on laboratory tests, is expected to kill 50% of a group of test animals when administered as a single exposure over 1 or 4 hours.

LD_{50}

Median lethal single dose, based on laboratory tests, expected to kill 50% of a group of test animals, usually by oral or skin exposure.

Similar definitions exist for LC_{10} and LD_{10} , where the corresponding percentages are 10%.

Comparative Acutely Lethal Doses

| Actual Ranking No. | LD_{50} (mg/kg) | Toxic Chemical |
|--------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 | 15,000 | PCBs |
| 2 | 10,000 | Alcohol (ethanol) |
| 3 | 4,000 | Table salt—sodium chloride |
| 4 | 1,500 | Ferrous sulfate—an iron supplement |
| 5 | 1,375 | Malathion—pesticide |
| 6 | 900 | Morphine |
| 7 | 150 | Phenobarbital—a sedative |
| 8 | 142 | Tylenol (acetaminophen) |
| 9 | 2 | Strychnine—a rat poison |
| 10 | 1 | Nicotine |
| 11 | 0.5 | Curare—an arrow poison |
| 12 | 0.001 | 2,3,7,8-TCDD (dioxin) |
| 13 | 0.00001 | Botulinum toxin (food poison) |

Adapted from *Loomis's Essentials of Toxicology*, 4th ed., Loomis, T.A., and A.W. Hayes, San Diego, Academic Press, 1996.

Selected Chemical Interaction Effects

| Effect | Relative toxicity (hypothetical) | Example |
|--------------|----------------------------------|---|
| Additive | 2 + 3 = 5 | Organophosphate pesticides |
| Synergistic | 2 + 3 = 20 | Cigarette smoking + asbestos |
| Antagonistic | 6 + 6 = 8 | Toluene + benzene or caffeine + alcohol |

Adapted from Williams, P.L., R.C. James, and S.M. Roberts, *Principles of Toxicology: Environmental and Industrial Applications*, 2nd ed., Wiley, 2000.

Exposure Limits for Selected Compounds

| N | Allowable Workplace Exposure Level (mg/m ³) | Chemical (use) |
|----|---|---|
| 1 | 0.1 | Iodine |
| 2 | 5 | Aspirin |
| 3 | 10 | Vegetable oil mists (cooking oil) |
| 4 | 55 | 1,1,2-Trichloroethane (solvent/degreaser) |
| 5 | 188 | Perchloroethylene (dry-cleaning fluid) |
| 6 | 170 | Toluene (organic solvent) |
| 7 | 269 | Trichloroethylene (solvent/degreaser) |
| 8 | 590 | Tetrahydrofuran (organic solvent) |
| 9 | 890 | Gasoline (fuel) |
| 10 | 1,590 | Naphtha (rubber solvent) |
| 11 | 1,910 | 1,1,1-Trichloroethane (solvent/degreaser) |

American Conference of Government Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH) 1996.

Carcinogens

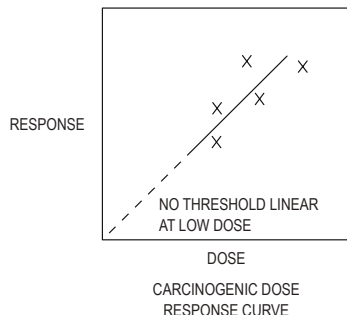
For carcinogens, EPA considers an acceptable risk to be within the range of 10⁻⁴ to 10⁻⁶. The added risk of cancer is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Risk} = \text{dose} \times \text{toxicity} = \text{CDI} \times \text{CSF}$$

where

CDI = Chronic Daily Intake

CSF = Cancer Slope Factor. Slope of the dose-response curve for carcinogenic materials.



Threshold Limit Value (TLV)

TLV is the highest dose (ppm by volume in the atmosphere) the body is able to detoxify without any detectable effects.

Examples are:

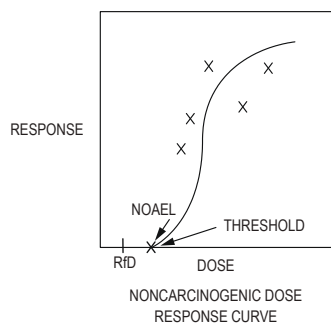
| Compound | TLV |
|----------------|-------|
| Ammonia | 25 |
| Chlorine | 0.5 |
| Ethyl Chloride | 1,000 |
| Ethyl Ether | 400 |

Noncarcinogens

For noncarcinogens, a hazard index (HI) is used to characterize risk from all pathways and exposure routes. EPA considers an HI > 1.0 as representing the possibility of an adverse effect occurring.

$$HI = \frac{CDI_{\text{noncarcinogen}}}{RfD}$$

CDI_{noncarcinogen} = chronic daily intake of noncarcinogenic compound



Dose is expressed

$$\left(\frac{\text{mass of chemical}}{\text{body weight} \cdot \text{exposure time}} \right)$$

NOAEL = No Observable Adverse Effect Level. The dose below which there are no harmful effects

Reference Dose

Reference dose (RfD) is determined from the Noncarcinogenic Dose-Response Curve using NOAEL.

RfD = lifetime (i.e., chronic) dose that a healthy person could be exposed to daily without adverse effects

$$RfD = \frac{NOAEL}{UF}$$

and

$$SHD = RfD \times W = \frac{NOAEL \times W}{UF}$$

where

SHD = safe human dose (mg/day)

NOAEL = threshold dose per kg of test animal [mg/(kg•day)] from the dose-response curve

UF = the total uncertainty factor, depending on nature and reliability of the animal test data

W = the weight of the adult male

HAZARDOUS WASTE COMPATIBILITY CHART

| Reactivity Group | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------|---|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| No. | Name | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | Acid, Minerals, Non-Oxidizing | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Acids, Minerals, Oxidizing | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Acids, Organic | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | Alcohols & Glycols | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | Aldehydes | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Amides | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | Amines, Aliphatic & Aromatic | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | Azo Compounds, Diazo Comp, Hydrazines | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | Carbamates | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | Caustics | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | Cyanides | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 12 | Dithiocarbamates | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 13 | Esters | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 14 | Ethers | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 15 | Fluorides, Inorganic | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 16 | Hydrocarbons, Aromatic | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 17 | Halogenated Organics | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 18 | Isocyanates | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 19 | Ketones | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 20 | Mercaptans & Other Organic Sulfides | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 21 | Metal, Alkali & Alkaline Earth, Elemental | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 104 | Oxidizing Agents, Strong | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | 104 | | | | | | |
| 105 | Reducing Agents, Strong | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | 105 | | | | | | |
| 106 | Water & Mixtures Containing Water | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | 106 | | | | | | |
| 107 | Water Reactive Substances | EXTREMELY REACTIVE! Do Not Mix With Any Chemical or Waste Material | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | 107 | | | | | | |
| | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 | 32 | 33 | 34 | 101 | 102 | 103 | 104 | 105 | 106 | 107 |

KEY

| REACTIVITY CODE | CONSEQUENCES |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| H | HEAT GENERATION |
| F | FIRE |
| G | INNOCUOUS & NON-FLAMMABLE GAS |
| GT | TOXIC GAS GENERATION |
| GF | FLAMMABLE GAS GENERATION |
| E | EXPLOSION |
| P | POLYMERIZATION |
| S | SOLUBILIZATION OF TOXIC MATERIAL |
| U | MAY BE HAZARDOUS BUT UNKNOWN |

EXAMPLE:

| | |
|----|---------------------|
| H | HEAT GENERATION, |
| F | FIRE, AND TOXIC GAS |
| GT | GENERATION |

20 SAFETY

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, April 1980. EPA-600/2-80-076.

Exposure

Residential Exposure Equations for Various Pathways

Ingestion in drinking water

$$CDI = \frac{(CW)(IR)(EF)(ED)}{(BW)(AT)}$$

Ingestion while swimming

$$CDI = \frac{(CW)(CR)(ET)(EF)(ED)}{(BW)(AT)}$$

Dermal contact with water

$$AD = \frac{(CW)(SA)(PC)(ET)(EF)(ED)(CF)}{(BW)(AT)}$$

Ingestion of chemicals in soil

$$CDI = \frac{(CS)(IR)(CF)(FI)(EF)(ED)}{(BW)(AT)}$$

Dermal contact with soil

$$AD = \frac{(CS)(CF)(SA)(AF)(ABS)(EF)(ED)}{(BW)(AT)}$$

Inhalation of airborne (vapor phase) chemicals

$$CDI = \frac{(CA)(IR)(ET)(EF)(ED)}{(BW)(AT)}$$

Ingestion of contaminated fruits, vegetables, fish and shellfish

$$CDI = \frac{(CF)(IR)(FI)(EF)(ED)}{(BW)(AT)}$$

where ABS = absorption factor for soil contaminant (unitless)

AD = absorbed dose (mg/[kg•day])

AF = soil-to-skin adherence factor (mg/cm²)

AT = averaging time (days)

BW = body weight (kg)

CA = contaminant concentration in air (mg/m³)

CDI = chronic daily intake (mg/[kg•day])

CF = volumetric conversion factor for water
= 1 L/1,000 cm³

= conversion factor for soil = 10⁻⁶ kg/mg

CR = contact rate (L/hr)

CS = chemical concentration in soil (mg/kg)

CW = chemical concentration in water (mg/L)

ED = exposure duration (years)

EF = exposure frequency (days/yr or events/year)

ET = exposure time (hr/day or hr/event)

FI = fraction ingested (unitless)

IR = ingestion rate (L/day or mg soil/day or kg/meal)
= inhalation rate (m³/hr)

PC = chemical-specific dermal permeability constant
(cm/hr)

SA = skin surface area available for contact (cm²)

Intake Rates—Variable Values

EPA-Recommended Values for Estimating Intake

| Parameter | Standard Value |
|---|--------------------------|
| Average body weight, female adult | 65.4 kg |
| Average body weight, male adult | 78 kg |
| Average body weight, child ^a | |
| 6–11 months | 9 kg |
| 1–5 years | 16 kg |
| 6–12 years | 33 kg |
| Amount of water ingested, adult | 2.3 L/day |
| Amount of water ingested, child | 1.5 L/day |
| Amount of air breathed, female adult | 11.3 m ³ /day |
| Amount of air breathed, male adult | 15.2 m ³ /day |
| Amount of air breathed, child (3–5 years) | 8.3 m ³ /day |
| Amount of fish consumed, adult | 6 g/day |
| Water swallowing rate, while swimming | 50 mL/hr |
| Inhalation rates | |
| adult (6-hr day) | 0.98 m ³ /hr |
| adult (2-hr day) | 1.47 m ³ /hr |
| child | 0.46 m ³ /hr |
| Skin surface available, adult male | 1.94 m ² |
| Skin surface available, adult female | 1.69 m ² |
| Skin surface available, child | |
| 3–6 years (average for male and female) | 0.720 m ² |
| 6–9 years (average for male and female) | 0.925 m ² |
| 9–12 years (average for male and female) | 1.16 m ² |
| 12–15 years (average for male and female) | 1.49 m ² |
| 15–18 years (female) | 1.60 m ² |
| 15–18 years (male) | 1.75 m ² |
| Soil ingestion rate, child 1–6 years | >100 mg/day |
| Soil ingestion rate, persons > 6 years | 50 mg/day |
| Skin adherence factor, gardener's hands | 0.07 mg/cm ² |
| Skin adherence factor, wet soil | 0.2 mg/cm ² |
| Exposure duration | |
| Lifetime (carcinogens, for noncarcinogens use actual exposure duration) | 75 years |
| At one residence, 90th percentile | 30 years |
| National median | 5 years |
| Averaging time | (ED)(365 days/year) |
| Exposure frequency (EF) | |
| Swimming | 7 days/year |
| Eating fish and shellfish | 48 days/year |
| Oral ingestion | 350 days/year |
| Exposure time (ET) | |
| Shower, 90th percentile | 12 min |
| Shower, 50th percentile | 7 min |

^aData in this category taken from: Copeland, T., A. M. Holbrow, J. M. Otan, et al., "Use of probabilistic methods to understand the conservatism in California's approach to assessing health risks posed by air contaminants," *Journal of the Air and Waste Management Association*, vol. 44, pp. 1399-1413, 1994.

Risk Assessment Guidance for Superfund. Volume 1, *Human Health Evaluation Manual* (part A). U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA/540/1-89/002, 1989.

Concentrations of Vaporized Liquids

Vaporization Rate (Q_m , mass/time) from a Liquid Surface

$$Q_m = [MKA_S P^{\text{sat}} / (R_g T_L)]$$

M = molecular weight of volatile substance

K = mass-transfer coefficient

A_S = area of liquid surface

P^{sat} = saturation vapor pressure of the pure liquid at T_L

R_g = ideal gas constant

T_L = absolute temperature of the liquid

Mass Flowrate of Liquid from a Hole in the Wall of a Process

Unit

$$Q_m = A_H C_0 (2\rho g_c P_g)^{1/2}$$

A_H = area of hole

C_0 = discharge coefficient

ρ = density of the liquid

g_c = gravitational constant

P_g = gauge pressure within the process unit

Concentration (C_{ppm}) of Vaporized Liquid in Ventilated Space

$$C_{\text{ppm}} = [Q_m R_g T \times 10^6 / (k Q_V P M)]$$

T = absolute ambient temperature

k = non-ideal mixing factor

Q_V = ventilation rate

P = absolute ambient pressure

Sweep-Through Concentration Change in a Vessel

$$Q_V t = V \ln[(C_1 - C_0) / (C_2 - C_0)]$$

Q_V = volumetric flowrate

t = time

V = vessel volume

C_0 = inlet concentration

C_1 = initial concentration

C_2 = final concentration

ERGONOMICS

NIOSH Formula

Recommended Weight Limit (RWL)

$$RWL = 51(10/H)(1 - 0.0075|V - 30|)(0.82 + 1.8/D)(1 - 0.0032A)(FM)(CM)$$

where

RWL= recommended weight limit, in pounds

H = horizontal distance of the hand from the midpoint of the line joining the inner ankle bones to a point projected on the floor directly below the load center, in inches

V = vertical distance of the hands from the floor, in inches

D = vertical travel distance of the hands between the origin and destination of the lift, in inches

A = asymmetry angle, in degrees

FM = frequency multiplier (see table)

CM = coupling multiplier (see table)

Frequency Multiplier Table

| F, min ⁻¹ | ≤ 8 hr/day | | ≤ 2 hr/day | | ≤ 1 hr/day | |
|----------------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| | V < 30 in. | V ≥ 30 in. | V < 30 in. | V ≥ 30 in. | V < 30 in. | V ≥ 30 in. |
| 0.2 | 0.85 | | 0.95 | | 1.00 | |
| 0.5 | 0.81 | | 0.92 | | 0.97 | |
| 1 | 0.75 | | 0.88 | | 0.94 | |
| 2 | 0.65 | | 0.84 | | 0.91 | |
| 3 | 0.55 | | 0.79 | | 0.88 | |
| 4 | 0.45 | | 0.72 | | 0.84 | |
| 5 | 0.35 | | 0.60 | | 0.80 | |
| 6 | 0.27 | | 0.50 | | 0.75 | |
| 7 | 0.22 | | 0.42 | | 0.70 | |
| 8 | 0.18 | | 0.35 | | 0.60 | |
| 9 | | 0.15 | 0.30 | | 0.52 | |
| 10 | | 0.13 | 0.26 | | 0.45 | |
| 11 | | | | 0.23 | 0.41 | |
| 12 | | | | 0.21 | 0.37 | |
| 13 | 0.00 | | | | 0.34 | |
| 14 | 0.00 | | | | 0.31 | |
| 15 | 0.00 | | | | 0.28 | |

Waters, Thomas R., Ph.D., et al, *Applications Manual for the Revised NIOSH Lifting Equation*, Table 5, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (NIOSH), January 1994.

Coupling Multiplier (CM) Table (Function of Coupling of Hands to Load)

| Container | | Loose Part / Irreg. Object | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|--------------|
| Optimal Design | | Not | Comfort Grip |
| Opt. Handles or Cut-outs | Not | POOR | GOOD |
| GOOD | Flex Fingers 90 Degrees | Not | |
| | FAIR | POOR | |

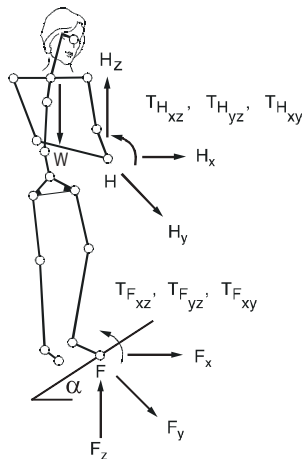
| Coupling | V < 30 in. or 75 cm | V ≥ 30 in. or 75 cm |
|----------|---------------------|---------------------|
| GOOD | 1.00 | |
| FAIR | 0.95 | |
| POOR | 0.90 | |

Waters, Thomas R., Ph.D., et al, *Applications Manual for the Revised NIOSH Lifting Equation*, Table 7, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (NIOSH), January 1994.

Biomechanics of the Human Body

Basic Equations

$$\begin{aligned}
 H_x + F_x &= 0 \\
 H_y + F_y &= 0 \\
 H_z + W + F_z &= 0 \\
 T_{Hxz} + T_{Wxz} + T_{Fxz} &= 0 \\
 T_{Hyz} + T_{Wyz} + T_{Fyz} &= 0 \\
 T_{Hxy} + T_{Fxy} &= 0
 \end{aligned}$$



The coefficient of friction μ and the angle α at which the floor is inclined determine the equations at the foot.

$$F_x = \mu F_z$$

With the slope angle α

$$F_x = \mu F_z \cos \alpha$$

Of course, when motion must be considered, dynamic conditions come into play according to Newton's Second Law. Force transmitted with the hands is counteracted at the foot. Further, the body must also react with internal forces at all points between the hand and the foot.

Incidence Variable Values

Two concepts can be important when completing OSHA forms. These concepts are *incidence rates* and *severity rates*. On occasion it is necessary to calculate the total injury/illness incident rate of an organization in order to complete OSHA forms. This calculation must include fatalities and all injuries requiring medical treatment beyond mere first aid. The formula for determining the total injury/illness incident rate is as follows:

$$IR = N \times 200,000 \div T$$

IR = Total injury/illness incidence rate

N = Number of injuries, illnesses, and fatalities

T = Total hours worked by all employees during the period in question

The number 200,000 in the formula represents the number of hours 100 employees work in a year (40 hours per week \times 50 weeks = 2,000 hours per year per employee). Using the same basic formula with only minor substitutions, safety managers can calculate the following types of incidence rates:

1. Injury rate
2. Illness rate
3. Fatality rate
4. Lost workday cases rate
5. Number of lost workdays rate
6. Specific hazard rate
7. Lost workday injuries rate

NOISE POLLUTION

$$\text{SPL (dB)} = 10 \log_{10} \left(P^2 / P_0^2 \right)$$

$$\text{SPL}_{\text{total}} = 10 \log_{10} \sum 10^{\text{SPL}/10}$$

Point Source Attenuation

$$\Delta \text{SPL (dB)} = 10 \log_{10} (r_1/r_2)^2$$

Line Source Attenuation

$$\Delta \text{SPL (dB)} = 10 \log_{10} (r_1/r_2)$$

where

SPL (dB) = sound pressure level, measured in decibels

P = sound pressure (Pa)

P_0 = reference sound pressure (2×10^{-5} Pa)

$\text{SPL}_{\text{total}}$ = sum of multiple sources

$\Delta \text{SPL (dB)}$ = change in sound pressure level with distance, measured in decibels

r_1 = distance from source to receptor at point 1

r_2 = distance from source to receptor at point 2

PERMISSIBLE NOISE EXPOSURE (OSHA)

Noise dose D should not exceed 100%.

$$D = 100\% \times \sum \frac{C_i}{T_i}$$

where C_i = time spent at specified sound pressure level, SPL, (hours)

T_i = time permitted at SPL (hours)

$$\sum C_i = 8 \text{ (hours)}$$

| Noise Level (dBA) | Permissible Time (hr) |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 80 | 32 |
| 85 | 16 |
| 90 | 8 |
| 95 | 4 |
| 100 | 2 |
| 105 | 1 |
| 110 | 0.5 |
| 115 | 0.25 |
| 120 | 0.125 |
| 125 | 0.063 |
| 130 | 0.031 |

If $D > 100\%$, noise abatement required.

If $50\% \leq D \leq 100\%$, hearing conservation program required.

Note: $D = 100\%$ is equivalent to 90 dBA time-weighted average (TWA). $D = 50\%$ equivalent to TWA of 85 dBA.

Hearing conservation program requires: (1) testing employee hearing, (2) providing hearing protection at employee's request, and (3) monitoring noise exposure.

Exposure to impulsive or impact noise should not exceed 140 dB sound pressure level (SPL).

MATHEMATICS

DISCRETE MATH

Symbols

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| $x \in X$ | x is a member of X |
| $\{ \}, \phi$ | The empty (or null) set |
| $S \subseteq T$ | S is a subset of T |
| $S \subset T$ | S is a proper subset of T |
| (a, b) | Ordered pair |
| $P^{(s)}$ | Power set of S |
| (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) | n -tuple |
| $A \times B$ | Cartesian product of A and B |
| $A \cup B$ | Union of A and B |
| $A \cap B$ | Intersection of A and B |
| $\forall x$ | Universal qualification for all x ; for any x ; for each x |
| $\exists y$ | Uniqueness qualification there exists y |

A binary relation from A to B is a subset of $A \times B$.

Matrix of Relation

If $A = \{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m\}$ and $B = \{b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n\}$ are finite sets containing m and n elements, respectively, then a relation R from A to B can be represented by the $m \times n$ matrix $M_R < [m_{ij}]$, which is defined by:

$$m_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } (a_i, b_j) \in R \\ 0 & \text{if } (a_i, b_j) \notin R \end{cases}$$

Directed Graphs, or Digraphs, of Relation

A directed graph, or digraph, consists of a set V of vertices (or nodes) together with a set E of ordered pairs of elements of V called edges (or arcs). For edge (a, b) , the vertex a is called the initial vertex and vertex b is called the terminal vertex. An edge of form (a, a) is called a loop.

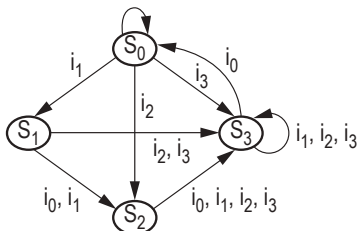
Finite State Machine

A finite state machine consists of a finite set of states $S_i = \{s_0, s_1, \dots, s_n\}$ and a finite set of inputs I ; and a transition function f that assigns to each state and input pair a new state.

A state (or truth) table can be used to represent the finite state machine.

| State | Input | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | i_0 | i_1 | i_2 | i_3 |
| S_0 | S_0 | S_1 | S_2 | S_3 |
| S_1 | S_2 | S_2 | S_3 | S_3 |
| S_2 | S_3 | S_3 | S_3 | S_3 |
| S_3 | S_0 | S_3 | S_3 | S_3 |

Another way to represent a finite state machine is to use a state diagram, which is a directed graph with labeled edges.



The characteristic of how a function maps one set (X) to another set (Y) may be described in terms of being either injective, surjective, or bijective.

An injective (one-to-one) relationship exists if, and only if, $\forall x_1, x_2 \in X$, if $f(x_1) = f(x_2)$, then $x_1 = x_2$

A surjective (onto) relationship exists when $\forall y \in Y, \exists x \in X$ such that $f(x) = y$

A bijective relationship is both injective (one-to-one) and surjective (onto).

STRAIGHT LINE

The general form of the equation is

$$Ax + By + C = 0$$

The standard form of the equation is

$$y = mx + b,$$

which is also known as the *slope-intercept* form.

The *point-slope* form is $y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$

Given two points: slope, $m = (y_2 - y_1)/(x_2 - x_1)$

The angle between lines with slopes m_1 and m_2 is

$$\alpha = \arctan [(m_2 - m_1)/(1 + m_2 \cdot m_1)]$$

Two lines are perpendicular if $m_1 = -1/m_2$

The distance between two points is

$$d = \sqrt{(y_2 - y_1)^2 + (x_2 - x_1)^2}$$

QUADRATIC EQUATION

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0$$

$$x = \text{Roots} = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

QUADRATIC SURFACE (SPHERE)

The standard form of the equation is

$$(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 + (z - m)^2 = r^2$$

with center at (h, k, m) .

In a three-dimensional space, the distance between two points is

$$d = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2}$$

LOGARITHMS

The logarithm of x to the Base b is defined by

$$\log_b(x) = c, \text{ where } b^c = x$$

Special definitions for $b = e$ or $b = 10$ are:

$$\ln x, \text{ Base} = e$$

$$\log x, \text{ Base} = 10$$

To change from one Base to another:

$$\log_b x = (\log_a x) / (\log_a b)$$

e.g., $\ln x = (\log_{10} x) / (\log_{10} e) = 2.302585 (\log_{10} x)$

Identities

$$\log_b b^n = n$$

$$\log x^c = c \log x; x^c = \text{antilog}(c \log x)$$

$$\log xy = \log x + \log y$$

$$\log_b b = 1; \log 1 = 0$$

$$\log x/y = \log x - \log y$$

ALGEBRA OF COMPLEX NUMBERS

Complex numbers may be designated in rectangular form or polar form. In rectangular form, a complex number is written in terms of its real and imaginary components.

$$z = a + jb, \text{ where}$$

a = the real component,

b = the imaginary component, and

$$j = \sqrt{-1} \text{ (some disciplines use } i = \sqrt{-1}\text{)}$$

In polar form $z = c \angle \theta$ where

$$c = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2},$$

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}(b/a),$$

$$a = c \cos \theta, \text{ and}$$

$$b = c \sin \theta.$$

Complex numbers can be added and subtracted in rectangular form. If

$$z_1 = a_1 + jb_1 = c_1 (\cos \theta_1 + j \sin \theta_1)$$

$$= c_1 \angle \theta_1 \text{ and}$$

$$z_2 = a_2 + jb_2 = c_2 (\cos \theta_2 + j \sin \theta_2)$$

$$= c_2 \angle \theta_2, \text{ then}$$

$$z_1 + z_2 = (a_1 + a_2) + j(b_1 + b_2) \text{ and}$$

$$z_1 - z_2 = (a_1 - a_2) + j(b_1 - b_2)$$

While complex numbers can be multiplied or divided in rectangular form, it is more convenient to perform these operations in polar form.

$$z_1 \times z_2 = (c_1 \times c_2) \angle (\theta_1 + \theta_2)$$

$$z_1 / z_2 = (c_1 / c_2) \angle (\theta_1 - \theta_2)$$

The complex conjugate of a complex number $z_1 = (a_1 + jb_1)$ is defined as $z_1^* = (a_1 - jb_1)$. The product of a complex number and its complex conjugate is $z_1 z_1^* = a_1^2 + b_1^2$.

Polar Coordinate System

$$x = r \cos \theta; y = r \sin \theta; \theta = \arctan(y/x)$$

$$r = |x + jy| = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$$

$$x + jy = r (\cos \theta + j \sin \theta) = r e^{j\theta}$$

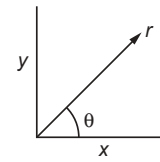
$$[r_1 (\cos \theta_1 + j \sin \theta_1)] [r_2 (\cos \theta_2 + j \sin \theta_2)] =$$

$$r_1 r_2 [\cos(\theta_1 + \theta_2) + j \sin(\theta_1 + \theta_2)]$$

$$(x + jy)^n = [r (\cos \theta + j \sin \theta)]^n$$

$$= r^n (\cos n\theta + j \sin n\theta)$$

$$\frac{r_1 (\cos \theta_1 + j \sin \theta_1)}{r_2 (\cos \theta_2 + j \sin \theta_2)} = \frac{r_1}{r_2} [\cos(\theta_1 - \theta_2) + j \sin(\theta_1 - \theta_2)]$$



Euler's Identity

$$e^{j\theta} = \cos \theta + j \sin \theta$$

$$e^{-j\theta} = \cos \theta - j \sin \theta$$

$$\cos \theta = \frac{e^{j\theta} + e^{-j\theta}}{2}, \quad \sin \theta = \frac{e^{j\theta} - e^{-j\theta}}{2j}$$

Roots

If k is any positive integer, any complex number (other than zero) has k distinct roots. The k roots of $r (\cos \theta + j \sin \theta)$ can be found by substituting successively $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, (k - 1)$ in the formula

$$w = \sqrt[k]{r} \left[\cos \left(\frac{\theta}{k} + n \frac{360^\circ}{k} \right) + j \sin \left(\frac{\theta}{k} + n \frac{360^\circ}{k} \right) \right]$$

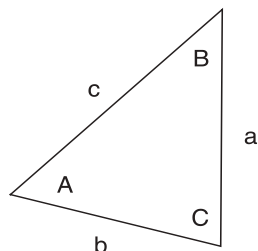
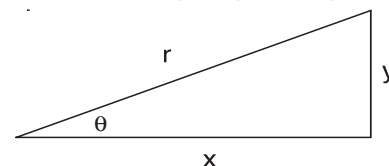
TRIGONOMETRY

Trigonometric functions are defined using a right triangle.

$$\sin \theta = y/r, \quad \cos \theta = x/r$$

$$\tan \theta = y/x, \quad \cot \theta = x/y$$

$$\csc \theta = r/y, \quad \sec \theta = r/x$$



Law of Sines

$$\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C}$$

Law of Cosines

$$a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc \cos A$$

$$b^2 = a^2 + c^2 - 2ac \cos B$$

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C$$

Brink, R.W., *A First Year of College Mathematics*, D. Appleton-Century Co., Inc., Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1937.

Identities

$$\cos \theta = \sin (\theta + \pi/2) = -\sin (\theta - \pi/2)$$

$$\sin \theta = \cos (\theta - \pi/2) = -\cos (\theta + \pi/2)$$

$$\csc \theta = 1/\sin \theta$$

$$\sec \theta = 1/\cos \theta$$

$$\tan \theta = \sin \theta/\cos \theta$$

$$\cot \theta = 1/\tan \theta$$

$$\sin^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta = 1$$

$$\tan^2 \theta + 1 = \sec^2 \theta$$

$$\cot^2 \theta + 1 = \csc^2 \theta$$

$$\sin (\alpha + \beta) = \sin \alpha \cos \beta + \cos \alpha \sin \beta$$

$$\cos (\alpha + \beta) = \cos \alpha \cos \beta - \sin \alpha \sin \beta$$

$$\sin 2\alpha = 2 \sin \alpha \cos \alpha$$

$$\cos 2\alpha = \cos^2 \alpha - \sin^2 \alpha = 1 - 2 \sin^2 \alpha = 2 \cos^2 \alpha - 1$$

$$\tan 2\alpha = (2 \tan \alpha)/(1 - \tan^2 \alpha)$$

$$\cot 2\alpha = (\cot^2 \alpha - 1)/(2 \cot \alpha)$$

$$\tan (\alpha + \beta) = (\tan \alpha + \tan \beta)/(1 - \tan \alpha \tan \beta)$$

$$\cot (\alpha + \beta) = (\cot \alpha \cot \beta - 1)/(\cot \alpha + \cot \beta)$$

$$\sin (\alpha - \beta) = \sin \alpha \cos \beta - \cos \alpha \sin \beta$$

$$\cos (\alpha - \beta) = \cos \alpha \cos \beta + \sin \alpha \sin \beta$$

$$\tan (\alpha - \beta) = (\tan \alpha - \tan \beta)/(1 + \tan \alpha \tan \beta)$$

$$\cot (\alpha - \beta) = (\cot \alpha \cot \beta + 1)/(\cot \beta - \cot \alpha)$$

$$\sin (\alpha/2) = \pm \sqrt{(1 - \cos \alpha)/2}$$

$$\cos (\alpha/2) = \pm \sqrt{(1 + \cos \alpha)/2}$$

$$\tan (\alpha/2) = \pm \sqrt{(1 - \cos \alpha)/(1 + \cos \alpha)}$$

$$\cot (\alpha/2) = \pm \sqrt{(1 + \cos \alpha)/(1 - \cos \alpha)}$$

$$\sin \alpha \sin \beta = (1/2)[\cos (\alpha - \beta) - \cos (\alpha + \beta)]$$

$$\cos \alpha \cos \beta = (1/2)[\cos (\alpha - \beta) + \cos (\alpha + \beta)]$$

$$\sin \alpha \cos \beta = (1/2)[\sin (\alpha + \beta) + \sin (\alpha - \beta)]$$

$$\sin \alpha + \sin \beta = 2 \sin [(1/2)(\alpha + \beta)] \cos [(1/2)(\alpha - \beta)]$$

$$\sin \alpha - \sin \beta = 2 \cos [(1/2)(\alpha + \beta)] \sin [(1/2)(\alpha - \beta)]$$

$$\cos \alpha + \cos \beta = 2 \cos [(1/2)(\alpha + \beta)] \cos [(1/2)(\alpha - \beta)]$$

$$\cos \alpha - \cos \beta = -2 \sin [(1/2)(\alpha + \beta)] \sin [(1/2)(\alpha - \beta)]$$

MENSURATION OF AREAS AND VOLUMES

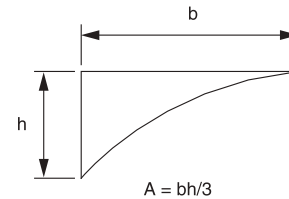
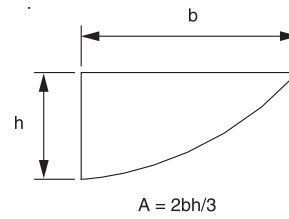
Nomenclature

A = total surface area

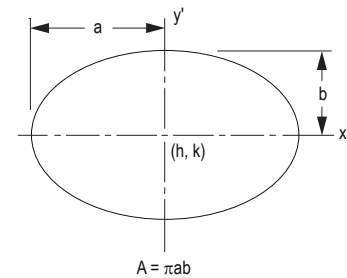
P = perimeter

V = volume

Parabola



Ellipse



$$P_{approx} = 2\pi \sqrt{(a^2 + b^2)/2}$$

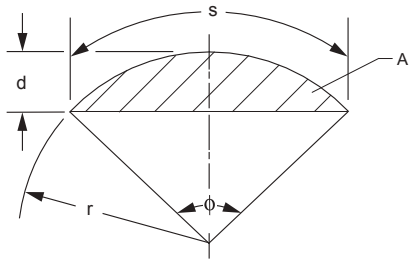
$$P = \pi(a + b) \left[1 + (1/2)^2 \lambda^2 + (1/2 \times 1/4)^2 \lambda^4 + (1/2 \times 1/4 \times 3/6)^2 \lambda^6 + (1/2 \times 1/4 \times 3/6 \times 5/8)^2 \lambda^8 + (1/2 \times 1/4 \times 3/6 \times 5/8 \times 7/10)^2 \lambda^{10} + \dots \right]$$

where

$$\lambda = (a - b)/(a + b)$$

Gieck, K., and R. Gieck, *Engineering Formulas*, 6th ed., Gieck Publishing, 1967.

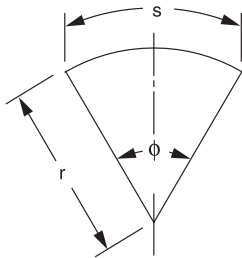
Circular Segment



$$A = [r^2(\phi - \sin \phi)]/2$$

$$\phi = s/r = 2\{\arccos[(r - d)/r]\}$$

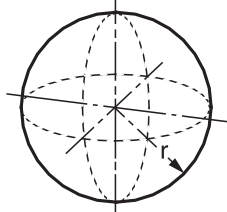
Circular Sector



$$A = \phi r^2/2 = sr/2$$

$$\phi = s/r$$

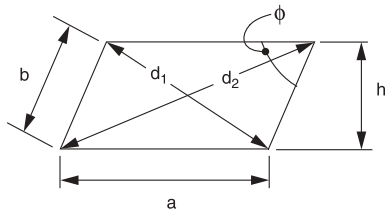
Sphere



$$V = 4\pi r^3/3 = \pi d^3/6$$

$$A = 4\pi r^2 = \pi d^2$$

Parallelogram



$$P = 2(a + b)$$

$$d_1 = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 - 2ab(\cos \phi)}$$

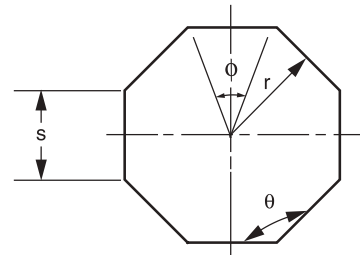
$$d_2 = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + 2ab(\cos \phi)}$$

$$d_1^2 + d_2^2 = 2(a^2 + b^2)$$

$$A = ah = ab(\sin \phi)$$

If $a = b$, the parallelogram is a rhombus.

Regular Polygon (n equal sides)



$$\phi = 2\pi/n$$

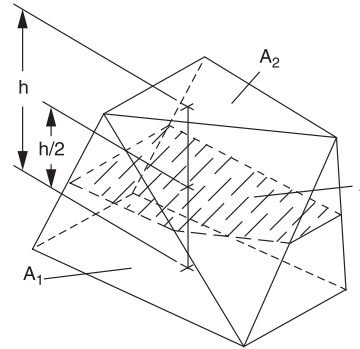
$$\theta = \left[\frac{\pi(n-2)}{n}\right] = \pi\left(1 - \frac{2}{n}\right)$$

$$P = ns$$

$$s = 2r[\tan(\phi/2)]$$

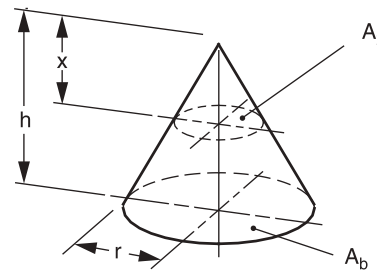
$$A = (nsr)/2$$

Prismoid



$$V = (h/6)(A_1 + A_2 + 4A)$$

Right Circular Cone



$$V = (\pi r^2 h)/3$$

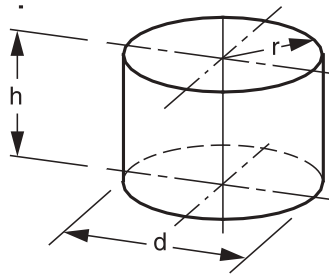
$$A = \text{side area} + \text{base area}$$

$$= \pi r(r + \sqrt{r^2 + h^2})$$

$$A_x : A_b = x^2 : h^2$$

◆ Gieck, K., and R. Gieck, *Engineering Formulas*, 6th ed., Gieck Publishing, 1967.

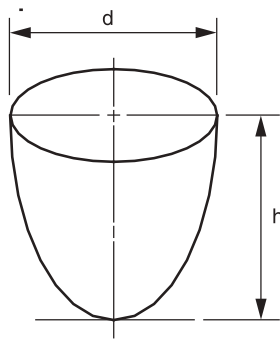
Right Circular Cylinder



$$V = \pi r^2 h = \frac{\pi d^2 h}{4}$$

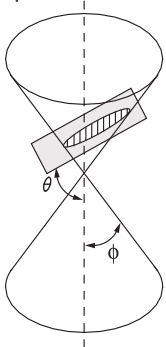
$$A = \text{side area} + \text{end areas} = 2\pi r(h + r)$$

Paraboloid of Revolution



$$V = \frac{\pi d^2 h}{8}$$

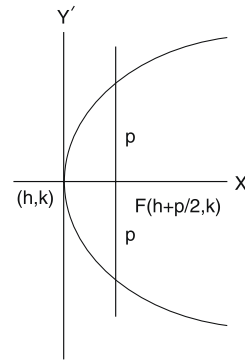
CONIC SECTIONS



$$e = \text{eccentricity} = \cos \theta / (\cos \phi)$$

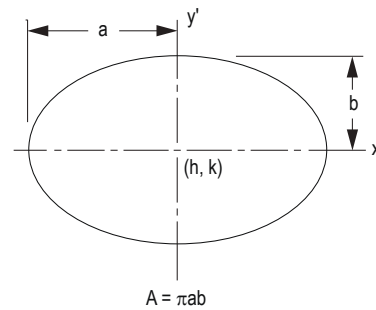
[Note: X' and Y' , in the following cases, are translated axes.]

Case 1. Parabola $e = 1$:



$(y - k)^2 = 2p(x - h)$; Center at (h, k)
 is the standard form of the equation. When $h = k = 0$,
 Focus: $(p/2, 0)$; Directrix: $x = -p/2$

Case 2. Ellipse $e < 1$:



$$\frac{(x - h)^2}{a^2} + \frac{(y - k)^2}{b^2} = 1; \text{ Center at } (h, k)$$

is the standard form of the equation. When $h = k = 0$,

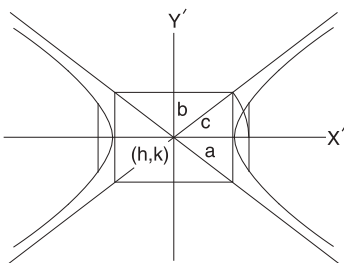
$$\text{Eccentricity: } e = \sqrt{1 - (b^2/a^2)} = c/a$$

$$b = a\sqrt{1 - e^2};$$

$$\text{Focus: } (\pm ae, 0); \text{ Directrix: } x = \pm a/e$$

- ◆ Gieck, K., and R. Gieck, *Engineering Formulas*, 6th ed., Gieck Publishing, 1967.
- Brink, R.W., *A First Year of College Mathematics*, D. Appleton-Century Co., Inc., 1937.

Case 3. Hyperbola $e > 1$:



$$\frac{(x - h)^2}{a^2} - \frac{(y - k)^2}{b^2} = 1; \text{ Center at } (h, k)$$

is the standard form of the equation. When $h = k = 0$,

$$\text{Eccentricity: } e = \sqrt{1 + (b^2/a^2)} = c/a$$

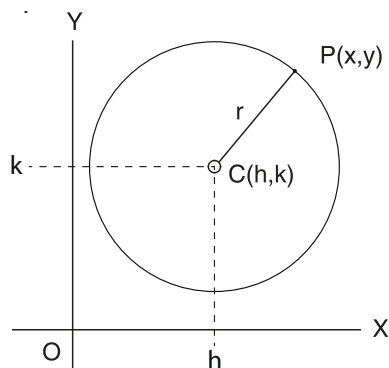
$$b = a\sqrt{e^2 - 1};$$

$$\text{Focus: } (\pm ae, 0); \text{ Directrix: } x = \pm a/e$$

Case 4. Circle $e = 0$:

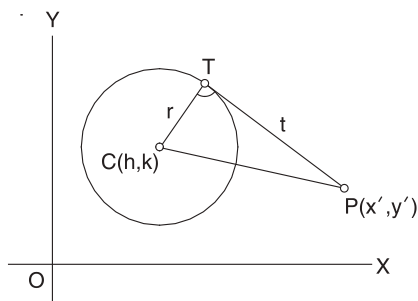
$(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = r^2$; Center at (h, k) is the standard form of the equation with radius

$$r = \sqrt{(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2}$$



Length of the tangent line from a point on a circle to a point (x', y') :

$$t^2 = (x' - h)^2 + (y' - k)^2 - r^2$$



• Brink, R.W., *A First Year of College Mathematics*, D. Appleton-Century Co., Inc., 1937.

Conic Section Equation

The general form of the conic section equation is

$$Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0$$

where not both A and C are zero.

If $B^2 - 4AC < 0$, an *ellipse* is defined.

If $B^2 - 4AC > 0$, a *hyperbola* is defined.

If $B^2 - 4AC = 0$, the conic is a *parabola*.

If $A = C$ and $B = 0$, a *circle* is defined.

If $A = B = C = 0$, a *straight line* is defined.

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2ax + 2by + c = 0$$

is the normal form of the conic section equation, if that conic section has a principal axis parallel to a coordinate axis.

$$h = -a; k = -b$$

$$r = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 - c}$$

If $a^2 + b^2 - c$ is positive, a *circle*, center $(-a, -b)$.

If $a^2 + b^2 - c$ equals zero, a *point* at $(-a, -b)$.

If $a^2 + b^2 - c$ is negative, locus is *imaginary*.

DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS

The Derivative

For any function $y = f(x)$,

the derivative = $D_x y = dy/dx = y'$

$$y' = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} [(\Delta y)/(\Delta x)]$$

$$= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \{ [f(x + \Delta x) - f(x)]/(\Delta x) \}$$

y' = the slope of the curve $f(x)$.

Test for a Maximum

$y = f(x)$ is a maximum for
 $x = a$, if $f'(a) = 0$ and $f''(a) < 0$.

Test for a Minimum

$y = f(x)$ is a minimum for
 $x = a$, if $f'(a) = 0$ and $f''(a) > 0$.

Test for a Point of Inflection

$y = f(x)$ has a point of inflection at $x = a$,
if $f''(a) = 0$, and
if $f''(x)$ changes sign as x increases through
 $x = a$.

The Partial Derivative

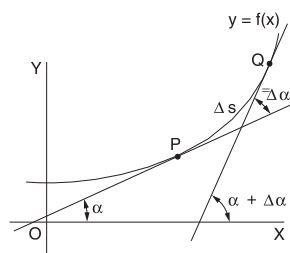
In a function of two independent variables x and y , a derivative with respect to one of the variables may be found if the other variable is *assumed* to remain constant. If y is kept *fixed*, the function

$$z = f(x, y)$$

becomes a function of the *single variable* x , and its derivative (if it exists) can be found. This derivative is called the *partial derivative of z with respect to x* . The partial derivative with respect to x is denoted as follows:

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial f(x, y)}{\partial x}$$

The Curvature of Any Curve



The curvature K of a curve at P is the limit of its average curvature for the arc PQ as Q approaches P . This is also expressed as: the curvature of a curve at a given point is the rate-of-change of its inclination with respect to its arc length.

$$K = \lim_{\Delta s \rightarrow 0} \frac{\Delta \alpha}{\Delta s} = \frac{d\alpha}{ds}$$

Curvature in Rectangular Coordinates

$$K = \frac{y''}{[1 + (y')^2]^{3/2}}$$

When it may be easier to differentiate the function with respect to y rather than x , the notation x' will be used for the derivative.

$$x' = dx/dy$$

$$K = \frac{-x''}{[1 + (x')^2]^{3/2}}$$

The Radius of Curvature

The *radius of curvature* R at any point on a curve is defined as the absolute value of the reciprocal of the curvature K at that point.

$$R = \frac{1}{|K|} \quad (K \neq 0)$$

$$R = \left| \frac{[1 + (y')^2]^{3/2}}{y''} \right| \quad (y'' \neq 0)$$

L'Hospital's Rule (L'Hôpital's Rule)

If the fractional function $f(x)/g(x)$ assumes one of the indeterminate forms $0/0$ or ∞/∞ (where α is finite or infinite), then

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \alpha} f(x)/g(x)$$

is equal to the first of the expressions

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \alpha} \frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)}, \lim_{x \rightarrow \alpha} \frac{f''(x)}{g''(x)}, \lim_{x \rightarrow \alpha} \frac{f'''(x)}{g'''(x)}$$

which is not indeterminate, provided such first indicated limit exists.

INTEGRAL CALCULUS

The definite integral is defined as:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{i=1}^n f(x_i) \Delta x_i = \int_a^b f(x) dx$$

Also, $\Delta x_i \rightarrow 0$ for all i .

A table of derivatives and integrals is available in the Derivatives and Indefinite Integrals section. The integral equations can be used along with the following methods of integration:

- A. Integration by Parts (integral equation #6),
- B. Integration by Substitution, and
- C. Separation of Rational Fractions into Partial Fractions.

◆ Wade, Thomas L., *Calculus*, Ginn & Company/Simon & Schuster Publishers, 1953.

DERIVATIVES AND INDEFINITE INTEGRALS

In these formulas, u , v , and w represent functions of x . Also, a , c , and n represent constants. All arguments of the trigonometric functions are in radians. A constant of integration should be added to the integrals. To avoid terminology difficulty, the following definitions are followed: $\arcsin u = \sin^{-1} u$, $(\sin u)^{-1} = 1/\sin u$.

1. $dc/dx = 0$
2. $dx/dx = 1$
3. $d(cu)/dx = c du/dx$
4. $d(u + v - w)/dx = du/dx + dv/dx - dw/dx$
5. $d(uv)/dx = u dv/dx + v du/dx$
6. $d(uvw)/dx = uv dw/dx + uw dv/dx + vw du/dx$
7. $\frac{d(u/v)}{dx} = \frac{v du/dx - u dv/dx}{v^2}$
8. $d(u^n)/dx = nu^{n-1} du/dx$
9. $d[f(u)]/dx = \{d[f(u)]/du\} du/dx$
10. $du/dx = 1/(dx/du)$
11. $\frac{d(\log_a u)}{dx} = (\log_a e) \frac{1}{u} \frac{du}{dx}$
12. $\frac{d(\ln u)}{dx} = \frac{1}{u} \frac{du}{dx}$
13. $\frac{d(a^u)}{dx} = (\ln a) a^u \frac{du}{dx}$
14. $d(e^u)/dx = e^u du/dx$
15. $d(u^v)/dx = vu^{v-1} du/dx + (\ln u) u^v dv/dx$
16. $d(\sin u)/dx = \cos u du/dx$
17. $d(\cos u)/dx = -\sin u du/dx$
18. $d(\tan u)/dx = \sec^2 u du/dx$
19. $d(\cot u)/dx = -\csc^2 u du/dx$
20. $d(\sec u)/dx = \sec u \tan u du/dx$
21. $d(\csc u)/dx = -\csc u \cot u du/dx$
22. $\frac{d(\sin^{-1} u)}{dx} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-u^2}} \frac{du}{dx} \quad (-\pi/2 \leq \sin^{-1} u \leq \pi/2)$
23. $\frac{d(\cos^{-1} u)}{dx} = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-u^2}} \frac{du}{dx} \quad (0 \leq \cos^{-1} u \leq \pi)$
24. $\frac{d(\tan^{-1} u)}{dx} = \frac{1}{1+u^2} \frac{du}{dx} \quad (-\pi/2 < \tan^{-1} u < \pi/2)$
25. $\frac{d(\cot^{-1} u)}{dx} = -\frac{1}{1+u^2} \frac{du}{dx} \quad (0 < \cot^{-1} u < \pi)$
26. $\frac{d(\sec^{-1} u)}{dx} = \frac{1}{u\sqrt{u^2-1}} \frac{du}{dx}$
 $(0 < \sec^{-1} u < \pi/2) (-\pi \leq \sec^{-1} u < -\pi/2)$
27. $\frac{d(\csc^{-1} u)}{dx} = -\frac{1}{u\sqrt{u^2-1}} \frac{du}{dx}$
 $(0 < \csc^{-1} u \leq \pi/2) (-\pi < \csc^{-1} u \leq -\pi/2)$
1. $\int df(x) = f(x)$
2. $\int dx = x$
3. $\int a f(x) dx = a \int f(x) dx$
4. $\int [u(x) \pm v(x)] dx = \int u(x) dx \pm \int v(x) dx$
5. $\int x^m dx = \frac{x^{m+1}}{m+1} \quad (m \neq -1)$
6. $\int u(x) dv(x) = u(x)v(x) - \int v(x) du(x)$
7. $\int \frac{dx}{ax+b} = \frac{1}{a} \ln|ax+b|$
8. $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x}} = 2\sqrt{x}$
9. $\int a^x dx = \frac{a^x}{\ln a}$
10. $\int \sin x dx = -\cos x$
11. $\int \cos x dx = \sin x$
12. $\int \sin^2 x dx = \frac{x}{2} - \frac{\sin 2x}{4}$
13. $\int \cos^2 x dx = \frac{x}{2} + \frac{\sin 2x}{4}$
14. $\int x \sin x dx = \sin x - x \cos x$
15. $\int x \cos x dx = \cos x + x \sin x$
16. $\int \sin x \cos x dx = (\sin^2 x)/2$
17. $\int \sin ax \cos bx dx = -\frac{\cos(a-b)x}{2(a-b)} - \frac{\cos(a+b)x}{2(a+b)} \quad (a^2 \neq b^2)$
18. $\int \tan x dx = -\ln|\cos x| = \ln|\sec x|$
19. $\int \cot x dx = -\ln|\csc x| = \ln|\sin x|$
20. $\int \tan^2 x dx = \tan x - x$
21. $\int \cot^2 x dx = -\cot x - x$
22. $\int e^{ax} dx = (1/a) e^{ax}$
23. $\int x e^{ax} dx = (e^{ax}/a^2)(ax-1)$
24. $\int \ln x dx = x[\ln(x)-1] \quad (x > 0)$
25. $\int \frac{dx}{a^2+x^2} = \frac{1}{a} \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{a} \quad (a \neq 0)$
26. $\int \frac{dx}{ax^2+c} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{ac}} \tan^{-1} \left(x \sqrt{\frac{a}{c}} \right), \quad (a > 0, c > 0)$
- 27a. $\int \frac{dx}{ax^2+bx+c} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{4ac-b^2}} \tan^{-1} \frac{2ax+b}{\sqrt{4ac-b^2}}$
 $(4ac-b^2 > 0)$
- 27b. $\int \frac{dx}{ax^2+bx+c} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{b^2-4ac}} \ln \left| \frac{2ax+b-\sqrt{b^2-4ac}}{2ax+b+\sqrt{b^2-4ac}} \right|$
 $(b^2-4ac > 0)$
- 27c. $\int \frac{dx}{ax^2+bx+c} = -\frac{2}{2ax+b}, \quad (b^2-4ac = 0)$

CENTROIDS AND MOMENTS OF INERTIA

The *location of the centroid of an area*, bounded by the axes and the function $y = f(x)$, can be found by integration.

$$x_c = \frac{\int x dA}{A}$$

$$y_c = \frac{\int y dA}{A}$$

$$A = \int f(x) dx$$

$$dA = f(x) dx = g(y) dy$$

The *first moment of area* with respect to the y -axis and the x -axis, respectively, are:

$$M_y = \int x dA = x_c A$$

$$M_x = \int y dA = y_c A$$

The *moment of inertia (second moment of area)* with respect to the y -axis and the x -axis, respectively, are:

$$I_y = \int x^2 dA$$

$$I_x = \int y^2 dA$$

The moment of inertia taken with respect to an axis passing through the area's centroid is the *centroidal moment of inertia*. The *parallel axis theorem* for the moment of inertia with respect to another axis parallel with and located d units from the centroidal axis is expressed by

$$I_{\text{parallel axis}} = I_c + Ad^2$$

In a plane, $J = \int r^2 dA = I_x + I_y$

PROGRESSIONS AND SERIES

Arithmetic Progression

To determine whether a given finite sequence of numbers is an arithmetic progression, subtract each number from the following number. If the differences are equal, the series is arithmetic.

1. The first term is a .
2. The common difference is d .
3. The number of terms is n .
4. The last or n th term is l .
5. The sum of n terms is S .

$$l = a + (n - 1)d$$

$$S = n(a + l)/2 = n [2a + (n - 1) d]/2$$

Geometric Progression

To determine whether a given finite sequence is a geometric progression (G.P.), divide each number after the first by the preceding number. If the quotients are equal, the series is geometric:

1. The first term is a .
2. The common ratio is r .
3. The number of terms is n .
4. The last or n th term is l .
5. The sum of n terms is S .

$$l = ar^{n-1}$$

$$S = a(1 - r^n)/(1 - r); r \neq 1$$

$$S = (a - rl)/(1 - r); r \neq 1$$

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} S_n = a/(1 - r); r < 1$$

A G.P. converges if $|r| < 1$ and it diverges if $|r| > 1$.

Properties of Series

$$\sum_{i=1}^n c = nc; \quad c = \text{constant}$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^n cx_i = c \sum_{i=1}^n x_i$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^n (x_i + y_i - z_i) = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i + \sum_{i=1}^n y_i - \sum_{i=1}^n z_i$$

$$\sum_{x=1}^n x = (n + n^2)/2$$

$$\prod_{i=1}^n x_i = x_1 x_2 x_3 \dots x_n$$

Power Series

$$\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_i (x - a)^i$$

1. A power series, which is convergent in the interval $-R < x < R$, defines a function of x that is continuous for all values of x within the interval and is said to represent the function in that interval.
2. A power series may be differentiated term by term within its interval of convergence. The resulting series has the same interval of convergence as the original series (except possibly at the end points of the series).
3. A power series may be integrated term by term provided the limits of integration are within the interval of convergence of the series.
4. Two power series may be added, subtracted, or multiplied, and the resulting series in each case is convergent, at least, in the interval common to the two series.
5. Using the process of long division (as for polynomials), two power series may be divided one by the other within their common interval of convergence.

Taylor's Series

$$f(x) = f(a) + \frac{f'(a)}{1!}(x - a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(x - a)^2 + \dots + \frac{f^{(n)}(a)}{n!}(x - a)^n + \dots$$

is called *Taylor's series*, and the function $f(x)$ is said to be expanded about the point a in a Taylor's series.

If $a = 0$, the Taylor's series equation becomes a *Maclaurin's series*.

DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

A common class of ordinary linear differential equations is

$$b_n \frac{d^n y(x)}{dx^n} + \dots + b_1 \frac{dy(x)}{dx} + b_0 y(x) = f(x)$$

where b_n, \dots, b_1, b_0 are constants.

When the equation is a homogeneous differential equation, $f(x) = 0$, the solution is

$$y_h(x) = C_1 e^{r_1 x} + C_2 e^{r_2 x} + \dots + C_i e^{r_i x} + \dots + C_n e^{r_n x}$$

where r_n is the n th distinct root of the characteristic polynomial $P(x)$ with

$$P(r) = b_n r^n + b_{n-1} r^{n-1} + \dots + b_1 r + b_0$$

If the root $r_1 = r_2$, then $C_2 e^{r_2 x}$ is replaced with $C_2 x e^{r_1 x}$.

Higher orders of multiplicity imply higher powers of x . The complete solution for the differential equation is

$$y(x) = y_h(x) + y_p(x),$$

where $y_p(x)$ is any particular solution with $f(x)$ present. If $f(x)$ has $e^{r_n x}$ terms, then resonance is manifested. Furthermore, specific $f(x)$ forms result in specific $y_p(x)$ forms, some of which are:

| $f(x)$ | $y_p(x)$ |
|---|---|
| A | B |
| $Ae^{\alpha x}$ | $Be^{\alpha x}$, $\alpha \neq r_n$ |
| $A_1 \sin \omega x + A_2 \cos \omega x$ | $B_1 \sin \omega x + B_2 \cos \omega x$ |

If the independent variable is time t , then transient dynamic solutions are implied.

First-Order Linear Homogeneous Differential Equations with Constant Coefficients

$$y' + ay = 0, \text{ where } a \text{ is a real constant:}$$

$$\text{Solution, } y = Ce^{-at}$$

where C = a constant that satisfies the initial conditions.

First-Order Linear Nonhomogeneous Differential Equations

$$\tau \frac{dy}{dt} + y = Kx(t) \quad x(t) = \begin{cases} A & t < 0 \\ B & t > 0 \end{cases}$$

$$y(0) = KA$$

τ is the time constant

K is the gain

The solution is

$$y(t) = KA + (KB - KA) \left(1 - \exp\left(\frac{-t}{\tau}\right) \right) \text{ or}$$

$$\frac{t}{\tau} = \ln \left[\frac{KB - KA}{KB - y} \right]$$

Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Differential Equations with Constant Coefficients

An equation of the form

$$y'' + ay' + by = 0$$

can be solved by the method of undetermined coefficients

where a solution of the form $y = Ce^{rx}$ is sought. Substitution of this solution gives

$$(r^2 + ar + b) Ce^{rx} = 0$$

and since Ce^{rx} cannot be zero, the characteristic equation must vanish or

$$r^2 + ar + b = 0$$

The roots of the characteristic equation are

$$r_{1,2} = \frac{-a \pm \sqrt{a^2 - 4b}}{2}$$

and can be real and distinct for $a^2 > 4b$, real and equal for $a^2 = 4b$, and complex for $a^2 < 4b$.

If $a^2 > 4b$, the solution is of the form (overdamped)

$$y = C_1 e^{r_1 x} + C_2 e^{r_2 x}$$

If $a^2 = 4b$, the solution is of the form (critically damped)

$$y = (C_1 + C_2 x) e^{r_1 x}$$

If $a^2 < 4b$, the solution is of the form (underdamped)

$$y = e^{\alpha x} (C_1 \cos \beta x + C_2 \sin \beta x), \text{ where}$$

$$\alpha = -a/2$$

$$\beta = \frac{\sqrt{4b - a^2}}{2}$$

FOURIER TRANSFORM

The Fourier transform pair, one form of which is

$$F(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

$$f(t) = [1/(2\pi)] \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega$$

can be used to characterize a broad class of signal models in terms of their frequency or spectral content. Some useful transform pairs are:

| $f(t)$ | $F(\omega)$ |
|---|--|
| $\delta(t)$ | 1 |
| $u(t)$ | $\pi \delta(\omega) + 1/j\omega$ |
| $u\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) - u\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) = r_{rect} \frac{t}{\tau}$ | $\tau \frac{\sin(\omega\tau/2)}{\omega\tau/2}$ |
| $e^{j\omega_0 t}$ | $2\pi \delta(\omega - \omega_0)$ |

Some mathematical liberties are required to obtain the second and fourth form. Other Fourier transforms are derivable from the Laplace transform by replacing s with $j\omega$ provided

$$f(t) = 0, t < 0$$

$$\int_0^{\infty} |f(t)| dt < \infty$$

FOURIER SERIES

Every periodic function $f(t)$ which has the period $T = 2\pi/\omega_0$ and has certain continuity conditions can be represented by a series plus a constant

$$f(t) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} [a_n \cos(n\omega_0 t) + b_n \sin(n\omega_0 t)]$$

The above holds if $f(t)$ has a continuous derivative $f'(t)$ for all t . It should be noted that the various sinusoids present in the series are orthogonal on the interval 0 to T and as a result the coefficients are given by

$$a_0 = (1/T) \int_0^T f(t) dt$$

$$a_n = (2/T) \int_0^T f(t) \cos(n\omega_0 t) dt \quad n = 1, 2, \dots$$

$$b_n = (2/T) \int_0^T f(t) \sin(n\omega_0 t) dt \quad n = 1, 2, \dots$$

The constants a_n and b_n are the *Fourier coefficients* of $f(t)$ for the interval 0 to T and the corresponding series is called the *Fourier series of $f(t)$* over the same interval.

The integrals have the same value when evaluated over any interval of length T .

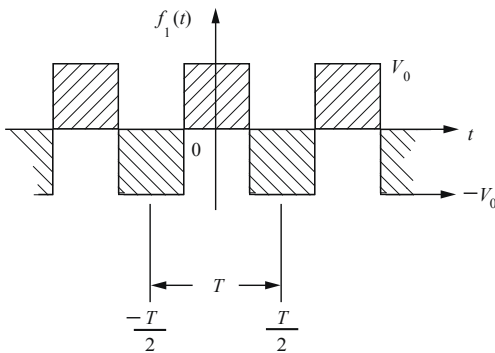
If a Fourier series representing a periodic function is truncated after term $n = N$ the mean square value F_N^2 of the truncated series is given by Parseval's relation. This relation says that the mean-square value is the sum of the mean-square values of the Fourier components, or

$$F_N^2 = a_0^2 + (1/2) \sum_{n=1}^N (a_n^2 + b_n^2)$$

and the RMS value is then defined to be the square root of this quantity or F_N .

Three useful and common Fourier series forms are defined in terms of the following graphs (with $\omega_0 = 2\pi/T$).

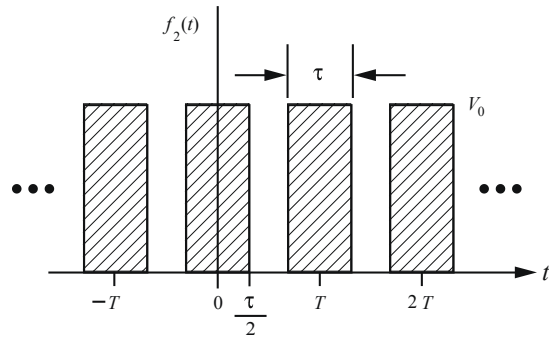
Given:



then

$$f_1(t) = \sum_{\substack{n=1 \\ (n \text{ odd})}}^{\infty} (-1)^{(n-1)/2} (4V_0/n\pi) \cos(n\omega_0 t)$$

Given:

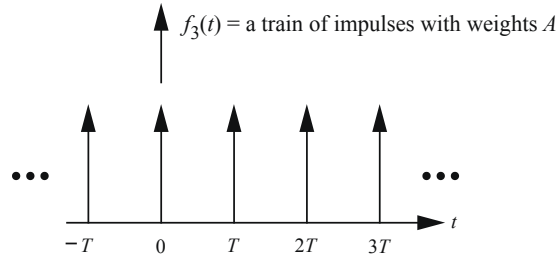


then

$$f_2(t) = \frac{V_0 \tau}{T} + \frac{2V_0 \tau}{T} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sin(n\pi\tau/T)}{(n\pi\tau/T)} \cos(n\omega_0 t)$$

$$f_2(t) = \frac{V_0 \tau}{T} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\sin(n\pi\tau/T)}{(n\pi\tau/T)} e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

Given:



then

$$f_3(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} A \delta(t - nT)$$

$$f_3(t) = (A/T) + (2A/T) \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \cos(n\omega_0 t)$$

$$f_3(t) = (A/T) \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

The Fourier Transform and its Inverse

$$X(f) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} x(t) e^{-j2\pi ft} dt$$

$$x(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} X(f) e^{j2\pi ft} df$$

We say that $x(t)$ and $X(f)$ form a *Fourier transform pair*:

$$x(t) \leftrightarrow X(f)$$

Fourier Transform Pairs

| | |
|---|---|
| $x(t)$ | $X(f)$ |
| 1 | $\delta(f)$ |
| $\delta(t)$ | 1 |
| $u(t)$ | $\frac{1}{2}\delta(f) + \frac{1}{j2\pi f}$ |
| $\Pi(t/\tau)$ | $\tau \operatorname{sinc}(\tau f)$ |
| $\operatorname{sinc}(Bt)$ | $\frac{1}{B}\Pi(f/B)$ |
| $\Lambda(t/\tau)$ | $\tau \operatorname{sinc}^2(\tau f)$ |
| $e^{-at}u(t)$ | $\frac{1}{a + j2\pi f} \quad a > 0$ |
| $te^{-at}u(t)$ | $\frac{1}{(a + j2\pi f)^2} \quad a > 0$ |
| $e^{-a t }$ | $\frac{2a}{a^2 + (2\pi f)^2} \quad a > 0$ |
| $e^{-(at)^2}$ | $\frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{a}e^{-(\pi f/a)^2}$ |
| $\cos(2\pi f_0 t + \theta)$ | $\frac{1}{2}[e^{j\theta}\delta(f - f_0) + e^{-j\theta}\delta(f + f_0)]$ |
| $\sin(2\pi f_0 t + \theta)$ | $\frac{1}{2j}[e^{j\theta}\delta(f - f_0) - e^{-j\theta}\delta(f + f_0)]$ |
| $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{n=+\infty} \delta(t - nT_s)$ | $f_s \sum_{k=-\infty}^{k=+\infty} \delta(f - kf_s) \quad f_s = \frac{1}{T_s}$ |

Fourier Transform Theorems

| | | |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| Linearity | $ax(t) + by(t)$ | $aX(f) + bY(f)$ |
| Scale change | $x(at)$ | $\frac{1}{ a }X\left(\frac{f}{a}\right)$ |
| Time reversal | $x(-t)$ | $X(-f)$ |
| Duality | $X(t)$ | $x(-f)$ |
| Time shift | $x(t - t_0)$ | $X(f)e^{-j2\pi f t_0}$ |
| Frequency shift | $x(t)e^{j2\pi f_0 t}$ | $X(f - f_0)$ |
| Modulation | $x(t)\cos 2\pi f_0 t$ | $\frac{1}{2}X(f - f_0) + \frac{1}{2}X(f + f_0)$ |
| Multiplication | $x(t)y(t)$ | $X(f) * Y(f)$ |
| Convolution | $x(t) * y(t)$ | $X(f)Y(f)$ |
| Differentiation | $\frac{d^n x(t)}{dt^n}$ | $(j2\pi f)^n X(f)$ |
| Integration | $\int_{-\infty}^t x(\lambda)d\lambda$ | $\frac{1}{j2\pi f}X(f) + \frac{1}{2}X(0)\delta(f)$ |

where:

$$\operatorname{sinc}(t) = \frac{\sin(\pi t)}{\pi t}$$

$$\Pi(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & |t| \leq \frac{1}{2} \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$\Lambda(t) = \begin{cases} 1 - |t|, & |t| \leq 1 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

LAPLACE TRANSFORMS

The unilateral Laplace transform pair

$$F(s) = \int_0^{\infty} f(t) e^{-st} dt$$

$$f(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{\sigma-j\infty}^{\sigma+j\infty} F(s) e^{st} dt$$

where $s = \sigma + j\omega$

represents a powerful tool for the transient and frequency response of linear time invariant systems. Some useful Laplace transform pairs are:

| $f(t)$ | $F(s)$ |
|--|---|
| $\delta(t)$, Impulse at $t = 0$ | 1 |
| $u(t)$, Step at $t = 0$ | $1/s$ |
| $t[u(t)]$, Ramp at $t = 0$ | $1/s^2$ |
| $e^{-\alpha t}$ | $1/(s + \alpha)$ |
| $te^{-\alpha t}$ | $1/(s + \alpha)^2$ |
| $e^{-\alpha t} \sin \beta t$ | $\beta / [(s + \alpha)^2 + \beta^2]$ |
| $e^{-\alpha t} \cos \beta t$ | $(s + \alpha) / [(s + \alpha)^2 + \beta^2]$ |
| $\frac{d^n f(t)}{dt^n}$ | $s^n F(s) - \sum_{m=0}^{n-1} s^{n-m-1} \frac{d^m f(0)}{dt^m}$ |
| $\int_0^t f(\tau) d\tau$ | $(1/s)F(s)$ |
| $\int_0^{\infty} x(t - \tau)h(\tau) d\tau$ | $H(s)X(s)$ |
| $f(t - \tau) u(t - \tau)$ | $e^{-\tau s} F(s)$ |
| $\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} f(t)$ | $\lim_{s \rightarrow 0} sF(s)$ |
| $\lim_{t \rightarrow 0} f(t)$ | $\lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} sF(s)$ |

The last two transforms represent the Final Value Theorem (F.V.T.) and Initial Value Theorem (I.V.T.), respectively. It is assumed that the limits exist.

MATRICES

A matrix is an ordered rectangular array of numbers with m rows and n columns. The element a_{ij} refers to row i and column j .

The rank of a matrix is equal to the number of rows that are linearly independent.

Multiplication of Two Matrices

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \\ E & F \end{bmatrix} \quad A_{3,2} \text{ is a 3-row, 2-column matrix}$$

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} H & I \\ J & K \end{bmatrix} \quad B_{2,2} \text{ is a 2-row, 2-column matrix}$$

In order for multiplication to be possible, the number of columns in A must equal the number of rows in B.

Multiplying matrix B by matrix A occurs as follows:

$$C = \begin{bmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \\ E & F \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} H & I \\ J & K \end{bmatrix}$$

$$C = \begin{bmatrix} (A \cdot H + B \cdot J) & (A \cdot I + B \cdot K) \\ (C \cdot H + D \cdot J) & (C \cdot I + D \cdot K) \\ (E \cdot H + F \cdot J) & (E \cdot I + F \cdot K) \end{bmatrix}$$

Matrix multiplication is not commutative.

Addition

$$\begin{bmatrix} A & B & C \\ D & E & F \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} G & H & I \\ J & K & L \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} A+G & B+H & C+I \\ D+J & E+K & F+L \end{bmatrix}$$

Identity Matrix

The matrix $\mathbf{I} = (a_{ij})$ is a square $n \times n$ matrix with 1's on the diagonal and 0's everywhere else.

Matrix Transpose

Rows become columns. Columns become rows.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} A & B & C \\ D & E & F \end{bmatrix} \quad A^T = \begin{bmatrix} A & D \\ B & E \\ C & F \end{bmatrix}$$

Inverse []⁻¹

The inverse \mathbf{B} of a square $n \times n$ matrix \mathbf{A} is

$$\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{A}^{-1} = \frac{\text{adj}(\mathbf{A})}{|\mathbf{A}|}, \text{ where}$$

$\text{adj}(\mathbf{A})$ = adjoint of \mathbf{A} (obtained by replacing \mathbf{A}^T elements with their cofactors) and $|\mathbf{A}|$ = determinant of \mathbf{A} .

$$[\mathbf{A}][\mathbf{A}]^{-1} = [\mathbf{A}]^{-1}[\mathbf{A}] = [\mathbf{I}] \text{ where } \mathbf{I} \text{ is the identity matrix.}$$

DETERMINANTS

A *determinant of order n* consists of n^2 numbers, called the *elements* of the determinant, arranged in n rows and n columns and enclosed by two vertical lines.

In any determinant, the *minor* of a given element is the determinant that remains after all of the elements are struck out that lie in the same row and in the same column as the given element. Consider an element which lies in the j th column and the i th row. The *cofactor* of this element is the value of the minor of the element (if $i + j$ is even), and it is the negative of the value of the minor of the element (if $i + j$ is odd).

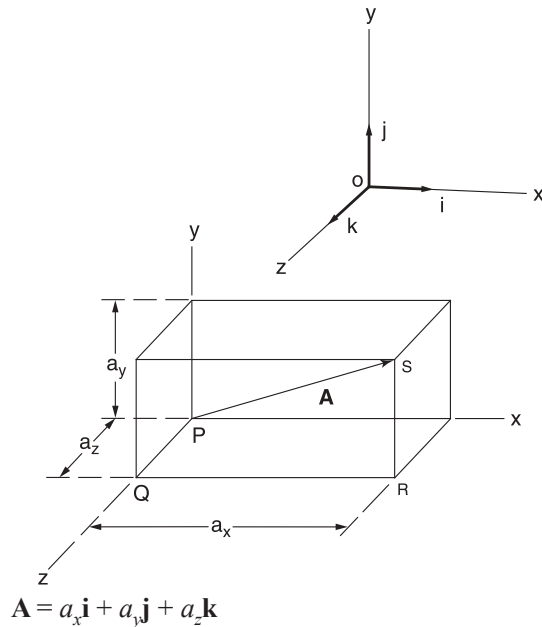
If n is greater than 1, the *value* of a determinant of order n is the sum of the n products formed by multiplying each element of some specified row (or column) by its cofactor. This sum is called the *expansion of the determinant* [according to the elements of the specified row (or column)]. For a second-order determinant:

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix} = a_1 b_2 - a_2 b_1$$

For a third-order determinant:

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = a_1 b_2 c_3 + a_2 b_3 c_1 + a_3 b_1 c_2 - a_3 b_2 c_1 - a_2 b_1 c_3 - a_1 b_3 c_2$$

VECTORS



Addition and subtraction:

$$\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} = (a_x + b_x)\mathbf{i} + (a_y + b_y)\mathbf{j} + (a_z + b_z)\mathbf{k}$$

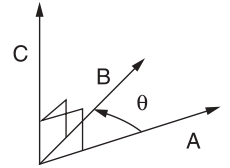
$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = (a_x - b_x)\mathbf{i} + (a_y - b_y)\mathbf{j} + (a_z - b_z)\mathbf{k}$$

The *dot product* is a *scalar product* and represents the projection of \mathbf{B} onto \mathbf{A} times $|\mathbf{A}|$. It is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} &= a_x b_x + a_y b_y + a_z b_z \\ &= |\mathbf{A}| |\mathbf{B}| \cos \theta = \mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{A} \end{aligned}$$

The *cross product* is a *vector product* of magnitude $|\mathbf{B}| |\mathbf{A}| \sin \theta$ which is perpendicular to the plane containing \mathbf{A} and \mathbf{B} . The product is

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ a_x & a_y & a_z \\ b_x & b_y & b_z \end{vmatrix} = -\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A}$$



The sense of $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}$ is determined by the right-hand rule.

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = |\mathbf{A}| |\mathbf{B}| \mathbf{n} \sin \theta, \text{ where}$$

\mathbf{n} = unit vector perpendicular to the plane of \mathbf{A} and \mathbf{B} .

Gradient, Divergence, and Curl

$$\nabla \phi = \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \mathbf{k} \right) \phi$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} = \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \mathbf{k} \right) \cdot (V_1 \mathbf{i} + V_2 \mathbf{j} + V_3 \mathbf{k})$$

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{V} = \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \mathbf{k} \right) \times (V_1 \mathbf{i} + V_2 \mathbf{j} + V_3 \mathbf{k})$$

The Laplacian of a scalar function ϕ is

$$\nabla^2 \phi = \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial z^2}$$

Identities

$$\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{A}; \mathbf{A} \cdot (\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}) = \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{C}$$

$$\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{A} = |\mathbf{A}|^2$$

$$\mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{k} = 1$$

$$\mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{i} = 0$$

If $\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$, then either $\mathbf{A} = 0$, $\mathbf{B} = 0$, or \mathbf{A} is perpendicular to \mathbf{B} .

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = -\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A}$$

$$\mathbf{A} \times (\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}) = (\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}) + (\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{C})$$

$$(\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}) \times \mathbf{A} = (\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A}) + (\mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{A})$$

$$\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{k} = 0$$

$$\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{k} = -\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{i}; \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{i} = -\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{j}$$

$$\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j} = -\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{k}$$

If $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = 0$, then either $\mathbf{A} = 0$, $\mathbf{B} = 0$, or \mathbf{A} is parallel to \mathbf{B} .

$$\nabla^2 \phi = \nabla \cdot (\nabla \phi) = (\nabla \cdot \nabla) \phi$$

$$\nabla \times \nabla \phi = 0$$

$$\nabla \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{A}) = 0$$

$$\nabla \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{A}) = \nabla(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{A}) - \nabla^2 \mathbf{A}$$

DIFFERENCE EQUATIONS

Any system whose input $v(t)$ and output $y(t)$ are defined only at the equally spaced intervals

$$f(t) = y' = \frac{y_{i+1} - y_i}{t_{i+1} - t_i}$$

can be described by a difference equation.

First-Order Linear Difference Equation

$$\Delta t = t_{i+1} - t_i$$

$$y_{i+1} = y_i + y'(\Delta t)$$

NUMERICAL METHODS

Newton's Method for Root Extraction

Given a function $f(x)$ which has a simple root of $f(x) = 0$ at $x = a$ an important computational task would be to find that root. If $f(x)$ has a continuous first derivative then the $(j + 1)$ st estimate of the root is

$$a^{j+1} = a^j - \frac{f(x)}{\left. \frac{df(x)}{dx} \right|_{x=a^j}}$$

The initial estimate of the root a^0 must be near enough to the actual root to cause the algorithm to converge to the root.

Newton's Method of Minimization

Given a scalar value function

$$h(\mathbf{x}) = h(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$$

find a vector $\mathbf{x}^* \in R_n$ such that

$$h(\mathbf{x}^*) \leq h(\mathbf{x}) \text{ for all } \mathbf{x}$$

Newton's algorithm is

$$\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = \mathbf{x}_k - \left(\left. \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} \right|_{\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}_k} \right)^{-1} \left. \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} \right|_{\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}_k}, \text{ where}$$

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial x} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial h}{\partial x_1} \\ \frac{\partial h}{\partial x_2} \\ \dots \\ \dots \\ \frac{\partial h}{\partial x_n} \end{bmatrix}$$

and

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x_1^2} & \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x_1 \partial x_2} & \dots & \dots & \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x_1 \partial x_n} \\ \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x_1 \partial x_2} & \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x_2^2} & \dots & \dots & \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x_2 \partial x_n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x_1 \partial x_n} & \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x_2 \partial x_n} & \dots & \dots & \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x_n^2} \end{bmatrix}$$

Numerical Integration

Three of the more common numerical integration algorithms used to evaluate the integral

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx$$

are:

Euler's or Forward Rectangular Rule

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx \approx \Delta x \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} f(a + k\Delta x)$$

Trapezoidal Rule

for $n = 1$

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx \approx \Delta x \left[\frac{f(a) + f(b)}{2} \right]$$

for $n > 1$

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx \approx \frac{\Delta x}{2} \left[f(a) + 2 \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} f(a + k\Delta x) + f(b) \right]$$

Simpson's Rule/Parabolic Rule (n must be an even integer)

for $n = 2$

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx \approx \left(\frac{b-a}{6} \right) \left[f(a) + 4f\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right) + f(b) \right]$$

for $n \geq 4$

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx \approx \frac{\Delta x}{3} \left[f(a) + 2 \sum_{k=2,4,6,\dots}^{n-2} f(a + k\Delta x) + 4 \sum_{k=1,3,5,\dots}^{n-1} f(a + k\Delta x) + f(b) \right]$$

with $\Delta x = (b-a)/n$

n = number of intervals between data points

Numerical Solution of Ordinary Differential Equations

Euler's Approximation

Given a differential equation

$$dx/dt = f(x, t) \text{ with } x(0) = x_0$$

At some general time $k\Delta t$

$$x[(k+1)\Delta t] \cong x(k\Delta t) + \Delta t f[x(k\Delta t), k\Delta t]$$

which can be used with starting condition x_0 to solve recursively for $x(\Delta t)$, $x(2\Delta t)$, ..., $x(n\Delta t)$.

The method can be extended to n th order differential equations by recasting them as n first-order equations.

In particular, when $dx/dt = f(x)$

$$x[(k+1)\Delta t] \cong x(k\Delta t) + \Delta t f[x(k\Delta t)]$$

which can be expressed as the recursive equation

$$x_{k+1} = x_k + \Delta t (dx_k/dt)$$

$$x_{k+1} = x + \Delta t [f(x(k), t(k))]$$

ENGINEERING PROBABILITY AND STATISTICS

DISPERSION, MEAN, MEDIAN, AND MODE VALUES

If X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n represent the values of a random sample of n items or observations, the *arithmetic mean* of these items or observations, denoted \bar{X} , is defined as

$$\bar{X} = (1/n)(X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_n) = (1/n) \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$$

$\bar{X} \rightarrow \mu$ for sufficiently large values of n .

The *weighted arithmetic mean* is

$$\bar{X}_w = \frac{\sum w_i X_i}{\sum w_i}, \text{ where}$$

X_i = the value of the i th observation, and

w_i = the weight applied to X_i .

The *variance* of the population is the *arithmetic mean* of the *squared deviations from the population mean*. If μ is the arithmetic mean of a discrete population of size N , the *population variance* is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma^2 &= (1/N) [(X_1 - \mu)^2 + (X_2 - \mu)^2 + \dots + (X_N - \mu)^2] \\ &= (1/N) \sum_{i=1}^N (X_i - \mu)^2 \end{aligned}$$

Standard deviation formulas are

$$\sigma_{\text{population}} = \sqrt{(1/N) \sum (X_i - \mu)^2}$$

$$\sigma_{\text{sum}} = \sqrt{\sigma_1^2 + \sigma_2^2 + \dots + \sigma_n^2}$$

$$\sigma_{\text{series}} = \sigma \sqrt{n}$$

$$\sigma_{\text{mean}} = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}$$

$$\sigma_{\text{product}} = \sqrt{A^2 \sigma_a^2 + B^2 \sigma_b^2}$$

The *sample variance* is

$$s^2 = [1/(n-1)] \sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X})^2$$

The *sample standard deviation* is

$$s = \sqrt{[1/(n-1)] \sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X})^2}$$

The *sample coefficient of variation* = $CV = s/\bar{X}$

The *sample geometric mean* = $n\sqrt{X_1 X_2 X_3 \dots X_n}$

The *sample root-mean-square value* = $\sqrt{(1/n) \sum X_i^2}$

When the discrete data are rearranged in increasing order and n is odd, the median is the value of the $(\frac{n+1}{2})^{\text{th}}$ item

When n is even, the median is the average of the $(\frac{n}{2})^{\text{th}}$ and $(\frac{n}{2} + 1)^{\text{th}}$ items.

The *mode* of a set of data is the value that occurs with greatest frequency.

The *sample range* R is the largest sample value minus the smallest sample value.

PERMUTATIONS AND COMBINATIONS

A *permutation* is a particular sequence of a given set of objects. A *combination* is the set itself without reference to order.

1. The number of different *permutations* of n distinct objects *taken r at a time* is

$$P(n, r) = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!}$$

nPr is an alternative notation for $P(n, r)$

2. The number of different *combinations* of n distinct objects *taken r at a time* is

$$C(n, r) = \frac{P(n, r)}{r!} = \frac{n!}{[r!(n-r)!]}$$

nCr and $\binom{n}{r}$ are alternative notations for $C(n, r)$

3. The number of different *permutations* of n objects *taken n at a time*, given that n_i are of type i , where $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$ and $\sum n_i = n$, is

$$P(n; n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k) = \frac{n!}{n_1! n_2! \dots n_k!}$$

SETS

De Morgan's Law

$$\overline{A \cup B} = \bar{A} \cap \bar{B}$$

$$\overline{A \cap B} = \bar{A} \cup \bar{B}$$

Associative Law

$$A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap C$$

$$A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup C$$

Distributive Law

$$A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$$

$$A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$$

LAWS OF PROBABILITY

Property 1. General Character of Probability

The probability $P(E)$ of an event E is a real number in the range of 0 to 1. The probability of an impossible event is 0 and that of an event certain to occur is 1.

Property 2. Law of Total Probability

$$P(A + B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A, B), \text{ where}$$

$P(A + B)$ = the probability that either A or B occur alone or that both occur together

$P(A)$ = the probability that A occurs

$P(B)$ = the probability that B occurs

$P(A, B)$ = the probability that both A and B occur simultaneously

Property 3. Law of Compound or Joint Probability

If neither $P(A)$ nor $P(B)$ is zero,

$$P(A, B) = P(A)P(B | A) = P(B)P(A | B), \text{ where}$$

$P(B | A)$ = the probability that B occurs given the fact that A has occurred

$P(A | B)$ = the probability that A occurs given the fact that B has occurred

If either $P(A)$ or $P(B)$ is zero, then $P(A, B) = 0$.

Bayes' Theorem

$$P(B_j | A) = \frac{P(B_j)P(A|B_j)}{\sum_{i=1}^n P(A|B_i)P(B_i)}$$

where $P(A_j)$ is the probability of event A_j within the population of A

$P(B_j)$ is the probability of event B_j within the population of B

PROBABILITY FUNCTIONS, DISTRIBUTIONS, AND EXPECTED VALUES

A random variable X has a probability associated with each of its possible values. The probability is termed a discrete probability if X can assume only discrete values, or

$$X = x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n$$

The *discrete probability* of any single event, $X = x_i$, occurring is defined as $P(x_i)$ while the *probability mass function* of the random variable X is defined by

$$f(x_k) = P(X = x_k), k = 1, 2, \dots, n$$

Probability Density Function

If X is continuous, the *probability density function*, f , is defined such that

$$P(a \leq X \leq b) = \int_a^b f(x) dx$$

Cumulative Distribution Functions

The *cumulative distribution function*, F , of a discrete random variable X that has a probability distribution described by $P(x_i)$ is defined as

$$F(x_m) = \sum_{k=1}^m P(x_k) = P(X \leq x_m), m = 1, 2, \dots, n$$

If X is continuous, the *cumulative distribution function*, F , is defined by

$$F(x) = \int_{-\infty}^x f(t) dt$$

which implies that $F(a)$ is the probability that $X \leq a$.

Expected Values

Let X be a discrete random variable having a probability mass function

$$f(x_k), k = 1, 2, \dots, n$$

The expected value of X is defined as

$$\mu = E[X] = \sum_{k=1}^n x_k f(x_k)$$

The variance of X is defined as

$$\sigma^2 = V[X] = \sum_{k=1}^n (x_k - \mu)^2 f(x_k)$$

Let X be a continuous random variable having a density function $f(X)$ and let $Y = g(X)$ be some general function. The expected value of Y is:

$$E[Y] = E[g(X)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(x)f(x) dx$$

The mean or expected value of the random variable X is now defined as

$$\mu = E[X] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} xf(x) dx$$

while the variance is given by

$$\sigma^2 = V[X] = E[(X - \mu)^2] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (x - \mu)^2 f(x) dx$$

The standard deviation is given by

$$\sigma = \sqrt{V[X]}$$

The coefficient of variation is defined as σ/μ .

Combinations of Random Variables

$$Y = a_1 X_1 + a_2 X_2 + \dots + a_n X_n$$

The expected value of Y is:

$$\mu_y = E(Y) = a_1 E(X_1) + a_2 E(X_2) + \dots + a_n E(X_n)$$

If the random variables are statistically *independent*, then the variance of Y is:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_y^2 &= V(Y) = a_1^2 V(X_1) + a_2^2 V(X_2) + \dots + a_n^2 V(X_n) \\ &= a_1^2 \sigma_1^2 + a_2^2 \sigma_2^2 + \dots + a_n^2 \sigma_n^2 \end{aligned}$$

Also, the standard deviation of Y is:

$$\sigma_y = \sqrt{\sigma_y^2}$$

When $Y = f(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)$ and X_i are independent, the standard deviation of Y is expressed as:

$$\sigma_y = \sqrt{\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial X_1} \sigma_{X_1}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial X_2} \sigma_{X_2}\right)^2 + \dots + \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial X_n} \sigma_{X_n}\right)^2}$$

Binomial Distribution

$P(x)$ is the probability that x successes will occur in n trials. If p = probability of success and q = probability of failure = $1 - p$, then

$$P_n(x) = C(n, x) p^x q^{n-x} = \frac{n!}{x!(n-x)!} p^x q^{n-x},$$

where

$$x = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n$$

$C(n, x)$ = the number of combinations

n, p = parameters

The variance is given by the form:

$$\sigma^2 = npq$$

Normal Distribution (Gaussian Distribution)

This is a unimodal distribution, the mode being $x = \mu$, with two points of inflection (each located at a distance σ to either side of the mode). The averages of n observations tend to become normally distributed as n increases. The variate x is said to be normally distributed if its density function $f(x)$ is given by an expression of the form

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x-\mu}{\sigma}\right)^2}, \text{ where}$$

μ = the population mean

σ = the standard deviation of the population

$$-\infty \leq x \leq \infty$$

When $\mu = 0$ and $\sigma^2 = \sigma = 1$, the distribution is called a *standardized* or *unit normal* distribution. Then

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-x^2/2}, \text{ where } -\infty \leq x \leq \infty.$$

It is noted that $Z = \frac{x - \mu}{\sigma}$ follows a standardized normal distribution function.

A unit normal distribution table is included at the end of this section. In the table, the following notations are utilized:

$F(x)$ = the area under the curve from $-\infty$ to x

$R(x)$ = the area under the curve from x to ∞

$W(x)$ = the area under the curve between $-x$ and x

$$F(-x) = 1 - F(x)$$

The Central Limit Theorem

Let X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n be a sequence of independent and identically distributed random variables each having mean μ and variance σ^2 . Then for large n , the Central Limit Theorem asserts that the sum

$$Y = X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_n \text{ is approximately normal.}$$

$$\mu_{\bar{y}} = \mu$$

and the standard deviation

$$\sigma_{\bar{y}} = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}$$

t-Distribution

Student's t -distribution has the probability density function given by:

$$f(t) = \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{\nu+1}{2}\right)}{\sqrt{\nu\pi} \Gamma\left(\frac{\nu}{2}\right)} \left(1 + \frac{t^2}{\nu}\right)^{-\frac{\nu+1}{2}}$$

where

ν = number of *degrees of freedom*

n = sample size

$$\nu = n - 1$$

Γ = gamma function

$$t = \frac{\bar{x} - \mu}{s/\sqrt{n}}$$

$$-\infty \leq t \leq \infty$$

A table later in this section gives the values of $t_{\alpha, \nu}$ for values of α and ν . Note that, in view of the symmetry of the t -distribution, $t_{1-\alpha, \nu} = -t_{\alpha, \nu}$

The function for α follows:

$$\alpha = \int_{t_{\alpha, \nu}}^{\infty} f(t) dt$$

χ^2 - Distribution

If Z_1, Z_2, \dots, Z_n are independent unit normal random variables, then

$$\chi^2 = Z_1^2 + Z_2^2 + \dots + Z_n^2$$

is said to have a chi-square distribution with n degrees of freedom.

A table at the end of this section gives values of $\chi_{\alpha, n}^2$ for selected values of α and n .

Gamma Function

$$\Gamma(n) = \int_0^{\infty} t^{n-1} e^{-t} dt, \quad n > 0$$

PROPAGATION OF ERROR

Measurement Error

$$x = x_{\text{true}} + x_{\text{bias}} + x_{\text{re}}, \text{ where}$$

x = measured value for dimension

x_{true} = true value for dimension

x_{bias} = bias or systematic error in measuring dimension

x_{re} = random error in measuring dimension

$$\mu = \left(\frac{1}{N}\right) \sum_{i=1}^n x_i = \left(\frac{1}{N}\right) \sum_{i=1}^n (x_{\text{true}} + x_{\text{bias}})_i, \text{ where}$$

μ = population or arithmetic mean

N = number of observations of measured values for population

$$\sigma_{\text{population}} = \sigma_{\text{re}} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{1}{N} \sum (x_i - \mu)^2\right)}, \text{ where}$$

σ = standard deviation of uncertainty

Linear Combinations

$$\sigma_{cx} = |c|\sigma_x, \text{ where}$$

$c = \text{constant}$

$$\sigma_{c_1x_1 + \dots + c_nx_n} = \sqrt{c_1^2\sigma_1^2 + \dots + c_n^2\sigma_n^2}, \text{ where}$$

$n = \text{number of observations of measured values for sample}$

Measurement Uncertainty

$$\sigma_u = \sqrt{\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x_1}\right)^2 \sigma_{x_1}^2 + \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x_2}\right)^2 \sigma_{x_2}^2 + \dots + \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x_n}\right)^2 \sigma_{x_n}^2}$$

$$u(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$$

where

$f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$ = the functional relationship between the desired state u and the measured or available states x_i

σ_{x_i} = standard deviation of the state x_i

σ_u = computed standard deviation of u with multiple states x_i

When the state variable x_1 is to be transformed to $u = f(x_1)$ the following relation holds:

$$\sigma_u \approx \left| \frac{du}{dx_1} \right| \sigma_{x_1}$$

LINEAR REGRESSION AND GOODNESS OF FIT

Least Squares

$$\hat{y} = \hat{a} + \hat{b}x, \text{ where}$$

$$\hat{b} = S_{xy}/S_{xx}$$

$$\hat{a} = \bar{y} - \hat{b}\bar{x}$$

$$S_{xy} = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i y_i - (1/n) \left(\sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right) \left(\sum_{i=1}^n y_i \right)$$

$$S_{xx} = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 - (1/n) \left(\sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right)^2$$

$$\bar{y} = (1/n) \left(\sum_{i=1}^n y_i \right)$$

$$\bar{x} = (1/n) \left(\sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right)$$

where

n = sample size

S_{xx} = sum of squares of x

S_{yy} = sum of squares of y

S_{xy} = sum of x - y products

Residual

$$e_i = y_i - \hat{y} = y_i - (\hat{a} + \hat{b}x_i)$$

Standard Error of Estimate (S_e^2):

$$S_e^2 = \frac{S_{xx}S_{yy} - S_{xy}^2}{S_{xx}(n-2)} = MSE, \text{ where}$$

$$S_{yy} = \sum_{i=1}^n y_i^2 - (1/n) \left(\sum_{i=1}^n y_i \right)^2$$

Confidence Interval for Intercept (\hat{a}):

$$\hat{a} \pm t_{\alpha/2, n-2} \sqrt{\left(\frac{1}{n} + \frac{\bar{x}^2}{S_{xx}} \right) MSE}$$

Confidence Interval for Slope (\hat{b}):

$$\hat{b} \pm t_{\alpha/2, n-2} \sqrt{\frac{MSE}{S_{xx}}}$$

Sample Correlation Coefficient (R) and Coefficient of Determination (R^2):

$$R = \frac{S_{xy}}{\sqrt{S_{xx}S_{yy}}}$$

$$R^2 = \frac{S_{xy}^2}{S_{xx}S_{yy}}$$

HYPOTHESIS TESTING

Let a "dot" subscript indicate summation over the subscript.

Thus:

$$y_{i\cdot} = \sum_{j=1}^n y_{ij} \quad \text{and} \quad y_{\cdot\cdot} = \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=1}^n y_{ij}$$

◆ One-Way Analysis of Variance (ANOVA)

Given independent random samples of size n_i from k populations, then:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=1}^{n_i} (y_{ij} - \bar{y}_{\cdot\cdot})^2 \\ = \sum_{i=1}^k n_i (\bar{y}_{i\cdot} - \bar{y}_{\cdot\cdot})^2 + \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=1}^{n_i} (y_{ij} - \bar{y}_{i\cdot})^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$SS_{\text{total}} = SS_{\text{treatments}} + SS_{\text{error}}$$

If N = total number observations

$$N = \sum_{i=1}^k n_i, \text{ then}$$

$$SS_{\text{total}} = \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=1}^{n_i} y_{ij}^2 - \frac{y_{\cdot\cdot}^2}{N}$$

$$SS_{\text{treatments}} = \sum_{i=1}^k \frac{y_{i\cdot}^2}{n_i} - \frac{y_{\cdot\cdot}^2}{N}$$

$$SS_{\text{error}} = SS_{\text{total}} - SS_{\text{treatments}}$$

◆ Randomized Complete Block Design

For k treatments and b blocks

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=1}^b (y_{ij} - \bar{y}_{\cdot\cdot})^2 = b \sum_{i=1}^k (\bar{y}_{i\cdot} - \bar{y}_{\cdot\cdot})^2 + k \sum_{j=1}^b (\bar{y}_{\cdot j} - \bar{y}_{\cdot\cdot})^2 \\ + \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=1}^b (\bar{y}_{ij} - \bar{y}_{\cdot j} - \bar{y}_{i\cdot} + \bar{y}_{\cdot\cdot})^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$SS_{\text{total}} = SS_{\text{treatments}} + SS_{\text{blocks}} + SS_{\text{error}}$$

$$SS_{\text{total}} = \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=1}^b y_{ij}^2 - \frac{y_{\cdot\cdot}^2}{kb}$$

$$SS_{\text{treatments}} = \frac{1}{b} \sum_{i=1}^k y_{i\cdot}^2 - \frac{y_{\cdot\cdot}^2}{bk}$$

$$SS_{\text{blocks}} = \frac{1}{k} \sum_{j=1}^b y_{\cdot j}^2 - \frac{y_{\cdot\cdot}^2}{bk}$$

$$SS_{\text{error}} = SS_{\text{total}} - SS_{\text{treatments}} - SS_{\text{blocks}}$$

◆ From Montgomery, Douglas C., and George C. Runger, *Applied Statistics and Probability for Engineers*, 4th ed., Wiley, 2007.

Two-factor Factorial Designs

For a levels of Factor A, b levels of Factor B, and n repetitions per cell:

$$\sum_{i=1}^a \sum_{j=1}^b \sum_{k=1}^n (y_{ijk} - \bar{y}_{...})^2 = bn \sum_{i=1}^a (\bar{y}_{i..} - \bar{y}_{...})^2 + an \sum_{j=1}^b (\bar{y}_{.j.} - \bar{y}_{...})^2 + n \sum_{i=1}^a \sum_{j=1}^b (\bar{y}_{ij.} - \bar{y}_{i..} - \bar{y}_{.j.} + \bar{y}_{...})^2 + \sum_{i=1}^a \sum_{j=1}^b \sum_{k=1}^n (y_{ijk} - \bar{y}_{ij.})^2$$

$$SS_{\text{total}} = SS_A + SS_B + SS_{AB} + SS_{\text{error}}$$

$$SS_{\text{total}} = \sum_{i=1}^a \sum_{j=1}^b \sum_{k=1}^n y_{ijk}^2 - \frac{y_{...}^2}{abn}$$

$$SS_A = \sum_{i=1}^a \frac{y_{i..}^2}{bn} - \frac{y_{...}^2}{abn}$$

$$SS_B = \sum_{j=1}^b \frac{y_{.j.}^2}{an} - \frac{y_{...}^2}{abn}$$

$$SS_{AB} = \sum_{i=1}^a \sum_{j=1}^b \frac{y_{ij.}^2}{n} - \frac{y_{...}^2}{abn} - SS_A - SS_B$$

$$SS_{\text{error}} = SS_T - SS_A - SS_B - SS_{AB}$$

From Montgomery, Douglas C., and George C. Runger, *Applied Statistics and Probability for Engineers*, 4th ed., Wiley, 2007.

One-Way ANOVA Table

| Source of Variation | Degrees of Freedom | Sum of Squares | Mean Square | F |
|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|--|-------------------|
| Between Treatments | $k - 1$ | $SS_{\text{treatments}}$ | $MST = \frac{SS_{\text{treatments}}}{k - 1}$ | $\frac{MST}{MSE}$ |
| Error | $N - k$ | SS_{error} | $MSE = \frac{SS_{\text{error}}}{N - k}$ | |
| Total | $N - 1$ | SS_{total} | | |

Randomized Complete Block ANOVA Table

| Source of Variation | Degrees of Freedom | Sum of Squares | Mean Square | F |
|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|--|-------------------|
| Between Treatments | $k - 1$ | $SS_{\text{treatments}}$ | $MST = \frac{SS_{\text{treatments}}}{k - 1}$ | $\frac{MST}{MSE}$ |
| Between Blocks | $n - 1$ | SS_{blocks} | $MSB = \frac{SS_{\text{blocks}}}{n - 1}$ | $\frac{MSB}{MSE}$ |
| Error | $(k - 1)(n - 1)$ | SS_{error} | $MSE = \frac{SS_{\text{error}}}{(k - 1)(n - 1)}$ | |
| Total | $N - 1$ | SS_{total} | | |

Two-Way Factorial ANOVA Table

| Source of Variation | Degrees of Freedom | Sum of Squares | Mean Square | F |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------------|---|--------------------|
| A Treatments | $a - 1$ | SS_A | $MSA = \frac{SS_A}{a - 1}$ | $\frac{MSA}{MSE}$ |
| B Treatments | $b - 1$ | SS_B | $MSB = \frac{SS_B}{b - 1}$ | $\frac{MSB}{MSE}$ |
| AB Interaction | $(a - 1)(b - 1)$ | SS_{AB} | $MSAB = \frac{SS_{AB}}{(a - 1)(b - 1)}$ | $\frac{MSAB}{MSE}$ |
| Error | $ab(n - 1)$ | SS_{error} | $MSE = \frac{SS_E}{ab(n - 1)}$ | |
| Total | $abn - 1$ | SS_{total} | | |

Consider an unknown parameter θ of a statistical distribution. Let the null hypothesis be

$$H_0: \mu = \mu_0$$

and let the alternative hypothesis be

$$H_1: \mu \neq \mu_0$$

Rejecting H_0 when it is true is known as a type I error, while accepting H_0 when it is wrong is known as a type II error.

Furthermore, the probabilities of type I and type II errors are usually represented by the symbols α and β , respectively:

α = probability (type I error)

β = probability (type II error)

The probability of a type I error is known as the level of significance of the test.

Table A. Tests on Means of Normal Distribution—Variance Known

| Hypothesis | Test Statistic | Criteria for Rejection |
|---|--|------------------------|
| $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$ $H_1: \mu \neq \mu_0$ | | $ Z_0 > Z_{\alpha/2}$ |
| $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$ $H_1: \mu < \mu_0$ | $Z_0 \equiv \frac{\bar{X} - \mu_0}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}}$ | $Z_0 < -Z_\alpha$ |
| $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$ $H_1: \mu > \mu_0$ | | $Z_0 > Z_\alpha$ |
| $H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 = \gamma$ $H_1: \mu_1 - \mu_2 \neq \gamma$ | | $ Z_0 > Z_{\alpha/2}$ |
| $H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 = \gamma$ $H_1: \mu_1 - \mu_2 < \gamma$ | $Z_0 \equiv \frac{\bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2 - \gamma}{\sqrt{\frac{\sigma_1^2}{n_1} + \frac{\sigma_2^2}{n_2}}}$ | $Z_0 < -Z_\alpha$ |
| $H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 = \gamma$ $H_1: \mu_1 - \mu_2 > \gamma$ | | $Z_0 > Z_\alpha$ |

Table B. Tests on Means of Normal Distribution—Variance Unknown

| Hypothesis | Test Statistic | Criteria for Rejection |
|---|--|-----------------------------|
| $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$ $H_1: \mu \neq \mu_0$ | | $ t_0 > t_{\alpha/2, n-1}$ |
| $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$ $H_1: \mu < \mu_0$ | $t_0 = \frac{\bar{X} - \mu_0}{s/\sqrt{n}}$ | $t_0 < -t_{\alpha, n-1}$ |
| $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$ $H_1: \mu > \mu_0$ | | $t_0 > t_{\alpha, n-1}$ |
| $H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 = \gamma$ $H_1: \mu_1 - \mu_2 \neq \gamma$ | $t_0 = \frac{\bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2 - \gamma}{s_p \sqrt{\frac{1}{n_1} + \frac{1}{n_2}}}$ Variances equal $v = n_1 + n_2 - 2$ | $ t_0 > t_{\alpha/2, v}$ |
| $H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 = \gamma$ $H_1: \mu_1 - \mu_2 < \gamma$ | $t_0 = \frac{\bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2 - \gamma}{\sqrt{\frac{s_1^2}{n_1} + \frac{s_2^2}{n_2}}}$ Variances unequal | $t_0 < -t_{\alpha, v}$ |
| $H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 = \gamma$ $H_1: \mu_1 - \mu_2 > \gamma$ | $v = \frac{\left(\frac{s_1^2}{n_1} + \frac{s_2^2}{n_2}\right)^2}{\frac{(s_1^2/n_1)^2}{n_1 - 1} + \frac{(s_2^2/n_2)^2}{n_2 - 1}}$ | $t_0 > t_{\alpha, v}$ |

In Table B, $s_p^2 = [(n_1 - 1)s_1^2 + (n_2 - 1)s_2^2]/v$

Table C. Tests on Variances of Normal Distribution with Unknown Mean

| Hypothesis | Test Statistic | Criteria for Rejection |
|---|--|---|
| $H_0: \sigma^2 = \sigma_0^2$ $H_1: \sigma^2 \neq \sigma_0^2$ | | $\chi_0^2 > \chi_{\alpha/2, n-1}^2$ or $\chi_0^2 < \chi_{1-\alpha/2, n-1}^2$ |
| $H_0: \sigma^2 = \sigma_0^2$ $H_1: \sigma^2 < \sigma_0^2$ | $\chi_0^2 = \frac{(n-1)s^2}{\sigma_0^2}$ | $\chi_0^2 < \chi_{1-\alpha, n-1}^2$ |
| $H_0: \sigma^2 = \sigma_0^2$ $H_1: \sigma^2 > \sigma_0^2$ | | $\chi_0^2 > \chi_{\alpha, n-1}^2$ |
| $H_0: \sigma_1^2 = \sigma_2^2$ $H_1: \sigma_1^2 \neq \sigma_2^2$ | $F_0 = \frac{s_1^2}{s_2^2}$ | $F_0 > F_{\alpha/2, n_1-1, n_2-1}$ $F_0 < F_{1-\alpha/2, n_1-1, n_2-1}$ |
| $H_0: \sigma_1^2 = \sigma_2^2$ $H_1: \sigma_1^2 < \sigma_2^2$ | $F_0 = \frac{s_2^2}{s_1^2}$ | $F_0 > F_{\alpha, n_2-1, n_1-1}$ |
| $H_0: \sigma_1^2 = \sigma_2^2$ $H_1: \sigma_1^2 > \sigma_2^2$ | $F_0 = \frac{s_1^2}{s_2^2}$ | $F_0 > F_{\alpha, n_1-1, n_2-1}$ |

Assume that the values of α and β are given. The sample size can be obtained from the following relationships. In (A) and (B), μ_1 is the value assumed to be the true mean.

(A) $H_0: \mu = \mu_0; H_1: \mu \neq \mu_0$

$$\beta = \Phi\left(\frac{\mu_0 - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} + Z_{\alpha/2}\right) - \Phi\left(\frac{\mu_0 - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} - Z_{\alpha/2}\right)$$

An approximate result is

$$n \simeq \frac{(Z_{\alpha/2} + Z_{\beta})^2 \sigma^2}{(\mu_1 - \mu_0)^2}$$

(B) $H_0: \mu = \mu_0; H_1: \mu > \mu_0$

$$\beta = \Phi\left(\frac{\mu_0 - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} + Z_{\alpha}\right)$$

$$n = \frac{(Z_{\alpha} + Z_{\beta})^2 \sigma^2}{(\mu_1 - \mu_0)^2}$$

CONFIDENCE INTERVALS, SAMPLE DISTRIBUTIONS AND SAMPLE SIZE

Confidence Interval for the Mean μ of a Normal Distribution

(A) Standard deviation σ is known

$$\bar{X} - Z_{\alpha/2} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} \leq \mu \leq \bar{X} + Z_{\alpha/2} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}$$

(B) Standard deviation σ is not known

$$\bar{X} - t_{\alpha/2} \frac{s}{\sqrt{n}} \leq \mu \leq \bar{X} + t_{\alpha/2} \frac{s}{\sqrt{n}}$$

where $t_{\alpha/2}$ corresponds to $n - 1$ degrees of freedom.

Confidence Interval for the Difference Between Two Means μ_1 and μ_2

(A) Standard deviations σ_1 and σ_2 known

$$\bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2 - Z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{\sigma_1^2}{n_1} + \frac{\sigma_2^2}{n_2}} \leq \mu_1 - \mu_2 \leq \bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2 + Z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{\sigma_1^2}{n_1} + \frac{\sigma_2^2}{n_2}}$$

(B) Standard deviations σ_1 and σ_2 are not known

$$\bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2 - t_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{\left(\frac{1}{n_1} + \frac{1}{n_2}\right) \left[(n_1 - 1)s_1^2 + (n_2 - 1)s_2^2 \right]}{n_1 + n_2 - 2}} \leq \mu_1 - \mu_2 \leq \bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2 + t_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{\left(\frac{1}{n_1} + \frac{1}{n_2}\right) \left[(n_1 - 1)s_1^2 + (n_2 - 1)s_2^2 \right]}{n_1 + n_2 - 2}}$$

where $t_{\alpha/2}$ corresponds to $n_1 + n_2 - 2$ degrees of freedom.

Confidence Intervals for the Variance σ^2 of a Normal Distribution

$$\frac{(n-1)s^2}{x_{\alpha/2, n-1}^2} \leq \sigma^2 \leq \frac{(n-1)s^2}{x_{1-\alpha/2, n-1}^2}$$

Sample Size

$$z = \frac{\bar{X} - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} \quad n = \left[\frac{z_{\alpha/2} \sigma}{\bar{x} - \mu} \right]^2$$

TEST STATISTICS

The following definitions apply.

$$Z_{\text{var}} = \frac{\bar{X} - \mu_0}{\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}}$$

$$t_{\text{var}} = \frac{\bar{X} - \mu_0}{\frac{s}{\sqrt{n}}}$$

where

Z_{var} is the standard normal Z score

t_{var} is the sample distribution test statistic

σ is known standard deviation

μ_0 is population mean

\bar{X} is hypothesized mean or sample mean

n is sample size

s is computed sample standard deviation

The Z score is applicable when the standard deviation(s) is known. The test statistic is applicable when the standard deviation(s) is computed at time of sampling.

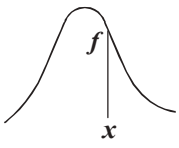
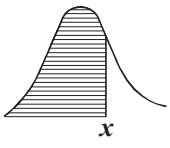
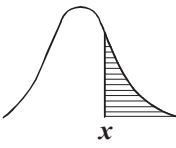
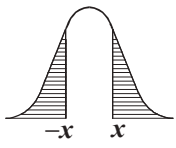
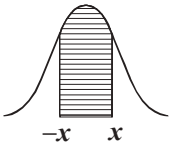
Z_{α} corresponds to the appropriate probability under the normal probability curve for a given Z_{var} .

$t_{\alpha, n-1}$ corresponds to the appropriate probability under the t distribution with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom for a given t_{var} .

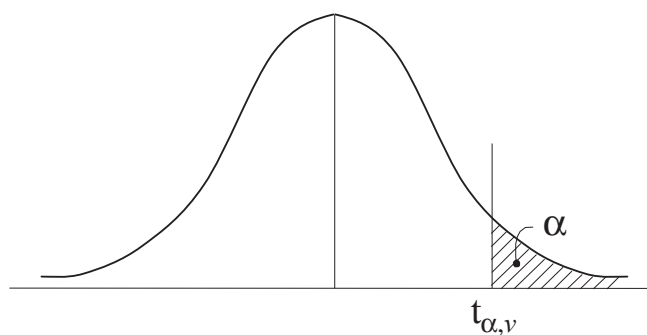
Values of $Z_{\alpha/2}$

| Confidence Interval | $Z_{\alpha/2}$ |
|---------------------|----------------|
| 80% | 1.2816 |
| 90% | 1.6449 |
| 95% | 1.9600 |
| 96% | 2.0537 |
| 98% | 2.3263 |
| 99% | 2.5758 |

Unit Normal Distribution

| |  |  |  |  |  |
|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|
| x | $f(x)$ | $F(x)$ | $R(x)$ | $2R(x)$ | $W(x)$ |
| 0.0 | 0.3989 | 0.5000 | 0.5000 | 1.0000 | 0.0000 |
| 0.1 | 0.3970 | 0.5398 | 0.4602 | 0.9203 | 0.0797 |
| 0.2 | 0.3910 | 0.5793 | 0.4207 | 0.8415 | 0.1585 |
| 0.3 | 0.3814 | 0.6179 | 0.3821 | 0.7642 | 0.2358 |
| 0.4 | 0.3683 | 0.6554 | 0.3446 | 0.6892 | 0.3108 |
| 0.5 | 0.3521 | 0.6915 | 0.3085 | 0.6171 | 0.3829 |
| 0.6 | 0.3332 | 0.7257 | 0.2743 | 0.5485 | 0.4515 |
| 0.7 | 0.3123 | 0.7580 | 0.2420 | 0.4839 | 0.5161 |
| 0.8 | 0.2897 | 0.7881 | 0.2119 | 0.4237 | 0.5763 |
| 0.9 | 0.2661 | 0.8159 | 0.1841 | 0.3681 | 0.6319 |
| 1.0 | 0.2420 | 0.8413 | 0.1587 | 0.3173 | 0.6827 |
| 1.1 | 0.2179 | 0.8643 | 0.1357 | 0.2713 | 0.7287 |
| 1.2 | 0.1942 | 0.8849 | 0.1151 | 0.2301 | 0.7699 |
| 1.3 | 0.1714 | 0.9032 | 0.0968 | 0.1936 | 0.8064 |
| 1.4 | 0.1497 | 0.9192 | 0.0808 | 0.1615 | 0.8385 |
| 1.5 | 0.1295 | 0.9332 | 0.0668 | 0.1336 | 0.8664 |
| 1.6 | 0.1109 | 0.9452 | 0.0548 | 0.1096 | 0.8904 |
| 1.7 | 0.0940 | 0.9554 | 0.0446 | 0.0891 | 0.9109 |
| 1.8 | 0.0790 | 0.9641 | 0.0359 | 0.0719 | 0.9281 |
| 1.9 | 0.0656 | 0.9713 | 0.0287 | 0.0574 | 0.9426 |
| 2.0 | 0.0540 | 0.9772 | 0.0228 | 0.0455 | 0.9545 |
| 2.1 | 0.0440 | 0.9821 | 0.0179 | 0.0357 | 0.9643 |
| 2.2 | 0.0355 | 0.9861 | 0.0139 | 0.0278 | 0.9722 |
| 2.3 | 0.0283 | 0.9893 | 0.0107 | 0.0214 | 0.9786 |
| 2.4 | 0.0224 | 0.9918 | 0.0082 | 0.0164 | 0.9836 |
| 2.5 | 0.0175 | 0.9938 | 0.0062 | 0.0124 | 0.9876 |
| 2.6 | 0.0136 | 0.9953 | 0.0047 | 0.0093 | 0.9907 |
| 2.7 | 0.0104 | 0.9965 | 0.0035 | 0.0069 | 0.9931 |
| 2.8 | 0.0079 | 0.9974 | 0.0026 | 0.0051 | 0.9949 |
| 2.9 | 0.0060 | 0.9981 | 0.0019 | 0.0037 | 0.9963 |
| 3.0 | 0.0044 | 0.9987 | 0.0013 | 0.0027 | 0.9973 |
| Fractiles | | | | | |
| 1.2816 | 0.1755 | 0.9000 | 0.1000 | 0.2000 | 0.8000 |
| 1.6449 | 0.1031 | 0.9500 | 0.0500 | 0.1000 | 0.9000 |
| 1.9600 | 0.0584 | 0.9750 | 0.0250 | 0.0500 | 0.9500 |
| 2.0537 | 0.0484 | 0.9800 | 0.0200 | 0.0400 | 0.9600 |
| 2.3263 | 0.0267 | 0.9900 | 0.0100 | 0.0200 | 0.9800 |
| 2.5758 | 0.0145 | 0.9950 | 0.0050 | 0.0100 | 0.9900 |

Student's *t*-Distribution

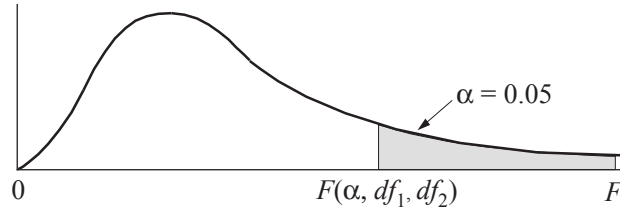


VALUES OF $t_{\alpha, \nu}$

| ν | α | | | | | | | | ν |
|-----------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|-----------|
| | 0.25 | 0.20 | 0.15 | 0.10 | 0.05 | 0.025 | 0.01 | 0.005 | |
| 1 | 1.000 | 1.376 | 1.963 | 3.078 | 6.314 | 12.706 | 31.821 | 63.657 | 1 |
| 2 | 0.816 | 1.061 | 1.386 | 1.886 | 2.920 | 4.303 | 6.965 | 9.925 | 2 |
| 3 | 0.765 | 0.978 | 1.350 | 1.638 | 2.353 | 3.182 | 4.541 | 5.841 | 3 |
| 4 | 0.741 | 0.941 | 1.190 | 1.533 | 2.132 | 2.776 | 3.747 | 4.604 | 4 |
| 5 | 0.727 | 0.920 | 1.156 | 1.476 | 2.015 | 2.571 | 3.365 | 4.032 | 5 |
| 6 | 0.718 | 0.906 | 1.134 | 1.440 | 1.943 | 2.447 | 3.143 | 3.707 | 6 |
| 7 | 0.711 | 0.896 | 1.119 | 1.415 | 1.895 | 2.365 | 2.998 | 3.499 | 7 |
| 8 | 0.706 | 0.889 | 1.108 | 1.397 | 1.860 | 2.306 | 2.896 | 3.355 | 8 |
| 9 | 0.703 | 0.883 | 1.100 | 1.383 | 1.833 | 2.262 | 2.821 | 3.250 | 9 |
| 10 | 0.700 | 0.879 | 1.093 | 1.372 | 1.812 | 2.228 | 2.764 | 3.169 | 10 |
| 11 | 0.697 | 0.876 | 1.088 | 1.363 | 1.796 | 2.201 | 2.718 | 3.106 | 11 |
| 12 | 0.695 | 0.873 | 1.083 | 1.356 | 1.782 | 2.179 | 2.681 | 3.055 | 12 |
| 13 | 0.694 | 0.870 | 1.079 | 1.350 | 1.771 | 2.160 | 2.650 | 3.012 | 13 |
| 14 | 0.692 | 0.868 | 1.076 | 1.345 | 1.761 | 2.145 | 2.624 | 2.977 | 14 |
| 15 | 0.691 | 0.866 | 1.074 | 1.341 | 1.753 | 2.131 | 2.602 | 2.947 | 15 |
| 16 | 0.690 | 0.865 | 1.071 | 1.337 | 1.746 | 2.120 | 2.583 | 2.921 | 16 |
| 17 | 0.689 | 0.863 | 1.069 | 1.333 | 1.740 | 2.110 | 2.567 | 2.898 | 17 |
| 18 | 0.688 | 0.862 | 1.067 | 1.330 | 1.734 | 2.101 | 2.552 | 2.878 | 18 |
| 19 | 0.688 | 0.861 | 1.066 | 1.328 | 1.729 | 2.093 | 2.539 | 2.861 | 19 |
| 20 | 0.687 | 0.860 | 1.064 | 1.325 | 1.725 | 2.086 | 2.528 | 2.845 | 20 |
| 21 | 0.686 | 0.859 | 1.063 | 1.323 | 1.721 | 2.080 | 2.518 | 2.831 | 21 |
| 22 | 0.686 | 0.858 | 1.061 | 1.321 | 1.717 | 2.074 | 2.508 | 2.819 | 22 |
| 23 | 0.685 | 0.858 | 1.060 | 1.319 | 1.714 | 2.069 | 2.500 | 2.807 | 23 |
| 24 | 0.685 | 0.857 | 1.059 | 1.318 | 1.711 | 2.064 | 2.492 | 2.797 | 24 |
| 25 | 0.684 | 0.856 | 1.058 | 1.316 | 1.708 | 2.060 | 2.485 | 2.787 | 25 |
| 26 | 0.684 | 0.856 | 1.058 | 1.315 | 1.706 | 2.056 | 2.479 | 2.779 | 26 |
| 27 | 0.684 | 0.855 | 1.057 | 1.314 | 1.703 | 2.052 | 2.473 | 2.771 | 27 |
| 28 | 0.683 | 0.855 | 1.056 | 1.313 | 1.701 | 2.048 | 2.467 | 2.763 | 28 |
| 29 | 0.683 | 0.854 | 1.055 | 1.311 | 1.699 | 2.045 | 2.462 | 2.756 | 29 |
| 30 | 0.683 | 0.854 | 1.055 | 1.310 | 1.697 | 2.042 | 2.457 | 2.750 | 30 |
| ∞ | 0.674 | 0.842 | 1.036 | 1.282 | 1.645 | 1.960 | 2.326 | 2.576 | ∞ |

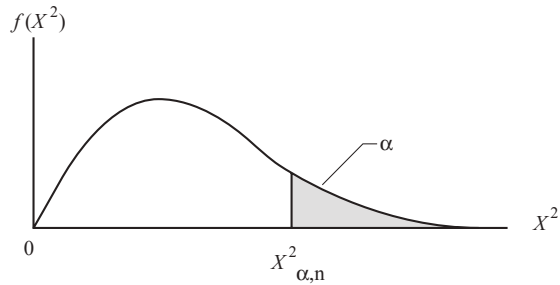
CRITICAL VALUES OF THE F DISTRIBUTION – TABLE

For a particular combination of numerator and denominator degrees of freedom, entry represents the critical values of F corresponding to a specified upper tail area (α).



| Denominator df_2 | Numerator df_1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------|------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 12 | 15 | 20 | 24 | 30 | 40 | 60 | 120 | ∞ |
| 1 | 161.4 | 199.5 | 215.7 | 224.6 | 230.2 | 234.0 | 236.8 | 238.9 | 240.5 | 241.9 | 243.9 | 245.9 | 248.0 | 249.1 | 250.1 | 251.1 | 252.2 | 253.3 | 254.3 |
| 2 | 18.51 | 19.00 | 19.16 | 19.25 | 19.30 | 19.33 | 19.35 | 19.37 | 19.38 | 19.40 | 19.41 | 19.43 | 19.45 | 19.45 | 19.46 | 19.47 | 19.48 | 19.49 | 19.50 |
| 3 | 10.13 | 9.55 | 9.28 | 9.12 | 9.01 | 8.94 | 8.89 | 8.85 | 8.81 | 8.79 | 8.74 | 8.70 | 8.66 | 8.64 | 8.62 | 8.59 | 8.57 | 8.55 | 8.53 |
| 4 | 7.71 | 6.94 | 6.59 | 6.39 | 6.26 | 6.16 | 6.09 | 6.04 | 6.00 | 5.96 | 5.91 | 5.86 | 5.80 | 5.77 | 5.75 | 5.72 | 5.69 | 5.66 | 5.63 |
| 5 | 6.61 | 5.79 | 5.41 | 5.19 | 5.05 | 4.95 | 4.88 | 4.82 | 4.77 | 4.74 | 4.68 | 4.62 | 4.56 | 4.53 | 4.50 | 4.46 | 4.43 | 4.40 | 4.36 |
| 6 | 5.99 | 5.14 | 4.76 | 4.53 | 4.39 | 4.28 | 4.21 | 4.15 | 4.10 | 4.06 | 4.00 | 3.94 | 3.87 | 3.84 | 3.81 | 3.77 | 3.74 | 3.70 | 3.67 |
| 7 | 5.59 | 4.74 | 4.35 | 4.12 | 3.97 | 3.87 | 3.79 | 3.73 | 3.68 | 3.64 | 3.57 | 3.51 | 3.44 | 3.41 | 3.38 | 3.34 | 3.30 | 3.27 | 3.23 |
| 8 | 5.32 | 4.46 | 4.07 | 3.84 | 3.69 | 3.58 | 3.50 | 3.44 | 3.39 | 3.35 | 3.28 | 3.22 | 3.15 | 3.12 | 3.08 | 3.04 | 3.01 | 2.97 | 2.93 |
| 9 | 5.12 | 4.26 | 3.86 | 3.63 | 3.48 | 3.37 | 3.29 | 3.23 | 3.18 | 3.14 | 3.07 | 3.01 | 2.94 | 2.90 | 2.86 | 2.83 | 2.79 | 2.75 | 2.71 |
| 10 | 4.96 | 4.10 | 3.71 | 3.48 | 3.33 | 3.22 | 3.14 | 3.07 | 3.02 | 2.98 | 2.91 | 2.85 | 2.77 | 2.74 | 2.70 | 2.66 | 2.62 | 2.58 | 2.54 |
| 11 | 4.84 | 3.98 | 3.59 | 3.36 | 3.20 | 3.09 | 3.01 | 2.95 | 2.90 | 2.85 | 2.79 | 2.72 | 2.65 | 2.61 | 2.57 | 2.53 | 2.49 | 2.45 | 2.40 |
| 12 | 4.75 | 3.89 | 3.49 | 3.26 | 3.11 | 3.00 | 2.91 | 2.85 | 2.80 | 2.75 | 2.69 | 2.62 | 2.54 | 2.51 | 2.47 | 2.43 | 2.38 | 2.34 | 2.30 |
| 13 | 4.67 | 3.81 | 3.41 | 3.18 | 3.03 | 2.92 | 2.83 | 2.77 | 2.71 | 2.67 | 2.60 | 2.53 | 2.46 | 2.42 | 2.38 | 2.34 | 2.30 | 2.25 | 2.21 |
| 14 | 4.60 | 3.74 | 3.34 | 3.11 | 2.96 | 2.85 | 2.76 | 2.70 | 2.65 | 2.60 | 2.53 | 2.46 | 2.39 | 2.35 | 2.31 | 2.27 | 2.22 | 2.18 | 2.13 |
| 15 | 4.54 | 3.68 | 3.29 | 3.06 | 2.90 | 2.79 | 2.71 | 2.64 | 2.59 | 2.54 | 2.48 | 2.40 | 2.33 | 2.29 | 2.25 | 2.20 | 2.16 | 2.11 | 2.07 |
| 16 | 4.49 | 3.63 | 3.24 | 3.01 | 2.85 | 2.74 | 2.66 | 2.59 | 2.54 | 2.49 | 2.42 | 2.35 | 2.28 | 2.24 | 2.19 | 2.15 | 2.11 | 2.06 | 2.01 |
| 17 | 4.45 | 3.59 | 3.20 | 2.96 | 2.81 | 2.70 | 2.61 | 2.55 | 2.49 | 2.45 | 2.38 | 2.31 | 2.23 | 2.19 | 2.15 | 2.10 | 2.06 | 2.01 | 1.96 |
| 18 | 4.41 | 3.55 | 3.16 | 2.93 | 2.77 | 2.66 | 2.58 | 2.51 | 2.46 | 2.41 | 2.34 | 2.27 | 2.19 | 2.15 | 2.11 | 2.06 | 2.02 | 1.97 | 1.92 |
| 19 | 4.38 | 3.52 | 3.13 | 2.90 | 2.74 | 2.63 | 2.54 | 2.48 | 2.42 | 2.38 | 2.31 | 2.23 | 2.16 | 2.11 | 2.07 | 2.03 | 1.98 | 1.93 | 1.88 |
| 20 | 4.35 | 3.49 | 3.10 | 2.87 | 2.71 | 2.60 | 2.51 | 2.45 | 2.39 | 2.35 | 2.28 | 2.20 | 2.12 | 2.08 | 2.04 | 1.99 | 1.95 | 1.90 | 1.84 |
| 21 | 4.32 | 3.47 | 3.07 | 2.84 | 2.68 | 2.57 | 2.49 | 2.42 | 2.37 | 2.32 | 2.25 | 2.18 | 2.10 | 2.05 | 2.01 | 1.96 | 1.92 | 1.87 | 1.81 |
| 22 | 4.30 | 3.44 | 3.05 | 2.82 | 2.66 | 2.55 | 2.46 | 2.40 | 2.34 | 2.30 | 2.23 | 2.15 | 2.07 | 2.03 | 1.98 | 1.94 | 1.89 | 1.84 | 1.78 |
| 23 | 4.28 | 3.42 | 3.03 | 2.80 | 2.64 | 2.53 | 2.44 | 2.37 | 2.32 | 2.27 | 2.20 | 2.13 | 2.05 | 2.01 | 1.96 | 1.91 | 1.86 | 1.81 | 1.76 |
| 24 | 4.26 | 3.40 | 3.01 | 2.78 | 2.62 | 2.51 | 2.42 | 2.36 | 2.30 | 2.25 | 2.18 | 2.11 | 2.03 | 1.98 | 1.94 | 1.89 | 1.84 | 1.79 | 1.73 |
| 25 | 4.24 | 3.39 | 2.99 | 2.76 | 2.60 | 2.49 | 2.40 | 2.34 | 2.28 | 2.24 | 2.16 | 2.09 | 2.01 | 1.96 | 1.92 | 1.87 | 1.82 | 1.77 | 1.71 |
| 26 | 4.23 | 3.37 | 2.98 | 2.74 | 2.59 | 2.47 | 2.39 | 2.32 | 2.27 | 2.22 | 2.15 | 2.07 | 1.99 | 1.95 | 1.90 | 1.85 | 1.80 | 1.75 | 1.69 |
| 27 | 4.21 | 3.35 | 2.96 | 2.73 | 2.57 | 2.46 | 2.37 | 2.31 | 2.25 | 2.20 | 2.13 | 2.06 | 1.97 | 1.93 | 1.88 | 1.84 | 1.79 | 1.73 | 1.67 |
| 28 | 4.20 | 3.34 | 2.95 | 2.71 | 2.56 | 2.45 | 2.36 | 2.29 | 2.24 | 2.19 | 2.12 | 2.04 | 1.96 | 1.91 | 1.87 | 1.82 | 1.77 | 1.71 | 1.65 |
| 29 | 4.18 | 3.33 | 2.93 | 2.70 | 2.55 | 2.43 | 2.35 | 2.28 | 2.22 | 2.18 | 2.10 | 2.03 | 1.94 | 1.90 | 1.85 | 1.81 | 1.75 | 1.70 | 1.64 |
| 30 | 4.17 | 3.32 | 2.92 | 2.69 | 2.53 | 2.42 | 2.33 | 2.27 | 2.21 | 2.16 | 2.09 | 2.01 | 1.93 | 1.89 | 1.84 | 1.79 | 1.74 | 1.68 | 1.62 |
| 40 | 4.08 | 3.23 | 2.84 | 2.61 | 2.45 | 2.34 | 2.25 | 2.18 | 2.12 | 2.08 | 2.00 | 1.92 | 1.84 | 1.79 | 1.74 | 1.69 | 1.64 | 1.58 | 1.51 |
| 60 | 4.00 | 3.15 | 2.76 | 2.53 | 2.37 | 2.25 | 2.17 | 2.10 | 2.04 | 1.99 | 1.92 | 1.84 | 1.75 | 1.70 | 1.65 | 1.59 | 1.53 | 1.47 | 1.39 |
| 120 | 3.92 | 3.07 | 2.68 | 2.45 | 2.29 | 2.17 | 2.09 | 2.02 | 1.96 | 1.91 | 1.83 | 1.75 | 1.66 | 1.61 | 1.55 | 1.50 | 1.43 | 1.35 | 1.25 |
| ∞ | 3.84 | 3.00 | 2.60 | 2.37 | 2.21 | 2.10 | 2.01 | 1.94 | 1.88 | 1.83 | 1.75 | 1.67 | 1.57 | 1.52 | 1.46 | 1.39 | 1.32 | 1.22 | 1.00 |

CRITICAL VALUES OF χ^2 DISTRIBUTION



| Degrees of Freedom | $\chi^2_{.995}$ | $\chi^2_{.990}$ | $\chi^2_{.975}$ | $\chi^2_{.950}$ | $\chi^2_{.900}$ | $\chi^2_{.100}$ | $\chi^2_{.050}$ | $\chi^2_{.025}$ | $\chi^2_{.010}$ | $\chi^2_{.005}$ |
|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1 | 0.000393 | 0.0001571 | 0.0009821 | 0.0039321 | 0.0157908 | 2.70554 | 3.84146 | 5.02389 | 6.63490 | 7.87944 |
| 2 | 0.0100251 | 0.0201007 | 0.0506356 | 0.102587 | 0.210720 | 4.60517 | 5.99147 | 7.37776 | 9.21034 | 10.5966 |
| 3 | 0.0717212 | 0.114832 | 0.215795 | 0.351846 | 0.584375 | 6.25139 | 7.81473 | 9.34840 | 11.3449 | 12.8381 |
| 4 | 0.206990 | 0.297110 | 0.484419 | 0.710721 | 1.063623 | 7.77944 | 9.48773 | 11.1433 | 13.2767 | 14.8602 |
| 5 | 0.411740 | 0.554300 | 0.831211 | 1.145476 | 1.61031 | 9.23635 | 11.0705 | 12.8325 | 15.0863 | 16.7496 |
| 6 | 0.675727 | 0.872085 | 1.237347 | 1.63539 | 2.20413 | 10.6446 | 12.5916 | 14.4494 | 16.8119 | 18.5476 |
| 7 | 0.989265 | 1.239043 | 1.68987 | 2.16735 | 2.83311 | 12.0170 | 14.0671 | 16.0128 | 18.4753 | 20.2777 |
| 8 | 1.344419 | 1.646482 | 2.17973 | 2.73264 | 3.48954 | 13.3616 | 15.5073 | 17.5346 | 20.0902 | 21.9550 |
| 9 | 1.734926 | 2.087912 | 2.70039 | 3.32511 | 4.16816 | 14.6837 | 16.9190 | 19.0228 | 21.6660 | 23.5893 |
| 10 | 2.15585 | 2.55821 | 3.24697 | 3.94030 | 4.86518 | 15.9871 | 18.3070 | 20.4831 | 23.2093 | 25.1882 |
| 11 | 2.60321 | 3.05347 | 3.81575 | 4.57481 | 5.57779 | 17.2750 | 19.6751 | 21.9200 | 24.7250 | 26.7569 |
| 12 | 3.07382 | 3.57056 | 4.40379 | 5.22603 | 6.30380 | 18.5494 | 21.0261 | 23.3367 | 26.2170 | 28.2995 |
| 13 | 3.56503 | 4.10691 | 5.00874 | 5.89186 | 7.04150 | 19.8119 | 22.3621 | 24.7356 | 27.6883 | 29.8194 |
| 14 | 4.07468 | 4.66043 | 5.62872 | 6.57063 | 7.78953 | 21.0642 | 23.6848 | 26.1190 | 29.1413 | 31.3193 |
| 15 | 4.60094 | 5.22935 | 6.26214 | 7.26094 | 8.54675 | 22.3072 | 24.9958 | 27.4884 | 30.5779 | 32.8013 |
| 16 | 5.14224 | 5.81221 | 6.90766 | 7.96164 | 9.31223 | 23.5418 | 26.2962 | 28.8454 | 31.9999 | 34.2672 |
| 17 | 5.69724 | 6.40776 | 7.56418 | 8.67176 | 10.0852 | 24.7690 | 27.5871 | 30.1910 | 33.4087 | 35.7185 |
| 18 | 6.26481 | 7.01491 | 8.23075 | 9.39046 | 10.8649 | 25.9894 | 28.8693 | 31.5264 | 34.8053 | 37.1564 |
| 19 | 6.84398 | 7.63273 | 8.90655 | 10.1170 | 11.6509 | 27.2036 | 30.1435 | 32.8523 | 36.1908 | 38.5822 |
| 20 | 7.43386 | 8.26040 | 9.59083 | 10.8508 | 12.4426 | 28.4120 | 31.4104 | 34.1696 | 37.5662 | 39.9968 |
| 21 | 8.03366 | 8.89720 | 10.28293 | 11.5913 | 13.2396 | 29.6151 | 32.6705 | 35.4789 | 38.9321 | 41.4010 |
| 22 | 8.64272 | 9.54249 | 10.9823 | 12.3380 | 14.0415 | 30.8133 | 33.9244 | 36.7807 | 40.2894 | 42.7956 |
| 23 | 9.26042 | 10.19567 | 11.6885 | 13.0905 | 14.8479 | 32.0069 | 35.1725 | 38.0757 | 41.6384 | 44.1813 |
| 24 | 9.88623 | 10.8564 | 12.4011 | 13.8484 | 15.6587 | 33.1963 | 36.4151 | 39.3641 | 42.9798 | 45.5585 |
| 25 | 10.5197 | 11.5240 | 13.1197 | 14.6114 | 16.4734 | 34.3816 | 37.6525 | 40.6465 | 44.3141 | 46.9278 |
| 26 | 11.1603 | 12.1981 | 13.8439 | 15.3791 | 17.2919 | 35.5631 | 38.8852 | 41.9232 | 45.6417 | 48.2899 |
| 27 | 11.8076 | 12.8786 | 14.5733 | 16.1513 | 18.1138 | 36.7412 | 40.1133 | 43.1944 | 46.9630 | 49.6449 |
| 28 | 12.4613 | 13.5648 | 15.3079 | 16.9279 | 18.9392 | 37.9159 | 41.3372 | 44.4607 | 48.2782 | 50.9933 |
| 29 | 13.1211 | 14.2565 | 16.0471 | 17.7083 | 19.7677 | 39.0875 | 42.5569 | 45.7222 | 49.5879 | 52.3356 |
| 30 | 13.7867 | 14.9535 | 16.7908 | 18.4926 | 20.5992 | 40.2560 | 43.7729 | 46.9792 | 50.8922 | 53.6720 |
| 40 | 20.7065 | 22.1643 | 24.4331 | 26.5093 | 29.0505 | 51.8050 | 55.7585 | 59.3417 | 63.6907 | 66.7659 |
| 50 | 27.9907 | 29.7067 | 32.3574 | 34.7642 | 37.6886 | 63.1671 | 67.5048 | 71.4202 | 76.1539 | 79.4900 |
| 60 | 35.5346 | 37.4848 | 40.4817 | 43.1879 | 46.4589 | 74.3970 | 79.0819 | 83.2976 | 88.3794 | 91.9517 |
| 70 | 43.2752 | 45.4418 | 48.7576 | 51.7393 | 55.3290 | 85.5271 | 90.5312 | 95.0231 | 100.425 | 104.215 |
| 80 | 51.1720 | 53.5400 | 57.1532 | 60.3915 | 64.2778 | 96.5782 | 101.879 | 106.629 | 112.329 | 116.321 |
| 90 | 59.1963 | 61.7541 | 65.6466 | 69.1260 | 73.2912 | 107.565 | 113.145 | 118.136 | 124.116 | 128.299 |
| 100 | 67.3276 | 70.0648 | 74.2219 | 77.9295 | 82.3581 | 118.498 | 124.342 | 129.561 | 135.807 | 140.169 |

Source: Thompson, C. M., "Tables of the Percentage Points of the χ^2 -Distribution," *Biometrika*, ©1941, 32, 188-189. Reproduced by permission of Oxford University Press.

Cumulative Binomial Probabilities $P(X \leq x)$

| | | <i>P</i> | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| <i>n</i> | <i>x</i> | 0.1 | 0.2 | 0.3 | 0.4 | 0.5 | 0.6 | 0.7 | 0.8 | 0.9 | 0.95 | 0.99 |
| 1 | 0 | 0.9000 | 0.8000 | 0.7000 | 0.6000 | 0.5000 | 0.4000 | 0.3000 | 0.2000 | 0.1000 | 0.0500 | 0.0100 |
| 2 | 0 | 0.8100 | 0.6400 | 0.4900 | 0.3600 | 0.2500 | 0.1600 | 0.0900 | 0.0400 | 0.0100 | 0.0025 | 0.0001 |
| | 1 | 0.9900 | 0.9600 | 0.9100 | 0.8400 | 0.7500 | 0.6400 | 0.5100 | 0.3600 | 0.1900 | 0.0975 | 0.0199 |
| 3 | 0 | 0.7290 | 0.5120 | 0.3430 | 0.2160 | 0.1250 | 0.0640 | 0.0270 | 0.0080 | 0.0010 | 0.0001 | 0.0000 |
| | 1 | 0.9720 | 0.8960 | 0.7840 | 0.6480 | 0.5000 | 0.3520 | 0.2160 | 0.1040 | 0.0280 | 0.0073 | 0.0003 |
| | 2 | 0.9990 | 0.9920 | 0.9730 | 0.9360 | 0.8750 | 0.7840 | 0.6570 | 0.4880 | 0.2710 | 0.1426 | 0.0297 |
| 4 | 0 | 0.6561 | 0.4096 | 0.2401 | 0.1296 | 0.0625 | 0.0256 | 0.0081 | 0.0016 | 0.0001 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 1 | 0.9477 | 0.8192 | 0.6517 | 0.4752 | 0.3125 | 0.1792 | 0.0837 | 0.0272 | 0.0037 | 0.0005 | 0.0000 |
| | 2 | 0.9963 | 0.9728 | 0.9163 | 0.8208 | 0.6875 | 0.5248 | 0.3483 | 0.1808 | 0.0523 | 0.0140 | 0.0006 |
| | 3 | 0.9999 | 0.9984 | 0.9919 | 0.9744 | 0.9375 | 0.8704 | 0.7599 | 0.5904 | 0.3439 | 0.1855 | 0.0394 |
| 5 | 0 | 0.5905 | 0.3277 | 0.1681 | 0.0778 | 0.0313 | 0.0102 | 0.0024 | 0.0003 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 1 | 0.9185 | 0.7373 | 0.5282 | 0.3370 | 0.1875 | 0.0870 | 0.0308 | 0.0067 | 0.0005 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 2 | 0.9914 | 0.9421 | 0.8369 | 0.6826 | 0.5000 | 0.3174 | 0.1631 | 0.0579 | 0.0086 | 0.0012 | 0.0000 |
| | 3 | 0.9995 | 0.9933 | 0.9692 | 0.9130 | 0.8125 | 0.6630 | 0.4718 | 0.2627 | 0.0815 | 0.0226 | 0.0010 |
| | 4 | 1.0000 | 0.9997 | 0.9976 | 0.9898 | 0.9688 | 0.9222 | 0.8319 | 0.6723 | 0.4095 | 0.2262 | 0.0490 |
| 6 | 0 | 0.5314 | 0.2621 | 0.1176 | 0.0467 | 0.0156 | 0.0041 | 0.0007 | 0.0001 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 1 | 0.8857 | 0.6554 | 0.4202 | 0.2333 | 0.1094 | 0.0410 | 0.0109 | 0.0016 | 0.0001 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 2 | 0.9842 | 0.9011 | 0.7443 | 0.5443 | 0.3438 | 0.1792 | 0.0705 | 0.0170 | 0.0013 | 0.0001 | 0.0000 |
| | 3 | 0.9987 | 0.9830 | 0.9295 | 0.8208 | 0.6563 | 0.4557 | 0.2557 | 0.0989 | 0.0159 | 0.0022 | 0.0000 |
| | 4 | 0.9999 | 0.9984 | 0.9891 | 0.9590 | 0.8906 | 0.7667 | 0.5798 | 0.3446 | 0.1143 | 0.0328 | 0.0015 |
| | 5 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9993 | 0.9959 | 0.9844 | 0.9533 | 0.8824 | 0.7379 | 0.4686 | 0.2649 | 0.0585 |
| 7 | 0 | 0.4783 | 0.2097 | 0.0824 | 0.0280 | 0.0078 | 0.0016 | 0.0002 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 1 | 0.8503 | 0.5767 | 0.3294 | 0.1586 | 0.0625 | 0.0188 | 0.0038 | 0.0004 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 2 | 0.9743 | 0.8520 | 0.6471 | 0.4199 | 0.2266 | 0.0963 | 0.0288 | 0.0047 | 0.0002 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 3 | 0.9973 | 0.9667 | 0.8740 | 0.7102 | 0.5000 | 0.2898 | 0.1260 | 0.0333 | 0.0027 | 0.0002 | 0.0000 |
| | 4 | 0.9998 | 0.9953 | 0.9712 | 0.9037 | 0.7734 | 0.5801 | 0.3529 | 0.1480 | 0.0257 | 0.0038 | 0.0000 |
| | 5 | 1.0000 | 0.9996 | 0.9962 | 0.9812 | 0.9375 | 0.8414 | 0.6706 | 0.4233 | 0.1497 | 0.0444 | 0.0020 |
| | 6 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9998 | 0.9984 | 0.9922 | 0.9720 | 0.9176 | 0.7903 | 0.5217 | 0.3017 | 0.0679 |
| 8 | 0 | 0.4305 | 0.1678 | 0.0576 | 0.0168 | 0.0039 | 0.0007 | 0.0001 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 1 | 0.8131 | 0.5033 | 0.2553 | 0.1064 | 0.0352 | 0.0085 | 0.0013 | 0.0001 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 2 | 0.9619 | 0.7969 | 0.5518 | 0.3154 | 0.1445 | 0.0498 | 0.0113 | 0.0012 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 3 | 0.9950 | 0.9437 | 0.8059 | 0.5941 | 0.3633 | 0.1737 | 0.0580 | 0.0104 | 0.0004 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 4 | 0.9996 | 0.9896 | 0.9420 | 0.8263 | 0.6367 | 0.4059 | 0.1941 | 0.0563 | 0.0050 | 0.0004 | 0.0000 |
| | 5 | 1.0000 | 0.9988 | 0.9887 | 0.9502 | 0.8555 | 0.6846 | 0.4482 | 0.2031 | 0.0381 | 0.0058 | 0.0001 |
| | 6 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9987 | 0.9915 | 0.9648 | 0.8936 | 0.7447 | 0.4967 | 0.1869 | 0.0572 | 0.0027 |
| | 7 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9993 | 0.9961 | 0.9832 | 0.9424 | 0.8322 | 0.5695 | 0.3366 | 0.0773 |
| 9 | 0 | 0.3874 | 0.1342 | 0.0404 | 0.0101 | 0.0020 | 0.0003 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 1 | 0.7748 | 0.4362 | 0.1960 | 0.0705 | 0.0195 | 0.0038 | 0.0004 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 2 | 0.9470 | 0.7382 | 0.4628 | 0.2318 | 0.0898 | 0.0250 | 0.0043 | 0.0003 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 3 | 0.9917 | 0.9144 | 0.7297 | 0.4826 | 0.2539 | 0.0994 | 0.0253 | 0.0031 | 0.0001 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 4 | 0.9991 | 0.9804 | 0.9012 | 0.7334 | 0.5000 | 0.2666 | 0.0988 | 0.0196 | 0.0009 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 5 | 0.9999 | 0.9969 | 0.9747 | 0.9006 | 0.7461 | 0.5174 | 0.2703 | 0.0856 | 0.0083 | 0.0006 | 0.0000 |
| | 6 | 1.0000 | 0.9997 | 0.9957 | 0.9750 | 0.9102 | 0.7682 | 0.5372 | 0.2618 | 0.0530 | 0.0084 | 0.0001 |
| | 7 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9996 | 0.9962 | 0.9805 | 0.9295 | 0.8040 | 0.5638 | 0.2252 | 0.0712 | 0.0034 |
| | 8 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9997 | 0.9980 | 0.9899 | 0.9596 | 0.8658 | 0.6126 | 0.3698 | 0.0865 |

Montgomery, Douglas C., and George C. Runger, *Applied Statistics and Probability for Engineers*, 4th ed. Reproduced by permission of John Wiley & Sons, 2007.

Cumulative Binomial Probabilities $P(X \leq x)$ (continued)

| | | <i>P</i> | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| <i>n</i> | <i>x</i> | 0.1 | 0.2 | 0.3 | 0.4 | 0.5 | 0.6 | 0.7 | 0.8 | 0.9 | 0.95 | 0.99 |
| 10 | 0 | 0.3487 | 0.1074 | 0.0282 | 0.0060 | 0.0010 | 0.0001 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 1 | 0.7361 | 0.3758 | 0.1493 | 0.0464 | 0.0107 | 0.0017 | 0.0001 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 2 | 0.9298 | 0.6778 | 0.3828 | 0.1673 | 0.0547 | 0.0123 | 0.0016 | 0.0001 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 3 | 0.9872 | 0.8791 | 0.6496 | 0.3823 | 0.1719 | 0.0548 | 0.0106 | 0.0009 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 4 | 0.9984 | 0.9672 | 0.8497 | 0.6331 | 0.3770 | 0.1662 | 0.0473 | 0.0064 | 0.0001 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 5 | 0.9999 | 0.9936 | 0.9527 | 0.8338 | 0.6230 | 0.3669 | 0.1503 | 0.0328 | 0.0016 | 0.0001 | 0.0000 |
| | 6 | 1.0000 | 0.9991 | 0.9894 | 0.9452 | 0.8281 | 0.6177 | 0.3504 | 0.1209 | 0.0128 | 0.0010 | 0.0000 |
| | 7 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9984 | 0.9877 | 0.9453 | 0.8327 | 0.6172 | 0.3222 | 0.0702 | 0.0115 | 0.0001 |
| | 8 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9983 | 0.9893 | 0.9536 | 0.8507 | 0.6242 | 0.2639 | 0.0861 | 0.0043 |
| | 9 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9990 | 0.9940 | 0.9718 | 0.8926 | 0.6513 | 0.4013 | 0.0956 |
| 15 | 0 | 0.2059 | 0.0352 | 0.0047 | 0.0005 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 1 | 0.5490 | 0.1671 | 0.0353 | 0.0052 | 0.0005 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 2 | 0.8159 | 0.3980 | 0.1268 | 0.0271 | 0.0037 | 0.0003 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 3 | 0.9444 | 0.6482 | 0.2969 | 0.0905 | 0.0176 | 0.0019 | 0.0001 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 4 | 0.9873 | 0.8358 | 0.5155 | 0.2173 | 0.0592 | 0.0093 | 0.0007 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 5 | 0.9978 | 0.9389 | 0.7216 | 0.4032 | 0.1509 | 0.0338 | 0.0037 | 0.0001 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 6 | 0.9997 | 0.9819 | 0.8689 | 0.6098 | 0.3036 | 0.0950 | 0.0152 | 0.0008 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 7 | 1.0000 | 0.9958 | 0.9500 | 0.7869 | 0.5000 | 0.2131 | 0.0500 | 0.0042 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 8 | 1.0000 | 0.9992 | 0.9848 | 0.9050 | 0.6964 | 0.3902 | 0.1311 | 0.0181 | 0.0003 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 9 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9963 | 0.9662 | 0.8491 | 0.5968 | 0.2784 | 0.0611 | 0.0022 | 0.0001 | 0.0000 |
| | 10 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9993 | 0.9907 | 0.9408 | 0.7827 | 0.4845 | 0.1642 | 0.0127 | 0.0006 | 0.0000 |
| | 11 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9981 | 0.9824 | 0.9095 | 0.7031 | 0.3518 | 0.0556 | 0.0055 | 0.0000 |
| | 12 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9997 | 0.9963 | 0.9729 | 0.8732 | 0.6020 | 0.1841 | 0.0362 | 0.0004 |
| | 13 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9995 | 0.9948 | 0.9647 | 0.8329 | 0.4510 | 0.1710 | 0.0096 |
| | 14 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9995 | 0.9953 | 0.9648 | 0.7941 | 0.5367 | 0.1399 |
| 20 | 0 | 0.1216 | 0.0115 | 0.0008 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 1 | 0.3917 | 0.0692 | 0.0076 | 0.0005 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 2 | 0.6769 | 0.2061 | 0.0355 | 0.0036 | 0.0002 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 3 | 0.8670 | 0.4114 | 0.1071 | 0.0160 | 0.0013 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 4 | 0.9568 | 0.6296 | 0.2375 | 0.0510 | 0.0059 | 0.0003 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 5 | 0.9887 | 0.8042 | 0.4164 | 0.1256 | 0.0207 | 0.0016 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 6 | 0.9976 | 0.9133 | 0.6080 | 0.2500 | 0.0577 | 0.0065 | 0.0003 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 7 | 0.9996 | 0.9679 | 0.7723 | 0.4159 | 0.1316 | 0.0210 | 0.0013 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 8 | 0.9999 | 0.9900 | 0.8867 | 0.5956 | 0.2517 | 0.0565 | 0.0051 | 0.0001 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 9 | 1.0000 | 0.9974 | 0.9520 | 0.7553 | 0.4119 | 0.1275 | 0.0171 | 0.0006 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 10 | 1.0000 | 0.9994 | 0.9829 | 0.8725 | 0.5881 | 0.2447 | 0.0480 | 0.0026 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 11 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9949 | 0.9435 | 0.7483 | 0.4044 | 0.1133 | 0.0100 | 0.0001 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 12 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9987 | 0.9790 | 0.8684 | 0.5841 | 0.2277 | 0.0321 | 0.0004 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 13 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9997 | 0.9935 | 0.9423 | 0.7500 | 0.3920 | 0.0867 | 0.0024 | 0.0000 | 0.0000 |
| | 14 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9984 | 0.9793 | 0.8744 | 0.5836 | 0.1958 | 0.0113 | 0.0003 | 0.0000 |
| | 15 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9997 | 0.9941 | 0.9490 | 0.7625 | 0.3704 | 0.0432 | 0.0026 | 0.0000 |
| | 16 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9987 | 0.9840 | 0.8929 | 0.5886 | 0.1330 | 0.0159 | 0.0000 |
| | 17 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9998 | 0.9964 | 0.9645 | 0.7939 | 0.3231 | 0.0755 | 0.0010 |
| | 18 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9995 | 0.9924 | 0.9308 | 0.6083 | 0.2642 | 0.0169 |
| | 19 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9992 | 0.9885 | 0.8784 | 0.6415 | 0.1821 |

Montgomery, Douglas C., and George C. Runger, *Applied Statistics and Probability for Engineers*, 4th ed. Reproduced by permission of John Wiley & Sons, 2007.

STATISTICAL QUALITY CONTROL

Average and Range Charts

| n | A_2 | D_3 | D_4 |
|-----|-------|-------|-------|
| 2 | 1.880 | 0 | 3.268 |
| 3 | 1.023 | 0 | 2.574 |
| 4 | 0.729 | 0 | 2.282 |
| 5 | 0.577 | 0 | 2.114 |
| 6 | 0.483 | 0 | 2.004 |
| 7 | 0.419 | 0.076 | 1.924 |
| 8 | 0.373 | 0.136 | 1.864 |
| 9 | 0.337 | 0.184 | 1.816 |
| 10 | 0.308 | 0.223 | 1.777 |

X_i = an individual observation

n = the sample size of a group

k = the number of groups

R = (range) the difference between the largest and smallest observations in a sample of size n .

$$\bar{X} = \frac{X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_n}{n}$$

$$\bar{\bar{X}} = \frac{\bar{X}_1 + \bar{X}_2 + \dots + \bar{X}_k}{k}$$

$$\bar{R} = \frac{R_1 + R_2 + \dots + R_k}{k}$$

The R Chart formulas are:

$$CL_R = \bar{R}$$

$$UCL_R = D_4 \bar{R}$$

$$LCL_R = D_3 \bar{R}$$

The \bar{X} Chart formulas are:

$$CL_X = \bar{\bar{X}}$$

$$UCL_X = \bar{\bar{X}} + A_2 \bar{R}$$

$$LCL_X = \bar{\bar{X}} - A_2 \bar{R}$$

Standard Deviation Charts

| n | A_3 | B_3 | B_4 |
|-----|-------|-------|-------|
| 2 | 2.659 | 0 | 3.267 |
| 3 | 1.954 | 0 | 2.568 |
| 4 | 1.628 | 0 | 2.266 |
| 5 | 1.427 | 0 | 2.089 |
| 6 | 1.287 | 0.030 | 1.970 |
| 7 | 1.182 | 0.119 | 1.882 |
| 8 | 1.099 | 0.185 | 1.815 |
| 9 | 1.032 | 0.239 | 1.761 |
| 10 | 0.975 | 0.284 | 1.716 |

$$UCL_X = \bar{\bar{X}} + A_3 \bar{S}$$

$$CL_X = \bar{\bar{X}}$$

$$LCL_X = \bar{\bar{X}} - A_3 \bar{S}$$

$$UCL_S = B_4 \bar{S}$$

$$CL_S = \bar{S}$$

$$LCL_S = B_3 \bar{S}$$

Approximations

The following table and equations may be used to generate initial approximations of the items indicated.

| n | c_4 | d_2 | d_3 |
|-----|--------|-------|-------|
| 2 | 0.7979 | 1.128 | 0.853 |
| 3 | 0.8862 | 1.693 | 0.888 |
| 4 | 0.9213 | 2.059 | 0.880 |
| 5 | 0.9400 | 2.326 | 0.864 |
| 6 | 0.9515 | 2.534 | 0.848 |
| 7 | 0.9594 | 2.704 | 0.833 |
| 8 | 0.9650 | 2.847 | 0.820 |
| 9 | 0.9693 | 2.970 | 0.808 |
| 10 | 0.9727 | 3.078 | 0.797 |

$$\hat{\sigma} = \bar{R}/d_2$$

$$\hat{\sigma} = \bar{S}/c_4$$

$$\sigma_R = d_3 \hat{\sigma}$$

$$\sigma_S = \hat{\sigma} \sqrt{1 - c_4^2}, \text{ where}$$

$\hat{\sigma}$ = an estimate of σ

σ_R = an estimate of the standard deviation of the ranges of the samples

σ_S = an estimate of the standard deviation of the standard deviations of the samples

Tests for Out of Control

1. A single point falls outside the (three sigma) control limits.
2. Two out of three successive points fall on the same side of and more than two sigma units from the center line.
3. Four out of five successive points fall on the same side of and more than one sigma unit from the center line.
4. Eight successive points fall on the same side of the center line.

Probability and Density Functions: Means and Variances

| Variable | Equation | Mean | Variance |
|----------------------|--|--|---|
| Binomial Coefficient | $\binom{n}{x} = \frac{n!}{x!(n-x)!}$ | | |
| Binomial | $b(x; n, p) = \binom{n}{x} p^x (1-p)^{n-x}$ | np | $np(1-p)$ |
| Hyper Geometric | $h(x; n, r, N) = \binom{r}{x} \frac{\binom{N-r}{n-x}}{\binom{N}{n}}$ | $\frac{nr}{N}$ | $\frac{r(N-r)n(N-n)}{N^2(N-1)}$ |
| Poisson | $f(x; \lambda) = \frac{\lambda^x e^{-\lambda}}{x!}$ | λ | λ |
| Geometric | $g(x; p) = p(1-p)^{x-1}$ | $1/p$ | $(1-p)/p^2$ |
| Negative Binomial | $f(y; r, p) = \binom{y+r-1}{r-1} p^r (1-p)^y$ | r/p | $r(1-p)/p^2$ |
| Multinomial | $f(x_1, \dots, x_k) = \frac{n!}{x_1! \dots x_k!} p_1^{x_1} \dots p_k^{x_k}$ | np_i | $np_i(1-p_i)$ |
| Uniform | $f(x) = 1/(b-a)$ | $(a+b)/2$ | $(b-a)^2/12$ |
| Gamma | $f(x) = \frac{x^{\alpha-1} e^{-x/\beta}}{\beta^\alpha \Gamma(\alpha)}$; $\alpha > 0, \beta > 0$ | $\alpha\beta$ | $\alpha\beta^2$ |
| Exponential | $f(x) = \frac{1}{\beta} e^{-x/\beta}$ | β | β^2 |
| Weibull | $f(x) = \frac{\alpha}{\beta} x^{\alpha-1} e^{-x^\alpha/\beta}$ | $\beta^{1/\alpha} \Gamma[(\alpha+1)/\alpha]$ | $\beta^{2/\alpha} \left[\Gamma\left(\frac{\alpha+1}{\alpha}\right) - \Gamma^2\left(\frac{\alpha+1}{\alpha}\right) \right]$ |
| Normal | $f(x) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x-\mu}{\sigma}\right)^2}$ | μ | σ^2 |
| Triangular | $f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{2(x-a)}{(b-a)(m-a)} & \text{if } a \leq x \leq m \\ \frac{2(b-x)}{(b-a)(b-m)} & \text{if } m < x \leq b \end{cases}$ | $\frac{a+b+m}{3}$ | $\frac{a^2 + b^2 + m^2 - ab - am - bm}{18}$ |

CHEMISTRY

DEFINITIONS

Avogadro's Number – The number of elementary particles in a mol of a substance.

$$1 \text{ mol} = 1 \text{ gram mole}$$

$$1 \text{ mol} = 6.02 \times 10^{23} \text{ particles}$$

Mol – The amount of a substance that contains as many particles as 12 grams of ^{12}C (carbon 12).

Molarity of Solutions – The number of gram moles of a substance dissolved in a liter of solution.

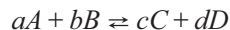
Molality of Solutions – The number of gram moles of a substance per 1,000 grams of solvent.

Normality of Solutions – The product of the molarity of a solution and the number of valence changes taking place in a reaction.

Molar Volume of an Ideal Gas [at 0°C (32°F) and 1 atm (14.7 psia)]; 22.4 L/(g mole) [359 ft³/(lb mole)].

Mole Fraction of a Substance – The ratio of the number of moles of a substance to the total moles present in a mixture of substances.

Equilibrium Constant of a Chemical Reaction



$$K_{eq} = \frac{[C]^c [D]^d}{[A]^a [B]^b}$$

Le Chatelier's Principle for Chemical Equilibrium – When a stress (such as a change in concentration, pressure, or temperature) is applied to a system in equilibrium, the equilibrium shifts in such a way that tends to relieve the stress.

Heats of Reaction, Solution, Formation, and Combustion – Chemical processes generally involve the absorption or evolution of heat. In an endothermic process, heat is absorbed (enthalpy change is positive). In an exothermic process, heat is evolved (enthalpy change is negative).

Solubility Product of a slightly soluble substance AB :



$$\text{Solubility Product Constant} = K_{sp} = [A^+]^m [B^-]^n$$

Faraday's Law – One gram equivalent weight of matter is chemically altered at each electrode for 96,485 coulombs, or 1 Faraday, of electricity passed through the electrolyte.

Faraday's Equation

$$m = \left(\frac{Q}{F}\right)\left(\frac{M}{z}\right), \text{ where}$$

m = mass (grams) of substance liberated at electrode

Q = total electric charge passed through electrolyte (coulomb or ampere•second)

F = 96,485 coulombs/mol

M = molar mass of the substance (g/mol)

z = valence number

A *catalyst* is a substance that alters the rate of a chemical reaction. The catalyst does not affect the position of equilibrium of a reversible reaction.

The *atomic number* is the number of protons in the atomic nucleus.

Boiling Point Elevation – The presence of a nonvolatile solute in a solvent raises the boiling point of the resulting solution.

Freezing Point Depression – The presence of a solute lowers the freezing point of the resulting solution.

Nernst Equation

$$\Delta E = (E_2^0 - E_1^0) - \frac{RT}{nF} \ln \left[\frac{M_1^{n+}}{M_2^{n+}} \right]$$

E_1^0 = half-cell potential (volts)

R = ideal gas constant

n = number of electrons participating in either half-cell reaction

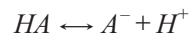
T = absolute temperature (K)

M_1^{n+} and M_2^{n+} = molar ion concentration

ACIDS, BASES, and pH (aqueous solutions)

$$\text{pH} = \log_{10} \left(\frac{1}{[H^+]} \right), \text{ where}$$

$[H^+]$ = molar concentration of hydrogen ion, in gram moles per liter. *Acids* have $\text{pH} < 7$. *Bases* have $\text{pH} > 7$.



$$K_a = \frac{[A^-][H^+]}{[HA]}$$

$$\text{p}K_a = -\log(K_a)$$

For water $[H^+][OH^-] = 10^{-14}$

[] denotes molarity

Periodic Table of Elements

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------|--|------------|--|
| | | | | | | | | | | | VIII | | | | | | | | | | |
| I | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | 2 | | | | | |
| 1 H 1.0079 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | He 4.0026 | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | III | | IV | | V | | VI | | VII | |
| 3 Li 6.941 | II | | | | | | | | | | | 5 B 10.811 | 6 C 12.011 | 7 N 14.007 | 8 O 15.999 | 9 F 18.998 | 10 Ne 20.179 | | | | |
| 11 Na 22.990 | 4 Be 9.0122 | | | | | | | | | | | 13 Al 26.981 | 14 Si 28.086 | 15 P 30.974 | 16 S 32.066 | 17 Cl 35.453 | 18 Ar 39.948 | | | | |
| 19 K 39.098 | 20 Ca 40.078 | 21 Sc 44.956 | 22 Ti 47.88 | 23 V 50.941 | 24 Cr 51.996 | 25 Mn 54.938 | 26 Fe 55.847 | 27 Co 58.933 | 28 Ni 58.69 | 29 Cu 63.546 | 30 Zn 65.39 | 31 Ga 69.723 | 32 Ge 72.61 | 33 As 74.921 | 34 Se 78.96 | 35 Br 79.904 | 36 Kr 83.80 | | | | |
| 37 Rb 85.468 | 38 Sr 87.62 | 39 Y 88.906 | 40 Zr 91.224 | 41 Nb 92.906 | 42 Mo 95.94 | 43 Tc (98) | 44 Ru 101.07 | 45 Rh 102.91 | 46 Pd 106.42 | 47 Ag 107.87 | 48 Cd 112.41 | 49 In 114.82 | 50 Sn 118.71 | 51 Sb 121.75 | 52 Te 127.60 | 53 I 126.90 | 54 Xe 131.29 | | | | |
| 55 Cs 132.91 | 56 Ba 137.33 | 57–71 | 72 Hf 178.49 | 73 Ta 180.95 | 74 W 183.85 | 75 Re 186.21 | 76 Os 190.2 | 77 Ir 192.22 | 78 Pt 195.08 | 79 Au 196.97 | 80 Hg 200.59 | 81 Tl 204.38 | 82 Pb 207.2 | 83 Bi 208.98 | 84 Po (209) | 85 At (210) | 86 Rn (222) | | | | |
| 87 Fr (223) | 88 Ra 226.02 | 89–103 | 104 Rf (261) | 105 Db (262) | 106 Sg (266) | 107 Bh (264) | 108 Hs (269) | 109 Mt (268) | 110 Ds (269) | 111 Rg (272) | 112 Cn (277) | 113 Uut unknown | 114 Fl (289) | 115 Uup unknown | 116 Lv (298) | 117 Uus unknown | 118 Uuo unknown | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| Lanthanide Series | 57 La 138.91 | 58 Ce 140.12 | 59 Pr 140.91 | 60 Nd 144.24 | 61 Pm (145) | 62 Sm 150.36 | 63 Eu 151.96 | 64 Gd 157.25 | 65 Tb 158.92 | 66 Dy 162.50 | 67 Ho 164.93 | 68 Er 167.26 | 69 Tm 168.93 | 70 Yb 173.04 | 71 Lu 174.97 |
| Actinide Series | 89 Ac 227.03 | 90 Th 232.04 | 91 Pa 231.04 | 92 U 238.03 | 93 Np 237.05 | 94 Pu (244) | 95 Am (243) | 96 Cm (247) | 97 Bk (247) | 98 Cf (251) | 99 Es (252) | 100 Fm (257) | 101 Md (258) | 102 No (259) | 103 Lr (260) |

SELECTED RULES OF NOMENCLATURE IN ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

Alcohols

Three systems of nomenclature are in general use. In the first, the alkyl group attached to the hydroxyl group is named and the separate word *alcohol* is added. In the second system, the higher alcohols are considered as derivatives of the first member of the series, which is called *carbinol*. The third method is the modified Geneva system in which (1) the longest carbon chain containing the hydroxyl group determines the surname, (2) the ending *e* of the corresponding saturated hydrocarbon is replaced by *ol*, (3) the carbon chain is numbered from the end that gives the hydroxyl group the smaller number, and (4) the side chains are named and their positions indicated by the proper number. Alcohols in general are divided into three classes. In *primary* alcohols the hydroxyl group is united to a primary carbon atom, that is, a carbon atom united directly to only one other carbon atom. *Secondary* alcohols have the hydroxyl group united to a secondary carbon atom, that is, one united to two other carbon atoms. *Tertiary* alcohols have the hydroxyl group united to a tertiary carbon atom, that is, one united to three other carbon atoms.

Ethers

Ethers are generally designated by naming the alkyl groups and adding the word *ether*. The group RO is known as an *alkoxyl group*. Ethers may also be named as alkoxy derivatives of hydrocarbons.

Carboxylic Acids

The name of each linear carboxylic acid is unique to the number of carbon atoms it contains. 1: (one carbon atom) Formic. 2: Acetic. 3: Propionic. 4: Butyric. 5: Valeric. 6: Caproic. 7: Enanthic. 8: Caprylic. 9: Pelargonic. 10: Capric.

Aldehydes

The common names of aldehydes are derived from the acids that would be formed on oxidation, that is, the acids having the same number of carbon atoms. In general the *ic acid* is dropped and *aldehyde* added.

Ketones

The common names of ketones are derived from the acid which on pyrolysis would yield the ketone. A second method, especially useful for naming mixed ketones, simply names the alkyl groups and adds the word *ketone*. The name is written as three separate words.

Unsaturated Acyclic Hydrocarbons




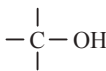
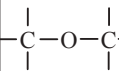



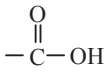
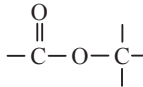
The simplest compounds in this class of hydrocarbon chemicals are olefins or alkenes with a single carbon-carbon double bond, having the general formula of C_nH_{2n} . The simplest example in this category is ethylene, C_2H_4 .

Dienes are acyclic hydrocarbons with two carbon-carbon double bonds, having the general formula of C_nH_{2n-2} ; butadiene (C_4H_6) is an example of such.

Similarly, trienes have three carbon-carbon double bonds with the general formula of C_nH_{2n-4} ; hexatriene (C_6H_8) is such an example.

The simplest alkynes have a single carbon-carbon triple bond with the general formula of C_nH_{2n-2} . This series of compounds begins with acetylene, or C_2H_2 .

Important Families of Organic Compounds

| | FAMILY | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|--|---------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Alkane | Alkene | Alkyne | Arene | Haloalkane | Alcohol | Ether | Amine | Aldehyde | Ketone | Carboxylic Acid | Ester |
| Specific Example | CH ₃ CH ₃ | H ₂ C = CH ₂ | HC ≡ CH |  | CH ₃ CH ₂ Cl | CH ₃ CH ₂ OH | CH ₃ OCH ₃ | CH ₃ NH ₂ | $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{CH}_3\text{CH} \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{CH}_3\text{CCH}_3 \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{CH}_3\text{COH} \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_3 \end{array}$ |
| IUPAC Name | Ethane | Ethene or Ethylene | Ethyne or Acetylene | Benzene | Chloroethane | Ethanol | Methoxy- methane | Methan- amine | Ethanal | Acetone | Ethanoic Acid | Methyl ethanoate |
| Common Name | Ethane | Ethylene | Acetylene | Benzene | Ethyl chloride | Ethyl alcohol | Dimethyl ether | Methyl- amine | Acetal- dehyde | Dimethyl ketone | Acetic Acid | Methyl acetate |
| General Formula | RH | RCH = CH ₂ RCH = CHR R ₂ C = CHR R ₂ C = CR ₂ | RC ≡ CH RC ≡ CR | ArH | RX | ROH | ROR | RNH ₂ R ₂ NH R ₃ N | $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{RCH} \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{R}_1\text{CR}_2 \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{RCOH} \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{RCOR} \end{array}$ |
| Functional Group | C-H and C-C bonds |  | -C ≡ C- | Aromatic Ring |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

**Common Names and Molecular Formulas of Some Industrial
(Inorganic and Organic) Chemicals**

| Common Name | Chemical Name | Molecular Formula |
|---------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| Muriatic acid | Hydrochloric acid | HCl |
| Cumene | Isopropyl benzene | $C_6H_5CH(CH_3)_2$ |
| Styrene | Vinyl benzene | $C_6H_5CH=CH_2$ |
| — | Hypochlorite ion | OCl^{-1} |
| — | Chlorite ion | ClO_2^{-1} |
| — | Chlorate ion | ClO_3^{-1} |
| — | Perchlorate ion | ClO_4^{-1} |
| Gypsum | Calcium sulfate | $CaSO_4$ |
| Limestone | Calcium carbonate | $CaCO_3$ |
| Dolomite | Magnesium carbonate | $MgCO_3$ |
| Bauxite | Aluminum oxide | Al_2O_3 |
| Anatase | Titanium dioxide | TiO_2 |
| Rutile | Titanium dioxide | TiO_2 |
| — | Vinyl chloride | $CH_2=CHCl$ |
| — | Ethylene oxide | C_2H_4O |
| Pyrite | Ferrous sulfide | FeS |
| Epsom salt | Magnesium sulfate | $MgSO_4$ |
| Hydroquinone | p-Dihydroxy benzene | $C_6H_4(OH)_2$ |
| Soda ash | Sodium carbonate | Na_2CO_3 |
| Salt | Sodium chloride | NaCl |
| Potash | Potassium carbonate | K_2CO_3 |
| Baking soda | Sodium bicarbonate | $NaHCO_3$ |
| Lye | Sodium hydroxide | NaOH |
| Caustic soda | Sodium hydroxide | NaOH |
| — | Vinyl alcohol | $CH_2=CHOH$ |
| Carbolic acid | Phenol | C_6H_5OH |
| Aniline | Aminobenzene | $C_6H_5NH_2$ |
| — | Urea | $(NH_2)_2CO$ |
| Toluene | Methyl benzene | $C_6H_5CH_3$ |
| Xylene | Dimethyl benzene | $C_6H_4(CH_3)_2$ |
| — | Silane | SiH_4 |
| — | Ozone | O_3 |
| Neopentane | 2,2-Dimethylpropane | $CH_3C(CH_3)_2CH_3$ |
| Magnetite | Ferrous/ferric oxide | Fe_3O_4 |
| Quicksilver | Mercury | Hg |
| Heavy water | Deuterium oxide | $(H^2)_2O$ |
| — | Borane | BH_3 |
| Eyewash | Boric acid (solution) | H_3BO_3 |
| — | Deuterium | H^2 |
| — | Tritium | H^3 |
| Laughing gas | Nitrous oxide | N_2O |
| — | Phosgene | $COCl_2$ |
| Wolfram | Tungsten | W |
| — | Permanganate ion | MnO_4^{-1} |
| — | Dichromate ion | $Cr_2O_7^{-2}$ |
| — | Hydronium ion | H_3O^{+1} |
| Brine | Sodium chloride (solution) | NaCl |
| Battery acid | Sulfuric acid | H_2SO_4 |

ELECTROCHEMISTRY

Cathode – The electrode at which reduction occurs.

Anode – The electrode at which oxidation occurs.

Oxidation – The loss of electrons.

Reduction – The gaining of electrons.

Cation – Positive ion

Anion – Negative ion

| Standard Oxidation Potentials for Corrosion Reactions* | |
|---|---|
| Corrosion Reaction | Potential, E_o , Volts vs. Normal Hydrogen Electrode |
| $\text{Au} \rightarrow \text{Au}^{3+} + 3\text{e}^-$ | -1.498 |
| $2\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{O}_2 + 4\text{H}^+ + 4\text{e}^-$ | -1.229 |
| $\text{Pt} \rightarrow \text{Pt}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$ | -1.200 |
| $\text{Pd} \rightarrow \text{Pd}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$ | -0.987 |
| $\text{Ag} \rightarrow \text{Ag}^+ + \text{e}^-$ | -0.799 |
| $2\text{Hg} \rightarrow \text{Hg}_2^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$ | -0.788 |
| $\text{Fe}^{2+} \rightarrow \text{Fe}^{3+} + \text{e}^-$ | -0.771 |
| $4(\text{OH})^- \rightarrow \text{O}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} + 4\text{e}^-$ | -0.401 |
| $\text{Cu} \rightarrow \text{Cu}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$ | -0.337 |
| $\text{Sn}^{2+} \rightarrow \text{Sn}^{4+} + 2\text{e}^-$ | -0.150 |
| $\text{H}_2 \rightarrow 2\text{H}^+ + 2\text{e}^-$ | 0.000 |
| $\text{Pb} \rightarrow \text{Pb}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$ | +0.126 |
| $\text{Sn} \rightarrow \text{Sn}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$ | +0.136 |
| $\text{Ni} \rightarrow \text{Ni}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$ | +0.250 |
| $\text{Co} \rightarrow \text{Co}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$ | +0.277 |
| $\text{Cd} \rightarrow \text{Cd}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$ | +0.403 |
| $\text{Fe} \rightarrow \text{Fe}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$ | +0.440 |
| $\text{Cr} \rightarrow \text{Cr}^{3+} + 3\text{e}^-$ | +0.744 |
| $\text{Zn} \rightarrow \text{Zn}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$ | +0.763 |
| $\text{Al} \rightarrow \text{Al}^{3+} + 3\text{e}^-$ | +1.662 |
| $\text{Mg} \rightarrow \text{Mg}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$ | +2.363 |
| $\text{Na} \rightarrow \text{Na}^+ + \text{e}^-$ | +2.714 |
| $\text{K} \rightarrow \text{K}^+ + \text{e}^-$ | +2.925 |

* Measured at 25°C. Reactions are written as anode half-cells.
Arrows are reversed for cathode half-cells.

Flinn, Richard A., and Paul K. Trojan, *Engineering Materials and Their Applications*, 4th ed., Houghton Mifflin Company, 1990.

NOTE: In some chemistry texts, the reactions and the signs of the values (in this table) are reversed; for example, the half-cell potential of zinc is given as -0.763 volt for the reaction $\text{Zn}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^- \rightarrow \text{Zn}$. When the potential E_o is positive, the reaction proceeds spontaneously as written.

MATERIALS SCIENCE/STRUCTURE OF MATTER

ATOMIC BONDING

Primary Bonds

- Ionic (e.g., salts, metal oxides)
- Covalent (e.g., within polymer molecules)
- Metallic (e.g., metals)

CORROSION

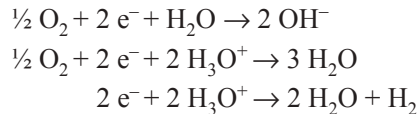
A table listing the standard electromotive potentials of metals is shown on the previous page.

For corrosion to occur, there must be an anode and a cathode in electrical contact in the presence of an electrolyte.

Anode Reaction (Oxidation) of a Typical Metal, M



Possible Cathode Reactions (Reduction)



When dissimilar metals are in contact, the more electropositive one becomes the anode in a corrosion cell. Different regions of carbon steel can also result in a corrosion reaction: e.g., cold-worked regions are anodic to noncold-worked; different oxygen concentrations can cause oxygen-deficient regions to become cathodic to oxygen-rich regions; grain boundary regions are anodic to bulk grain; in multiphase alloys, various phases may not have the same galvanic potential.

DIFFUSION

Diffusion Coefficient

$$D = D_0 e^{-Q/(RT)}, \text{ where}$$

D = diffusion coefficient

D_0 = proportionality constant

Q = activation energy

R = gas constant [8.314 J/(mol·K)]

T = absolute temperature

THERMAL AND MECHANICAL PROCESSING

Cold working (plastically deforming) a metal increases strength and lowers ductility.

Raising temperature causes (1) recovery (stress relief), (2) recrystallization, and (3) grain growth. *Hot working* allows these processes to occur simultaneously with deformation.

Quenching is rapid cooling from elevated temperature, preventing the formation of equilibrium phases.

In steels, quenching austenite [FCC (γ) iron] can result in martensite instead of equilibrium phases—ferrite [BCC (α) iron] and cementite (iron carbide).

PROPERTIES OF MATERIALS

Electrical

Capacitance: The charge-carrying capacity of an insulating material

Charge held by a capacitor

$$q = CV$$

q = charge

C = capacitance

V = voltage

Capacitance of a parallel plate capacitor

$$C = \frac{\epsilon A}{d}$$

C = capacitance

ϵ = permittivity of material

A = cross-sectional area of the plates

d = distance between the plates

ϵ is also expressed as the product of the dielectric constant (κ) and the permittivity of free space ($\epsilon_0 = 8.85 \times 10^{-12}$ F/m)

Resistivity: The material property that determines the resistance of a resistor

Resistivity of a material within a resistor

$$\rho = \frac{RA}{L}$$

ρ = resistivity of the material

R = resistance of the resistor

A = cross-sectional area of the resistor

L = length of the resistor

Conductivity is the reciprocal of the resistivity

Photoelectric effect—electrons are emitted from matter (metals and nonmetallic solids, liquids or gases) as a consequence of their absorption of energy from electromagnetic radiation of very short wavelength and high frequency.

Piezoelectric effect—the electromechanical and the electrical state in crystalline materials.

Mechanical

Strain is defined as change in length per unit length; for pure tension the following apply:

Engineering strain

$$\epsilon = \frac{\Delta L}{L_0}$$

ϵ = engineering strain

ΔL = change in length

L_0 = initial length

True strain

$$\epsilon_T = \frac{dL}{L}$$

ϵ_T = true strain

dL = differential change in length

L = initial length

$\epsilon_T = \ln(1 + \epsilon)$

Properties of Metals

| Metal | Symbol | Atomic Weight | Density ρ (kg/m ³) Water = 1000 | Melting Point (°C) | Melting Point (°F) | Specific Heat [J/(kg·K)] | Electrical Resistivity (10 ⁻⁸ Ω ·m) at 0°C (273.2 K) | Heat Conductivity λ [W/(m·K)] at 0°C (273.2 K) |
|------------|--------|---------------|---|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|---|---|
| Aluminum | Al | 26.98 | 2,698 | 660 | 1,220 | 895.9 | 2.5 | 236 |
| Antimony | Sb | 121.75 | 6,692 | 630 | 1,166 | 209.3 | 39 | 25.5 |
| Arsenic | As | 74.92 | 5,776 | subl. 613 | subl. 1,135 | 347.5 | 26 | – |
| Barium | Ba | 137.33 | 3,594 | 710 | 1,310 | 284.7 | 36 | – |
| Beryllium | Be | 9.012 | 1,846 | 1,285 | 2,345 | 2,051.5 | 2.8 | 218 |
| Bismuth | Bi | 208.98 | 9,803 | 271 | 519 | 125.6 | 107 | 8.2 |
| Cadmium | Cd | 112.41 | 8,647 | 321 | 609 | 234.5 | 6.8 | 97 |
| Caesium | Cs | 132.91 | 1,900 | 29 | 84 | 217.7 | 18.8 | 36 |
| Calcium | Ca | 40.08 | 1,530 | 840 | 1,544 | 636.4 | 3.2 | – |
| Cerium | Ce | 140.12 | 6,711 | 800 | 1,472 | 188.4 | 7.3 | 11 |
| Chromium | Cr | 52 | 7,194 | 1,860 | 3,380 | 406.5 | 12.7 | 96.5 |
| Cobalt | Co | 58.93 | 8,800 | 1,494 | 2,721 | 431.2 | 5.6 | 105 |
| Copper | Cu | 63.54 | 8,933 | 1,084 | 1,983 | 389.4 | 1.55 | 403 |
| Gallium | Ga | 69.72 | 5,905 | 30 | 86 | 330.7 | 13.6 | 41 |
| Gold | Au | 196.97 | 19,281 | 1,064 | 1,947 | 129.8 | 2.05 | 319 |
| Indium | In | 114.82 | 7,290 | 156 | 312 | 238.6 | 8 | 84 |
| Iridium | Ir | 192.22 | 22,550 | 2,447 | 4,436 | 138.2 | 4.7 | 147 |
| Iron | Fe | 55.85 | 7,873 | 1,540 | 2,804 | 456.4 | 8.9 | 83.5 |
| Lead | Pb | 207.2 | 11,343 | 327 | 620 | 129.8 | 19.2 | 36 |
| Lithium | Li | 6.94 | 533 | 180 | 356 | 4,576.2 | 8.55 | 86 |
| Magnesium | Mg | 24.31 | 1,738 | 650 | 1,202 | 1,046.7 | 3.94 | 157 |
| Manganese | Mn | 54.94 | 7,473 | 1,250 | 2,282 | 502.4 | 138 | 8 |
| Mercury | Hg | 200.59 | 13,547 | –39 | –38 | 142.3 | 94.1 | 7.8 |
| Molybdenum | Mo | 95.94 | 10,222 | 2,620 | 4,748 | 272.1 | 5 | 139 |
| Nickel | Ni | 58.69 | 8,907 | 1,455 | 2,651 | 439.6 | 6.2 | 94 |
| Niobium | Nb | 92.91 | 8,578 | 2,425 | 4,397 | 267.9 | 15.2 | 53 |
| Osmium | Os | 190.2 | 22,580 | 3,030 | 5,486 | 129.8 | 8.1 | 88 |
| Palladium | Pd | 106.4 | 11,995 | 1,554 | 2,829 | 230.3 | 10 | 72 |
| Platinum | Pt | 195.08 | 21,450 | 1,772 | 3,221 | 134 | 9.81 | 72 |
| Potassium | K | 39.09 | 862 | 63 | 145 | 753.6 | 6.1 | 104 |
| Rhodium | Rh | 102.91 | 12,420 | 1,963 | 3,565 | 242.8 | 4.3 | 151 |
| Rubidium | Rb | 85.47 | 1,533 | 38.8 | 102 | 330.7 | 11 | 58 |
| Ruthenium | Ru | 101.07 | 12,360 | 2,310 | 4,190 | 255.4 | 7.1 | 117 |
| Silver | Ag | 107.87 | 10,500 | 961 | 1,760 | 234.5 | 1.47 | 428 |
| Sodium | Na | 22.989 | 966 | 97.8 | 208 | 1,235.1 | 4.2 | 142 |
| Strontium | Sr | 87.62 | 2,583 | 770 | 1,418 | – | 20 | – |
| Tantalum | Ta | 180.95 | 16,670 | 3,000 | 5,432 | 150.7 | 12.3 | 57 |
| Thallium | Tl | 204.38 | 11,871 | 304 | 579 | 138.2 | 10 | 10 |
| Thorium | Th | 232.04 | 11,725 | 1,700 | 3,092 | 117.2 | 14.7 | 54 |
| Tin | Sn | 118.69 | 7,285 | 232 | 449 | 230.3 | 11.5 | 68 |
| Titanium | Ti | 47.88 | 4,508 | 1,670 | 3,038 | 527.5 | 39 | 22 |
| Tungsten | W | 183.85 | 19,254 | 3,387 | 6,128 | 142.8 | 4.9 | 177 |
| Uranium | U | 238.03 | 19,050 | 1,135 | 2,075 | 117.2 | 28 | 27 |
| Vanadium | V | 50.94 | 6,090 | 1,920 | 3,488 | 481.5 | 18.2 | 31 |
| Zinc | Zn | 65.38 | 7,135 | 419 | 786 | 393.5 | 5.5 | 117 |
| Zirconium | Zr | 91.22 | 6,507 | 1,850 | 3,362 | 284.7 | 40 | 23 |

◆ **Some Extrinsic, Elemental Semiconductors**

| Element | Dopant | Periodic table group of dopant | Maximum solid solubility of dopant (atoms/m ³) |
|---------|--------|--------------------------------|--|
| Si | B | III A | 600 × 10 ²⁴ |
| | Al | III A | 20 × 10 ²⁴ |
| | Ga | III A | 40 × 10 ²⁴ |
| | P | V A | 1,000 × 10 ²⁴ |
| | As | V A | 2,000 × 10 ²⁴ |
| | Sb | V A | 70 × 10 ²⁴ |
| Ge | Al | III A | 400 × 10 ²⁴ |
| | Ga | III A | 500 × 10 ²⁴ |
| | In | III A | 4 × 10 ²⁴ |
| | As | V A | 80 × 10 ²⁴ |
| | Sb | V A | 10 × 10 ²⁴ |

◆ **Impurity Energy Levels for Extrinsic Semiconductors**

| Semiconductor | Dopant | $E_g - E_d$ (eV) | E_a (eV) |
|---------------|--------|------------------|------------|
| Si | P | 0.044 | – |
| | As | 0.049 | – |
| | Sb | 0.039 | – |
| | Bi | 0.069 | – |
| | B | – | 0.045 |
| | Al | – | 0.057 |
| | Ga | – | 0.065 |
| | In | – | 0.160 |
| | Tl | – | 0.260 |
| | Ge | P | 0.012 |
| As | | 0.013 | – |
| Sb | | 0.096 | – |
| B | | – | 0.010 |
| Al | | – | 0.010 |
| Ga | | – | 0.010 |
| In | | – | 0.011 |
| Tl | | – | 0.01 |
| GaAs | Se | 0.005 | – |
| | Te | 0.003 | – |
| | Zn | – | 0.024 |
| | Cd | – | 0.021 |

Stress is defined as force per unit area; for pure tension the following apply:

Engineering stress

$$\sigma = \frac{F}{A_0}$$

σ = engineering stress

F = applied force

A_0 = initial cross-sectional area

True stress

$$\sigma_T = \frac{F}{A}$$

σ_T = true stress

F = applied force

A = actual cross-sectional area

The elastic modulus (also called modulus, modulus of elasticity, Young's modulus) describes the relationship between engineering stress and engineering strain during elastic loading. Hooke's Law applies in such a case.

$$\sigma = E\varepsilon \text{ where } E \text{ is the elastic modulus.}$$

Key mechanical properties obtained from a tensile test curve:

- Elastic modulus
- Ductility (also called percent elongation): Permanent engineering strain after failure
- Ultimate tensile strength (also called tensile strength): Maximum engineering stress
- Yield strength: Engineering stress at which permanent deformation is first observed, calculated by 0.2% offset method.

Other mechanical properties:

- Creep: Time-dependent deformation under load. Usually measured by strain rate. For steady-state creep this is:

$$\frac{d\varepsilon}{dt} = A\sigma^n e^{-\frac{Q}{RT}}$$

A = pre-exponential constant

n = stress sensitivity

Q = activation energy for creep

R = ideal gas law constant

T = absolute temperature

- Fatigue: Time-dependent failure under cyclic load. Fatigue life is the number of cycles to failure. The endurance limit is the stress below which fatigue failure is unlikely.
- Fracture toughness: The combination of applied stress and the crack length in a brittle material. It is the stress intensity when the material will fail.

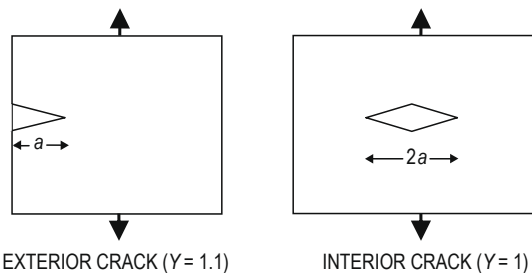
$$K_{IC} = Y\sigma\sqrt{\pi a}$$

K_{IC} = fracture toughness

σ = applied engineering stress

a = crack length

Y = geometrical factor



The critical value of stress intensity at which catastrophic crack propagation occurs, K_{IC} , is a material property.

◆ W.R. Runyan and S.B. Watelski, in *Handbook of Materials and Processes for Electronics*, C.A. Harper, ed., McGraw-Hill, 1970.

Representative Values of Fracture Toughness

| Material | K_{Ic} (MPa·m ^{1/2}) | K_{Ic} (ksi·in ^{1/2}) |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| A1 2014-T651 | 24.2 | 22 |
| A1 2024-T3 | 44 | 40 |
| 52100 Steel | 14.3 | 13 |
| 4340 Steel | 46 | 42 |
| Alumina | 4.5 | 4.1 |
| Silicon Carbide | 3.5 | 3.2 |

RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN HARDNESS AND TENSILE STRENGTH

For plain carbon steels, there is a general relationship between Brinell hardness and tensile strength as follows:

$$TS(\text{psi}) \approx 500 \text{ BHN}$$

$$TS(\text{MPa}) \approx 3.5 \text{ BHN}$$

ASTM GRAIN SIZE

$$S_V = 2P_L$$

$$N_{(0.0645 \text{ mm}^2)} = 2^{(n-1)}$$

$$\frac{N_{\text{actual}}}{\text{Actual Area}} = \frac{N}{(0.0645 \text{ mm}^2)}, \text{ where}$$

S_V = grain-boundary surface per unit volume

P_L = number of points of intersection per unit length between the line and the boundaries

N = number of grains observed in an area of 0.0645 mm²

n = grain size (nearest integer > 1)

COMPOSITE MATERIALS

$$\rho_c = \sum f_i \rho_i$$

$$C_c = \sum f_i c_i$$

$$\left[\sum \frac{f_i}{E_i} \right]^{-1} \leq E_c \leq \sum f_i E_i$$

$$\sigma_c = \sum f_i \sigma_i$$

ρ_c = density of composite

C_c = heat capacity of composite per unit volume

E_c = Young's modulus of composite

f_i = volume fraction of individual material

c_i = heat capacity of individual material per unit volume

E_i = Young's modulus of individual material

σ_c = strength parallel to fiber direction

Also, for axially oriented, long, fiber-reinforced composites, the strains of the two components are equal.

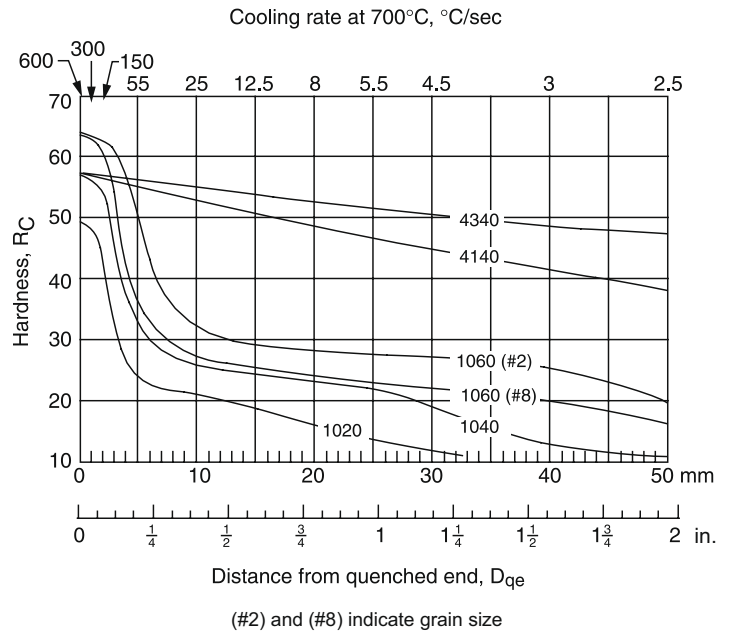
$$(\Delta L/L)_1 = (\Delta L/L)_2$$

ΔL = change in length of the composite

L = original length of the composite

Hardness: Resistance to penetration. Measured by denting a material under known load and measuring the size of the dent.

Hardenability: The "ease" with which hardness can be obtained.



JOMINY HARDENABILITY CURVES FOR SIX STEELS

Van Vlack, L., *Elements of Materials Science & Engineering*, Addison-Wesley, 1989.

The following two graphs show cooling curves for four different positions in the bar.

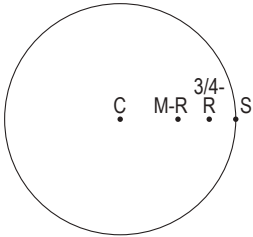
C = Center

M-R = Halfway between center and surface

3/4-R = 75% of the distance between the center and the surface

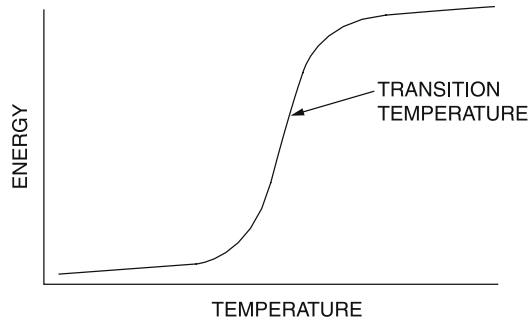
S = Surface

These positions are shown in the following figure.



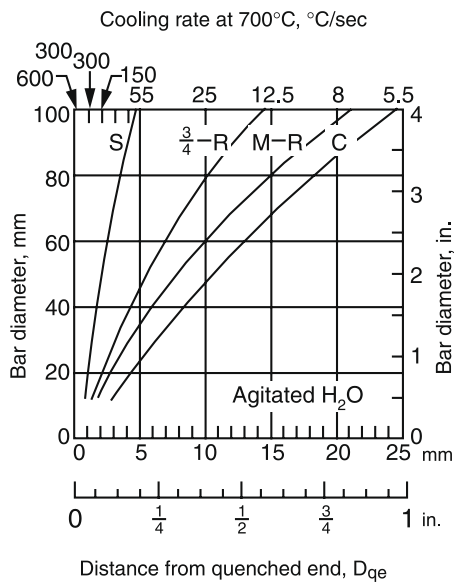
Impact Test

The *Charpy Impact Test* is used to find energy required to fracture and to identify ductile to brittle transition.

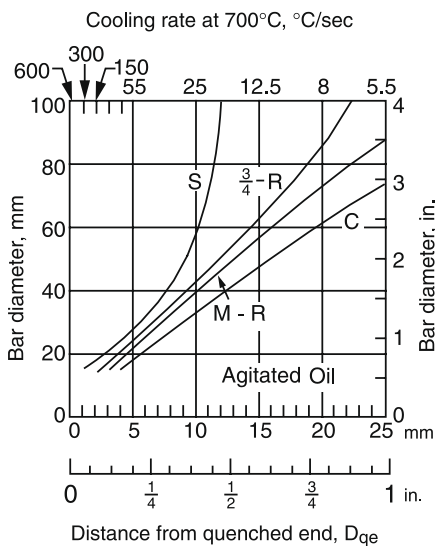


Impact tests determine the amount of energy required to cause failure in standardized test samples. The tests are repeated over a range of temperatures to determine the *ductile to brittle transition temperature*.

◆ Van Vlack, L., *Elements of Materials Science & Engineering*, Addison-Wesley, 1989.

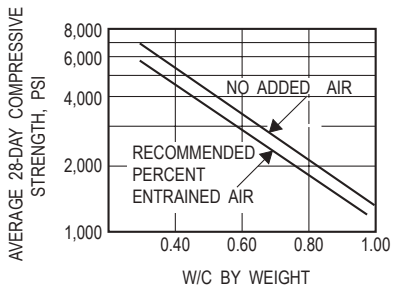


COOLING RATES FOR BARS QUENCHED IN AGITATED WATER



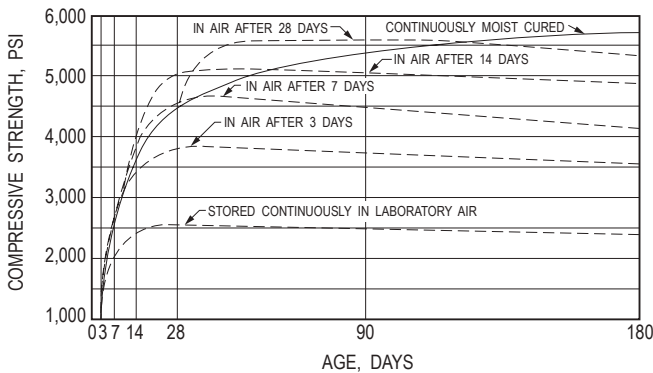
COOLING RATES FOR BARS QUENCHED IN AGITATED OIL

Concrete



Concrete strength decreases with increases in water-cement ratio for concrete with and without entrained air.

Water-cement (W/C) ratio is the primary factor affecting the strength of concrete. The figure above shows how W/C expressed as a ratio of weight of water and cement by weight of concrete mix affects the compressive strength of both air-entrained and non-air-entrained concrete.



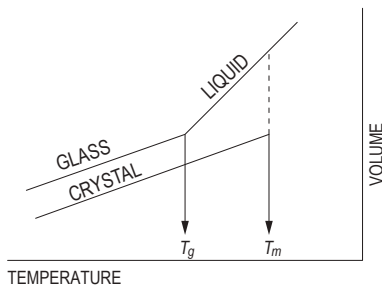
Concrete compressive strength varies with moist-curing conditions. Mixes tested had a water-cement ratio of 0.50, a slump of 3.5 in., cement content of 556 lb/yd³, sand content of 36%, and air content of 4%.

Water content affects workability. However, an increase in water without a corresponding increase in cement reduces the concrete strength. Superplasticizers are the most typical way to increase workability. Air entrainment is used to improve durability.

Amorphous Materials

Amorphous materials such as glass are non-crystalline solids. Thermoplastic polymers are either semicrystalline or amorphous.

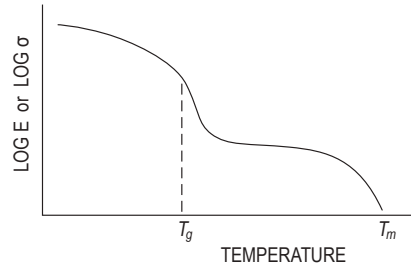
Below the glass transition temperature (T_g) the amorphous material will be a brittle solid.



The volume temperature curve as shown above is often used to show the difference between amorphous and crystalline solids.

Polymers

Polymers are classified as thermoplastics that can be melted and reformed. Thermosets cannot be melted and reformed.



The above curve shows the temperature dependent strength (σ) or modulus (E) for a thermoplastic polymer.

Polymer Additives

Chemicals and compounds are added to polymers to improve properties for commercial use. These substances, such as plasticizers, improve formability during processing, while others increase strength or durability.

Examples of common additives are:

Plasticizers: vegetable oils, low molecular weight polymers or monomers

Fillers: talc, chopped glass fibers

Flame retardants: halogenated paraffins, zinc borate, chlorinated phosphates

Ultraviolet or visible light resistance: carbon black

Oxidation resistance: phenols, aldehydes

Thermal Properties

The thermal expansion coefficient is the ratio of engineering strain to the change in temperature.

$$\alpha = \frac{\epsilon}{\Delta T}$$

α = thermal expansion coefficient

ϵ = engineering strain

ΔT = change in temperature

Specific heat (also called heat capacity) is the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of something or an amount of something by 1 degree.

At constant pressure the amount of heat (Q) required to increase the temperature of something by ΔT is $C_p \Delta T$, where C_p is the constant pressure heat capacity.

At constant volume the amount of heat (Q) required to increase the temperature of something by ΔT is $C_v \Delta T$, where C_v is the constant volume heat capacity.

An object can have a heat capacity that would be expressed as energy/degree.

The heat capacity of a material can be reported as energy/degree per unit mass or per unit volume.

◆ *Concrete Manual*, 8th ed., U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, 1975.

◆ Merritt, Frederick S., *Standard Handbook for Civil Engineers*, 3rd ed., McGraw-Hill, 1983.

BINARY PHASE DIAGRAMS

Allows determination of (1) what phases are present at equilibrium at any temperature and average composition, (2) the compositions of those phases, and (3) the fractions of those phases.

Eutectic reaction (liquid → two solid phases)

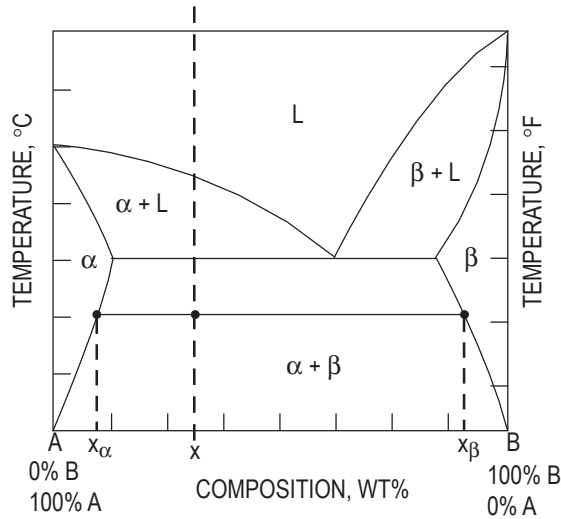
Eutectoid reaction (solid → two solid phases)

Peritectic reaction (liquid + solid → solid)

Peritectoid reaction (two solid phases → solid)

Lever Rule

The following phase diagram and equations illustrate how the weight of each phase in a two-phase system can be determined:

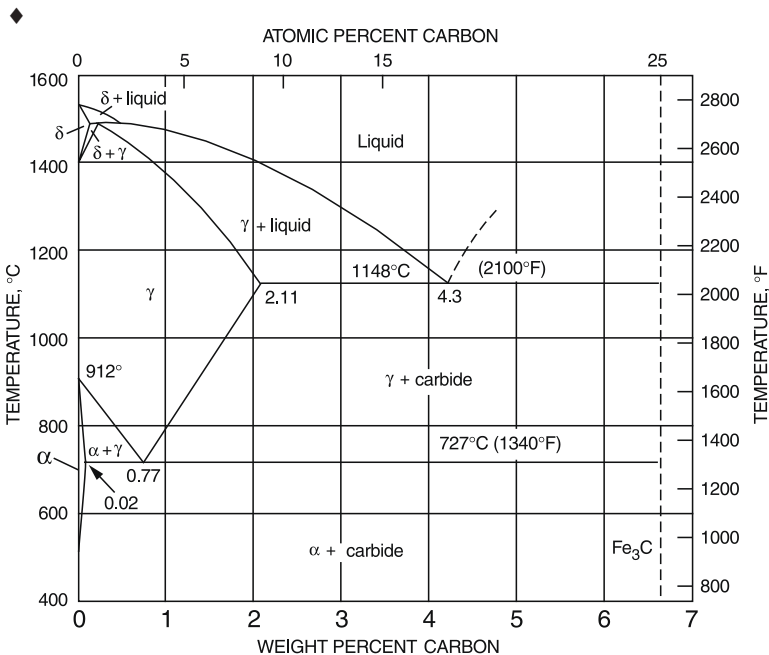


(In diagram, L = liquid.) If x = the average composition at temperature T , then

$$\text{wt}\% \alpha = \frac{x_{\beta} - x}{x_{\beta} - x_{\alpha}} \times 100$$

$$\text{wt}\% \beta = \frac{x - x_{\alpha}}{x_{\beta} - x_{\alpha}} \times 100$$

Iron-Iron Carbide Phase Diagram



♦ Van Vlack, L., *Elements of Materials Science & Engineering*, Addison-Wesley, Boston, 1989.

STATICS

FORCE

A *force* is a *vector* quantity. It is defined when its (1) magnitude, (2) point of application, and (3) direction are known.

The vector form of a force is

$$\mathbf{F} = F_x \mathbf{i} + F_y \mathbf{j}$$

RESULTANT (TWO DIMENSIONS)

The *resultant*, F , of n forces with components $F_{x,i}$ and $F_{y,i}$ has the magnitude of

$$F = \left[\left(\sum_{i=1}^n F_{x,i} \right)^2 + \left(\sum_{i=1}^n F_{y,i} \right)^2 \right]^{1/2}$$

The resultant direction with respect to the x -axis is

$$\theta = \arctan \left(\frac{\sum_{i=1}^n F_{y,i}}{\sum_{i=1}^n F_{x,i}} \right)$$

RESOLUTION OF A FORCE

$$F_x = F \cos \theta_x \quad F_y = F \cos \theta_y \quad F_z = F \cos \theta_z$$
$$\cos \theta_x = F_x / F \quad \cos \theta_y = F_y / F \quad \cos \theta_z = F_z / F$$

Separating a force into components when the geometry of force is known and $R = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}$

$$F_x = (x/R)F \quad F_y = (y/R)F \quad F_z = (z/R)F$$

MOMENTS (COUPLES)

A system of two forces that are equal in magnitude, opposite in direction, and parallel to each other is called a *couple*. A *moment* \mathbf{M} is defined as the cross product of the *radius vector* \mathbf{r} and the *force* \mathbf{F} from a point to the line of action of the force.

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}$$
$$M_x = yF_z - zF_y$$
$$M_y = zF_x - xF_z$$
$$M_z = xF_y - yF_x$$

SYSTEMS OF FORCES

$$\mathbf{F} = \sum \mathbf{F}_n$$
$$\mathbf{M} = \sum (\mathbf{r}_n \times \mathbf{F}_n)$$

Equilibrium Requirements

$$\sum \mathbf{F}_n = 0$$
$$\sum \mathbf{M}_n = 0$$

CENTROIDS OF MASSES, AREAS, LENGTHS, AND VOLUMES

The following formulas are for discrete masses, areas, lengths, and volumes:

$$\mathbf{r}_c = \sum m_n \mathbf{r}_n / \sum m_n \text{ where}$$

m_n = the *mass of each particle* making up the system,

\mathbf{r}_n = the *radius vector* to each particle from a selected reference point, and

\mathbf{r}_c = the *radius vector* to the *centroid of the total mass* from the selected reference point.

The *moment of area* (M_a) is defined as

$$M_{ay} = \sum x_n a_n$$

$$M_{ax} = \sum y_n a_n$$

The *centroid of area* is defined as

$$x_{ac} = M_{ay} / A = \sum x_n a_n / A$$

$$y_{ac} = M_{ax} / A = \sum y_n a_n / A$$

where $A = \sum a_n$

MOMENT OF INERTIA

The *moment of inertia*, or the second moment of area, is defined as

$$I_y = \int x^2 dA$$

$$I_x = \int y^2 dA$$

The *polar moment of inertia* J of an area about a point is equal to the sum of the moments of inertia of the area about any two perpendicular axes in the area and passing through the same point.

$$I_z = J = I_y + I_x = \int (x^2 + y^2) dA$$
$$= r_p^2 A, \text{ where}$$

r_p = the *radius of gyration* (as defined on the next page)

Moment of Inertia Parallel Axis Theorem

The moment of inertia of an area about any axis is defined as the moment of inertia of the area about a parallel centroidal axis plus a term equal to the area multiplied by the square of the perpendicular distance d from the centroidal axis to the axis in question.

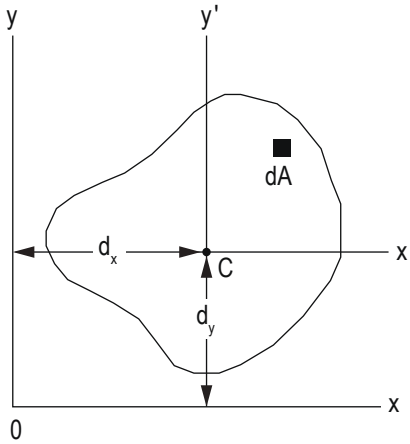
$$I'_x = I_{x_c} + d_y^2 A$$

$$I'_y = I_{y_c} + d_x^2 A, \text{ where}$$

d_x, d_y = distance between the two axes in question

I_{x_c}, I_{y_c} = the moment of inertia about the centroidal axis

I'_x, I'_y = the moment of inertia about the new axis



Hibbeler, R.C., *Engineering Mechanics: Statics and Dynamics*, 10 ed., Pearson Prentice Hall, 2004.

Radius of Gyration

The *radius of gyration* r_p, r_x, r_y is the distance from a reference axis at which all of the area can be considered to be concentrated to produce the moment of inertia.

$$r_x = \sqrt{I_x/A} \quad r_y = \sqrt{I_y/A} \quad r_p = \sqrt{J/A}$$

Product of Inertia

The *product of inertia* (I_{xy} , etc.) is defined as:

$$I_{xy} = \int xy dA, \text{ with respect to the } xy\text{-coordinate system,}$$

The *parallel-axis theorem* also applies:

$$I'_{xy} = I_{x_c y_c} + d_x d_y A \text{ for the } xy\text{-coordinate system, etc.}$$

where

d_x = x -axis distance between the two axes in question, and

d_y = y -axis distance between the two axes in question.

FRICTION

The largest frictional force is called the *limiting friction*. Any further increase in applied forces will cause motion.

$$F \leq \mu_s N, \text{ where}$$

F = friction force,

μ_s = *coefficient of static friction*, and

N = normal force between surfaces in contact.

SCREW THREAD

For a *screw-jack, square thread*,

$$M = Pr \tan(\alpha \pm \phi), \text{ where}$$

+ is for screw tightening,

– is for screw loosening,

M = external moment applied to axis of screw,

P = load on jack applied along and on the line of the axis,

r = the mean thread radius,

α = the *pitch angle* of the thread, and

$\mu = \tan \phi$ = the appropriate coefficient of friction.

BELT FRICTION

$$F_1 = F_2 e^{\mu \theta}, \text{ where}$$

F_1 = force being applied in the direction of impending motion,

F_2 = force applied to resist impending motion,

μ = coefficient of static friction, and

θ = the total *angle of contact* between the surfaces expressed in radians.

STATICALLY DETERMINATE TRUSS

Plane Truss: Method of Joints

The method consists of solving for the forces in the members by writing the two equilibrium equations for each joint of the truss.

$$\Sigma F_x = 0 \text{ and } \Sigma F_y = 0, \text{ where}$$

F_x = horizontal forces and member components and

F_y = vertical forces and member components.

Plane Truss: Method of Sections

The method consists of drawing a free-body diagram of a portion of the truss in such a way that the unknown truss member force is exposed as an external force.

CONCURRENT FORCES

A concurrent-force system is one in which the lines of action of the applied forces all meet at one point.

A *two-force* body in static equilibrium has two applied forces that are equal in magnitude, opposite in direction, and collinear.

| Figure | Area & Centroid | Area Moment of Inertia | (Radius of Gyration) ² | Product of Inertia |
|--------|--|---|--|---|
| | $A = bh/2$ $x_c = 2b/3$ $y_c = h/3$ | $I_{x_c} = bh^3/36$ $I_{y_c} = b^3h/36$ $I_x = bh^3/12$ $I_y = b^3h/4$ | $r_{x_c}^2 = h^2/18$ $r_{y_c}^2 = b^2/18$ $r_x^2 = h^2/6$ $r_y^2 = b^2/2$ | $I_{x_c y_c} = Abh/36 = b^2h^2/72$ $I_{xy} = Abh/4 = b^2h^2/8$ |
| | $A = bh/2$ $x_c = b/3$ $y_c = h/3$ | $I_{x_c} = bh^3/36$ $I_{y_c} = b^3h/36$ $I_x = bh^3/12$ $I_y = b^3h/12$ | $r_{x_c}^2 = h^2/18$ $r_{y_c}^2 = b^2/18$ $r_x^2 = h^2/6$ $r_y^2 = b^2/6$ | $I_{x_c y_c} = -Abh/36 = -b^2h^2/72$ $I_{xy} = Abh/12 = b^2h^2/24$ |
| | $A = bh/2$ $x_c = (a+b)/3$ $y_c = h/3$ | $I_{x_c} = bh^3/36$ $I_{y_c} = [bh(b^2 - ab + a^2)]/36$ $I_x = bh^3/12$ $I_y = [bh(b^2 + ab + a^2)]/12$ | $r_{x_c}^2 = h^2/18$ $r_{y_c}^2 = (b^2 - ab + a^2)/18$ $r_x^2 = h^2/6$ $r_y^2 = (b^2 + ab + a^2)/6$ | $I_{x_c y_c} = [Ah(2a-b)]/36$ $= [bh^2(2a-b)]/72$ $I_{xy} = [Ah(2a+b)]/12$ $= [bh^2(2a+b)]/24$ |
| | $A = bh$ $x_c = b/2$ $y_c = h/2$ | $I_{x_c} = bh^3/12$ $I_{y_c} = b^3h/12$ $I_x = bh^3/3$ $I_y = b^3h/3$ $J = [bh(b^2 + h^2)]/12$ | $r_{x_c}^2 = h^2/12$ $r_{y_c}^2 = b^2/12$ $r_x^2 = h^2/3$ $r_y^2 = b^2/3$ $r_p^2 = (b^2 + h^2)/12$ | $I_{x_c y_c} = 0$ $I_{xy} = Abh/4 = b^2h^2/4$ |
| | $A = h(a+b)/2$ $y_c = \frac{h(2a+b)}{3(a+b)}$ | $I_{x_c} = \frac{h^3(a^2 + 4ab + b^2)}{36(a+b)}$ $I_x = \frac{h^3(3a+b)}{12}$ | $r_{x_c}^2 = \frac{h^2(a^2 + 4ab + b^2)}{18(a+b)}$ $r_x^2 = \frac{h^2(3a+b)}{6(a+b)}$ | |
| | $A = ab \sin \theta$ $x_c = (b + a \cos \theta)/2$ $y_c = (a \sin \theta)/2$ | $I_{x_c} = (a^3 b \sin^3 \theta)/12$ $I_{y_c} = [ab \sin \theta (b^2 + a^2 \cos^2 \theta)]/12$ $I_x = (a^3 b \sin^3 \theta)/3$ $I_y = [ab \sin \theta (b + a \cos \theta)^2]/3$ $- (a^2 b^2 \sin \theta \cos \theta)/6$ | $r_{x_c}^2 = (a \sin \theta)^2 / 12$ $r_{y_c}^2 = (b^2 + a^2 \cos^2 \theta) / 12$ $r_x^2 = (a \sin \theta)^2 / 3$ $r_y^2 = (b + a \cos \theta)^2 / 3$ $- (ab \cos \theta) / 6$ | $I_{x_c y_c} = (a^3 b \sin^2 \theta \cos \theta) / 12$ |

| Figure | Area & Centroid | Area Moment of Inertia | (Radius of Gyration) ² | Product of Inertia |
|--------|--|--|--|--|
| | $A = \pi a^2$ $x_c = a$ $y_c = a$ | $I_{x_c} = I_{y_c} = \pi a^4/4$ $I_x = I_y = 5\pi a^4/4$ $J = \pi a^4/2$ | $r_{x_c}^2 = r_{y_c}^2 = a^2/4$ $r_x^2 = r_y^2 = 5a^2/4$ $r_p^2 = a^2/2$ | $I_{x_c y_c} = 0$ $I_{xy} = Aa^2$ |
| | $A = \pi(a^2 - b^2)$ $x_c = a$ $y_c = a$ | $I_{x_c} = I_{y_c} = \pi(a^4 - b^4)/4$ $I_x = I_y = \frac{5\pi a^4}{4} - \pi a^2 b^2 - \frac{\pi b^4}{4}$ $J = \pi(a^4 - b^4)/2$ | $r_{x_c}^2 = r_{y_c}^2 = (a^2 + b^2)/4$ $r_x^2 = r_y^2 = (5a^2 + b^2)/4$ $r_p^2 = (a^2 + b^2)/2$ | $I_{x_c y_c} = 0$ $I_{xy} = Aa^2$ $= \pi a^2(a^2 - b^2)$ |
| | $A = \pi a^2/2$ $x_c = a$ $y_c = 4a/(3\pi)$ | $I_{x_c} = \frac{a^4(9\pi^2 - 64)}{72\pi}$ $I_{y_c} = \pi a^4/8$ $I_x = \pi a^4/8$ $I_y = 5\pi a^4/8$ | $r_{x_c}^2 = \frac{a^2(9\pi^2 - 64)}{36\pi^2}$ $r_{y_c}^2 = a^2/4$ $r_x^2 = a^2/4$ $r_y^2 = 5a^2/4$ | $I_{x_c y_c} = 0$ $I_{xy} = 2a^4/3$ |
| | $A = a^2\theta$ $x_c = \frac{2a \sin\theta}{3\theta}$ $y_c = 0$ | $I_x = a^4(\theta - \sin\theta \cos\theta)/4$ $I_y = a^4(\theta + \sin\theta \cos\theta)/4$ | $r_x^2 = \frac{a^2}{4} \frac{(\theta - \sin\theta \cos\theta)}{\theta}$ $r_y^2 = \frac{a^2}{4} \frac{(\theta + \sin\theta \cos\theta)}{\theta}$ | $I_{x_c y_c} = 0$ $I_{xy} = 0$ |
| | $A = a^2 \left[\theta - \frac{\sin 2\theta}{2} \right]$ $x_c = \frac{2a}{3} \frac{\sin^3 \theta}{\theta - \sin\theta \cos\theta}$ $y_c = 0$ | $I_x = \frac{Aa^2}{4} \left[1 - \frac{2\sin^3 \theta \cos\theta}{3\theta - 3\sin\theta \cos\theta} \right]$ $I_y = \frac{Aa^2}{4} \left[1 + \frac{2\sin^3 \theta \cos\theta}{\theta - \sin\theta \cos\theta} \right]$ | $r_x^2 = \frac{a^2}{4} \left[1 - \frac{2\sin^3 \theta \cos\theta}{3\theta - 3\sin\theta \cos\theta} \right]$ $r_y^2 = \frac{a^2}{4} \left[1 + \frac{2\sin^3 \theta \cos\theta}{\theta - \sin\theta \cos\theta} \right]$ | $I_{x_c y_c} = 0$ $I_{xy} = 0$ |

| Figure | Area & Centroid | Area Moment of Inertia | (Radius of Gyration) ² | Product of Inertia |
|---------------------------------------|--|---|--|-----------------------------------|
| <p>PARABOLA</p> | $A = 4ab/3$ $x_c = 3a/5$ $y_c = 0$ | $I_{x_c} = I_x = 4ab^3/15$ $I_{y_c} = 16a^3b/175$ $I_y = 4a^3b/7$ | $r_{x_c}^2 = r_x^2 = b^2/5$ $r_{y_c}^2 = 12a^2/175$ $r_y^2 = 3a^2/7$ | $I_{x_c y_c} = 0$ $I_{xy} = 0$ |
| <p>HALF A PARABOLA</p> | $A = 2ab/3$ $x_c = 3a/5$ $y_c = 3b/8$ | $I_x = 2ab^3/15$ $I_y = 2ba^3/7$ | $r_x^2 = b^2/5$ $r_y^2 = 3a^2/7$ | $I_{xy} = Aab/4 = a^2b^2$ |
| <p>nth DEGREE PARABOLA</p> | $A = bh/(n+1)$ $x_c = \frac{n+1}{n+2}b$ $y_c = \frac{h}{2} \frac{n+1}{2n+1}$ | $I_x = \frac{bh^3}{3(3n+1)}$ $I_y = \frac{hb^3}{n+3}$ | $r_x^2 = \frac{h^2(n+1)}{3(3n+1)}$ $r_y^2 = \frac{n+1}{n+3}b^2$ | |
| <p>nth DEGREE PARABOLA</p> | $A = \frac{n}{n+1}bh$ $x_c = \frac{n+1}{2n+1}b$ $y_c = \frac{n+1}{2(n+2)}h$ | $I_x = \frac{n}{3(n+3)}bh^3$ $I_y = \frac{n}{3n+1}b^3h$ | $r_x^2 = \frac{n+1}{3(n+1)}h^2$ $r_y^2 = \frac{n+1}{3n+1}b^2$ | |

Housner, George W., and Donald E. Hudson, *Applied Mechanics Dynamics*, D. Van Nostrand Company, Inc., Princeton, NJ, 1959. Table reprinted by permission of G.W. Housner & D.E. Hudson.

DYNAMICS

COMMON NOMENCLATURE

- t = time
 s = position coordinate, measured along a curve from an origin
 v = velocity
 a = acceleration
 a_n = normal acceleration
 a_t = tangential acceleration
 θ = angular position coordinate
 ω = angular velocity
 α = angular acceleration
 Ω = angular velocity of x, y, z reference axis measured from the X, Y, Z reference
 $\dot{\Omega}$ = angular acceleration of x, y, z reference axis measured from the X, Y, Z reference
 $\mathbf{r}_{A/B}$ = relative position of "A" with respect to "B"
 $\mathbf{v}_{A/B}$ = relative velocity of "A" with respect to "B"
 $\mathbf{a}_{A/B}$ = relative acceleration of "A" with respect to "B"

PARTICLE KINEMATICS

Kinematics is the study of motion without consideration of the mass of, or the forces acting on, a system. For particle motion, let $\mathbf{r}(t)$ be the position vector of the particle in an inertial reference frame. The velocity and acceleration of the particle are defined, respectively, as

$$\mathbf{v} = d\mathbf{r}/dt$$

$$\mathbf{a} = d\mathbf{v}/dt, \text{ where}$$

\mathbf{v} = the instantaneous velocity
 \mathbf{a} = the instantaneous acceleration
 t = time

Cartesian Coordinates

$$\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{i} + y\mathbf{j} + z\mathbf{k}$$

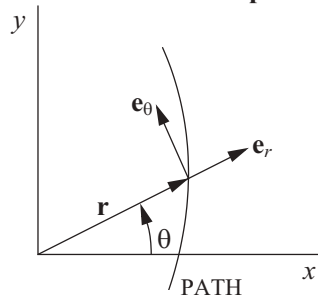
$$\mathbf{v} = \dot{x}\mathbf{i} + \dot{y}\mathbf{j} + \dot{z}\mathbf{k}$$

$$\mathbf{a} = \ddot{x}\mathbf{i} + \ddot{y}\mathbf{j} + \ddot{z}\mathbf{k}, \text{ where}$$

$$\dot{x} = dx/dt = v_x, \text{ etc.}$$

$$\ddot{x} = d^2x/dt^2 = a_x, \text{ etc.}$$

Radial and Transverse Components for Planar Motion



Unit vectors \mathbf{e}_r and \mathbf{e}_θ are, respectively, collinear with and normal to the position vector \mathbf{r} . Thus:

$$\mathbf{r} = r\mathbf{e}_r$$

$$\mathbf{v} = \dot{r}\mathbf{e}_r + r\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta$$

$$\mathbf{a} = (\ddot{r} - r\dot{\theta}^2)\mathbf{e}_r + (r\ddot{\theta} + 2\dot{r}\dot{\theta})\mathbf{e}_\theta, \text{ where}$$

r = radial position coordinate
 θ = angle from the x axis to \mathbf{r}
 $\dot{r} = dr/dt$, etc., $\ddot{r} = d^2r/dt^2$, etc.

◆ Particle Rectilinear Motion

| <u>Variable a</u> | <u>Constant $a = a_0$</u> |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| $a = \frac{dv}{dt}$ | $v = v_0 + a_0t$ |
| $v = \frac{ds}{dt}$ | $s = s_0 + v_0t + \frac{1}{2}a_0t^2$ |
| $a ds = v dv$ | $v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a_0(s - s_0)$ |

◆ Particle Curvilinear Motion

| <u>x, y, z Coordinates</u> | <u>r, θ, z Coordinates</u> |
|---|---|
| $v_x = \dot{x}$ $a_x = \ddot{x}$ | $v_r = \dot{r}$ $a_r = \ddot{r} - r\dot{\theta}^2$ |
| $v_y = \dot{y}$ $a_y = \ddot{y}$ | $v_\theta = r\dot{\theta}$ $a_\theta = r\ddot{\theta} + 2\dot{r}\dot{\theta}$ |
| $v_z = \dot{z}$ $a_z = \ddot{z}$ | $v_z = \dot{z}$ $a_z = \ddot{z}$ |

n, t, b Coordinates

$$v = s\dot{}$$

$$a_t = \dot{v} = \frac{dv}{dt} = v \frac{dv}{ds}$$

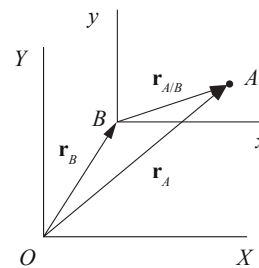
$$a_n = \frac{v^2}{\rho} \quad \rho = \frac{[1 + (dy/dx)^2]^{3/2}}{|d^2y/dx^2|}$$

◆ Relative Motion

$$\mathbf{r}_A = \mathbf{r}_B + \mathbf{r}_{A/B} \quad \mathbf{v}_A = \mathbf{v}_B + \mathbf{v}_{A/B} \quad \mathbf{a}_A = \mathbf{a}_B + \mathbf{a}_{A/B}$$

Translating Axes x - y

The equations that relate the absolute and relative position, velocity, and acceleration vectors of two particles A and B , in plane motion, and separated at a constant distance, may be written as



$$\mathbf{r}_A = \mathbf{r}_B + \mathbf{r}_{A/B}$$

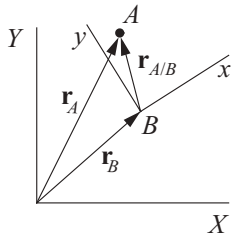
$$\mathbf{v}_A = \mathbf{v}_B + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{r}_{A/B} = \mathbf{v}_B + \mathbf{v}_{A/B}$$

$$\mathbf{a}_A = \mathbf{a}_B + \boldsymbol{\alpha} \times \mathbf{r}_{A/B} + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{r}_{A/B}) = \mathbf{a}_B + \mathbf{a}_{A/B}$$

◆ Adapted from Hibbeler, R.C., *Engineering Mechanics*, 10th ed., Prentice Hall, 2003.

where ω and α are the absolute angular velocity and absolute angular acceleration of the relative position vector $\mathbf{r}_{A/B}$ of constant length, respectively.

Rotating Axis



$$\mathbf{r}_A = \mathbf{r}_B + \mathbf{r}_{A/B}$$

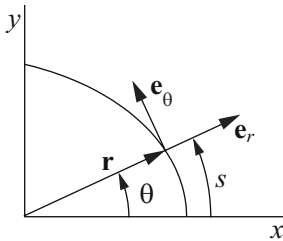
$$\mathbf{v}_A = \mathbf{v}_B + \boldsymbol{\Omega} \times \mathbf{r}_{A/B} + (\mathbf{v}_{A/B})_{xyz}$$

$$\mathbf{a}_A = \mathbf{a}_B + \dot{\boldsymbol{\Omega}} \times \mathbf{r}_{A/B} + \boldsymbol{\Omega} \times (\boldsymbol{\Omega} \times \mathbf{r}_{A/B}) + 2\boldsymbol{\Omega} \times (\mathbf{v}_{A/B})_{xyz} + (\mathbf{a}_{A/B})_{xyz}$$

where $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ and $\dot{\boldsymbol{\Omega}}$ are, respectively, the total angular velocity and acceleration of the relative position vector $\mathbf{r}_{A/B}$.

Plane Circular Motion

A special case of radial and transverse components is for constant radius rotation about the origin, or plane circular motion.



Here the vector quantities are defined as

$$\mathbf{r} = r\mathbf{e}_r$$

$$\mathbf{v} = r\omega\mathbf{e}_\theta$$

$$\mathbf{a} = (-r\omega^2)\mathbf{e}_r + r\alpha\mathbf{e}_\theta, \text{ where}$$

r = the radius of the circle
 θ = the angle from the x axis to \mathbf{r}

The values of the angular velocity and acceleration, respectively, are defined as

$$\omega = \dot{\theta}$$

$$\alpha = \dot{\omega} = \ddot{\theta}$$

Arc length, transverse velocity, and transverse acceleration, respectively, are

$$s = r\theta$$

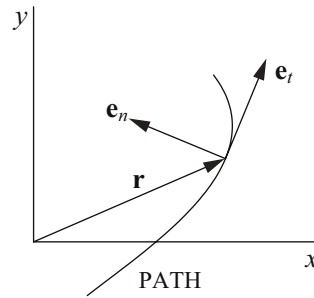
$$v_\theta = r\omega$$

$$a_\theta = r\alpha$$

The radial acceleration is given by

$$a_r = -r\omega^2 \text{ (towards the center of the circle)}$$

Normal and Tangential Components



Unit vectors \mathbf{e}_t and \mathbf{e}_n are, respectively, tangent and normal to the path with \mathbf{e}_n pointing to the center of curvature. Thus

$$\mathbf{v} = v(t)\mathbf{e}_t$$

$$\mathbf{a} = a(t)\mathbf{e}_t + (v_t^2/\rho)\mathbf{e}_n, \text{ where}$$

ρ = instantaneous radius of curvature

Constant Acceleration

The equations for the velocity and displacement when acceleration is a constant are given as

$$a(t) = a_0$$

$$v(t) = a_0(t - t_0) + v_0$$

$$s(t) = a_0(t - t_0)^2/2 + v_0(t - t_0) + s_0, \text{ where}$$

s = displacement at time t , along the line of travel
 s_0 = displacement at time t_0
 v = velocity along the direction of travel
 v_0 = velocity at time t_0
 a_0 = constant acceleration
 t = time
 t_0 = some initial time

For a free-falling body, $a_0 = g$ (downward towards earth). An additional equation for velocity as a function of position may be written as

$$v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a_0(s - s_0)$$

For constant angular acceleration, the equations for angular velocity and displacement are

$$\alpha(t) = \alpha_0$$

$$\omega(t) = \alpha_0(t - t_0) + \omega_0$$

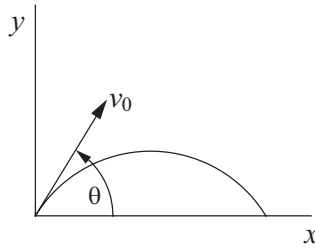
$$\theta(t) = \alpha_0(t - t_0)^2/2 + \omega_0(t - t_0) + \theta_0, \text{ where}$$

- θ = angular displacement
- θ_0 = angular displacement at time t_0
- ω = angular velocity
- ω_0 = angular velocity at time t_0
- α_0 = constant angular acceleration
- t = time
- t_0 = some initial time

An additional equation for angular velocity as a function of angular position may be written as

$$\omega^2 = \omega_0^2 + 2\alpha_0(\theta - \theta_0)$$

Projectile Motion



The equations for common projectile motion may be obtained from the constant acceleration equations as

$$\begin{aligned} a_x &= 0 \\ v_x &= v_0 \cos(\theta) \\ x &= v_0 \cos(\theta)t + x_0 \\ a_y &= -g \\ v_y &= -gt + v_0 \sin(\theta) \\ y &= -gt^2/2 + v_0 \sin(\theta)t + y_0 \end{aligned}$$

Non-constant Acceleration

When non-constant acceleration, $a(t)$, is considered, the equations for the velocity and displacement may be obtained from

$$\begin{aligned} v(t) &= \int_{t_0}^t a(\tau) d\tau + v_{t_0} \\ s(t) &= \int_{t_0}^t v(\tau) d\tau + s_{t_0} \end{aligned}$$

For variable angular acceleration

$$\begin{aligned} \omega(t) &= \int_{t_0}^t \alpha(\tau) d\tau + \omega_{t_0} \\ \theta(t) &= \int_{t_0}^t \omega(\tau) d\tau + \theta_{t_0} \end{aligned}$$

where τ is the variable of integration

CONCEPT OF WEIGHT

$$\begin{aligned} W &= mg, \text{ where} \\ W &= \text{weight, N (lbf)} \\ m &= \text{mass, kg (lbf-sec}^2/\text{ft)} \\ g &= \text{local acceleration of gravity, m/s}^2 \text{ (ft/sec}^2\text{)} \end{aligned}$$

PARTICLE KINETICS

Newton's second law for a particle is

$$\Sigma \mathbf{F} = d(m\mathbf{v})/dt, \text{ where}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \Sigma \mathbf{F} &= \text{the sum of the applied forces acting on the particle} \\ m &= \text{the mass of the particle} \\ \mathbf{v} &= \text{the velocity of the particle} \end{aligned}$$

For constant mass,

$$\Sigma \mathbf{F} = m d\mathbf{v}/dt = m\mathbf{a}$$

One-Dimensional Motion of a Particle (Constant Mass)

When motion exists only in a single dimension then, without loss of generality, it may be assumed to be in the x direction, and

$$a_x = F_x/m, \text{ where}$$

F_x = the resultant of the applied forces, which in general can depend on t , x , and v_x .

If F_x only depends on t , then

$$\begin{aligned} a_x(t) &= F_x(t)/m \\ v_x(t) &= \int_{t_0}^t a_x(\tau) d\tau + v_{xt_0} \\ x(t) &= \int_{t_0}^t v_x(\tau) d\tau + x_{t_0} \end{aligned}$$

where τ is the variable of integration

If the force is constant (i.e., independent of time, displacement, and velocity) then

$$\begin{aligned} a_x &= F_x/m \\ v_x &= a_x(t - t_0) + v_{xt_0} \\ x &= a_x(t - t_0)^2/2 + v_{xt_0}(t - t_0) + x_{t_0} \end{aligned}$$

Normal and Tangential Kinetics for Planar Problems

When working with normal and tangential directions, the scalar equations may be written as

$$\begin{aligned} \Sigma F_t &= ma_t = m dv_t/dt \\ \Sigma F_n &= ma_n = m(v_t^2/\rho) \end{aligned}$$

PRINCIPLE OF WORK AND ENERGY

If T_i and V_i are, respectively, the kinetic and potential energy of a particle at state i , then for conservative systems (no energy dissipation or gain), the law of conservation of energy is

$$T_2 + V_2 = T_1 + V_1$$

If nonconservative forces are present, then the work done by these forces must be accounted for. Hence

$$T_2 + V_2 = T_1 + V_1 + U_{1 \rightarrow 2}, \text{ where}$$

$U_{1 \rightarrow 2}$ = the work done by the nonconservative forces in moving between state 1 and state 2. Care must be exercised during computations to correctly compute the algebraic sign of the work term. If the forces serve to increase the energy of the system, $U_{1 \rightarrow 2}$ is positive. If the forces, such as friction, serve to dissipate energy, $U_{1 \rightarrow 2}$ is negative.

◆ Kinetic Energy

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| Particle | $T = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$ |
| Rigid Body (Plane Motion) | $T = \frac{1}{2}mv_c^2 + \frac{1}{2}I_c \omega^2$ |

subscript c represents the center of mass

◆ Potential Energy

$$V = V_g + V_e, \text{ where } V_g = W_y, V_e = 1/2 ks^2$$

The work done by an external agent in the presence of a conservative field is termed the change in potential energy.

Potential Energy in Gravity Field

$$V_g = mgh, \text{ where}$$

h = the elevation above some specified datum.

Elastic Potential Energy

For a linear elastic spring with modulus, stiffness, or spring constant, k , the force in the spring is

$$F_s = k s, \text{ where}$$

s = the change in length of the spring from the undeformed length of the spring.

In changing the deformation in the spring from position s_1 to s_2 , the change in the potential energy stored in the spring is

$$V_2 - V_1 = k(s_2^2 - s_1^2)/2$$

◆ Work

Work U is defined as

$$U = \int \mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{r}$$

$$\text{Variable force } U_F = \int F \cos \theta ds$$

$$\text{Constant force } U_F = (F \cos \theta) \Delta s$$

$$\text{Weight } U_w = -W \Delta y$$

$$\text{Spring } U_s = -\left(\frac{1}{2}ks_2^2 - \frac{1}{2}ks_1^2\right)$$

$$\text{Couple moment } U_M = M \Delta \theta$$

◆ Power and Efficiency

$$P = \frac{dU}{dt} = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v} \quad \epsilon = \frac{P_{\text{out}}}{P_{\text{in}}} = \frac{U_{\text{out}}}{U_{\text{in}}}$$

IMPULSE AND MOMENTUM

Linear

Assuming constant mass, the equation of motion of a particle may be written as

$$m d\mathbf{v}/dt = \mathbf{F}$$

$$m d\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{F} dt$$

For a system of particles, by integrating and summing over the number of particles, this may be expanded to

$$\Sigma m_i (\mathbf{v}_i)_{t_2} = \Sigma m_i (\mathbf{v}_i)_{t_1} + \Sigma \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \mathbf{F}_i dt$$

The term on the left side of the equation is the linear momentum of a system of particles at time t_2 . The first term on the right side of the equation is the linear momentum of a system of particles at time t_1 . The second term on the right side of the equation is the impulse of the force \mathbf{F} from time t_1 to t_2 . It should be noted that the above equation is a vector equation. Component scalar equations may be obtained by considering the momentum and force in a set of orthogonal directions.

Angular Momentum or Moment of Momentum

The angular momentum or the moment of momentum about point O for a particle is defined as

$$\mathbf{H}_O = \mathbf{r} \times m\mathbf{v}, \text{ or}$$

$$\mathbf{H}_O = I_O \omega$$

Taking the time derivative of the above, the equation of motion may be written as

$$\dot{\mathbf{H}}_O = d(I_O \omega)/dt = \mathbf{M}_O, \text{ where}$$

\mathbf{M}_O is the moment applied to the particle. Now by integrating and summing over a system of any number of particles, this may be expanded to

$$\Sigma (\mathbf{H}_{O_i})_{t_2} = \Sigma (\mathbf{H}_{O_i})_{t_1} + \Sigma \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \mathbf{M}_{O_i} dt$$

The term on the left side of the equation is the angular momentum of a system of particles at time t_2 . The first term on the right side of the equation is the angular momentum of a system of particles at time t_1 . The second term on the right side of the equation is the angular impulse of the moment \mathbf{M}_O from time t_1 to t_2 .

Impact

During an impact, momentum is conserved while energy may or may not be conserved. For direct central impact with no external forces

$$m_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + m_2 \mathbf{v}_2 = m_1 \mathbf{v}'_1 + m_2 \mathbf{v}'_2, \text{ where}$$

m_1, m_2 = the masses of the two bodies

$\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2$ = the velocities of the bodies just before impact

$\mathbf{v}'_1, \mathbf{v}'_2$ = the velocities of the bodies just after impact

For impacts, the relative velocity expression is

$$e = \frac{(v'_2)_n - (v'_1)_n}{(v_1)_n - (v_2)_n}, \text{ where}$$

e = coefficient of restitution

$(v_i)_n$ = the velocity normal to the plane of impact just **before** impact

$(v'_i)_n$ = the velocity normal to the plane of impact just **after** impact

The value of e is such that

$0 \leq e \leq 1$, with limiting values

$e = 1$, perfectly elastic (energy conserved)

$e = 0$, perfectly plastic (no rebound)

Knowing the value of e , the velocities after the impact are given as

$$(v'_1)_n = \frac{m_2(v_2)_n(1 + e) + (m_1 - em_2)(v_1)_n}{m_1 + m_2}$$

$$(v'_2)_n = \frac{m_1(v_1)_n(1 + e) - (em_1 - m_2)(v_2)_n}{m_1 + m_2}$$

Friction

The Laws of Friction are

1. The total friction force F that can be developed is independent of the magnitude of the area of contact.
2. The total friction force F that can be developed is proportional to the normal force N .
3. For low velocities of sliding, the total frictional force that can be developed is practically independent of the sliding velocity, although experiments show that the force F necessary to initiate slip is greater than that necessary to maintain the motion.

The formula expressing the Laws of Friction is

$$F \leq \mu N, \text{ where}$$

μ = the coefficient of friction.

In general

$$F < \mu_s N, \text{ no slip occurring}$$

$$F = \mu_s N, \text{ at the point of impending slip}$$

$$F = \mu_k N, \text{ when slip is occurring}$$

Here,

μ_s = the coefficient of static friction

μ_k = the coefficient of kinetic friction

PLANE MOTION OF A RIGID BODY

Kinematics of a Rigid Body

Rigid Body Rotation

For rigid body rotation θ

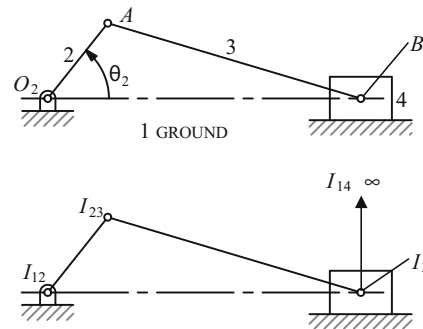
$$\omega = d\theta/dt$$

$$\alpha = d\omega/dt$$

$$\alpha d\theta = \omega d\omega$$

Instantaneous Center of Rotation (Instant Centers)

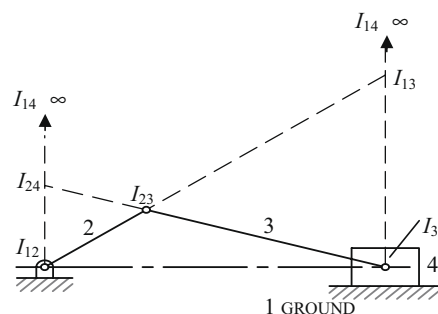
An instantaneous center of rotation (instant center) is a point, common to two bodies, at which each has the same velocity (magnitude and direction) at a given instant. It is also a point in space about which a body rotates, instantaneously.



The figure shows a fourbar slider-crank. Link 2 (the crank) rotates about the fixed center, O_2 . Link 3 couples the crank to the slider (link 4), which slides against ground (link 1). Using the definition of an instant center (IC), we see that the pins at O_2 , A , and B are ICs that are designated I_{12} , I_{23} , and I_{34} . The easily observable IC is I_{14} , which is located at infinity with its direction perpendicular to the interface between links 1 and 4 (the direction of sliding). To locate the remaining two ICs (for a fourbar) we must make use of Kennedy's rule.

Kennedy's Rule: When three bodies move relative to one another they have three instantaneous centers, all of which lie on the same straight line.

To apply this rule to the slider-crank mechanism, consider links 1, 2, and 3 whose ICs are I_{12} , I_{23} , and I_{13} , all of which lie on a straight line. Consider also links 1, 3, and 4 whose ICs are I_{13} , I_{34} , and I_{14} , all of which lie on a straight line. Extending the line through I_{12} and I_{23} and the line through I_{34} and I_{14} to their intersection locates I_{13} , which is common to the two groups of links that were considered.



Similarly, if body groups 1, 2, 4 and 2, 3, 4 are considered, a line drawn through known ICs I_{12} and I_{14} to the intersection of a line drawn through known ICs I_{23} and I_{34} locates I_{24} .

The number of ICs, c , for a given mechanism is related to the number of links, n , by

$$c = \frac{n(n-1)}{2}$$

Kinetics of a Rigid Body

In general, Newton's second law for a rigid body, with constant mass and mass moment of inertia, in plane motion may be written in vector form as

$$\Sigma \mathbf{F} = m \mathbf{a}_c$$

$$\Sigma \mathbf{M}_c = I_c \boldsymbol{\alpha}$$

$$\Sigma \mathbf{M}_p = I_c \boldsymbol{\alpha} + \mathbf{r}_{pc} \times m \mathbf{a}_c, \text{ where}$$

\mathbf{F} are forces and \mathbf{a}_c is the acceleration of the body's mass center both in the plane of motion, \mathbf{M}_c are moments and $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ is the angular acceleration both about an axis normal to the plane of motion, I_c is the mass moment of inertia about the normal axis through the mass center, and \mathbf{r}_{pc} is a vector from point p to point c .

◆ **Mass Moment of Inertia** $I = \int r^2 dm$

Parallel-Axis Theorem $I = I_c + md^2$

Radius of Gyration $r_m = \sqrt{\frac{I}{m}}$

◆ Equations of Motion

| | |
|--|--|
| <p><i>Rigid Body</i> <i>(Plane Motion)</i></p> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \Sigma F_x = m(a_c)_x \\ \Sigma F_y = m(a_c)_y \\ \Sigma M_c = I_c \alpha \text{ or } \Sigma M_p = \Sigma (M_k)_p \end{array} \right.$ |
|--|--|

Subscript c indicates center of mass.

Mass Moment of Inertia

The definitions for the mass moments of inertia are

$$I_x = \int (y^2 + z^2) dm$$

$$I_y = \int (x^2 + z^2) dm$$

$$I_z = \int (x^2 + y^2) dm$$

A table listing moment of inertia formulas for some standard shapes is at the end of this section.

Parallel-Axis Theorem

The mass moments of inertia may be calculated about any axis through the application of the above definitions. However, once the moments of inertia have been determined about an axis passing through a body's mass center, it may be transformed to another parallel axis. The transformation equation is

$$I_{new} = I_c + md^2, \text{ where}$$

I_{new} = the mass moment of inertia about any specified axis

I_c = the mass moment of inertia about an axis that is parallel to the above specified axis but passes through the body's mass center

m = the mass of the body

d = the normal distance from the body's mass center to the above-specified axis

Mass Radius of Gyration

The mass radius of gyration is defined as

$$r_m = \sqrt{I/m}$$

Without loss of generality, the body may be assumed to be in the x - y plane. The scalar equations of motion may then be written as

$$\Sigma F_x = ma_{xc}$$

$$\Sigma F_y = ma_{yc}$$

$$\Sigma M_{zc} = I_{zc} \alpha, \text{ where}$$

zc indicates the z axis passing through the body's mass center, a_{xc} and a_{yc} are the acceleration of the body's mass center in the x and y directions, respectively, and α is the angular acceleration of the body about the z axis.

Rotation about an Arbitrary Fixed Axis

◆ Rigid Body Motion About a Fixed Axis

| Variable α | Constant $\alpha = \alpha_0$ |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| $\alpha = \frac{d\omega}{dt}$ | $\omega = \omega_0 + \alpha_0 t$ |
| $\omega = \frac{d\theta}{dt}$ | $\theta = \theta_0 + \omega_0 t + \frac{1}{2} \alpha_0 t^2$ |
| $\omega d\omega = \alpha d\theta$ | $\omega^2 = \omega_0^2 + 2\alpha_0(\theta - \theta_0)$ |

For rotation about some arbitrary fixed axis q

$$\Sigma M_q = I_q \alpha$$

If the applied moment acting about the fixed axis is constant then integrating with respect to time, from $t = 0$ yields

$$\alpha = M_q / I_q$$

$$\omega = \omega_0 + \alpha t$$

$$\theta = \theta_0 + \omega_0 t + \alpha t^2 / 2$$

where ω_0 and θ_0 are the values of angular velocity and angular displacement at time $t = 0$, respectively.

The change in kinetic energy is the work done in accelerating the rigid body from ω_0 to ω

$$I_q \omega^2 / 2 = I_q \omega_0^2 / 2 + \int_{\theta_0}^{\theta} M_q d\theta$$

Kinetic Energy

In general the kinetic energy for a rigid body may be written as

$$T = mv^2/2 + I_c \omega^2/2$$

For motion in the xy plane this reduces to

$$T = m(v_{cx}^2 + v_{cy}^2)/2 + I_c \omega^2/2$$

For motion about an instant center,

$$T = I_{IC} \omega^2/2$$

◆ Adapted from Hibbeler, R.C., *Engineering Mechanics*, 10th ed., Prentice Hall, 2003.

◆ **Principle of Angular Impulse and Momentum**

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Rigid Body} \\ \text{(Plane Motion)} \end{array} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} (\mathbf{H}_c)_1 + \Sigma \int \mathbf{M}_c dt = (\mathbf{H}_c)_2 \\ \text{where } \mathbf{H}_c = I_c \omega \\ \\ (\mathbf{H}_o)_1 + \Sigma \int \mathbf{M}_o dt = (\mathbf{H}_o)_2 \\ \text{where } \mathbf{H}_o = I_o \omega \end{array} \right.$$

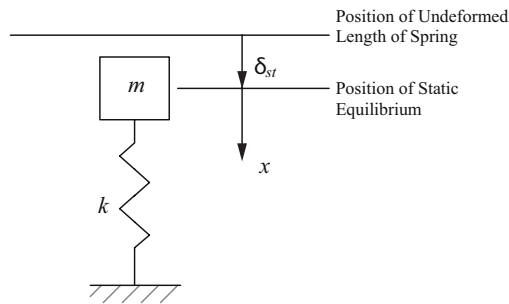
Subscript *c* indicates center of mass.

◆ **Conservation of Angular Momentum**

$$\Sigma(\text{syst. } \mathbf{H})_1 = \Sigma(\text{syst. } \mathbf{H})_2$$

Free Vibration

The figure illustrates a single degree-of-freedom system.



The equation of motion may be expressed as

$$m\ddot{x} = mg - k(x + \delta_{st})$$

where *m* is mass of the system, *k* is the spring constant of the system, δ_{st} is the static deflection of the system, and *x* is the displacement of the system from static equilibrium.

From statics it may be shown that

$$mg = k\delta_{st}$$

thus the equation of motion may be written as

$$\begin{aligned} m\ddot{x} + kx &= 0, \text{ or} \\ \ddot{x} + (k/m)x &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

The solution of this differential equation is

$$x(t) = C_1 \cos(\omega_n t) + C_2 \sin(\omega_n t)$$

where $\omega_n = \sqrt{k/m}$ is the undamped natural circular frequency and *C*₁ and *C*₂ are constants of integration whose values are determined from the initial conditions.

If the initial conditions are denoted as *x*(0) = *x*₀ and

$\dot{x}(0) = v_0$, then

$$x(t) = x_0 \cos(\omega_n t) + (v_0/\omega_n) \sin(\omega_n t)$$

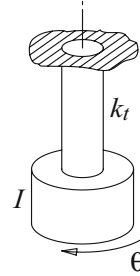
It may also be shown that the undamped natural frequency may be expressed in terms of the static deflection of the system as

$$\omega_n = \sqrt{g/\delta_{st}}$$

The undamped natural period of vibration may now be written as

$$\tau_n = 2\pi/\omega_n = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{k/m}} = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{g/\delta_{st}}}$$

Torsional Vibration



For torsional free vibrations it may be shown that the differential equation of motion is

$$\ddot{\theta} + (k_t/I)\theta = 0, \text{ where}$$

θ = the angular displacement of the system

*k*_t = the torsional stiffness of the massless rod

I = the mass moment of inertia of the end mass

The solution may now be written in terms of the initial conditions $\theta(0) = \theta_0$ and $\dot{\theta}(0) = \dot{\theta}_0$ as

$$\theta(t) = \theta_0 \cos(\omega_n t) + (\dot{\theta}_0/\omega_n) \sin(\omega_n t)$$

where the undamped natural circular frequency is given by

$$\omega_n = \sqrt{k_t/I}$$

The torsional stiffness of a solid round rod with associated polar moment-of-inertia *J*, length *L*, and shear modulus of elasticity *G* is given by

$$k_t = GJ/L$$

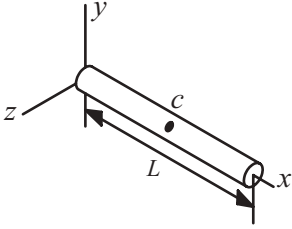
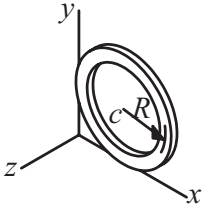
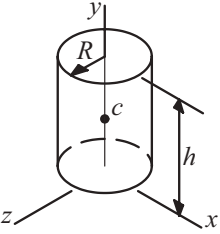
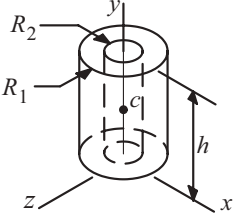
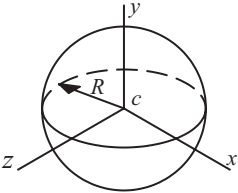
Thus the undamped circular natural frequency for a system with a solid round supporting rod may be written as

$$\omega_n = \sqrt{GJ/IL}$$

Similar to the linear vibration problem, the undamped natural period may be written as

$$\tau_n = 2\pi/\omega_n = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{k_t/I}} = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{GJ/IL}}$$

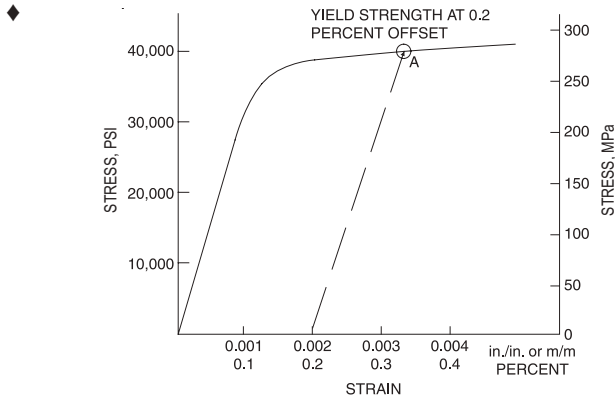
◆ Adapted from Hibbeler, R.C., *Engineering Mechanics*, 10th ed., Prentice Hall, 2003.

| Figure | Mass & Centroid | Mass Moment of Inertia | (Radius of Gyration) ² | Product of Inertia |
|---|---|---|--|--|
|  | $M = \rho LA$ $x_c = L/2$ $y_c = 0$ $z_c = 0$ A = cross-sectional area of rod ρ = mass/vol. | $I_x = I_{x_c} = 0$ $I_{y_c} = I_{z_c} = ML^2/12$ $I_y = I_z = ML^2/3$ | $r_x^2 = r_{x_c}^2 = 0$ $r_{y_c}^2 = r_{z_c}^2 = L^2/12$ $r_y^2 = r_z^2 = L^2/3$ | $I_{x_c y_c}, \text{ etc.} = 0$ $I_{xy}, \text{ etc.} = 0$ |
|  | $M = 2\pi R\rho A$ $x_c = R = \text{mean radius}$ $y_c = R = \text{mean radius}$ $z_c = 0$ A = cross-sectional area of ring ρ = mass/vol. | $I_{x_c} = I_{y_c} = MR^2/2$ $I_{z_c} = MR^2$ $I_x = I_y = 3MR^2/2$ $I_z = 3MR^2$ | $r_{x_c}^2 = r_{y_c}^2 = R^2/2$ $r_{z_c}^2 = R^2$ $r_x^2 = r_y^2 = 3R^2/2$ $r_z^2 = 3R^2$ | $I_{x_c y_c}, \text{ etc.} = 0$ $I_{z_c z_c} = MR^2$ $I_{xz} = I_{yz} = 0$ |
|  | $M = \pi R^2 \rho h$ $x_c = 0$ $y_c = h/2$ $z_c = 0$ ρ = mass/vol. | $I_{x_c} = I_{z_c} = M(3R^2 + h^2)/12$ $I_{y_c} = I_y = MR^2/2$ $I_x = I_z = M(3R^2 + 4h^2)/12$ | $r_{x_c}^2 = r_{z_c}^2 = (3R^2 + h^2)/12$ $r_{y_c}^2 = r_y^2 = R^2/2$ $r_x^2 = r_z^2 = (3R^2 + 4h^2)/12$ | $I_{x_c y_c}, \text{ etc.} = 0$ $I_{xy}, \text{ etc.} = 0$ |
|  | $M = \pi(R_1^2 - R_2^2)\rho h$ $x_c = 0$ $y_c = h/2$ $z_c = 0$ ρ = mass/vol. | $I_{x_c} = I_{z_c} = M(3R_1^2 + 3R_2^2 + h^2)/12$ $I_{y_c} = I_y = M(R_1^2 + R_2^2)/2$ $I_x = I_z = M(3R_1^2 + 3R_2^2 + 4h^2)/12$ | $r_{x_c}^2 = r_{z_c}^2 = (3R_1^2 + 3R_2^2 + h^2)/12$ $r_{y_c}^2 = r_y^2 = (R_1^2 + R_2^2)/2$ $r_x^2 = r_z^2 = (3R_1^2 + 3R_2^2 + 4h^2)/12$ | $I_{x_c y_c}, \text{ etc.} = 0$ $I_{xy}, \text{ etc.} = 0$ |
|  | $M = \frac{4}{3}\pi R^3 \rho$ $x_c = 0$ $y_c = 0$ $z_c = 0$ ρ = mass/vol. | $I_{x_c} = I_x = 2MR^2/5$ $I_{y_c} = I_y = 2MR^2/5$ $I_{z_c} = I_z = 2MR^2/5$ | $r_{x_c}^2 = r_x^2 = 2R^2/5$ $r_{y_c}^2 = r_y^2 = 2R^2/5$ $r_{z_c}^2 = r_z^2 = 2R^2/5$ | $I_{x_c y_c}, \text{ etc.} = 0$ |

MECHANICS OF MATERIALS

UNIAXIAL STRESS-STRAIN

Stress-Strain Curve for Mild Steel



The slope of the linear portion of the curve equals the modulus of elasticity.

DEFINITIONS

Engineering Strain

$$\varepsilon = \Delta L / L_o, \text{ where}$$

ε = engineering strain (units per unit)

ΔL = change in length (units) of member

L_o = original length (units) of member

Percent Elongation

$$\% \text{ Elongation} = \left(\frac{\Delta L}{L_o} \right) \times 100$$

Percent Reduction in Area (RA)

The % reduction in area from initial area, A_i , to final area, A_f , is:

$$\% RA = \left(\frac{A_i - A_f}{A_i} \right) \times 100$$

Shear Stress-Strain

$$\gamma = \tau / G, \text{ where}$$

γ = shear strain

τ = shear stress

G = shear modulus (constant in linear torsion-rotation relationship)

$$G = \frac{E}{2(1 + \nu)}, \text{ where}$$

E = modulus of elasticity (Young's modulus)

ν = Poisson's ratio

= - (lateral strain)/(longitudinal strain)

Uniaxial Loading and Deformation

$$\sigma = P/A, \text{ where}$$

σ = stress on the cross section

P = loading

A = cross-sectional area

$$\varepsilon = \delta / L, \text{ where}$$

δ = elastic longitudinal deformation

L = length of member

$$E = \sigma / \varepsilon = \frac{P/A}{\delta/L}$$

$$\delta = \frac{PL}{AE}$$

True stress is load divided by actual cross-sectional area whereas engineering stress is load divided by the initial area.

THERMAL DEFORMATIONS

$$\delta_t = \alpha L (T - T_o), \text{ where}$$

δ_t = deformation caused by a change in temperature

α = temperature coefficient of expansion

L = length of member

T = final temperature

T_o = initial temperature

CYLINDRICAL PRESSURE VESSEL

For internal pressure only, the stresses at the inside wall are:

$$\sigma_t = P_i \frac{r_o^2 + r_i^2}{r_o^2 - r_i^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma_r = -P_i$$

For external pressure only, the stresses at the outside wall are:

$$\sigma_t = -P_o \frac{r_o^2 + r_i^2}{r_o^2 - r_i^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma_r = -P_o, \text{ where}$$

σ_t = tangential (hoop) stress

σ_r = radial stress

P_i = internal pressure

P_o = external pressure

r_i = inside radius

r_o = outside radius

For vessels with end caps, the axial stress is:

$$\sigma_a = P_i \frac{r_i^2}{r_o^2 - r_i^2}$$

σ_t , σ_r , and σ_a are principal stresses.

♦ Flinn, Richard A., and Paul K. Trojan, *Engineering Materials & Their Applications*, 4th ed., Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston, 1990.

When the thickness of the cylinder wall is about one-tenth or less of inside radius, the cylinder can be considered as thin-walled. In which case, the internal pressure is resisted by the hoop stress and the axial stress.

$$\sigma_t = \frac{P_i r}{t} \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma_a = \frac{P_i r}{2t}$$

where t = wall thickness and $r = \frac{r_i + r_o}{2}$.

STRESS AND STRAIN

Principal Stresses

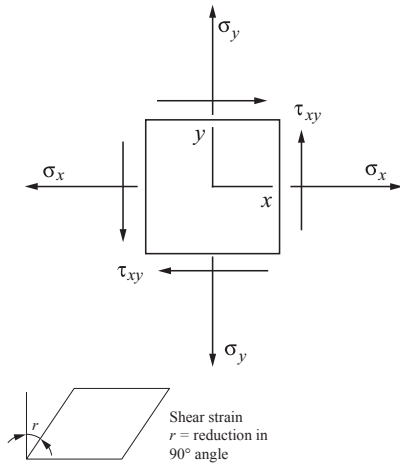
For the special case of a *two-dimensional* stress state, the equations for principal stress reduce to

$$\sigma_a, \sigma_b = \frac{\sigma_x + \sigma_y}{2} \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{\sigma_x - \sigma_y}{2}\right)^2 + \tau_{xy}^2}$$

$$\sigma_c = 0$$

The two nonzero values calculated from this equation are temporarily labeled σ_a and σ_b and the third value σ_c is always zero in this case. Depending on their values, the three roots are then labeled according to the convention:

algebraically largest = σ_1 , *algebraically smallest* = σ_3 , *other* = σ_2 . A typical 2D stress element is shown below with all indicated components shown in their positive sense.



Mohr's Circle – Stress, 2D

To construct a Mohr's circle, the following sign conventions are used.

1. Tensile normal stress components are plotted on the horizontal axis and are considered positive. Compressive normal stress components are negative.
2. For constructing Mohr's circle only, shearing stresses are plotted above the normal stress axis when the pair of shearing stresses, acting on opposite and parallel faces of an element, forms a clockwise couple. Shearing stresses are plotted below the normal axis when the shear stresses form a counterclockwise couple.

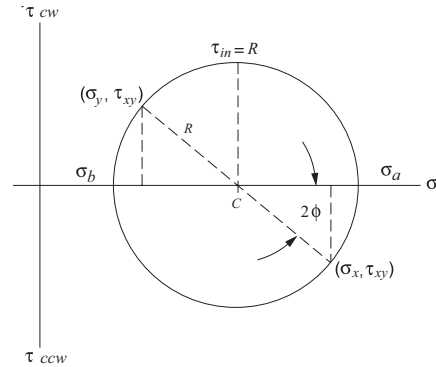
The circle drawn with the center on the normal stress (horizontal) axis with center, C , and radius, R , where

$$C = \frac{\sigma_x + \sigma_y}{2}, \quad R = \sqrt{\left(\frac{\sigma_x - \sigma_y}{2}\right)^2 + \tau_{xy}^2}$$

The two nonzero principal stresses are then:

$$\sigma_a = C + R$$

$$\sigma_b = C - R$$



The maximum *inplane* shear stress is $\tau_{in} = R$. However, the maximum shear stress considering three dimensions is always

$$\tau_{max} = \frac{\sigma_1 - \sigma_3}{2}$$

Hooke's Law

Three-dimensional case:

$$\epsilon_x = (1/E)[\sigma_x - \nu(\sigma_y + \sigma_z)] \quad \gamma_{xy} = \tau_{xy}/G$$

$$\epsilon_y = (1/E)[\sigma_y - \nu(\sigma_z + \sigma_x)] \quad \gamma_{yz} = \tau_{yz}/G$$

$$\epsilon_z = (1/E)[\sigma_z - \nu(\sigma_x + \sigma_y)] \quad \gamma_{zx} = \tau_{zx}/G$$

Plane stress case ($\sigma_z = 0$):

$$\begin{matrix} \epsilon_x = (1/E)(\sigma_x - \nu\sigma_y) \\ \epsilon_y = (1/E)(\sigma_y - \nu\sigma_x) \\ \epsilon_z = -(1/E)(\nu\sigma_x + \nu\sigma_y) \end{matrix} \quad \begin{matrix} \left\{ \begin{matrix} \sigma_x \\ \sigma_y \\ \tau_{xy} \end{matrix} \right\} = \frac{E}{1 - \nu^2} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \nu & 0 \\ \nu & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1 - \nu}{2} \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} \left\{ \begin{matrix} \epsilon_x \\ \epsilon_y \\ \gamma_{xy} \end{matrix} \right\} \end{matrix}$$

Uniaxial case ($\sigma_y = \sigma_z = 0$): $\sigma_x = E\epsilon_x$ or $\sigma = E\epsilon$, where

$\epsilon_x, \epsilon_y, \epsilon_z$ = normal strain

$\sigma_x, \sigma_y, \sigma_z$ = normal stress

$\gamma_{xy}, \gamma_{yz}, \gamma_{zx}$ = shear strain

$\tau_{xy}, \tau_{yz}, \tau_{zx}$ = shear stress

E = modulus of elasticity

G = shear modulus

ν = Poisson's ratio

When there is a temperature change from an initial temperature T_i to a final temperature T_f there are also thermally-induced normal strains. In this case, $\epsilon_x, \epsilon_y,$ and ϵ_z require modification. Thus,

$$\epsilon_x = \frac{1}{E}[\sigma_x - \nu(\sigma_y + \sigma_z)] + \alpha(T_f - T_i)$$

and similarly for ϵ_y and ϵ_z , where α = coefficient of thermal expansion (CTE).

♦ Crandall, S.H., and N.C. Dahl, *An Introduction to Mechanics of Solids*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1959.

TORSION

Torsion stress in circular solid or thick-walled ($t > 0.1 r$) shafts:

$$\tau = \frac{Tr}{J}$$

where J = polar moment of inertia

TORSIONAL STRAIN

$$\gamma_{\phi z} = \lim_{\Delta z \rightarrow 0} r(\Delta\phi/\Delta z) = r(d\phi/dz)$$

The shear strain varies in direct proportion to the radius, from zero strain at the center to the greatest strain at the outside of the shaft. $d\phi/dz$ is the twist per unit length or the rate of twist.

$$\tau_{\phi z} = G\gamma_{\phi z} = Gr(d\phi/dz)$$

$$T = G(d\phi/dz) \int_A r^2 dA = GJ(d\phi/dz)$$

$$\phi = \int_0^L \frac{T}{GJ} dz = \frac{TL}{GJ}, \text{ where}$$

ϕ = total angle (radians) of twist

T = torque

L = length of shaft

T/ϕ gives the *twisting moment per radian of twist*. This is called the *torsional stiffness* and is often denoted by the symbol k or c .

For Hollow, Thin-Walled Shafts

$$\tau = \frac{T}{2A_m t}, \text{ where}$$

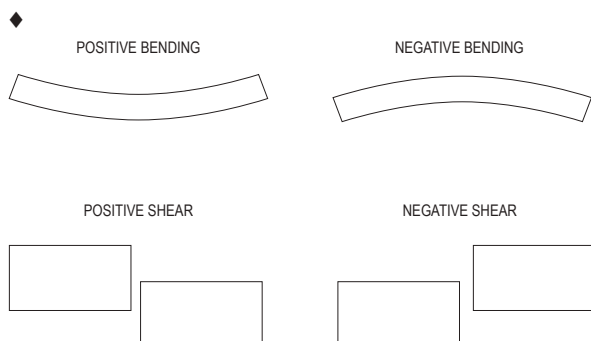
t = thickness of shaft wall

A_m = the area of a solid shaft of radius equal to the mean radius of the hollow shaft

BEAMS

Shearing Force and Bending Moment Sign Conventions

- The bending moment is *positive* if it produces bending of the beam *concave upward* (compression in top fibers and tension in bottom fibers).
- The shearing force is *positive* if the *right portion of the beam tends to shear downward with respect to the left*.



The relationship between the load (w), shear (V), and moment (M) equations are:

$$w(x) = -\frac{dV(x)}{dx}$$

$$V = \frac{dM(x)}{dx}$$

$$V_2 - V_1 = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} [-w(x)] dx$$

$$M_2 - M_1 = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} V(x) dx$$

Stresses in Beams

The normal stress in a beam due to bending:

$$\sigma_x = -My/I, \text{ where}$$

M = the moment at the section

I = the *moment of inertia* of the cross section

y = the distance from the neutral axis to the fiber location above or below the neutral axis

The maximum normal stresses in a beam due to bending:

$$\sigma_x = \pm Mc/I, \text{ where}$$

c = distance from the neutral axis to the outermost fiber of a symmetrical beam section.

$$\sigma_x = -M/s, \text{ where}$$

s = I/c : the elastic section modulus of the beam.

Transverse shear stress:

$$\tau_{xy} = VQ/(Ib), \text{ where}$$

V = shear force

$Q = A'\bar{y}'$, where

A' = area above the layer (or plane) upon which the desired transverse shear stress acts

\bar{y}' = distance from neutral axis to area centroid

b = width or thickness of the cross-section

Transverse shear flow:

$$q = VQ/I$$

♦ Timoshenko, S., and Gleason H. MacCullough, *Elements of Strengths of Materials*, K. Van Nostrand Co./Wadsworth Publishing Co., 1949.

Deflection of Beams

Using $1/\rho = M/(EI)$,

$$EI \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = M, \text{ differential equation of deflection curve}$$

$$EI \frac{d^3y}{dx^3} = dM(x)/dx = V$$

$$EI \frac{d^4y}{dx^4} = dV(x)/dx = -w$$

Determine the deflection curve equation by double integration (apply boundary conditions applicable to the deflection and/or slope).

$$EI (dy/dx) = \int M(x) dx$$

$$EI y = \int [\int M(x) dx] dx$$

The constants of integration can be determined from the physical geometry of the beam.

Composite Sections

The bending stresses in a beam composed of dissimilar materials (material 1 and material 2) where $E_1 > E_2$ are:

$$\sigma_1 = -nMy/I_T$$

$$\sigma_2 = -My/I_T, \text{ where}$$

I_T = the *moment of inertia* of the *transformed* section

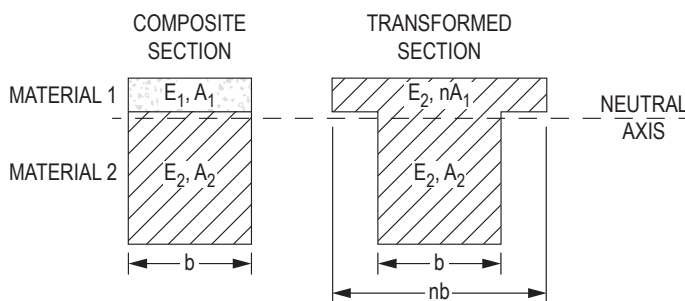
n = the modular ratio E_1/E_2

E_1 = elastic modulus of material 1

E_2 = elastic modulus of material 2

y = distance from the neutral axis to the fiber location above or below the neutral axis

The composite section is transformed into a section composed of a single material. The centroid and then the moment of inertia are found on the *transformed section* for use in the bending stress equations.



COLUMNS

Critical axial load for long column subject to buckling:

Euler's Formula

$$P_{cr} = \frac{\pi^2 EI}{(K\ell)^2}, \text{ where}$$

ℓ = unbraced column length

K = effective-length factor to account for end supports

Theoretical effective-length factors for columns include:

Pinned-pinned, $K = 1.0$

Fixed-fixed, $K = 0.5$

Fixed-pinned, $K = 0.7$

Fixed-free, $K = 2.0$

Critical buckling stress for long columns:

$$\sigma_{cr} = \frac{P_{cr}}{A} = \frac{\pi^2 E}{(K\ell/r)^2}, \text{ where}$$

r = *radius of gyration* $\sqrt{I/A}$

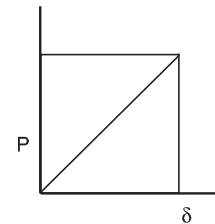
$K\ell/r$ = *effective slenderness ratio* for the column

ELASTIC STRAIN ENERGY

If the strain remains within the elastic limit, the work done during deflection (extension) of a member will be transformed into potential energy and can be recovered.

If the final load is P and the corresponding elongation of a tension member is δ , then the total energy U stored is equal to the work W done during loading.

$$U = W = P\delta/2$$



The strain energy per unit volume is

$$u = U/AL = \sigma^2/2E \quad (\text{for tension})$$

MATERIAL PROPERTIES

Table 1 - Typical Material Properties
(Use these values if the specific alloy and temper are not listed on Table 2 below)

| Material | Modulus of Elasticity, E [Mpsi (GPa)] | Modulus of Rigidity, G [Mpsi (GPa)] | Poisson's Ratio, ν | Coefficient of Thermal Expansion, α [$10^{-6}/^{\circ}\text{F}$ ($10^{-6}/^{\circ}\text{C}$)] | Density, ρ [lb/in ³ (Mg/m ³)] |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------|---|---|
| Steel | 29.0 (200.0) | 11.5 (80.0) | 0.30 | 6.5 (11.7) | 0.282 (7.8) |
| Aluminum | 10.0 (69.0) | 3.8 (26.0) | 0.33 | 13.1 (23.6) | 0.098 (2.7) |
| Cast Iron | 14.5 (100.0) | 6.0 (41.4) | 0.21 | 6.7 (12.1) | 0.246–0.282 (6.8–7.8) |
| Wood (Fir) | 1.6 (11.0) | 0.6 (4.1) | 0.33 | 1.7 (3.0) | – |
| Brass | 14.8–18.1 (102–125) | 5.8 (40) | 0.33 | 10.4 (18.7) | 0.303–0.313 (8.4–8.7) |
| Copper | 17 (117) | 6.5 (45) | 0.36 | 9.3 (16.6) | 0.322 (8.9) |
| Bronze | 13.9–17.4 (96–120) | 6.5 (45) | 0.34 | 10.0 (18.0) | 0.278–0.314 (7.7–8.7) |
| Magnesium | 6.5 (45) | 2.4 (16.5) | 0.35 | 14 (25) | 0.061 (1.7) |
| Glass | 10.2 (70) | – | 0.22 | 5.0 (9.0) | 0.090 (2.5) |
| Polystyrene | 0.3 (2) | – | 0.34 | 38.9 (70.0) | 0.038 (1.05) |
| Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) | <0.6 (<4) | – | – | 28.0 (50.4) | 0.047 (1.3) |
| Alumina Fiber | 58 (400) | – | – | – | 0.141 (3.9) |
| Aramide Fiber | 18.1 (125) | – | – | – | 0.047 (1.3) |
| Boron Fiber | 58 (400) | – | – | – | 0.083 (2.3) |
| Beryllium Fiber | 43.5 (300) | – | – | – | 0.069 (1.9) |
| BeO Fiber | 58 (400) | – | – | – | 0.108 (3.0) |
| Carbon Fiber | 101.5 (700) | – | – | – | 0.083 (2.3) |
| Silicon Carbide Fiber | 58 (400) | – | – | – | 0.116 (3.2) |

Table 2 - Average Mechanical Properties of Typical Engineering Materials
(U.S. Customary Units)

(Use these values for the specific alloys and temper listed. For all other materials refer to Table 1 above.)

| Materials | Specific Weight γ (lb/in ³) | Modulus of Elasticity E (10 ³ ksi) | Modulus of Rigidity G (10 ³ ksi) | Yield Strength (ksi) | | | Ultimate Strength (ksi) | | | % Elongation in 2 in. specimen | Poisson's Ratio ν | Coef. of Therm. Expansion α (10^{-6})/ $^{\circ}\text{F}$ | |
|---|--|---|---|----------------------|-------|-------|-------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------|--|----|
| | | | | Tens. | Comp. | Shear | Tens. | Comp. | Shear | | | | |
| Metallic | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Aluminum | 0.101 | 10.6 | 3.9 | 60 | 60 | 25 | 68 | 68 | 42 | 10 | 0.35 | 12.8 | |
| Wrought Alloys [2014-T6 6061-T6 | | | | 37 | 37 | 19 | 42 | 42 | 27 | | | | 12 |
| Cast Iron | 0.260 | 10.0 | 3.9 | – | – | – | 26 | 97 | – | 0.6 | 0.28 | 6.70 | |
| Alloys [Gray ASTM 20 Malleable ASTM A-197 | | | | – | – | – | 40 | 83 | – | | | | 5 |
| Copper | 0.316 | 14.6 | 5.4 | 11.4 | 11.4 | – | 35 | 35 | – | 35 | 0.35 | 9.80 | |
| Alloys [Red Brass C83400 Bronze C86100 | | | | 50 | 50 | – | 95 | 95 | – | | | | 20 |
| Magnesium Alloy [Am 1004-T611] | 0.066 | 6.48 | 2.5 | 22 | 22 | – | 40 | 40 | 22 | 1 | 0.30 | 14.3 | |
| Steel | 0.284 | 29.0 | 11.0 | 36 | 36 | – | 58 | 58 | – | 30 | 0.32 | 6.60 | |
| Alloys [Structural A36 Stainless 304 | | | | 30 | 30 | – | 75 | 75 | – | | | | 40 |
| Tool L2 | | | | 102 | 102 | – | 116 | 116 | – | | | | 22 |
| Titanium Alloy [Ti-6Al-4V] | 0.160 | 17.4 | 6.4 | 134 | 134 | – | 145 | 145 | – | 16 | 0.36 | 5.20 | |
| Nonmetallic | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Concrete | 0.086 | 3.20 | – | – | – | 1.8 | – | – | – | – | 0.15 | 6.0 | |
| [Low Strength High Strength | | 4.20 | – | – | – | 5.5 | – | – | – | | | | |
| Plastic Reinforced | 0.0524 | 19.0 | – | – | – | – | 104 | 70 | 10.2 | 2.8 | 0.34 | – | |
| [Kevlar 49 30% Glass | | 10.5 | – | – | – | – | 13 | 19 | – | | | | |
| Wood | 0.017 | 1.90 | – | – | – | – | 0.30 ^c | 3.78 ^d | 0.90 ^d | – | 0.29 ^c | – | |
| Select Structural Grade [Douglas Fir White Spruce | | 1.40 | – | – | – | – | 0.36 ^c | 5.18 ^d | 0.97 ^d | | | | |

^a SPECIFIC VALUES MAY VARY FOR A PARTICULAR MATERIAL DUE TO ALLOY OR MINERAL COMPOSITION, MECHANICAL WORKING OF THE SPECIMEN, OR HEAT TREATMENT. FOR A MORE EXACT VALUE REFERENCE BOOKS FOR THE MATERIAL SHOULD BE CONSULTED.

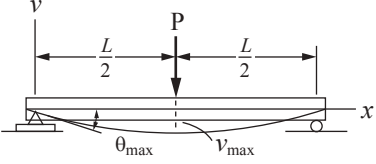
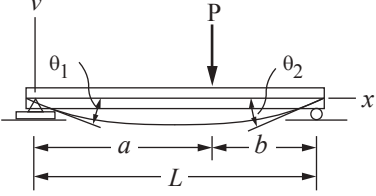
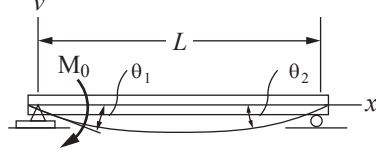
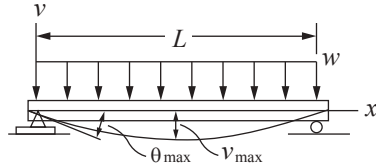
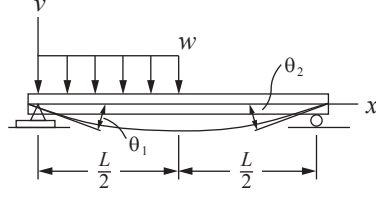
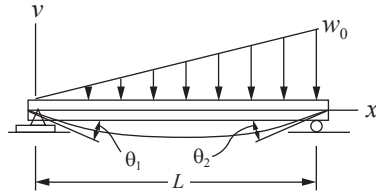
^b THE YIELD AND ULTIMATE STRENGTHS FOR DUCTILE MATERIALS CAN BE ASSUMED EQUAL FOR BOTH TENSION AND COMPRESSION.

^c MEASURED PERPENDICULAR TO THE GRAIN.

^d MEASURED PARALLEL TO THE GRAIN.

^e DEFORMATION MEASURED PERPENDICULAR TO THE GRAIN WHEN THE LOAD IS APPLIED ALONG THE GRAIN.

Simply Supported Beam Slopes and Deflections

| BEAM | SLOPE | DEFLECTION | ELASTIC CURVE |
|---|---|--|--|
|  | $\theta_{\max} = \frac{-PL^2}{16EI}$ | $v_{\max} = \frac{-PL^3}{48EI}$ | $v = \frac{-Px}{48EI} (3L^2 - 4x^2)$ $0 \leq x \leq L/2$ |
|  | $\theta_1 = \frac{-Pab(L+b)}{6EIL}$ $\theta_2 = \frac{Pab(L+a)}{6EIL}$ | $v \Big _{x=a} = \frac{-Pba}{6EIL} (L^2 - b^2 - a^2)$ | $v = \frac{-Pbx}{6EIL} (L^2 - b^2 - x^2)$ $0 \leq x \leq a$ |
|  | $\theta_1 = \frac{-M_0L}{3EI}$ $\theta_2 = \frac{M_0L}{6EI}$ | $v_{\max} = \frac{-M_0L^2}{\sqrt{243}EI}$ | $v = \frac{-M_0x}{6EIL} (x^2 - 3Lx + 2L^2)$ |
|  | $\theta_{\max} = \frac{-wL^3}{24EI}$ | $v_{\max} = \frac{-5wL^4}{384EI}$ | $v = \frac{-wx}{24EI} (x^3 - 2Lx^2 + L^3)$ |
|  | $\theta_1 = \frac{-3wL^3}{128EI}$ $\theta_2 = \frac{7wL^3}{384EI}$ | $v \Big _{x=L/2} = \frac{-5wL^4}{768EI}$ $v_{\max} = -0.006563 \frac{wL^4}{EI}$ at $x = 0.4598L$ | $v = \frac{-wx}{384EI} (16x^3 - 24Lx^2 + 9L^3)$ $0 \leq x \leq L/2$ $v = \frac{-wL}{384EI} (8x^3 - 24Lx^2 + 17L^2x - L^3)$ $L/2 \leq x < L$ |
|  | $\theta_1 = \frac{-7w_0L^3}{360EI}$ $\theta_2 = \frac{w_0L^3}{45EI}$ | $v_{\max} = -0.00652 \frac{w_0L^4}{EI}$ at $x = 0.5193L$ | $v = \frac{-w_0x}{360EIL} (3x^4 - 10L^2x^2 + 7L^4)$ |

Adapted from Hibbeler, R.C., *Mechanics of Materials*, 4th ed., Prentice Hall, 2000, p. 800.

Cantilevered Beam Slopes and Deflections

| BEAM | SLOPE | DEFLECTION | ELASTIC CURVE |
|------|-------------------------------------|---|--|
| | $\theta_{\max} = \frac{-Pa^2}{2EI}$ | $v_{\max} = \frac{-Pa^2}{6EI} (3L - a)$ | $v = \frac{-Pa^2}{6EI} (3x - a), \text{ for } x > a$ $v = \frac{-Px^2}{6EI} (-x + 3a), \text{ for } x \leq a$ |

Adapted from Crandall, S.H. and N.C. Dahl, *An Introduction to Mechanics of Solids*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1959.

| | | | |
|--|--|-----------------------------------|--|
| | $\theta_{\max} = \frac{-wL^3}{6EI}$ | $v_{\max} = \frac{-wL^4}{8EI}$ | $v = \frac{-wx^2}{24EI} (x^2 - 4Lx + 6L^2)$ |
| | $\theta_{\max} = \frac{M_0L}{EI}$ | $v_{\max} = \frac{M_0L^2}{2EI}$ | $v = \frac{M_0x^2}{2EI}$ |
| | $\theta_{\max} = \frac{-wL^3}{48EI}$ | $v_{\max} = \frac{-7wL^4}{384EI}$ | $v = \frac{-wx^2}{24EI} \left(x^2 - 2Lx + \frac{3}{2}L^2 \right) \quad 0 \leq x \leq L/2$ $v = \frac{-wL^3}{192EI} (4x - L/2) \quad L/2 \leq x \leq L$ |
| | $\theta_{\max} = \frac{-w_0L^3}{24EI}$ | $v_{\max} = \frac{-w_0L^4}{30EI}$ | $v = \frac{-w_0x^2}{120EIL} (10L^3 - 10L^2x + 5Lx^2 - x^3)$ |

Adapted from Hibbeler, R.C., *Mechanics of Materials*, 4th ed., Prentice Hall, 2000, p. 801.

Piping Segment Slopes and Deflections

| PIPE | SLOPE | DEFLECTION | ELASTIC CURVE |
|---|---|---|--|
| <p> $R_1 = R_2 = \frac{wL}{2}$ and $M_1 = M_2 = \frac{wL^2}{12}$ </p> | $ \theta_{\max} = 0.008 \frac{wL^3}{24EI}$ $\text{at } x = \frac{1}{2} \pm \frac{L}{\sqrt{12}}$ | $ v_{\max} = \frac{wL^4}{384EI} \text{ at } x = \frac{L}{2}$ | $v(x) = \frac{wx^2}{24EI} (L^2 - 2Lx + x^2)$ |

Adapted from Crandall, S.H. and N.C. Dahl, *An Introduction to Mechanics of Solids*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1959.

THERMODYNAMICS

PROPERTIES OF SINGLE-COMPONENT SYSTEMS

Nomenclature

1. Intensive properties are independent of mass.
2. Extensive properties are proportional to mass.
3. Specific properties are lowercase (extensive/mass).

State Functions (properties)

| | |
|--|--|
| Absolute Pressure, P | (lbf/in ² or Pa) |
| Absolute Temperature, T | (°R or K) |
| Volume, V | (ft ³ or m ³) |
| Specific Volume, $v = V/m$ | (ft ³ /lbm or m ³ /kg) |
| Internal Energy, U | (Btu or kJ) |
| Specific Internal Energy, $u = U/m$ | (Btu/lbm or kJ/kg) |
| Enthalpy, H | (Btu or kJ) |
| Specific Enthalpy, $h = u + Pv = H/m$ | (Btu/lbm or kJ/kg) |
| Entropy, S | (Btu/°R or kJ/K) |
| Specific Entropy, $s = S/m$ | [Btu/(lbm·°R) or kJ/(kg·K)] |
| Gibbs Free Energy, $g = h - Ts$ | (Btu/lbm or kJ/kg) |
| Helmholtz Free Energy, $a = u - Ts$ | (Btu/lbm or kJ/kg) |

For a single-phase pure component, specification of any two intensive, independent properties is sufficient to fix all the rest.

Heat Capacity at Constant Pressure,

$$c_p = \left(\frac{\partial h}{\partial T} \right)_P \quad [\text{Btu}/(\text{lbm} \cdot ^\circ\text{R}) \text{ or } \text{kJ}/(\text{kg} \cdot \text{K})]$$

Heat Capacity at Constant Volume,

$$c_v = \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial T} \right)_v \quad [\text{Btu}/(\text{lbm} \cdot ^\circ\text{R}) \text{ or } \text{kJ}/(\text{kg} \cdot \text{K})]$$

The steam tables in this section provide T , P , v , u , h , and s data for saturated and superheated water.

A P - h diagram for refrigerant HFC-134a providing T , P , v , h , and s data in a graphical format is included in this section.

Thermal and physical property tables for selected gases, liquids, and solids are included in this section.

Properties for Two-Phase (vapor-liquid) Systems

Quality x (for liquid-vapor systems at saturation) is defined as the mass fraction of the vapor phase:

$$x = m_g / (m_g + m_f), \text{ where}$$

m_g = mass of vapor

m_f = mass of liquid

Specific volume of a two-phase system can be written:

$$v = xv_g + (1-x)v_f \text{ or } v = v_f + xv_{fg}, \text{ where}$$

v_f = specific volume of saturated liquid

v_g = specific volume of saturated vapor

v_{fg} = specific volume change upon vaporization

$$= v_g - v_f$$

Similar expressions exist for u , h , and s :

$$u = xu_g + (1-x)u_f \text{ or } u = u_f + xv_{fg}$$

$$h = xh_g + (1-x)h_f \text{ or } h = h_f + xv_{fg}$$

$$s = xs_g + (1-x)s_f \text{ or } s = s_f + xv_{fg}$$

PVT BEHAVIOR

Ideal Gas

For an ideal gas, $Pv = RT$ or $PV = mRT$, and

$$P_1v_1/T_1 = P_2v_2/T_2, \text{ where}$$

P = pressure

v = specific volume

m = mass of gas

R = gas constant

T = absolute temperature

V = volume

R is *specific to each gas* but can be found from

$$R_i = \frac{\bar{R}}{(\text{mol. wt})_i}, \text{ where}$$

\bar{R} = the universal gas constant

$$= 1,545 \text{ ft} \cdot \text{lbf}/(\text{lbmol} \cdot ^\circ\text{R}) = 8,314 \text{ J}/(\text{kmol} \cdot \text{K})$$

$$= 8.314 \text{ kPa} \cdot \text{m}^3/(\text{kmol} \cdot \text{K}) = 0.08206 \text{ L} \cdot \text{atm}/(\text{mole} \cdot \text{K})$$

For *ideal gases*, $c_p - c_v = R$

Ideal gas behavior is characterized by:

- no intermolecular interactions
- molecules occupy zero volume

The properties of an ideal gas reflect those of a single molecule and are attributable entirely to the structure of the molecule and the system T .

For *ideal gases*:

$$\left(\frac{\partial h}{\partial P} \right)_T = 0 \quad \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial v} \right)_T = 0$$

For cold air standard, *heat capacities are assumed to be constant* at their room temperature values. In that case, the following are true:

$$\Delta u = c_v \Delta T; \quad \Delta h = c_p \Delta T$$

$$\Delta s = c_p \ln (T_2/T_1) - R \ln (P_2/P_1)$$

$$\Delta s = c_v \ln (T_2/T_1) + R \ln (v_2/v_1)$$

Also, for *constant entropy* processes:

$$\frac{P_2}{P_1} = \left(\frac{v_1}{v_2} \right)^k; \quad \frac{T_2}{T_1} = \left(\frac{P_2}{P_1} \right)^{\frac{k-1}{k}}$$

$$\frac{T_2}{T_1} = \left(\frac{v_1}{v_2} \right)^{k-1}, \text{ where } k = c_p/c_v$$

Ideal Gas Mixtures

$i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ constituents. Each constituent is an ideal gas.

Mole Fraction:

$$x_i = N_i/N; N = \sum N_i; \sum x_i = 1$$

where N_i = number of moles of component i

N = total moles in the mixture

Mass Fraction: $y_i = m_i/m; m = \sum m_i; \sum y_i = 1$

Molecular Weight: $M = m/N = \sum x_i M_i$

To convert *mole fractions* x_i to *mass fractions* y_i :

$$y_i = \frac{x_i M_i}{\sum (x_i M_i)}$$

To convert *mass fractions* to *mole fractions*:

$$x_i = \frac{y_i/M_i}{\sum (y_i/M_i)}$$

Partial Pressures: $P_i = \frac{m_i R_i T}{V}$ and $P = \sum P_i$

Partial Volumes: $V_i = \frac{m_i R_i T}{P}$ and $V = \sum V_i$

where P, V, T = the pressure, volume, and temperature of the mixture and $R_i = \bar{R}/M_i$

Combining the above generates the following additional expressions for mole fraction.

$$x_i = P_i/P = V_i/V$$

Other Properties:

$$c_p = \sum (y_i c_{p_i})$$

$$c_v = \sum (y_i c_{v_i})$$

$$u = \sum (y_i u_i); h = \sum (y_i h_i); s = \sum (y_i s_i)$$

u_i and h_i are evaluated at T

s_i is evaluated at T and P_i

Real Gas

Most gases exhibit ideal gas behavior when the system pressure is less than 3 atm since the distance between molecules is large enough to produce negligible molecular interactions. The behavior of a real gas deviates from that of an ideal gas at higher pressures due to molecular interactions.

For a real gas, $Pv = ZRT$ where Z = compressibility factor.

$Z = 1$ for an ideal gas; $Z \neq 1$ for a real gas

Equations of State (EOS)

EOS are used to quantify PvT behavior

Ideal Gas EOS (applicable only to ideal gases)

$$P = \left(\frac{RT}{v}\right)$$

Generalized Compressibility EOS (applicable to all systems as gases, liquids, and/or solids)

$$P = \left(\frac{RT}{v}\right)Z$$

Virial EOS (applicable only to gases)

$$P = \left(\frac{RT}{v}\right)\left(1 + \frac{B}{v} + \frac{C}{v^2} + \dots\right) \text{ where } B, C, \dots$$

are virial coefficients obtained from PvT measurements or statistical mechanics.

Cubic EOS (theoretically motivated with intent to predict gas and liquid thermodynamic properties)

$$P = \frac{RT}{v-b} - \frac{a(T)}{(v+c_1b)(v+c_2b)}$$

where $a(T)$, b , and c_1 and c_2 are species specific.

An example of a cubic EOS is the Van der Waals equation with constants based on the critical point:

$$\left(P + \frac{a}{v^2}\right)(v-b) = \bar{R}T$$

where $a = \left(\frac{27}{64}\right)\left(\frac{\bar{R}^2 T_c^2}{P_c}\right)$, $b = \frac{\bar{R}T_c}{8P_c}$

where P_c and T_c are the pressure and temperature at the critical point, respectively, and v is the molar specific volume.

EOS are used to predict:

- P, v , or T when two of the three are specified
- other thermodynamic properties based on analytic manipulation of the EOS
- mixture properties using appropriate mixing rules to create a pseudo-component that mimics the mixture properties

The Theorem of Corresponding States asserts that all normal fluids have the same value of Z at the same reduced temperature T_r and pressure P_r .

$$T_r = \frac{T}{T_c} \quad P_r = \frac{P}{P_c}$$

where T_c and P_c are the critical temperature and pressure, respectively, expressed in absolute units. This is captured in the Generalized Compressibility Factor chart.

FIRST LAW OF THERMODYNAMICS

The *First Law of Thermodynamics* is a statement of conservation of energy in a thermodynamic system. The net energy crossing the system boundary is equal to the change in energy inside the system.

Heat Q ($q = Q/m$) is *energy transferred* due to temperature difference and is considered positive if it is inward or added to the system.

Work W ($w = W/m$) is considered *positive if it is outward or work done* by the system.

Closed Thermodynamic System

No mass crosses system boundary

$$Q - W = \Delta U + \Delta KE + \Delta PE$$

where ΔU = change in internal energy

ΔKE = change in kinetic energy

ΔPE = change in potential energy

Energy can cross the boundary only in the form of heat or work. Work can be boundary work, w_b , or other work forms (electrical work, etc.)

Reversible boundary work is given by $w_b = \int P dv$.

Special Cases of Closed Systems (with no change in kinetic or potential energy)

Constant System Pressure process (**Charles' Law**):

$$w_b = P\Delta v$$

(ideal gas) $T/v = \text{constant}$

Constant Volume process:

$$w_b = 0$$

(ideal gas) $T/P = \text{constant}$

Isentropic process (ideal gas):

$$Pv^k = \text{constant}$$

$$w = (P_2v_2 - P_1v_1)/(1 - k)$$

$$= R(T_2 - T_1)/(1 - k)$$

Constant Temperature process (**Boyle's Law**):

(ideal gas) $Pv = \text{constant}$

$$w_b = RT \ln (v_2/v_1) = RT \ln (P_1/P_2)$$

Polytropic process (ideal gas):

$$Pv^n = \text{constant}$$

$$w = (P_2v_2 - P_1v_1)/(1 - n), n \neq 1$$

Open Thermodynamic System

Mass crosses the system boundary.

There is flow work (Pv) done by mass entering the system.

The reversible flow work is given by:

$$w_{rev} = - \int v dP + \Delta KE + \Delta PE$$

First Law applies whether or not processes are reversible.

Open System First Law (energy balance)

$$\Sigma \dot{m}_i \left[h_i + V_i^2/2 + gZ_i \right] - \Sigma \dot{m}_e \left[h_e + V_e^2/2 + gZ_e \right] + \dot{Q}_{in} - \dot{W}_{net} = d(m_s u_s)/dt, \text{ where}$$

\dot{W}_{net} = rate of net or shaft work

\dot{m} = mass flowrate (subscripts i and e refer to inlet and exit states of system)

g = acceleration of gravity

Z = elevation

V = velocity

m_s = mass of fluid within the system

u_s = specific internal energy of system

\dot{Q}_{in} = rate of heat transfer (neglecting kinetic and potential energy of the system)

Special Cases of Open Systems (with no change in kinetic or potential energy)

Constant Volume process:

$$w_{rev} = -v(P_2 - P_1)$$

Constant System Pressure process:

$$w_{rev} = 0$$

Constant Temperature process:

(ideal gas) $Pv = \text{constant}$

$$w_{rev} = RT \ln (v_2/v_1) = RT \ln (P_1/P_2)$$

Isentropic process (ideal gas):

$$Pv^k = \text{constant}$$

$$w_{rev} = k(P_2v_2 - P_1v_1)/(1 - k)$$

$$= kR(T_2 - T_1)/(1 - k)$$

$$w_{rev} = \frac{k}{k-1} RT_1 \left[1 - \left(\frac{P_2}{P_1} \right)^{(k-1)/k} \right]$$

Polytropic process (ideal gas):

$$Pv^n = \text{constant}$$

Closed system

$$w_{rev} = (P_2v_2 - P_1v_1)/(1 - n)$$

One-inlet, one-exit control volume

$$w_{rev} = n(P_2v_2 - P_1v_1)/(1 - n)$$

Steady-Flow Systems

The system does not change state with time. This assumption is valid for steady operation of turbines, pumps, compressors, throttling valves, nozzles, and heat exchangers, including boilers and condensers.

$$\Sigma \dot{m}_i \left(h_i + V_i^2/2 + gZ_i \right) - \Sigma \dot{m}_e \left(h_e + V_e^2/2 + gZ_e \right) + \dot{Q}_{in} - \dot{W}_{out} = 0$$

and

$$\Sigma \dot{m}_i = \Sigma \dot{m}_e$$

where

\dot{m} = mass flowrate (subscripts i and e refer to inlet and exit states of system)

g = acceleration of gravity

Z = elevation

V = velocity

\dot{Q}_{in} = the net rate of heat transfer into the system

\dot{W}_{out} = the net rate of work out of the system

Special Cases of Steady-Flow Energy Equation

Nozzles, Diffusers: Velocity terms are significant. No elevation change, no heat transfer, and no work. Single-mass stream.

$$h_i + V_i^2/2 = h_e + V_e^2/2$$

Isentropic Efficiency (nozzle) = $\frac{V_e^2 - V_i^2}{2(h_i - h_{es})}$, where

h_{es} = enthalpy at isentropic exit state.

Turbines, Pumps, Compressors: Often considered adiabatic (no heat transfer). Velocity terms usually can be ignored. There are significant work terms and a single-mass stream.

$$h_i = h_e + w$$

Isentropic Efficiency (turbine) = $\frac{h_i - h_e}{h_i - h_{es}}$

Isentropic Efficiency (compressor, pump) = $\frac{h_{es} - h_i}{h_e - h_i}$

For pump only, $h_{es} - h_i = v_i(P_e - P_i)$

Throttling Valves and Throttling Processes: No work, no heat transfer, and single-mass stream. Velocity terms are often insignificant.

$$h_i = h_e$$

Boilers, Condensers, Evaporators, One Side in a Heat Exchanger: Heat transfer terms are significant. For a single-mass stream, the following applies:

$$h_i + q = h_e$$

Heat Exchangers: No heat loss to the surroundings or work. Two separate flowrates \dot{m}_1 and \dot{m}_2 :

$$\dot{m}_1(h_{1i} - h_{1e}) = \dot{m}_2(h_{2e} - h_{2i})$$

Mixers, Separators, Open or Closed Feedwater Heaters:

$$\sum \dot{m}_i h_i = \sum \dot{m}_e h_e \quad \text{and}$$

$$\sum \dot{m}_i = \sum \dot{m}_e$$

BASIC CYCLES

Heat engines take in heat Q_H at a high temperature T_H , produce a net amount of work W , and reject heat Q_L at a low temperature T_L . The efficiency η of a heat engine is given by:

$$\eta = W/Q_H = (Q_H - Q_L)/Q_H$$

The most efficient engine possible is the *Carnot Cycle*. Its efficiency is given by:

$$\eta_c = (T_H - T_L)/T_H \quad \text{where}$$

T_H and T_L = absolute temperatures (Kelvin or Rankine).

The following heat-engine cycles are plotted on P - v and T - s diagrams in this section:

Carnot, Otto, Rankine

Refrigeration cycles are the reverse of heat-engine cycles. Heat is moved from low to high temperature requiring work, W . Cycles can be used either for refrigeration or as heat pumps.

Coefficient of Performance (COP) is defined as:

COP = Q_H/W for heat pumps, and as

COP = Q_L/W for refrigerators and air conditioners.

Upper limit of COP is based on reversed Carnot Cycle:

COP_c = $T_H/(T_H - T_L)$ for heat pumps and

COP_c = $T_L/(T_H - T_L)$ for refrigeration.

1 ton refrigeration = 12,000 Btu/hr = 3,516 W

The following refrigeration cycles are plotted on T - s diagrams in this section:

reversed rankine, two-stage refrigeration, air refrigeration

PSYCHROMETRICS

Properties of an air-water vapor mixture at a fixed pressure are given in graphical form on a psychrometric chart as provided in this section. When the system pressure is 1 atm, an ideal-gas mixture is assumed.

The definitions that follow use subscript a for dry air and v for water vapor.

P = pressure of the air-water mixture, normally 1 atm

T = dry-bulb temp (air/water mixture temperature)

P_a = partial pressure of dry air

P_v = partial pressure of water vapor

$$P = P_a + P_v$$

Specific Humidity (absolute humidity, humidity ratio) ω :

$\omega = m_v/m_a$, where

m_v = mass of water vapor

m_a = mass of dry air

$$\omega = 0.622P_v/P_a = 0.622P_v/(P - P_v)$$

Relative Humidity (rh) ϕ :

$\phi = P_v/P_g$, where

P_g = saturation pressure of water at T .

Enthalpy h : $h = h_a + \omega h_v$

Dew-Point Temperature T_{dp} :

$$T_{dp} = T_{sat} \text{ at } P_g = P_v$$

Wet-bulb temperature T_{wb} is the temperature indicated by a thermometer covered by a wick saturated with liquid water and in contact with moving air.

Humid Volume: Volume of moist air/mass of dry air.

SECOND LAW OF THERMODYNAMICS

Thermal Energy Reservoirs

$$\Delta S_{\text{reservoir}} = Q/T_{\text{reservoir}}, \text{ where}$$

Q is measured with respect to the reservoir.

Kelvin-Planck Statement of Second Law

No heat engine can operate in a cycle while transferring heat with a single heat reservoir.

COROLLARY to Kelvin-Planck: No heat engine can have a higher efficiency than a Carnot Cycle operating between the same reservoirs.

Clausius' Statement of Second Law

No refrigeration or heat pump cycle can operate without a net work input.

COROLLARY: No refrigerator or heat pump can have a higher COP than a Carnot Cycle refrigerator or heat pump.

Entropy

$$ds = (1/T)\delta q_{\text{rev}}$$

$$s_2 - s_1 = \int_1^2 (1/T)\delta q_{\text{rev}}$$

Inequality of Clausius

$$\oint (1/T)\delta q_{\text{rev}} \leq 0$$

$$\int_1^2 (1/T)\delta q \leq s_2 - s_1$$

Isothermal, Reversible Process

$$\Delta s = s_2 - s_1 = q/T$$

Isentropic Process

$$\Delta s = 0; ds = 0$$

A reversible adiabatic process is isentropic.

Adiabatic Process

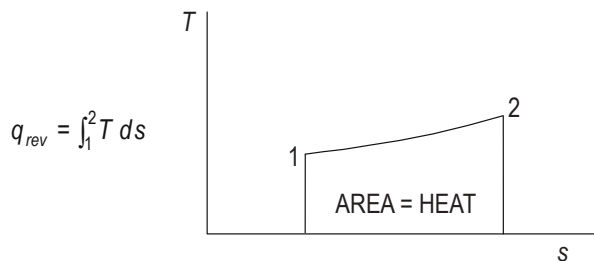
$$\delta q = 0; \Delta s \geq 0$$

Increase of Entropy Principle

$$\Delta s_{\text{total}} = \Delta s_{\text{system}} + \Delta s_{\text{surroundings}} \geq 0$$

$$\Delta \dot{s}_{\text{total}} = \sum \dot{m}_{\text{out}} s_{\text{out}} - \sum \dot{m}_{\text{in}} s_{\text{in}} - \sum (\dot{q}_{\text{external}}/T_{\text{external}}) \geq 0$$

Temperature-Entropy (T - s) Diagram



Entropy Change for Solids and Liquids

$$ds = c (dT/T)$$

$$s_2 - s_1 = \int c (dT/T) = c_{\text{mean}} \ln (T_2/T_1),$$

where c equals the heat capacity of the solid or liquid.

Exergy (Availability)

Exergy (also known as availability) is the maximum possible work that can be obtained from a cycle of a heat engine. The maximum possible work is obtained in a reversible process.

Closed-System Exergy (Availability)

(no chemical reactions)

$$\phi = (u - u_L) - T_L(s - s_L) + p_L(v - v_L)$$

where the subscript L designates environmental conditions and ϕ is availability function.

$$w_{\text{max}} = w_{\text{rev}} = \phi_1 - \phi_2$$

Open-System Exergy (Availability)

$$\Psi = (h - h_L) - T_L(s - s_L) + V^2/2 + gZ$$

where V is velocity, g is acceleration of gravity, Z is elevation and Ψ is availability function.

$$w_{\text{max}} = w_{\text{rev}} = \Psi_1 - \Psi_2$$

Gibbs Free Energy, ΔG

Energy released or absorbed in a reaction occurring reversibly at constant pressure and temperature.

Helmholtz Free Energy, ΔA

Energy released or absorbed in a reaction occurring reversibly at constant volume and temperature.

Irreversibility, I

$$I = w_{\text{rev}} - w_{\text{actual}} = T_L \Delta s_{\text{total}}$$

HEATS OF REACTION

For a chemical reaction the associated energy can be defined in terms of heats of formation of the individual species ΔH_f° at the standard state

$$(\Delta H_r^\circ) = \sum_{\text{products}} \nu_i (\Delta H_f^\circ)_i - \sum_{\text{reactants}} \nu_i (\Delta H_f^\circ)_i$$

ν_i = stoichiometric coefficient for species " i "

The standard state is 25°C and 1 bar.

The heat of formation is defined as the enthalpy change associated with the formation of a compound from its atomic species as they normally occur in nature [i.e., $O_2(g)$, $H_2(g)$, $C(\text{solid})$, etc.]

The heat of reaction varies with the temperature as follows:

$$\Delta H_r^\circ(T) = \Delta H_r^\circ(T_{\text{ref}}) + \int_{T_{\text{ref}}}^T \Delta c_p dT$$

where T_{ref} is some reference temperature (typically 25°C or 298 K), and:

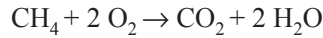
$$\Delta c_p = \sum_{\text{products}} \nu_i c_{p,i} - \sum_{\text{reactants}} \nu_i c_{p,i}$$

and $c_{p,i}$ is the molar heat capacity of component i .

The heat of reaction for a combustion process using oxygen is also known as the heat of combustion. The principal products are $CO_2(g)$ and $H_2O(l)$.

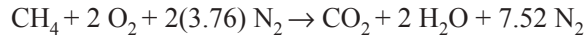
Combustion Processes

First, the combustion equation should be written and balanced. For example, for the stoichiometric combustion of methane in oxygen:



Combustion in Air

For each mole of oxygen, there will be 3.76 moles of nitrogen. For stoichiometric combustion of methane in air:



Combustion in Excess Air

The excess oxygen appears as oxygen on the right side of the combustion equation.

Incomplete Combustion

Some carbon is burned to create carbon monoxide (CO).

Molar Air-Fuel Ratio, $\overline{A/F} = \frac{\text{No. of moles of air}}{\text{No. of moles of fuel}}$

Air-Fuel Ratio, $A/F = \frac{\text{Mass of air}}{\text{Mass of fuel}} = (\overline{A/F}) \left(\frac{M_{\text{air}}}{M_{\text{fuel}}} \right)$

Stoichiometric (theoretical) air-fuel ratio is the air-fuel ratio calculated from the stoichiometric combustion equation.

Percent Theoretical Air = $\frac{(A/F)_{\text{actual}}}{(A/F)_{\text{stoichiometric}}} \times 100$

Percent Excess Air = $\frac{(A/F)_{\text{actual}} - (A/F)_{\text{stoichiometric}}}{(A/F)_{\text{stoichiometric}}} \times 100$

VAPOR-LIQUID EQUILIBRIUM (VLE)

Henry's Law at Constant Temperature

At equilibrium, the partial pressure of a gas is proportional to its concentration in a liquid. Henry's Law is valid for low concentrations; i.e., $x \approx 0$.

$$P_i = P y_i = h x_i, \text{ where}$$

h = Henry's Law constant

P_i = partial pressure of a gas in contact with a liquid

x_i = mol fraction of the gas in the liquid

y_i = mol fraction of the gas in the vapor

P = total pressure

Raoult's Law for Vapor-Liquid Equilibrium

Valid for concentrations near 1; i.e., $x_i \approx 1$ at low pressure (ideal gas behavior)

$$P_i = x_i P_i^*, \text{ where}$$

P_i = partial pressure of component i

x_i = mol fraction of component i in the liquid

P_i^* = vapor pressure of pure component i at the temperature of the mixture

Rigorous Vapor-Liquid Equilibrium

For a multicomponent mixture at equilibrium

$$\hat{f}_i^V = \hat{f}_i^L, \text{ where}$$

\hat{f}_i^V = fugacity of component i in the vapor phase

\hat{f}_i^L = fugacity of component i in the liquid phase

Fugacities of component i in a mixture are commonly calculated in the following ways:

For a liquid $\hat{f}_i^L = x_i \gamma_i f_i^L$, where

x_i = mole fraction of component i

γ_i = activity coefficient of component i

f_i^L = fugacity of pure liquid component i

For a vapor $\hat{f}_i^V = y_i \hat{\Phi}_i P$, where

y_i = mole fraction of component i in the vapor

$\hat{\Phi}_i$ = fugacity coefficient of component i in the vapor

P = system pressure

The activity coefficient γ_i is a correction for liquid phase non-ideality. Many models have been proposed for γ_i such as the Van Laar model:

$$\ln \gamma_1 = A_{12} \left(1 + \frac{A_{12} x_1}{A_{21} x_2} \right)^{-2}$$

$$\ln \gamma_2 = A_{21} \left(1 + \frac{A_{21} x_2}{A_{12} x_1} \right)^{-2}, \text{ where}$$

γ_1 = activity coefficient of component 1 in a two-component system

γ_2 = activity coefficient of component 2 in a two-component system

A_{12}, A_{21} = constants, typically fitted from experimental data

The pure component fugacity is calculated as:

$$f_i^L = \Phi_i^{\text{sat}} P_i^{\text{sat}} \exp \left\{ v_i^L (P - P_i^{\text{sat}}) / (RT) \right\}, \text{ where}$$

Φ_i^{sat} = fugacity coefficient of pure saturated i

P_i^{sat} = saturation pressure of pure i

v_i^L = specific volume of pure liquid i

R = Ideal Gas Law Constant

T = absolute temperature

Often at system pressures close to atmospheric:

$$f_i^L \cong P_i^{\text{sat}}$$

The fugacity coefficient $\hat{\Phi}_i$ for component i in the vapor is calculated from an equation of state (e.g., Virial). Sometimes it is approximated by a pure component value from a correlation. Often at pressures close to atmospheric, $\hat{\Phi}_i = 1$. The fugacity coefficient is a correction for vapor phase non-ideality.

For sparingly soluble gases the liquid phase is sometimes represented as:

$$\hat{f}_i^L = x_i k_i$$

where k_i is a constant set by experiment (Henry's constant). Sometimes other concentration units are used besides mole fraction with a corresponding change in k_i .

PHASE RELATIONS

Clapeyron Equation for phase transitions:

$$\left(\frac{dP}{dT}\right)_{sat} = \frac{h_{fg}}{T v_{fg}} = \frac{s_{fg}}{v_{fg}}, \text{ where}$$

h_{fg} = enthalpy change for phase transitions

v_{fg} = volume change

s_{fg} = entropy change

T = absolute temperature

$(dP/dT)_{sat}$ = slope of phase transition (e.g., vapor-liquid) saturation line

Clausius-Clapeyron Equation

This equation results if it is assumed that (1) the volume change (v_{fg}) can be replaced with the vapor volume (v_g), (2) the latter can be replaced with $P/\bar{R}T$ from the ideal gas law, and (3) h_{fg} is independent of the temperature (T).

$$\ln_e\left(\frac{P_2}{P_1}\right) = \frac{h_{fg}}{\bar{R}} \cdot \frac{T_2 - T_1}{T_1 T_2}$$

Gibbs Phase Rule (non-reacting systems)

$P + F = C + 2$, where

P = number of phases making up a system

F = degrees of freedom

C = number of components in a system

CHEMICAL REACTION EQUILIBRIA

Definitions

Conversion – moles reacted/moles fed

Extent – For each species in a reaction, the mole balance may be written:

$$\text{moles}_{i,out} = \text{moles}_{i,in} + v_i \xi \text{ where}$$

ξ is the extent in moles and v_i is the stoichiometric coefficient of the i th species, the sign of which is negative for reactants and positive for products.

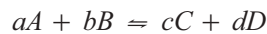
Limiting reactant – Reactant that would be consumed first if the reaction proceeded to completion. Other reactants are excess reactants.

Selectivity – Moles of desired product formed/moles of undesired product formed.

Yield – Moles of desired product formed/moles that would have been formed if there were no side reactions and the limiting reactant had reacted completely.

Chemical Reaction Equilibrium

For the reaction



$$\Delta G^\circ = -RT \ln K_a$$

$$K_a = \frac{(\hat{a}_C^c)(\hat{a}_D^d)}{(\hat{a}_A^a)(\hat{a}_B^b)} = \prod_i (\hat{a}_i)^{v_i}, \text{ where}$$

$$\hat{a}_i = \text{activity of component } i = \frac{\hat{f}_i}{f_i^\circ}$$

f_i° = fugacity of pure i in its standard state at the equilibrium reaction temperature, T

v_i = stoichiometric coefficient of component i

ΔG° = standard Gibbs energy change of reaction

K_a = chemical equilibrium constant

For mixtures of ideal gases:

f_i° = unit pressure, often 1 bar

$$\hat{f}_i = y_i P = p_i$$

where p_i = partial pressure of component i .

$$\text{Then } K_a = K_p = \frac{(p_C^c)(p_D^d)}{(p_A^a)(p_B^b)} = P^{c+d-a-b} \frac{(y_C^c)(y_D^d)}{(y_A^a)(y_B^b)}$$

For solids $\hat{a}_i = 1$

For liquids $\hat{a}_i = x_i \gamma_i$

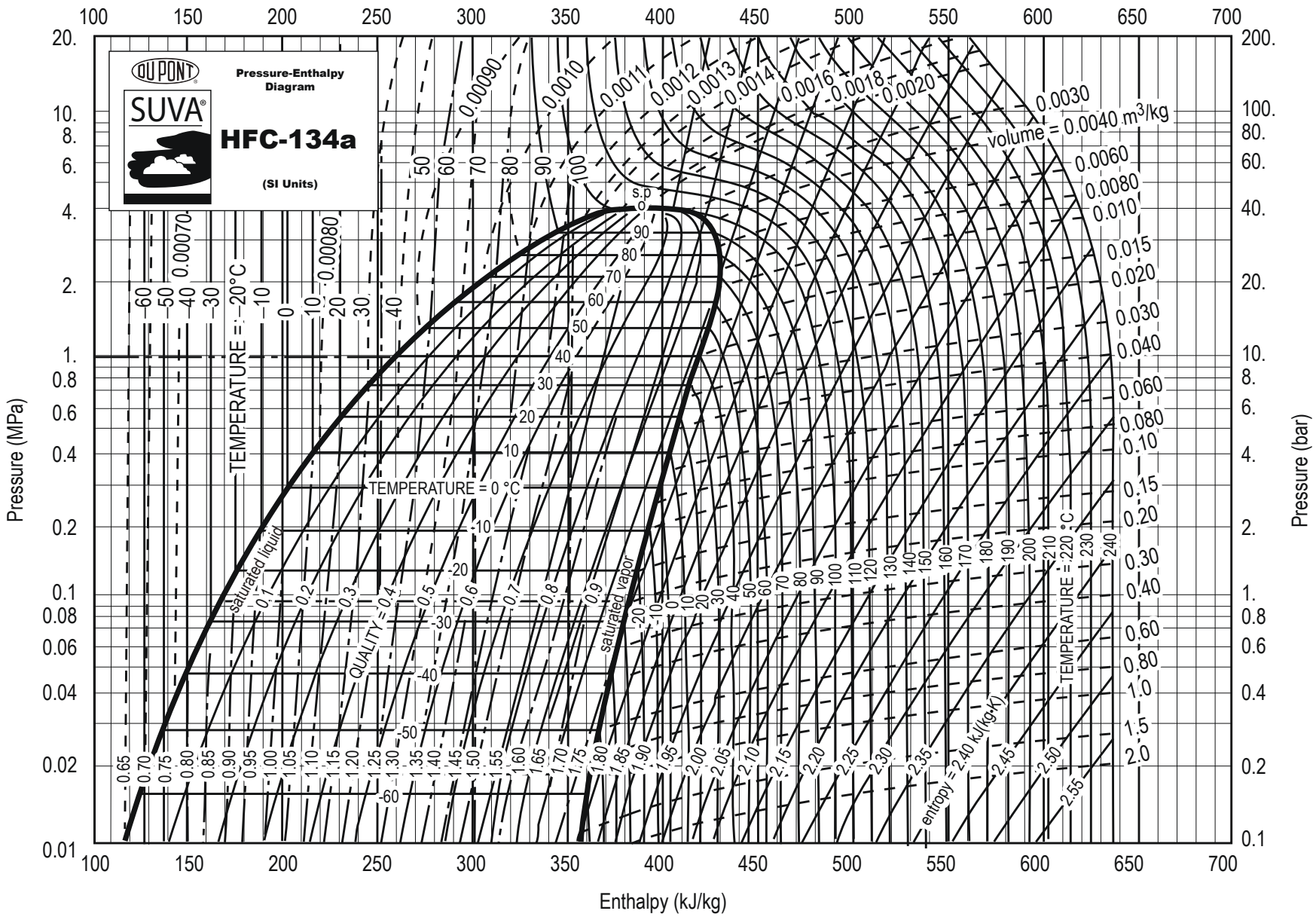
The effect of temperature on the equilibrium constant is

$$\frac{d \ln K}{dT} = \frac{\Delta H^\circ}{RT^2}$$

where ΔH° = standard enthalpy change of reaction.

| Superheated Water Tables | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|---------------|---------------|------------------|---|--|---------------|------------------|
| T Temp. °C | v m ³ /kg | u kJ/kg | h kJ/kg | s kJ/(kg·K) | v m ³ /kg | u kJ/kg | h kJ/kg | s kJ/(kg·K) |
| | $p = 0.01 \text{ MPa (45.81}^\circ\text{C)}$ | | | | | $p = 0.05 \text{ MPa (81.33}^\circ\text{C)}$ | | |
| Sat. | 14.674 | 2437.9 | 2584.7 | 8.1502 | 3.240 | 2483.9 | 2645.9 | 7.5939 |
| 50 | 14.869 | 2443.9 | 2592.6 | 8.1749 | | | | |
| 100 | 17.196 | 2515.5 | 2687.5 | 8.4479 | 3.418 | 2511.6 | 2682.5 | 7.6947 |
| 150 | 19.512 | 2587.9 | 2783.0 | 8.6882 | 3.889 | 2585.6 | 2780.1 | 7.9401 |
| 200 | 21.825 | 2661.3 | 2879.5 | 8.9038 | 4.356 | 2659.9 | 2877.7 | 8.1580 |
| 250 | 24.136 | 2736.0 | 2977.3 | 9.1002 | 4.820 | 2735.0 | 2976.0 | 8.3556 |
| 300 | 26.445 | 2812.1 | 3076.5 | 9.2813 | 5.284 | 2811.3 | 3075.5 | 8.5373 |
| 400 | 31.063 | 2968.9 | 3279.6 | 9.6077 | 6.209 | 2968.5 | 3278.9 | 8.8642 |
| 500 | 35.679 | 3132.3 | 3489.1 | 9.8978 | 7.134 | 3132.0 | 3488.7 | 9.1546 |
| 600 | 40.295 | 3302.5 | 3705.4 | 10.1608 | 8.057 | 3302.2 | 3705.1 | 9.4178 |
| 700 | 44.911 | 3479.6 | 3928.7 | 10.4028 | 8.981 | 3479.4 | 3928.5 | 9.6599 |
| 800 | 49.526 | 3663.8 | 4159.0 | 10.6281 | 9.904 | 3663.6 | 4158.9 | 9.8852 |
| 900 | 54.141 | 3855.0 | 4396.4 | 10.8396 | 10.828 | 3854.9 | 4396.3 | 10.0967 |
| 1000 | 58.757 | 4053.0 | 4640.6 | 11.0393 | 11.751 | 4052.9 | 4640.5 | 10.2964 |
| 1100 | 63.372 | 4257.5 | 4891.2 | 11.2287 | 12.674 | 4257.4 | 4891.1 | 10.4859 |
| 1200 | 67.987 | 4467.9 | 5147.8 | 11.4091 | 13.597 | 4467.8 | 5147.7 | 10.6662 |
| 1300 | 72.602 | 4683.7 | 5409.7 | 11.5811 | 14.521 | 4683.6 | 5409.6 | 10.8382 |
| $p = 0.10 \text{ MPa (99.63}^\circ\text{C)}$ | | | | | $p = 0.20 \text{ MPa (120.23}^\circ\text{C)}$ | | | |
| Sat. | 1.6940 | 2506.1 | 2675.5 | 7.3594 | 0.8857 | 2529.5 | 2706.7 | 7.1272 |
| 100 | 1.6958 | 2506.7 | 2676.2 | 7.3614 | | | | |
| 150 | 1.9364 | 2582.8 | 2776.4 | 7.6134 | 0.9596 | 2576.9 | 2768.8 | 7.2795 |
| 200 | 2.172 | 2658.1 | 2875.3 | 7.8343 | 1.0803 | 2654.4 | 2870.5 | 7.5066 |
| 250 | 2.406 | 2733.7 | 2974.3 | 8.0333 | 1.1988 | 2731.2 | 2971.0 | 7.7086 |
| 300 | 2.639 | 2810.4 | 3074.3 | 8.2158 | 1.3162 | 2808.6 | 3071.8 | 7.8926 |
| 400 | 3.103 | 2967.9 | 3278.2 | 8.5435 | 1.5493 | 2966.7 | 3276.6 | 8.2218 |
| 500 | 3.565 | 3131.6 | 3488.1 | 8.8342 | 1.7814 | 3130.8 | 3487.1 | 8.5133 |
| 600 | 4.028 | 3301.9 | 3704.4 | 9.0976 | 2.013 | 3301.4 | 3704.0 | 8.7770 |
| 700 | 4.490 | 3479.2 | 3928.2 | 9.3398 | 2.244 | 3478.8 | 3927.6 | 9.0194 |
| 800 | 4.952 | 3663.5 | 4158.6 | 9.5652 | 2.475 | 3663.1 | 4158.2 | 9.2449 |
| 900 | 5.414 | 3854.8 | 4396.1 | 9.7767 | 2.705 | 3854.5 | 4395.8 | 9.4566 |
| 1000 | 5.875 | 4052.8 | 4640.3 | 9.9764 | 2.937 | 4052.5 | 4640.0 | 9.6563 |
| 1100 | 6.337 | 4257.3 | 4891.0 | 10.1659 | 3.168 | 4257.0 | 4890.7 | 9.8458 |
| 1200 | 6.799 | 4467.7 | 5147.6 | 10.3463 | 3.399 | 4467.5 | 5147.5 | 10.0262 |
| 1300 | 7.260 | 4683.5 | 5409.5 | 10.5183 | 3.630 | 4683.2 | 5409.3 | 10.1982 |
| $p = 0.40 \text{ MPa (143.63}^\circ\text{C)}$ | | | | | $p = 0.60 \text{ MPa (158.85}^\circ\text{C)}$ | | | |
| Sat. | 0.4625 | 2553.6 | 2738.6 | 6.8959 | 0.3157 | 2567.4 | 2756.8 | 6.7600 |
| 150 | 0.4708 | 2564.5 | 2752.8 | 6.9299 | | | | |
| 200 | 0.5342 | 2646.8 | 2860.5 | 7.1706 | 0.3520 | 2638.9 | 2850.1 | 6.9665 |
| 250 | 0.5951 | 2726.1 | 2964.2 | 7.3789 | 0.3938 | 2720.9 | 2957.2 | 7.1816 |
| 300 | 0.6548 | 2804.8 | 3066.8 | 7.5662 | 0.4344 | 2801.0 | 3061.6 | 7.3724 |
| 350 | 0.7137 | 2884.6 | 3170.1 | 7.7324 | 0.4742 | 2881.2 | 3165.7 | 7.5464 |
| 400 | 0.7726 | 2964.4 | 3273.4 | 7.8985 | 0.5137 | 2962.1 | 3270.3 | 7.7079 |
| 500 | 0.8893 | 3129.2 | 3484.9 | 8.1913 | 0.5920 | 3127.6 | 3482.8 | 8.0021 |
| 600 | 1.0055 | 3300.2 | 3702.4 | 8.4558 | 0.6697 | 3299.1 | 3700.9 | 8.2674 |
| 700 | 1.1215 | 3477.9 | 3926.5 | 8.6987 | 0.7472 | 3477.0 | 3925.3 | 8.5107 |
| 800 | 1.2372 | 3662.4 | 4157.3 | 8.9244 | 0.8245 | 3661.8 | 4156.5 | 8.7367 |
| 900 | 1.3529 | 3853.9 | 4395.1 | 9.1362 | 0.9017 | 3853.4 | 4394.4 | 8.9486 |
| 1000 | 1.4685 | 4052.0 | 4639.4 | 9.3360 | 0.9788 | 4051.5 | 4638.8 | 9.1485 |
| 1100 | 1.5840 | 4256.5 | 4890.2 | 9.5256 | 1.0559 | 4256.1 | 4889.6 | 9.3381 |
| 1200 | 1.6996 | 4467.0 | 5146.8 | 9.7060 | 1.1330 | 4466.5 | 5146.3 | 9.5185 |
| 1300 | 1.8151 | 4682.8 | 5408.8 | 9.8780 | 1.2101 | 4682.3 | 5408.3 | 9.6906 |
| $p = 0.80 \text{ MPa (170.43}^\circ\text{C)}$ | | | | | $p = 1.00 \text{ MPa (179.91}^\circ\text{C)}$ | | | |
| Sat. | 0.2404 | 2576.8 | 2769.1 | 6.6628 | 0.19444 | 2583.6 | 2778.1 | 6.5865 |
| 200 | 0.2608 | 2630.6 | 2839.3 | 6.8158 | 0.2060 | 2621.9 | 2827.9 | 6.6940 |
| 250 | 0.2931 | 2715.5 | 2950.0 | 7.0384 | 0.2327 | 2709.9 | 2942.6 | 6.9247 |
| 300 | 0.3241 | 2797.2 | 3056.5 | 7.2328 | 0.2579 | 2793.2 | 3051.2 | 7.1229 |
| 350 | 0.3544 | 2878.2 | 3161.7 | 7.4089 | 0.2825 | 2875.2 | 3157.7 | 7.3011 |
| 400 | 0.3843 | 2959.7 | 3267.1 | 7.5716 | 0.3066 | 2957.3 | 3263.9 | 7.4651 |
| 500 | 0.4433 | 3126.0 | 3480.6 | 7.8673 | 0.3541 | 3124.4 | 3478.5 | 7.7622 |
| 600 | 0.5018 | 3297.9 | 3699.4 | 8.1333 | 0.4011 | 3296.8 | 3697.9 | 8.0290 |
| 700 | 0.5601 | 3476.2 | 3924.2 | 8.3770 | 0.4478 | 3475.3 | 3923.1 | 8.2731 |
| 800 | 0.6181 | 3661.1 | 4155.6 | 8.6033 | 0.4943 | 3660.4 | 4154.7 | 8.4996 |
| 900 | 0.6761 | 3852.8 | 4393.7 | 8.8153 | 0.5407 | 3852.2 | 4392.9 | 8.7118 |
| 1000 | 0.7340 | 4051.0 | 4638.2 | 9.0153 | 0.5871 | 4050.5 | 4637.6 | 8.9119 |
| 1100 | 0.7919 | 4255.6 | 4889.1 | 9.2050 | 0.6335 | 4255.1 | 4888.6 | 9.1017 |
| 1200 | 0.8497 | 4466.1 | 5145.9 | 9.3855 | 0.6798 | 4465.6 | 5145.4 | 9.2822 |
| 1300 | 0.9076 | 4681.8 | 5407.9 | 9.5575 | 0.7261 | 4681.3 | 5407.4 | 9.4543 |

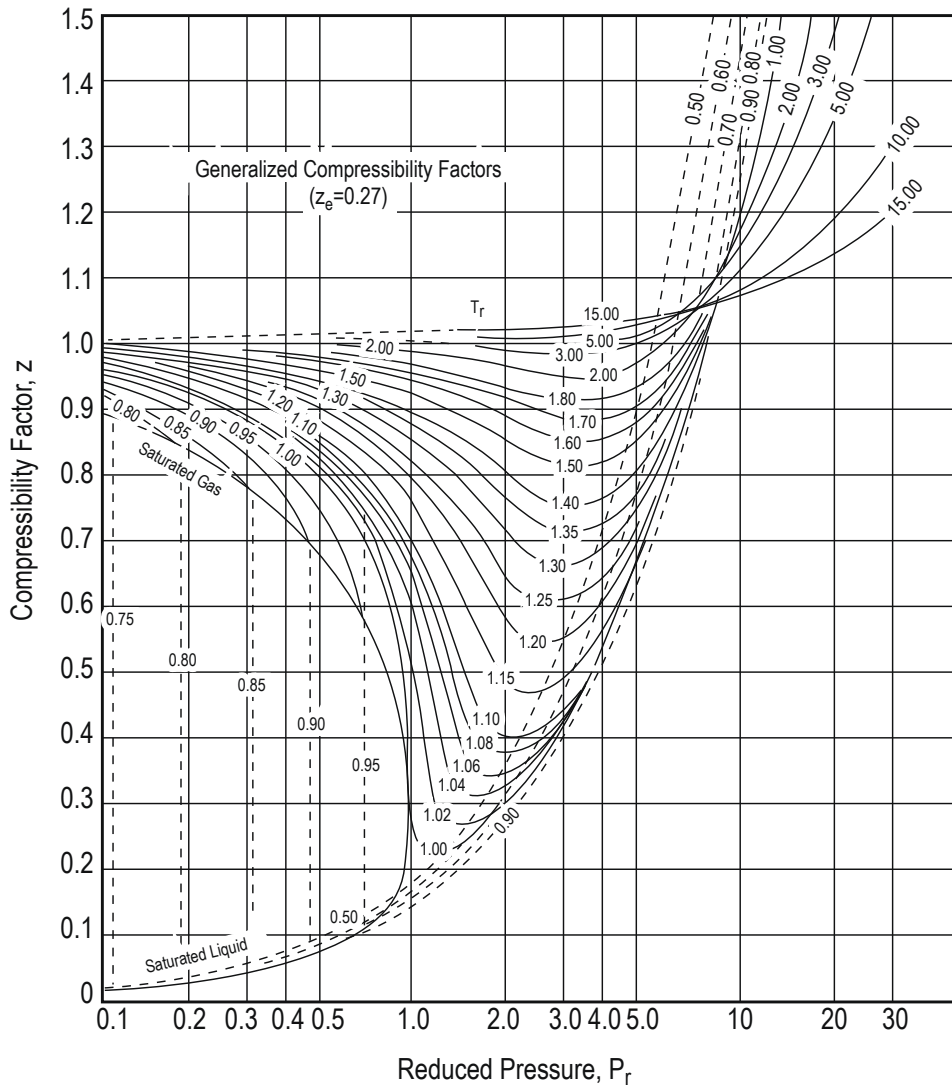
P-h Diagram for Refrigerant HFC-134a
(metric units)



Thermal and Physical Property Tables
(at room temperature)

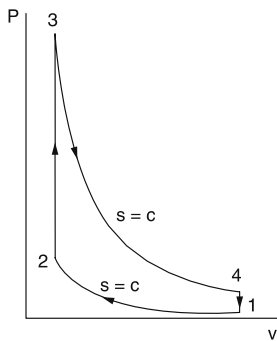
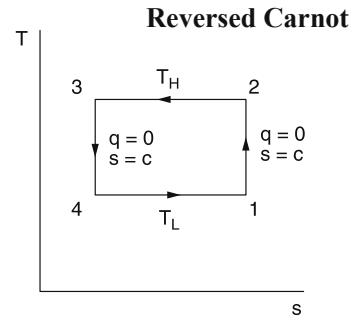
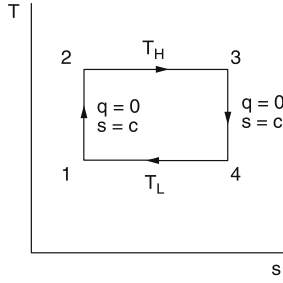
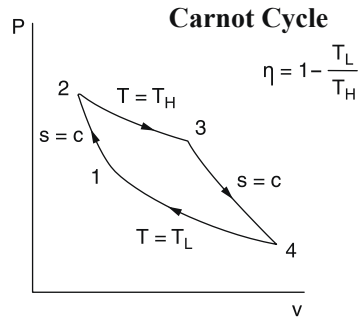
| GASES | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|--------|-----------|--------------|-----------|--------------|------|-----------|
| Substance | Mol wt | c_p | | c_v | | k | R |
| | | kJ/(kg·K) | Btu/(lbm·°R) | kJ/(kg·K) | Btu/(lbm·°R) | | kJ/(kg·K) |
| Gases | | | | | | | |
| Air | 29 | 1.00 | 0.240 | 0.718 | 0.171 | 1.40 | 0.2870 |
| Argon | 40 | 0.520 | 0.125 | 0.312 | 0.0756 | 1.67 | 0.2081 |
| Butane | 58 | 1.72 | 0.415 | 1.57 | 0.381 | 1.09 | 0.1430 |
| Carbon dioxide | 44 | 0.846 | 0.203 | 0.657 | 0.158 | 1.29 | 0.1889 |
| Carbon monoxide | 28 | 1.04 | 0.249 | 0.744 | 0.178 | 1.40 | 0.2968 |
| Ethane | 30 | 1.77 | 0.427 | 1.49 | 0.361 | 1.18 | 0.2765 |
| Helium | 4 | 5.19 | 1.25 | 3.12 | 0.753 | 1.67 | 2.0769 |
| Hydrogen | 2 | 14.3 | 3.43 | 10.2 | 2.44 | 1.40 | 4.1240 |
| Methane | 16 | 2.25 | 0.532 | 1.74 | 0.403 | 1.30 | 0.5182 |
| Neon | 20 | 1.03 | 0.246 | 0.618 | 0.148 | 1.67 | 0.4119 |
| Nitrogen | 28 | 1.04 | 0.248 | 0.743 | 0.177 | 1.40 | 0.2968 |
| Octane vapor | 114 | 1.71 | 0.409 | 1.64 | 0.392 | 1.04 | 0.0729 |
| Oxygen | 32 | 0.918 | 0.219 | 0.658 | 0.157 | 1.40 | 0.2598 |
| Propane | 44 | 1.68 | 0.407 | 1.49 | 0.362 | 1.12 | 0.1885 |
| Steam | 18 | 1.87 | 0.445 | 1.41 | 0.335 | 1.33 | 0.4615 |

| SELECTED LIQUIDS AND SOLIDS | | | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------|--------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| Substance | c_p | | Density | |
| | kJ/(kg·K) | Btu/(lbm·°R) | kg/m ³ | lbm/ft ³ |
| Liquids | | | | |
| Ammonia | 4.80 | 1.146 | 602 | 38 |
| Mercury | 0.139 | 0.033 | 13,560 | 847 |
| Water | 4.18 | 1.000 | 997 | 62.4 |
| Solids | | | | |
| Aluminum | 0.900 | 0.215 | 2,700 | 170 |
| Copper | 0.386 | 0.092 | 8,900 | 555 |
| Ice (0°C; 32°F) | 2.11 | 0.502 | 917 | 57.2 |
| Iron | 0.450 | 0.107 | 7,840 | 490 |
| Lead | 0.128 | 0.030 | 11,310 | 705 |



de Nevers, Noel, *Physical and Chemical Equilibrium for Chemical Engineers*, 2nd ed., Wiley, 2012.

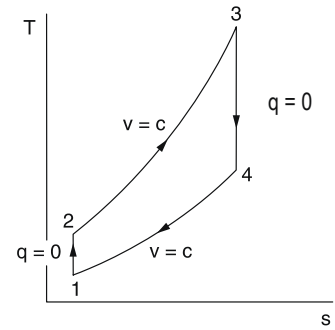
COMMON THERMODYNAMIC CYCLES



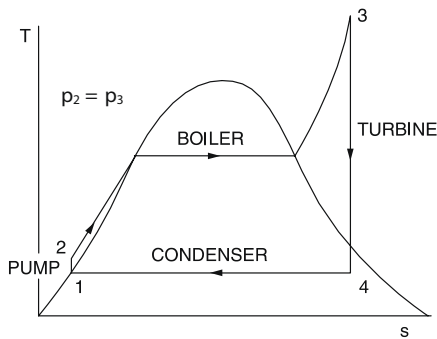
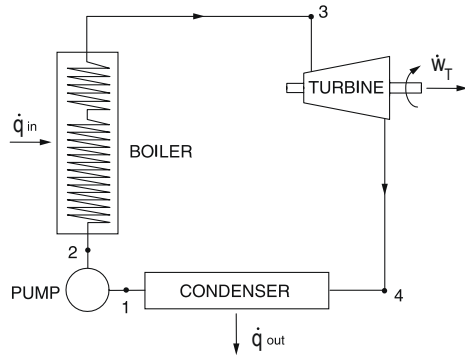
Otto Cycle (Gasoline Engine)

$$\eta = 1 - r^{1-k}$$

$$r = v_1/v_2$$

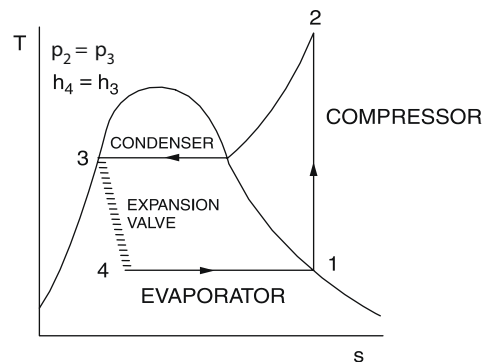
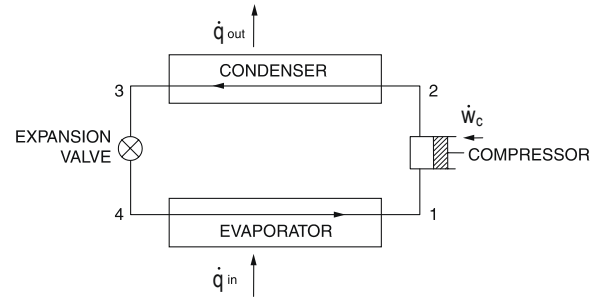


Rankine Cycle



$$\eta = \frac{(h_3 - h_4) - (h_2 - h_1)}{h_3 - h_2}$$

Refrigeration



$$\text{COP}_{\text{ref}} = \frac{h_1 - h_4}{h_2 - h_1}$$

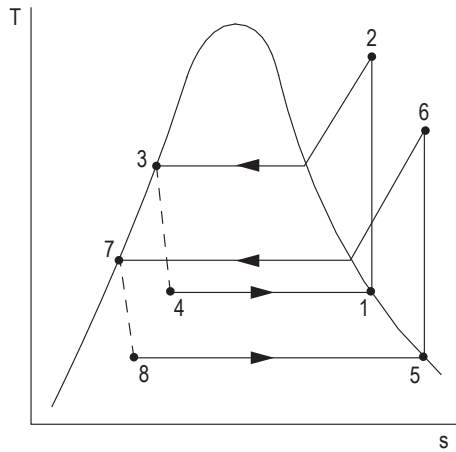
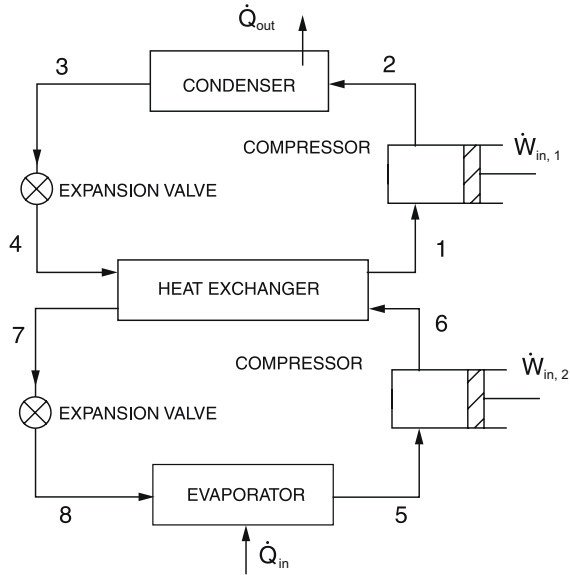
$$\text{COP}_{\text{HP}} = \frac{h_2 - h_3}{h_2 - h_1}$$

REFRIGERATION AND HVAC

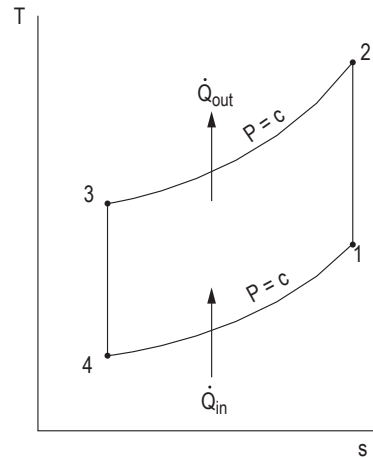
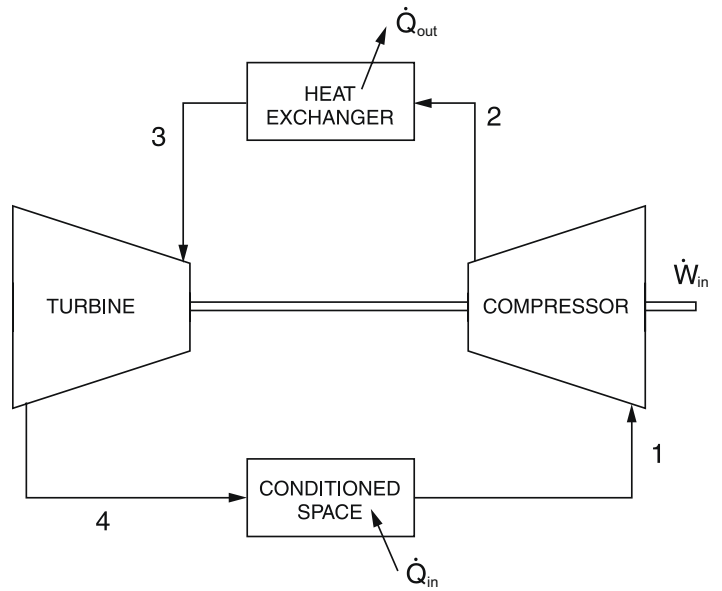
Cycles

Refrigeration and HVAC

Two-Stage Cycle



Air Refrigeration Cycle



$$COP_{ref} = \frac{h_1 - h_4}{(h_2 - h_1) - (h_3 - h_4)}$$

$$COP_{HP} = \frac{h_2 - h_3}{(h_2 - h_1) - (h_3 - h_4)}$$

The following equations are valid if the mass flows are the same in each stage.

$$COP_{ref} = \frac{\dot{Q}_{in}}{\dot{W}_{in,1} + \dot{W}_{in,2}} = \frac{h_5 - h_8}{h_2 - h_1 + h_6 - h_5}$$

$$COP_{HP} = \frac{\dot{Q}_{out}}{\dot{W}_{in,1} + \dot{W}_{in,2}} = \frac{h_2 - h_3}{h_2 - h_1 + h_6 - h_5}$$



ASHRAE PSYCHROMETRIC CHART NO.1

NORMAL TEMPERATURE

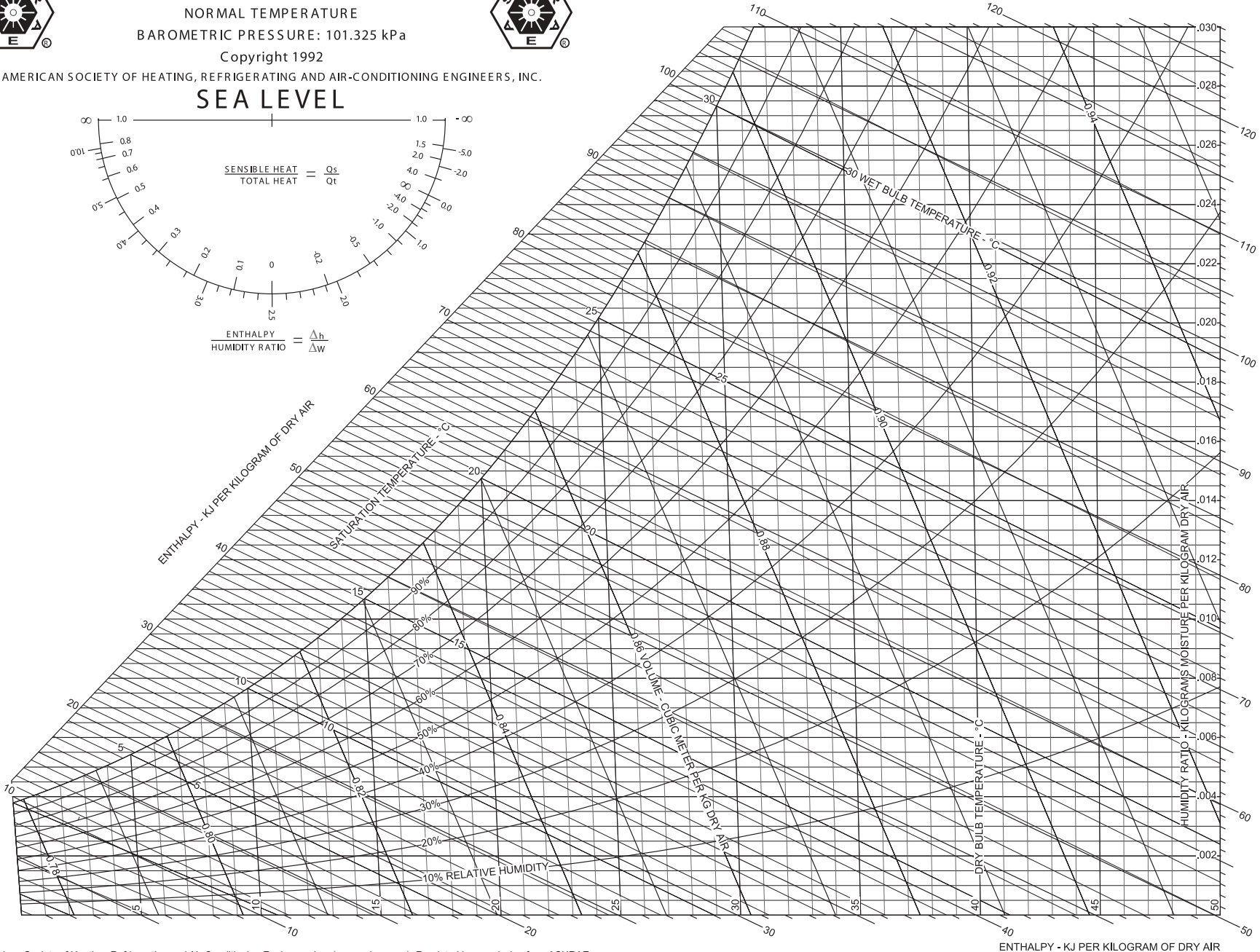
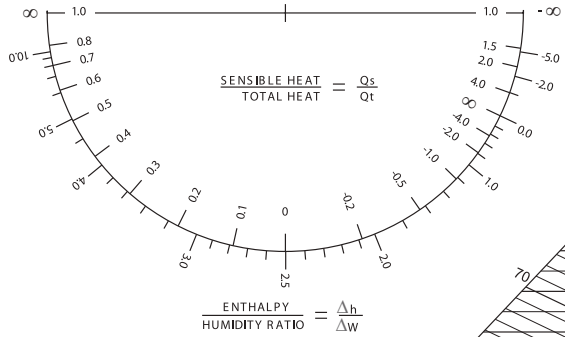
BAROMETRIC PRESSURE: 101.325 kPa

Copyright 1992

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS, INC.



SEA LEVEL



ASHRAE Psychrometric Chart No. 1
(metric units)

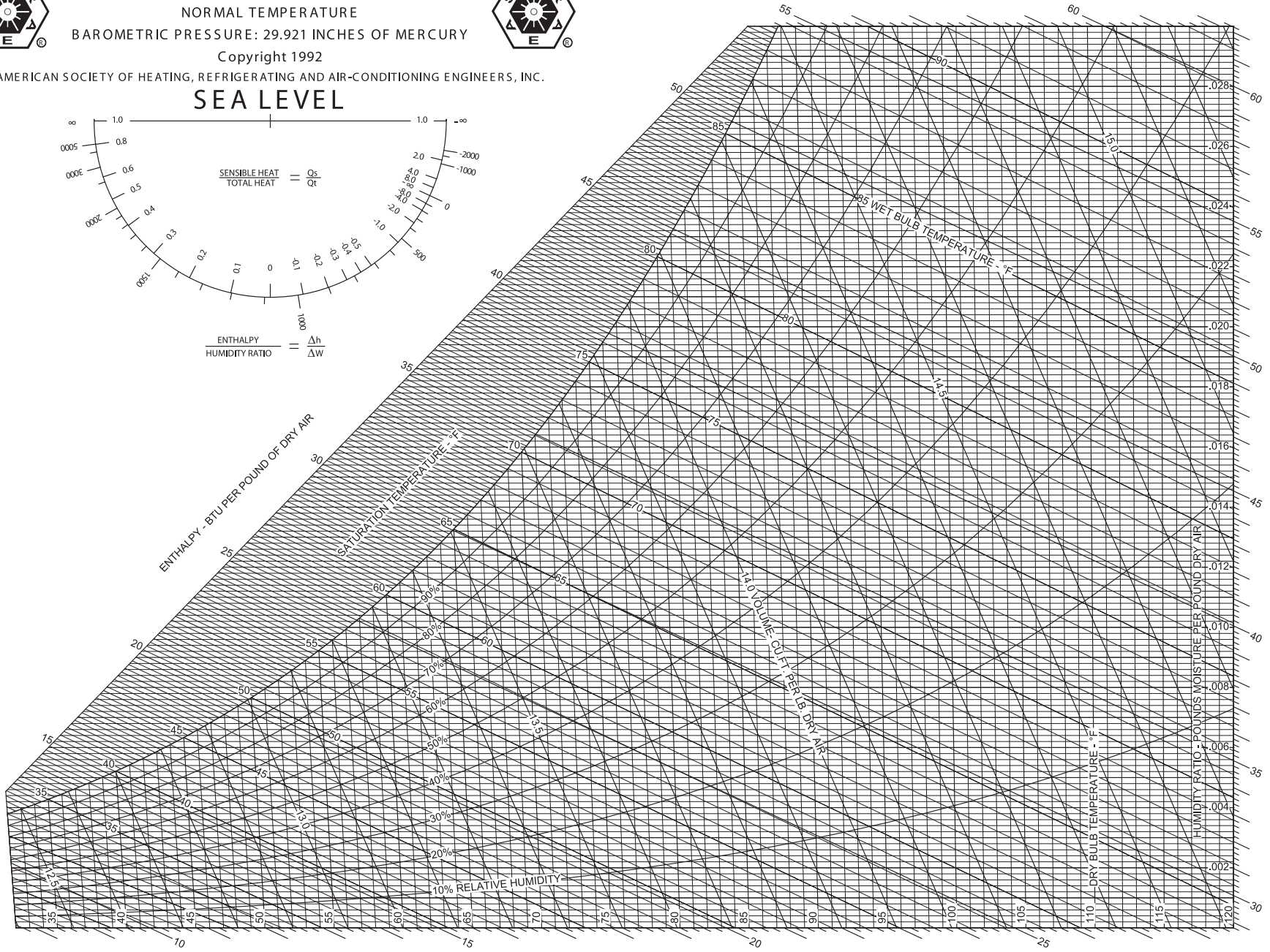
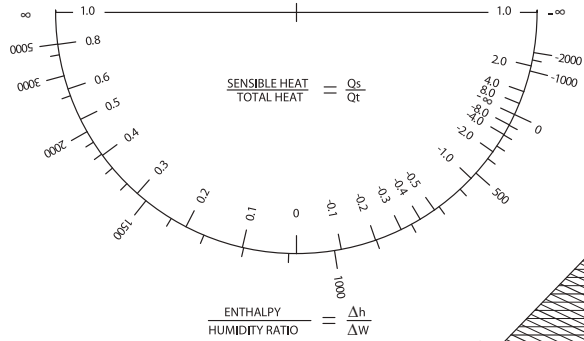


ASHRAE PSYCHROMETRIC CHART NO.1
 NORMAL TEMPERATURE
 BAROMETRIC PRESSURE: 29.921 INCHES OF MERCURY
 Copyright 1992



AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS, INC.

SEA LEVEL



ASHRAE Psychrometric Chart No. 1
 (English units)

FLUID MECHANICS

DEFINITIONS

Density, Specific Volume, Specific Weight, and Specific Gravity

The definitions of density, specific weight, and specific gravity follow:

$$\rho = \lim_{\Delta V \rightarrow 0} \Delta m / \Delta V$$

$$\gamma = \lim_{\Delta V \rightarrow 0} \Delta W / \Delta V$$

$$\gamma = \lim_{\Delta V \rightarrow 0} g \cdot \Delta m / \Delta V = \rho g$$

also $SG = \gamma / \gamma_w = \rho / \rho_w$, where

ρ = density (also called *mass density*)

Δm = mass of infinitesimal volume

ΔV = volume of infinitesimal object considered

γ = *specific weight*

= ρg

ΔW = weight of an infinitesimal volume

SG = *specific gravity*

ρ_w = density of water at standard conditions

= 1,000 kg/m³ (62.4 lbm/ft³)

γ_w = specific weight of water at standard conditions

= 9,810 N/m³ (62.4 lbf/ft³)

= 9,810 kg/(m²·s²)

Stress, Pressure, and Viscosity

Stress is defined as

$$\tau(1) = \lim_{\Delta A \rightarrow 0} \Delta F / \Delta A, \text{ where}$$

$\tau(1)$ = surface stress vector at point 1

ΔF = force acting on infinitesimal area ΔA

ΔA = infinitesimal area at point 1

$$\tau_n = -P$$

$$\tau_t = \mu (dv/dy) \text{ (one-dimensional; i.e., } y), \text{ where}$$

τ_n and τ_t = normal and tangential stress components at point 1, respectively

P = pressure at point 1

μ = *absolute dynamic viscosity* of the fluid

$$\text{N}\cdot\text{s}/\text{m}^2 [\text{lbm}/(\text{ft}\cdot\text{sec})]$$

dv = differential velocity

dy = differential distance, normal to boundary

v = velocity at boundary condition

y = normal distance, measured from boundary

ν = *kinematic viscosity*; m²/s (ft²/sec)

$$\text{where } \nu = \mu / \rho$$

For a thin Newtonian fluid film and a linear velocity profile,

$$v(y) = vy/\delta; dv/dy = v/\delta, \text{ where}$$

v = velocity of plate on film

δ = thickness of fluid film

For a power law (non-Newtonian) fluid

$$\tau_t = K (dv/dy)^n, \text{ where}$$

K = consistency index

n = power law index

$n < 1 \equiv$ pseudo plastic

$n > 1 \equiv$ dilatant

Surface Tension and Capillarity

Surface tension σ is the force per unit contact length

$$\sigma = F/L, \text{ where}$$

σ = surface tension, force/length

F = surface force at the interface

L = length of interface

The *capillary rise* h is approximated by

$$h = (4\sigma \cos \beta) / (\gamma d), \text{ where}$$

h = height of the liquid in the vertical tube

σ = surface tension

β = angle made by the liquid with the wetted tube wall

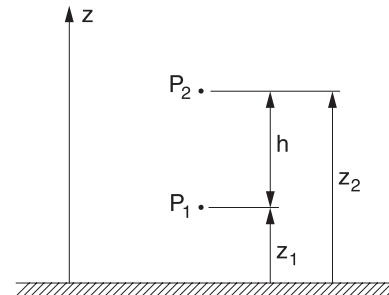
γ = specific weight of the liquid

d = the diameter of the capillary tube

CHARACTERISTICS OF A STATIC LIQUID

The Pressure Field in a Static Liquid

◆



The difference in pressure between two different points is

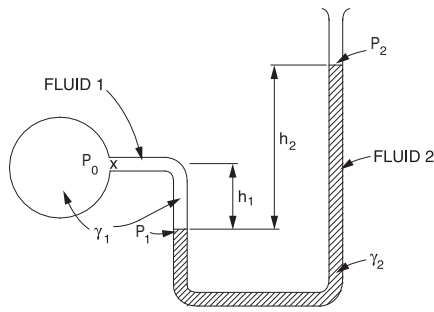
$$P_2 - P_1 = -\gamma (z_2 - z_1) = -\gamma h = -\rho gh$$

Absolute pressure = atmospheric pressure + gauge pressure reading

Absolute pressure = atmospheric pressure – vacuum gauge pressure reading

◆ Bober, W., and R.A. Kenyon, *Fluid Mechanics*, Wiley, 1980. Diagrams reprinted by permission of William Bober and Richard A. Kenyon.

Manometers



For a simple manometer,

$$P_0 = P_2 + \gamma_2 h_2 - \gamma_1 h_1 = P_2 + g(\rho_2 h_2 - \rho_1 h_1)$$

$$\text{If } h_1 = h_2 = h$$

$$P_0 = P_2 + (\gamma_2 - \gamma_1)h = P_2 + (\rho_2 - \rho_1)gh$$

Note that the difference between the two densities is used.

P = pressure

γ = specific weight of fluid

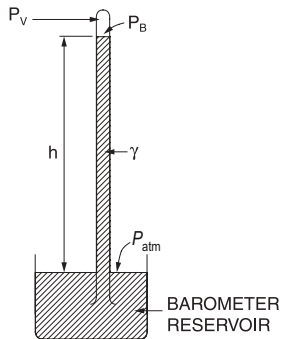
h = height

g = acceleration of gravity

ρ = fluid density

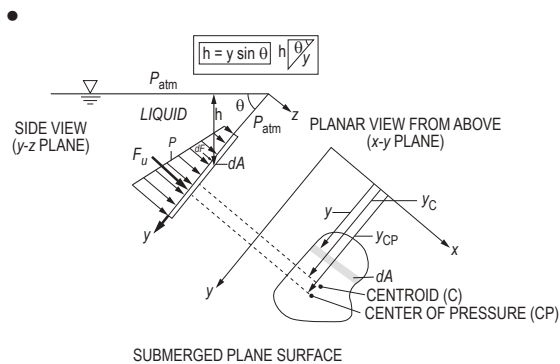
Another device that works on the same principle as the manometer is the simple barometer.

$$P_{\text{atm}} = P_A = P_v + \gamma h = P_B + \gamma h = P_B + \rho g h$$



P_v = vapor pressure of the barometer fluid

Forces on Submerged Surfaces and the Center of Pressure



The pressure on a point at a vertical distance h below the surface is:

$$P = P_{\text{atm}} + \rho g h, \text{ for } h \geq 0$$

- ◆ Bober, W., and R.A. Kenyon, *Fluid Mechanics*, Wiley, 1980. Diagrams reprinted by permission of William Bober and Richard A. Kenyon.
- Elger, Donald F., et al, *Engineering Fluid Mechanics*, 10th ed., 2012. Reproduced with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

P = pressure

P_{atm} = atmospheric pressure

P_C = pressure at the centroid of area

P_{CP} = pressure at center of pressure

y_C = slant distance from liquid surface to the centroid of area

$y_C = h_C / \sin \theta$

h_C = vertical distance from liquid surface to centroid of area

y_{CP} = slant distance from liquid surface to center of pressure

h_{CP} = vertical distance from liquid surface to center of pressure

θ = angle between liquid surface and edge of submerged surface

I_{x_C} = moment of inertia about the centroidal x-axis

If atmospheric pressure acts above the liquid surface and on the non-wetted side of the submerged surface:

$$y_{\text{CP}} = y_C + I_{x_C} / y_C A$$

$$y_{\text{CP}} = y_C + \rho g \sin \theta I_{x_C} / P_C A$$

Wetted side: $F_R = (P_{\text{atm}} + \rho g y_C \sin \theta) A$

P_{atm} acting both sides: $F_{R_{\text{net}}} = (\rho g y_C \sin \theta) A$

Archimedes Principle and Buoyancy

1. The buoyant force exerted on a submerged or floating body is equal to the weight of the fluid displaced by the body.
2. A floating body displaces a weight of fluid equal to its own weight; i.e., a floating body is in equilibrium.

The *center of buoyancy* is located at the centroid of the displaced fluid volume.

In the case of a body lying at the *interface of two immiscible fluids*, the buoyant force equals the sum of the weights of the fluids displaced by the body.

PRINCIPLES OF ONE-DIMENSIONAL FLUID FLOW

The Continuity Equation

So long as the flow Q is continuous, the *continuity equation*, as applied to one-dimensional flows, states that the flow passing two points (1 and 2) in a stream is equal at each point, $A_1 v_1 = A_2 v_2$.

$$Q = Av$$

$$\dot{m} = \rho Q = \rho Av, \text{ where}$$

Q = volumetric flowrate

\dot{m} = mass flowrate

A = cross-sectional area of flow

v = average flow velocity

ρ = the fluid density

For steady, one-dimensional flow, \dot{m} is a constant. If, in addition, the density is constant, then Q is constant.

The Energy Equation

The energy equation for steady incompressible flow with no shaft device is

$$\frac{P_1}{\gamma} + z_1 + \frac{v_1^2}{2g} = \frac{P_2}{\gamma} + z_2 + \frac{v_2^2}{2g} + h_f \quad \text{or}$$
$$\frac{P_1}{\rho g} + z_1 + \frac{v_1^2}{2g} = \frac{P_2}{\rho g} + z_2 + \frac{v_2^2}{2g} + h_f$$

h_f = the head loss, considered a friction effect, and all remaining terms are defined above.

If the cross-sectional area and the elevation of the pipe are the same at both sections (1 and 2), then $z_1 = z_2$ and $v_1 = v_2$.

The pressure drop $P_1 - P_2$ is given by the following:

$$P_1 - P_2 = \gamma h_f = \rho g h_f$$

The Field Equation

The field equation is derived when the energy equation is applied to one-dimensional flows. Assuming no friction losses and that no pump or turbine exists between sections 1 and 2 in the system,

$$\frac{P_2}{\gamma} + \frac{v_2^2}{2g} + z_2 = \frac{P_1}{\gamma} + \frac{v_1^2}{2g} + z_1 \quad \text{or}$$
$$\frac{P_2}{\rho} + \frac{v_2^2}{2} + z_2 g = \frac{P_1}{\rho} + \frac{v_1^2}{2} + z_1 g, \quad \text{where}$$

P_1, P_2 = pressure at sections 1 and 2

v_1, v_2 = average velocity of the fluid at the sections

z_1, z_2 = the vertical distance from a datum to the sections (the potential energy)

γ = the specific weight of the fluid (ρg)

g = the acceleration of gravity

ρ = fluid density

Hydraulic Gradient (Grade Line)

Hydraulic grade line is the line connecting the sum of pressure and elevation heads at different points in conveyance systems. If a row of piezometers were placed at intervals along the pipe, the grade line would join the water levels in the piezometer water columns.

Energy Line (Bernoulli Equation)

The Bernoulli equation states that the sum of the pressure, velocity, and elevation heads is constant. The energy line is this sum or the "total head line" above a horizontal datum. The difference between the hydraulic grade line and the energy line is the $v^2/2g$ term.

FLUID FLOW CHARACTERIZATION

Reynolds Number

$$Re = vD\rho/\mu = vD/\nu$$

$$Re' = \frac{v^{(2-n)} D^n \rho}{K \left(\frac{3n+1}{4n} \right)^n 8^{(n-1)}}, \quad \text{where}$$

v = fluid velocity

ρ = the mass density

D = the diameter of the pipe, dimension of the fluid streamline, or characteristic length

μ = the dynamic viscosity

ν = the kinematic viscosity

Re = the Reynolds number (Newtonian fluid)

Re' = the Reynolds number (Power law fluid)

K and n are defined in the Stress, Pressure, and Viscosity section.

The critical Reynolds number $(Re)_c$ is defined to be the minimum Reynolds number at which a flow will turn turbulent.

Flow through a pipe is generally characterized as laminar for $Re < 2,100$ and fully turbulent for $Re > 10,000$, and transitional flow for $2,100 < Re < 10,000$.

The velocity distribution for *laminar flow* in circular tubes or between planes is

$$v(r) = v_{\max} \left[1 - \left(\frac{r}{R} \right)^2 \right], \quad \text{where}$$

r = the distance (m) from the centerline

R = the radius (m) of the tube or half the distance between the parallel planes

v = the local velocity (m/s) at r

v_{\max} = the velocity (m/s) at the centerline of the duct

$v_{\max} = 1.18\bar{v}$, for fully turbulent flow

$v_{\max} = 2\bar{v}$, for circular tubes in laminar flow and

$v_{\max} = 1.5\bar{v}$, for parallel planes in laminar flow, where

\bar{v} = the average velocity (m/s) in the duct

The shear stress distribution is

$$\frac{\tau}{\tau_w} = \frac{r}{R}, \quad \text{where}$$

τ and τ_w are the shear stresses at radii r and R respectively.

CONSEQUENCES OF FLUID FLOW

Head Loss Due to Flow

The *Darcy-Weisbach equation* is

$$h_f = f \frac{L}{D} \frac{v^2}{2g}, \text{ where}$$

f = $f(\text{Re}, \epsilon/D)$, the Moody, Darcy, or Stanton friction factor

D = diameter of the pipe

L = length over which the pressure drop occurs

ϵ = roughness factor for the pipe, and other symbols are defined as before

An alternative formulation employed by chemical engineers is

$$h_f = (4f_{\text{Fanning}}) \frac{LV^2}{D2g} = \frac{2f_{\text{Fanning}} LV^2}{Dg}$$

$$\text{Fanning friction factor, } f_{\text{Fanning}} = \frac{f}{4}$$

A chart that gives f versus Re for various values of ϵ/D , known as a *Moody, Darcy, or Stanton diagram*, is available in this section.

Minor Losses in Pipe Fittings, Contractions, and Expansions

Head losses also occur as the fluid flows through pipe fittings (i.e., elbows, valves, couplings, etc.) and sudden pipe contractions and expansions.

$$\frac{P_1}{\gamma} + z_1 + \frac{v_1^2}{2g} = \frac{P_2}{\gamma} + z_2 + \frac{v_2^2}{2g} + h_f + h_{f, \text{fitting}}$$

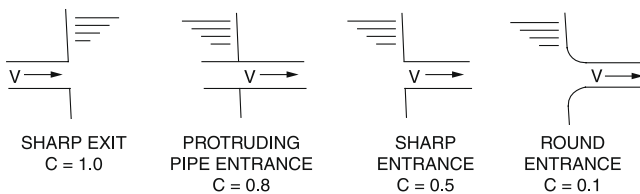
$$\frac{P_1}{\rho g} + z_1 + \frac{v_1^2}{2g} = \frac{P_2}{\rho g} + z_2 + \frac{v_2^2}{2g} + h_f + h_{f, \text{fitting}}, \text{ where}$$

$$h_{f, \text{fitting}} = C \frac{v^2}{2g}, \text{ and } \frac{v^2}{2g} = 1 \text{ velocity head}$$

Specific fittings have characteristic values of C , which will be provided in the problem statement. A generally accepted *nominal value* for head loss in *well-streamlined gradual contractions* is

$$h_{f, \text{fitting}} = 0.04 v^2 / 2g$$

The *head loss* at either an *entrance* or *exit* of a pipe from or to a reservoir is also given by the $h_{f, \text{fitting}}$ equation. Values for C for various cases are shown as follows.



Bober, W., and R.A. Kenyon, *Fluid Mechanics*, Wiley, 1980. Diagrams reprinted by permission of William Bober and Richard A. Kenyon.

Pressure Drop for Laminar Flow

The equation for Q in terms of the pressure drop ΔP_f is the Hagen-Poiseuille equation. This relation is valid only for flow in the laminar region.

$$Q = \frac{\pi R^4 \Delta P_f}{8\mu L} = \frac{\pi D^4 \Delta P_f}{128\mu L}$$

Flow in Noncircular Conduits

Analysis of flow in conduits having a noncircular cross section uses the *hydraulic radius* R_H , or the *hydraulic diameter* D_H , as follows:

$$R_H = \frac{\text{cross-sectional area}}{\text{wetted perimeter}} = \frac{D_H}{4}$$

Drag Force

The *drag force* F_D on objects immersed in a large body of flowing fluid or objects moving through a stagnant fluid is

$$F_D = \frac{C_D \rho v^2 A}{2}, \text{ where}$$

C_D = the *drag coefficient*,

v = the velocity (m/s) of the flowing fluid or moving object, and

A = the *projected area* (m^2) of blunt objects such as spheres, ellipsoids, disks, and plates, cylinders, ellipses, and air foils with axes perpendicular to the flow.

ρ = fluid density

For flat plates placed parallel with the flow:

$$C_D = 1.33/\text{Re}^{0.5} \quad (10^4 < \text{Re} < 5 \times 10^5)$$

$$C_D = 0.031/\text{Re}^{1/7} \quad (10^6 < \text{Re} < 10^9)$$

The characteristic length in the Reynolds Number (Re) is the length of the plate parallel with the flow. For blunt objects, the characteristic length is the largest linear dimension (diameter of cylinder, sphere, disk, etc.) that is perpendicular to the flow.

CHARACTERISTICS OF SELECTED FLOW CONFIGURATIONS

Open-Channel Flow and/or Pipe Flow of Water

Manning's Equation

$$Q = (K/n) A R_H^{2/3} S^{1/2}$$

$$V = (K/n) R_H^{2/3} S^{1/2}$$

Q = discharge (ft^3/sec or m^3/s)

V = velocity (ft/sec or m/s)

K = 1.486 for USCS units, 1.0 for SI units

n = roughness coefficient

A = cross-sectional area of flow (ft^2 or m^2)

R_H = hydraulic radius = A/P (ft or m)

P = wetted perimeter (ft or m)

S = slope (ft/ft or m/m)

Hazen-Williams Equation

$$v = k_1 C R_H^{0.63} S^{0.54}$$

$$Q = k_1 C A R_H^{0.63} S^{0.54}$$

$k_1 = 0.849$ for SI units, 1.318 for USCS units

$C =$ roughness coefficient, as tabulated in the Civil Engineering section. Other symbols are defined as before.

Flow Through a Packed Bed

A porous, fixed bed of solid particles can be characterized by

$L =$ length of particle bed (m)

$D_p =$ average particle diameter (m)

$\Phi_s =$ sphericity of particles, dimensionless (0–1)

$\epsilon =$ porosity or void fraction of the particle bed, dimensionless (0–1)

The Ergun equation can be used to estimate pressure loss through a packed bed under laminar and turbulent flow conditions.

$$\frac{\Delta P}{L} = \frac{150 v_o \mu (1 - \epsilon)^2}{\Phi_s^2 D_p^2 \epsilon^3} + \frac{1.75 \rho v_o^2 (1 - \epsilon)}{\Phi_s D_p \epsilon^3}$$

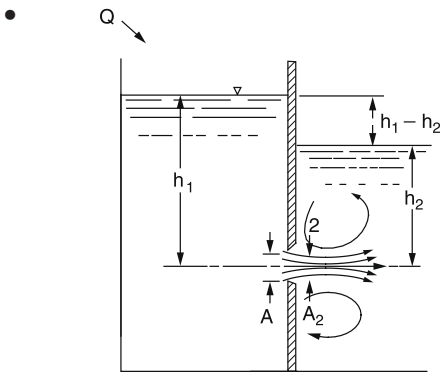
$\Delta P =$ pressure loss across packed bed (Pa)

$v_o =$ superficial (flow through empty vessel) fluid velocity (m/s)

$\rho =$ fluid density (kg/m³)

$\mu =$ fluid viscosity [kg/(m·s)]

Submerged Orifice operating under steady-flow conditions:



$$Q = A_2 v_2 = C_c C_v A \sqrt{2g(h_1 - h_2)}$$

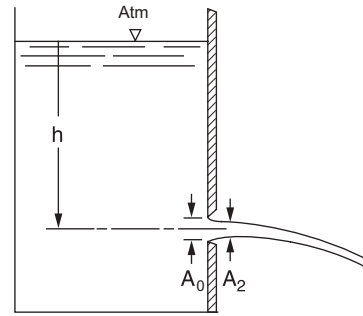
$$= CA \sqrt{2g(h_1 - h_2)}$$

in which the product of C_c and C_v is defined as the *coefficient of discharge* of the orifice.

$v_2 =$ velocity of fluid exiting orifice

Orifice Discharging Freely into Atmosphere

•



$$Q = CA_0 \sqrt{2gh}$$

in which h is measured from the liquid surface to the centroid of the orifice opening.

$Q =$ volumetric flow

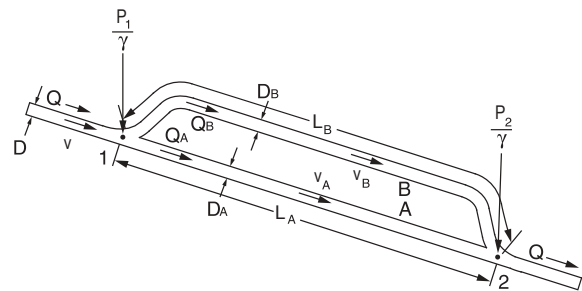
$A_0 =$ cross-sectional area of flow

$g =$ acceleration of gravity

$h =$ height of fluid above orifice

Multipath Pipeline Problems

•



For pipes in parallel, the head loss is the same in each pipe.

$$h_L = f_A \frac{L_A}{D_A} \frac{v_A^2}{2g} = f_B \frac{L_B}{D_B} \frac{v_B^2}{2g}$$

$$(\pi D^2/4)v = (\pi D_A^2/4)v_A + (\pi D_B^2/4)v_B$$

The total flowrate Q is the sum of the flowrates in the parallel pipes.

THE IMPULSE-MOMENTUM PRINCIPLE

The resultant force in a given direction acting on the fluid equals the rate of change of momentum of the fluid.

$$\Sigma F = \Sigma Q_2 \rho_2 v_2 - \Sigma Q_1 \rho_1 v_1, \text{ where}$$

$\Sigma F =$ the resultant of all external forces acting on the control volume

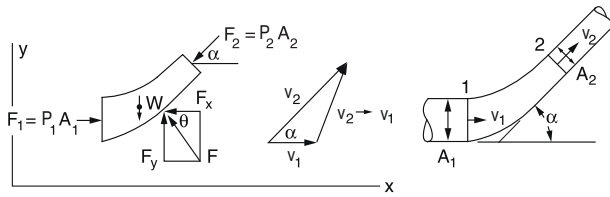
$\Sigma Q_1 \rho_1 v_1 =$ the rate of momentum of the fluid flow entering the control volume in the same direction of the force

$\Sigma Q_2 \rho_2 v_2 =$ the rate of momentum of the fluid flow leaving the control volume in the same direction of the force

• Vennard, J.K., *Elementary Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed., J.K. Vennard, 1954.

Pipe Bends, Enlargements, and Contractions

The force exerted by a flowing fluid on a bend, enlargement, or contraction in a pipeline may be computed using the impulse-momentum principle.



$$P_1 A_1 - P_2 A_2 \cos \alpha - F_x = Q\rho (v_2 \cos \alpha - v_1)$$

$$F_y - W - P_2 A_2 \sin \alpha = Q\rho (v_2 \sin \alpha - 0), \text{ where}$$

F = the force exerted by the bend on the fluid (the force exerted by the fluid on the bend is equal in magnitude and opposite in sign), F_x and F_y are the x -component and y -component of the force $F = \sqrt{F_x^2 + F_y^2}$ and

$$\theta = \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{F_y}{F_x} \right).$$

P = the internal pressure in the pipe line

A = the cross-sectional area of the pipe line

W = the weight of the fluid

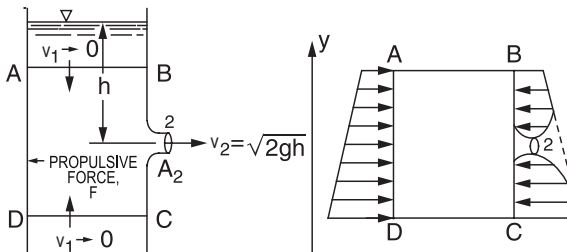
v = the velocity of the fluid flow

α = the angle the pipe bend makes with the horizontal

ρ = the density of the fluid

Q = fluid volumetric flowrate

Jet Propulsion



$$F = Q\rho(v_2 - 0)$$

$$F = 2\gamma h A_2, \text{ where}$$

F = the propulsive force

γ = the specific weight of the fluid

h = the height of the fluid above the outlet

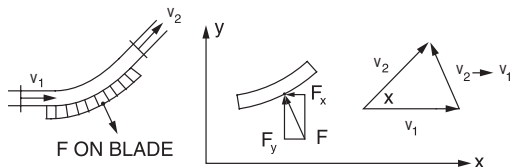
A_2 = the area of the nozzle tip

$$Q = A_2 \sqrt{2gh}$$

$$v_2 = \sqrt{2gh}$$

Deflectors and Blades

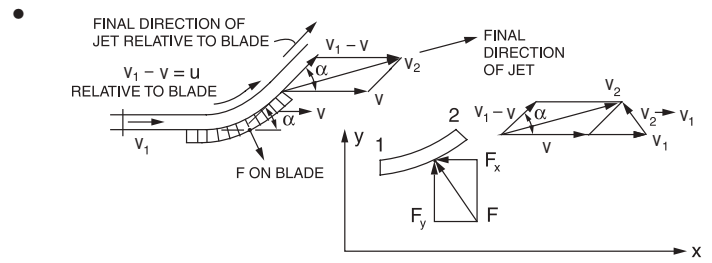
Fixed Blade



$$-F_x = Q\rho(v_2 \cos \alpha - v_1)$$

$$F_y = Q\rho(v_2 \sin \alpha - 0)$$

Moving Blade

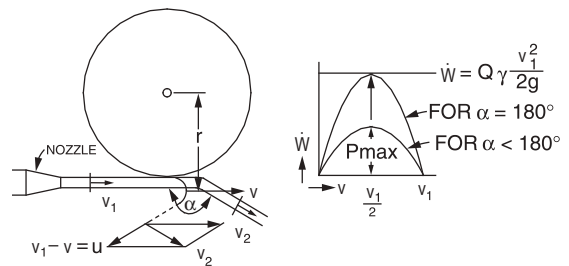


$$-F_x = Q\rho(v_{2x} - v_{1x}) = -Q\rho(v_1 - v)(1 - \cos \alpha)$$

$$F_y = Q\rho(v_{2y} - v_{1y}) = +Q\rho(v_1 - v) \sin \alpha, \text{ where}$$

v = the velocity of the blade.

Impulse Turbine



$$\dot{W} = Q\rho(v_1 - v)(1 - \cos \alpha)v, \text{ where}$$

\dot{W} = power of the turbine.

$$\dot{W}_{\max} = Q\rho(v_1^2/4)(1 - \cos \alpha)$$

When $\alpha = 180^\circ$,

$$\dot{W}_{\max} = (Q\rho v_1^2)/2 = (Q\gamma v_1^2)/2g$$

COMPRESSIBLE FLOW

Mach Number

The local speed of sound in an ideal gas is given by:

$$c = \sqrt{kRT}, \text{ where}$$

c \equiv local speed of sound

$$k \equiv \text{ratio of specific heats} = \frac{c_p}{c_v}$$

R \equiv specific gas constant = \bar{R} / (molecular weight)

T \equiv absolute temperature

example: speed of sound in dry air at 1 atm 20°C is 343.2 m/s.

This shows that the acoustic velocity in an ideal gas depends only on its temperature. The *Mach number* (Ma) is the ratio of the fluid velocity to the speed of sound.

$$\text{Ma} \equiv \frac{V}{c}$$

V \equiv mean fluid velocity

• Vennard, J.K., *Elementary Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed., J.K. Vennard, 1954.

Isentropic Flow Relationships

In an ideal gas for an isentropic process, the following relationships exist between static properties at any two points in the flow.

$$\frac{P_2}{P_1} = \left(\frac{T_2}{T_1}\right)^{\frac{k}{k-1}} = \left(\frac{\rho_2}{\rho_1}\right)^k$$

The stagnation temperature, T_0 , at a point in the flow is related to the static temperature as follows:

$$T_0 = T + \frac{V^2}{2 \cdot c_p}$$

Energy relation between two points:

$$h_1 + \frac{V_1^2}{2} = h_2 + \frac{V_2^2}{2}$$

The relationship between the static and stagnation properties (T_0 , P_0 , and ρ_0) at any point in the flow can be expressed as a function of the Mach number as follows:

$$\frac{T_0}{T} = 1 + \frac{k-1}{2} \cdot \text{Ma}^2$$

$$\frac{P_0}{P} = \left(\frac{T_0}{T}\right)^{\frac{k}{k-1}} = \left(1 + \frac{k-1}{2} \cdot \text{Ma}^2\right)^{\frac{k}{k-1}}$$

$$\frac{\rho_0}{\rho} = \left(\frac{T_0}{T}\right)^{\frac{1}{k-1}} = \left(1 + \frac{k-1}{2} \cdot \text{Ma}^2\right)^{\frac{1}{k-1}}$$

Compressible flows are often accelerated or decelerated through a nozzle or diffuser. For subsonic flows, the velocity decreases as the flow cross-sectional area increases and vice versa. For supersonic flows, the velocity increases as the flow cross-sectional area increases and decreases as the flow cross-sectional area decreases. The point at which the Mach number is sonic is called the throat and its area is represented by the variable, A^* . The following area ratio holds for any Mach number.

$$\frac{A}{A^*} = \frac{1}{\text{Ma}} \left[\frac{1 + \frac{1}{2}(k-1)\text{Ma}^2}{\frac{1}{2}(k+1)} \right]^{\frac{(k+1)}{2(k-1)}}$$

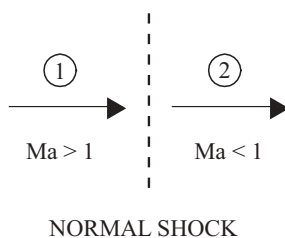
where

$A \equiv$ area [length²]

$A^* \equiv$ area at the sonic point ($\text{Ma} = 1.0$)

Normal Shock Relationships

A normal shock wave is a physical mechanism that slows a flow from supersonic to subsonic. It occurs over an infinitesimal distance. The flow upstream of a normal shock wave is always supersonic and the flow downstream is always subsonic as depicted in the figure.



The following equations relate downstream flow conditions to upstream flow conditions for a normal shock wave.

$$\text{Ma}_2 = \sqrt{\frac{(k-1)\text{Ma}_1^2 + 2}{2k\text{Ma}_1^2 - (k-1)}}$$

$$\frac{T_2}{T_1} = \left[2 + (k-1)\text{Ma}_1^2\right] \frac{2k\text{Ma}_1^2 - (k-1)}{(k+1)^2\text{Ma}_1^2}$$

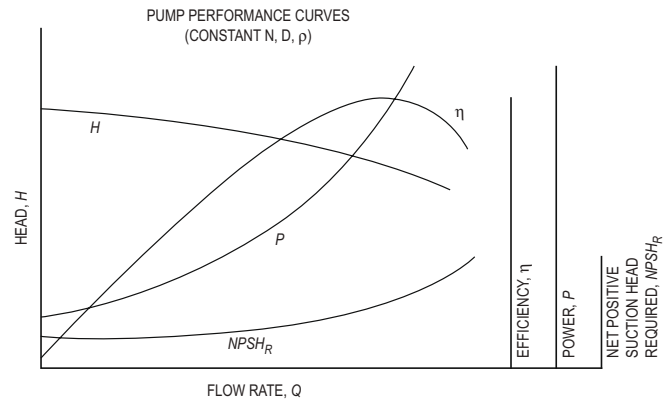
$$\frac{P_2}{P_1} = \frac{1}{k+1} [2k\text{Ma}_1^2 - (k-1)]$$

$$\frac{\rho_2}{\rho_1} = \frac{V_1}{V_2} = \frac{(k+1)\text{Ma}_1^2}{(k-1)\text{Ma}_1^2 + 2}$$

$$T_{01} = T_{02}$$

FLUID FLOW MACHINERY

Centrifugal Pump Characteristics



Net Positive Suction Head Available ($NPSH_A$)

$$NPSH_A = H_{pa} + H_s - \sum h_L - H_{vp} = \frac{P_{inlet}}{\rho g} + \frac{v_{inlet}^2}{2g} - \frac{P_{vapor}}{\rho g}$$

where,

H_{pa} = the atmospheric pressure head on the surface of the liquid in the sump (ft or m)

H_s = static suction head of liquid. This is height of the surface of the liquid above the centerline of the pump impeller (ft or m)

$\sum h_L$ = total friction losses in the suction line (ft or m)

H_{vp} = the vapor pressure head of the liquid at the operating temperature (ft or m)

v = fluid velocity at pump inlet

P_{vapor} = fluid vapor pressure at pump inlet

ρ = fluid density

g = acceleration due to gravity

Fluid power $\dot{W}_{fluid} = \rho g H Q$

Pump (brake) power $\dot{W} = \frac{\rho g H Q}{\eta_{pump}}$

Purchased power $\dot{W}_{purchased} = \frac{\dot{W}}{\eta_{motor}}$

η_{pump} = pump efficiency (0 to 1)

η_{motor} = motor efficiency (0 to 1)

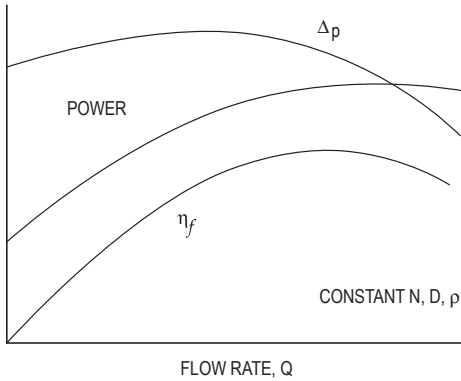
H = head increase provided by pump

Pump Power Equation

$$\dot{W} = Q\gamma h/\eta_t = Q\rho gh/\eta_t, \text{ where}$$

- Q = volumetric flow (m³/s or cfs)
 h = head (m or ft) the fluid has to be lifted
 η_t = total efficiency ($\eta_{\text{pump}} \times \eta_{\text{motor}}$)
 \dot{W} = power (kg·m²/sec³ or ft-lbf/sec)

Fan Characteristics



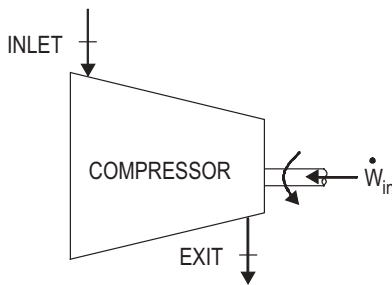
Typical *Backward Curved Fans*

$$\dot{W} = \frac{\Delta P Q}{\eta_f}, \text{ where}$$

- \dot{W} = fan power
 ΔP = pressure rise
 η_f = fan efficiency

Compressors

Compressors consume power to add energy to the working fluid. This energy addition results in an increase in fluid pressure (head).



For an adiabatic compressor with $\Delta PE = 0$ and negligible ΔKE :

$$\dot{W}_{\text{comp}} = -\dot{m}(h_e - h_i)$$

For an ideal gas with constant specific heats:

$$\dot{W}_{\text{comp}} = -\dot{m}c_p(T_e - T_i)$$

Per unit mass:

$$w_{\text{comp}} = -c_p(T_e - T_i)$$

Compressor Isentropic Efficiency

$$\eta_C = \frac{w_s}{w_a} = \frac{T_{es} - T_i}{T_e - T_i} \text{ where,}$$

- w_a ≡ actual compressor work per unit mass
 w_s ≡ isentropic compressor work per unit mass
 T_{es} ≡ isentropic exit temperature

For a compressor where ΔKE is included:

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{W}_{\text{comp}} &= -\dot{m} \left(h_e - h_i + \frac{V_e^2 - V_i^2}{2} \right) \\ &= -\dot{m} \left(c_p(T_e - T_i) + \frac{V_e^2 - V_i^2}{2} \right) \end{aligned}$$

Adiabatic Compression

$$\dot{W}_{\text{comp}} = \frac{\dot{m} P_i k}{(k-1)\rho_i \eta_c} \left[\left(\frac{P_e}{P_i} \right)^{1-1/k} - 1 \right]$$

\dot{W}_{comp} = fluid or gas power (W)

- P_i = inlet or suction pressure (N/m²)
 P_e = exit or discharge pressure (N/m²)
 k = ratio of specific heats = c_p/c_v
 ρ_i = inlet gas density (kg/m³)
 η_c = isentropic compressor efficiency

Isothermal Compression

$$\dot{W}_{\text{comp}} = \frac{\bar{R}T_i}{M\eta_c} \ln \frac{P_e}{P_i} (\dot{m})$$

\dot{W}_{comp} , P_i , P_e , and η_c as defined for adiabatic compression

- \bar{R} = universal gas constant
 T_i = inlet temperature of gas (K)
 M = molecular weight of gas (kg/kmol)

◆ Blowers

$$P_w = \frac{WRT_1}{Cne} \left[\left(\frac{P_2}{P_1} \right)^{0.283} - 1 \right]$$

$C = 29.7$ (constant for SI unit conversion)
 $= 550$ ft-lb/(sec-hp) (U.S. Customary Units)

P_w = power requirement (hp)

W = weight of flow of air (lb/sec)

R = engineering gas constant for air = 53.3 ft-lb/(lb air-°R)

T_1 = absolute inlet temperature (°R)

P_1 = absolute inlet pressure (lbf/in²)

P_2 = absolute outlet pressure (lbf/in²)

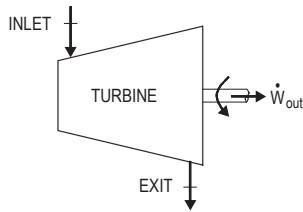
$n = (k-1)/k = 0.283$ for air

e = efficiency (usually $0.70 < e < 0.90$)

◆ Metcalf and Eddy, *Wastewater Engineering: Treatment, Disposal, and Reuse*, 3rd ed., McGraw-Hill, 1991.

Turbines

Turbines produce power by extracting energy from a working fluid. The energy loss shows up as a decrease in fluid pressure (head).



For an adiabatic turbine with $\Delta PE = 0$ and negligible ΔKE :

$$\dot{W}_{\text{turb}} = \dot{m}(h_i - h_e)$$

For an ideal gas with constant specific heats:

$$\dot{W}_{\text{turb}} = \dot{m}c_p(T_i - T_e)$$

Per unit mass:

$$w_{\text{turb}} = c_p(T_i - T_e)$$

Turbine Isentropic Efficiency

$$\eta_T = \frac{w_a}{w_s} = \frac{T_i - T_e}{T_i - T_{es}}$$

For a turbine where ΔKE is included:

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{W}_{\text{turb}} &= \dot{m} \left(h_i - h_e + \frac{V_i^2 - V_e^2}{2} \right) \\ &= \dot{m} \left(c_p(T_i - T_e) + \frac{V_i^2 - V_e^2}{2} \right) \end{aligned}$$

Performance of Components

Fans, Pumps, and Compressors

Scaling Laws; Affinity Laws

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\frac{Q}{ND^3} \right)_2 &= \left(\frac{Q}{ND^3} \right)_1 \\ \left(\frac{\dot{m}}{\rho ND^3} \right)_2 &= \left(\frac{\dot{m}}{\rho ND^3} \right)_1 \\ \left(\frac{H}{N^2 D^2} \right)_2 &= \left(\frac{H}{N^2 D^2} \right)_1 \\ \left(\frac{P}{\rho N^2 D^2} \right)_2 &= \left(\frac{P}{\rho N^2 D^2} \right)_1 \\ \left(\frac{\dot{W}}{\rho N^3 D^5} \right)_2 &= \left(\frac{\dot{W}}{\rho N^3 D^5} \right)_1 \end{aligned}$$

where

Q = volumetric flowrate

\dot{m} = mass flowrate

H = head

P = pressure rise

\dot{W} = power

ρ = fluid density

N = rotational speed

D = impeller diameter

Subscripts 1 and 2 refer to different but similar machines or to different operating conditions of the same machine.

FLUID FLOW MEASUREMENT

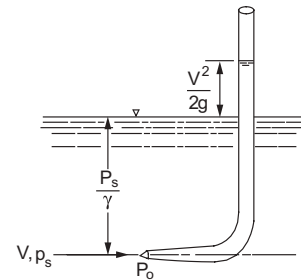
The Pitot Tube – From the stagnation pressure equation for an *incompressible fluid*,

$$v = \sqrt{(2/\rho)(P_0 - P_s)} = \sqrt{2g(P_0 - P_s)/\gamma}, \text{ where}$$

v = the velocity of the fluid

P_0 = the stagnation pressure

P_s = the static pressure of the fluid at the elevation where the measurement is taken



For a *compressible fluid*, use the above incompressible fluid equation if the Mach number ≤ 0.3 .

Venturi Meters

$$Q = \frac{C_v A_2}{\sqrt{1 - (A_2/A_1)^2}} \sqrt{2g \left(\frac{P_1}{\gamma} + z_1 - \frac{P_2}{\gamma} - z_2 \right)}, \text{ where}$$

Q = volumetric flowrate

C_v = the coefficient of velocity

A = cross-sectional area of flow

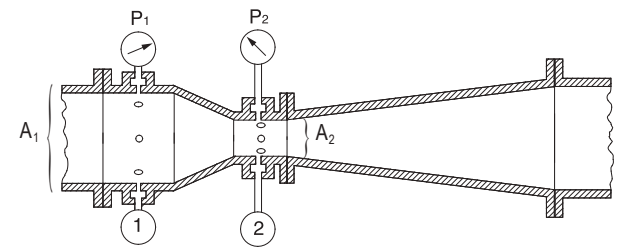
P = pressure

$\gamma = \rho g$

z_1 = elevation of venturi entrance

z_2 = elevation of venturi throat

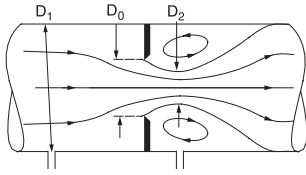
The above equation is for *incompressible fluids*.



• Vennard, J.K., *Elementary Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed., J.K. Vennard, 1954.

Orifices

The cross-sectional area at the vena contracta A_2 is characterized by a *coefficient of contraction* C_c and given by $C_c A$.



$$Q = C A_0 \sqrt{2g \left(\frac{P_1}{\gamma} + z_1 - \frac{P_2}{\gamma} - z_2 \right)}$$

where C , the *coefficient of the meter (orifice coefficient)*, is given by

$$C = \frac{C_v C_c}{\sqrt{1 - C_c^2 (A_0/A_1)^2}}$$

| ORIFICES AND THEIR NOMINAL COEFFICIENTS | | | | |
|---|-------------|---------|------------|-------|
| | SHARP EDGED | ROUNDED | SHORT TUBE | BORDA |
| C | 0.61 | 0.98 | 0.80 | 0.51 |
| C_c | 0.62 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 0.52 |
| C_v | 0.98 | 0.98 | 0.80 | 0.98 |

For incompressible flow through a horizontal orifice meter installation

$$Q = C A_0 \sqrt{\frac{2}{\rho} (P_1 - P_2)}$$

DIMENSIONAL HOMOGENEITY

Dimensional Analysis

A dimensionally homogeneous equation has the same dimensions on the left and right sides of the equation. Dimensional analysis involves the development of equations that relate dimensionless groups of variables to describe physical phenomena.

Buckingham Pi Theorem: The *number of independent dimensionless groups* that may be employed to describe a phenomenon known to involve n variables is equal to the number $(n - \bar{r})$, where \bar{r} is the number of basic dimensions (e.g., M, L, T) needed to express the variables dimensionally.

Similitude

In order to use a model to simulate the conditions of the prototype, the model must be *geometrically, kinematically, and dynamically similar* to the prototype system.

To obtain dynamic similarity between two flow pictures, all independent force ratios that can be written must be the same in both the model and the prototype. Thus, dynamic similarity between two flow pictures (when all possible forces are acting) is expressed in the five simultaneous equations below.

$$\left[\frac{F_I}{F_P} \right]_p = \left[\frac{F_I}{F_P} \right]_m = \left[\frac{\rho v^2}{P} \right]_p = \left[\frac{\rho v^2}{P} \right]_m$$

$$\left[\frac{F_I}{F_V} \right]_p = \left[\frac{F_I}{F_V} \right]_m = \left[\frac{v l \rho}{\mu} \right]_p = \left[\frac{v l \rho}{\mu} \right]_m = [\text{Re}]_p = [\text{Re}]_m$$

$$\left[\frac{F_I}{F_G} \right]_p = \left[\frac{F_I}{F_G} \right]_m = \left[\frac{v^2}{l g} \right]_p = \left[\frac{v^2}{l g} \right]_m = [\text{Fr}]_p = [\text{Fr}]_m$$

$$\left[\frac{F_I}{F_E} \right]_p = \left[\frac{F_I}{F_E} \right]_m = \left[\frac{\rho v^2}{E_v} \right]_p = \left[\frac{\rho v^2}{E_v} \right]_m = [\text{Ca}]_p = [\text{Ca}]_m$$

$$\left[\frac{F_I}{F_T} \right]_p = \left[\frac{F_I}{F_T} \right]_m = \left[\frac{\rho l v^2}{\sigma} \right]_p = \left[\frac{\rho l v^2}{\sigma} \right]_m = [\text{We}]_p = [\text{We}]_m$$

where the subscripts p and m stand for *prototype* and *model* respectively, and

F_I = inertia force

F_P = pressure force

F_V = viscous force

F_G = gravity force

F_E = elastic force

F_T = surface tension force

Re = Reynolds number

We = Weber number

Ca = Cauchy number

Fr = Froude number

l = characteristic length

v = velocity

ρ = density

σ = surface tension

E_v = bulk modulus

μ = dynamic viscosity

P = pressure

g = acceleration of gravity

• Vennard, J.K., *Elementary Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed., J.K. Vennard, 1954.

♦ Bober, W., and R.A. Kenyon, *Fluid Mechanics*, Wiley, 1980. Diagrams reprinted by permission of William Bober and Richard A. Kenyon.

AERODYNAMICS

Airfoil Theory

The lift force on an airfoil, F_L , is given by

$$F_L = \frac{C_L \rho v^2 A_p}{2}$$

C_L = the lift coefficient

ρ = fluid density

v = velocity (m/s) of the undisturbed fluid and

A_p = the projected area of the airfoil as seen from above (plan area). This same area is used in defining the drag coefficient for an airfoil.

The lift coefficient, C_L , can be approximated by the equation

$$C_L = 2\pi k_1 \sin(\alpha + \beta), \text{ which is valid for small values of } \alpha \text{ and } \beta$$

k_1 = a constant of proportionality

α = angle of attack (angle between chord of airfoil and direction of flow)

β = negative of angle of attack for zero lift

The drag coefficient, C_D , may be approximated by

$$C_D = C_{D\infty} + \frac{C_L^2}{\pi AR}$$

$C_{D\infty}$ = infinite span drag coefficient

The aspect ratio, AR , is defined

$$AR = \frac{b^2}{A_p} = \frac{A_p}{c^2}$$

b = span length

A_p = plan area

c = chord length

The aerodynamic moment, M , is given by

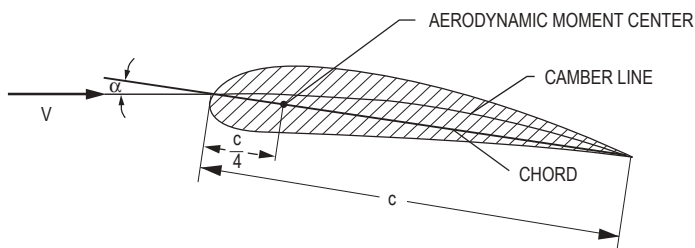
$$M = \frac{C_M \rho v^2 A_p c}{2}$$

where the moment is taken about the front quarter point of the airfoil.

C_M = moment coefficient

ρ = fluid density

v = velocity



Properties of Water (SI Metric Units)

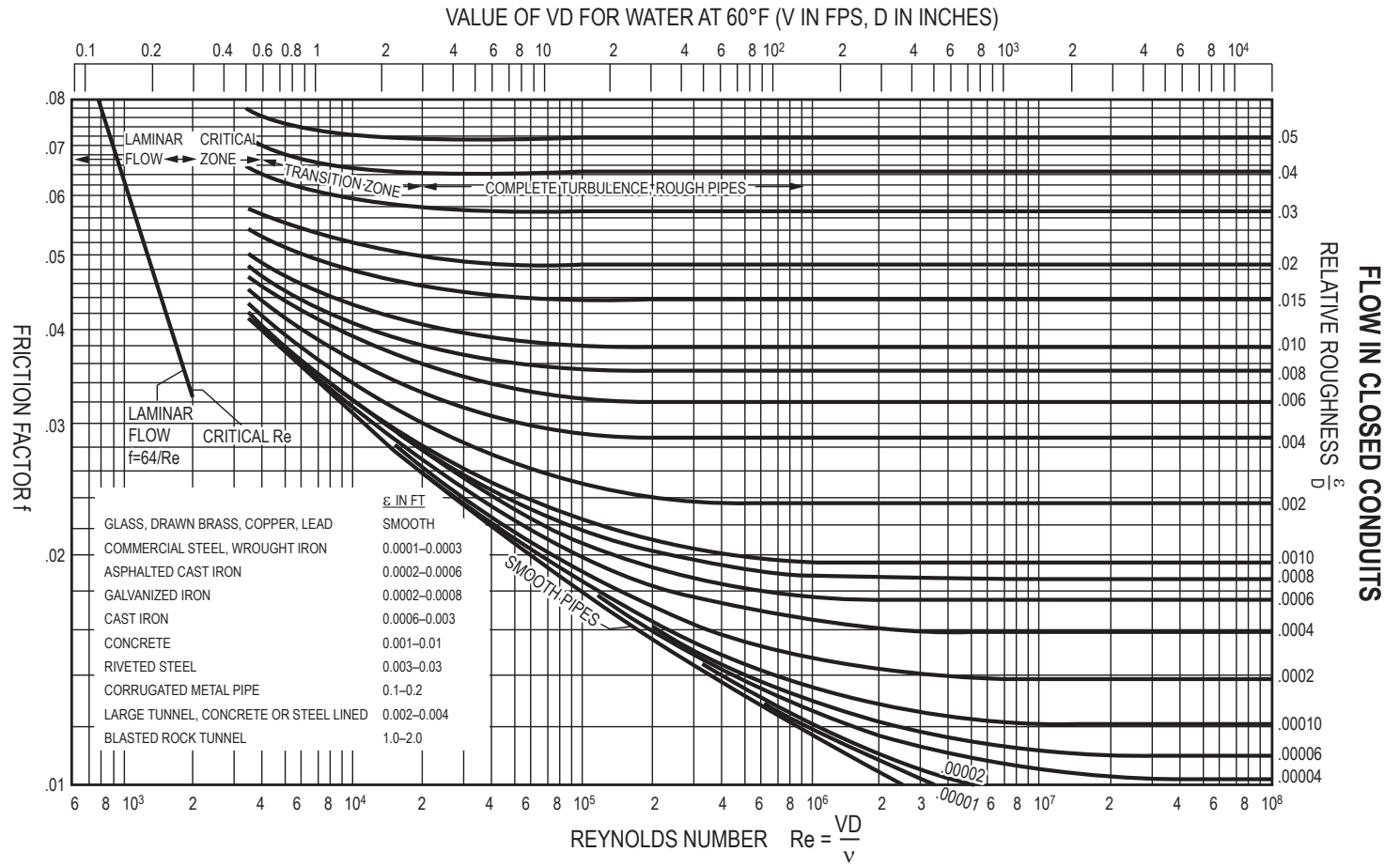
| Temperature (°C) | Specific Weight γ (kN/m ³) | Density ρ (kg/m ³) | Absolute Dynamic Viscosity μ (Pa·s) | Kinematic Viscosity ν (m ² /s) | Vapor Pressure P_v (kPa) |
|---------------------|---|---|--|--|----------------------------------|
| 0 | 9.805 | 999.8 | 0.001781 | 0.000001785 | 0.61 |
| 5 | 9.807 | 1000.0 | 0.001518 | 0.000001518 | 0.87 |
| 10 | 9.804 | 999.7 | 0.001307 | 0.000001306 | 1.23 |
| 15 | 9.798 | 999.1 | 0.001139 | 0.000001139 | 1.70 |
| 20 | 9.789 | 998.2 | 0.001002 | 0.000001003 | 2.34 |
| 25 | 9.777 | 997.0 | 0.000890 | 0.000000893 | 3.17 |
| 30 | 9.764 | 995.7 | 0.000798 | 0.000000800 | 4.24 |
| 40 | 9.730 | 992.2 | 0.000653 | 0.000000658 | 7.38 |
| 50 | 9.689 | 988.0 | 0.000547 | 0.000000553 | 12.33 |
| 60 | 9.642 | 983.2 | 0.000466 | 0.000000474 | 19.92 |
| 70 | 9.589 | 977.8 | 0.000404 | 0.000000413 | 31.16 |
| 80 | 9.530 | 971.8 | 0.000354 | 0.000000364 | 47.34 |
| 90 | 9.466 | 965.3 | 0.000315 | 0.000000326 | 70.10 |
| 100 | 9.399 | 958.4 | 0.000282 | 0.000000294 | 101.33 |

Properties of Water (English Units)

| Temperature (°F) | Specific Weight γ (lbf/ft ³) | Mass Density ρ (lbf-sec ² /ft ⁴) | Absolute Dynamic Viscosity μ ($\times 10^{-5}$ lbf-sec/ft ²) | Kinematic Viscosity ν ($\times 10^{-5}$ ft ² /sec) | Vapor Pressure P_v (psi) |
|---------------------|---|--|--|---|----------------------------------|
| 32 | 62.42 | 1.940 | 3.746 | 1.931 | 0.09 |
| 40 | 62.43 | 1.940 | 3.229 | 1.664 | 0.12 |
| 50 | 62.41 | 1.940 | 2.735 | 1.410 | 0.18 |
| 60 | 62.37 | 1.938 | 2.359 | 1.217 | 0.26 |
| 70 | 62.30 | 1.936 | 2.050 | 1.059 | 0.36 |
| 80 | 62.22 | 1.934 | 1.799 | 0.930 | 0.51 |
| 90 | 62.11 | 1.931 | 1.595 | 0.826 | 0.70 |
| 100 | 62.00 | 1.927 | 1.424 | 0.739 | 0.95 |
| 110 | 61.86 | 1.923 | 1.284 | 0.667 | 1.24 |
| 120 | 61.71 | 1.918 | 1.168 | 0.609 | 1.69 |
| 130 | 61.55 | 1.913 | 1.069 | 0.558 | 2.22 |
| 140 | 61.38 | 1.908 | 0.981 | 0.514 | 2.89 |
| 150 | 61.20 | 1.902 | 0.905 | 0.476 | 3.72 |
| 160 | 61.00 | 1.896 | 0.838 | 0.442 | 4.74 |
| 170 | 60.80 | 1.890 | 0.780 | 0.413 | 5.99 |
| 180 | 60.58 | 1.883 | 0.726 | 0.385 | 7.51 |
| 190 | 60.36 | 1.876 | 0.678 | 0.362 | 9.34 |
| 200 | 60.12 | 1.868 | 0.637 | 0.341 | 11.52 |
| 212 | 59.83 | 1.860 | 0.593 | 0.319 | 14.70 |

Vennard, John K., and Robert L. Street, *Elementary Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed., New York: Wiley, 1982, p. 663. Reproduced with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

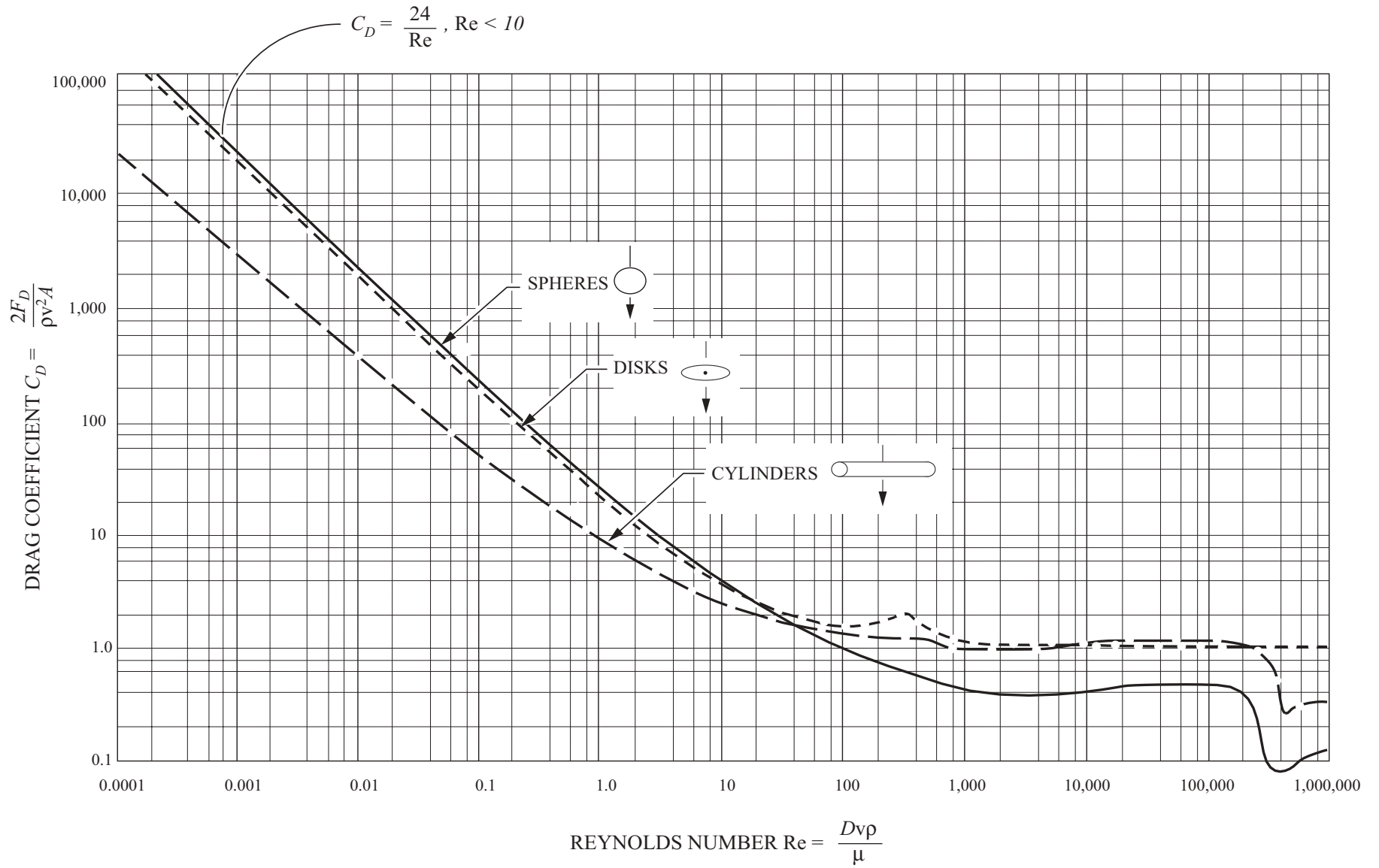
Chow, Ven Te, *Handbook of Applied Hydrology*, McGraw-Hill, 1964.



Moody (Stanton) Diagram

FLOW IN CLOSED CONDUITS

Drag Coefficient for Spheres, Disks, and Cylinders



Note: Intermediate divisions are 2, 4, 6, and 8

HEAT TRANSFER

There are three modes of heat transfer: conduction, convection, and radiation.

BASIC HEAT-TRANSFER RATE EQUATIONS

Conduction

Fourier's Law of Conduction

$$\dot{Q} = -kA \frac{dT}{dx}, \text{ where}$$

\dot{Q} = rate of heat transfer (W)

k = the thermal conductivity [W/(m•K)]

A = the surface area perpendicular to direction of heat transfer (m²)

Convection

Newton's Law of Cooling

$$\dot{Q} = hA(T_w - T_\infty), \text{ where}$$

h = the convection heat-transfer coefficient of the fluid [W/(m²•K)]

A = the convection surface area (m²)

T_w = the wall surface temperature (K)

T_∞ = the bulk fluid temperature (K)

Radiation

The radiation emitted by a body is given by

$$\dot{Q} = \varepsilon\sigma AT^4, \text{ where}$$

ε = the emissivity of the body

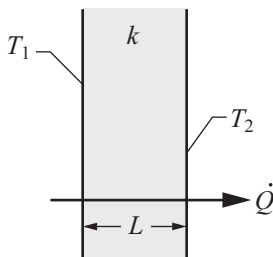
σ = the Stefan-Boltzmann constant
= 5.67×10^{-8} W/(m²•K⁴)

A = the body surface area (m²)

T = the absolute temperature (K)

CONDUCTION

Conduction Through a Plane Wall



$$\dot{Q} = \frac{-kA(T_2 - T_1)}{L}, \text{ where}$$

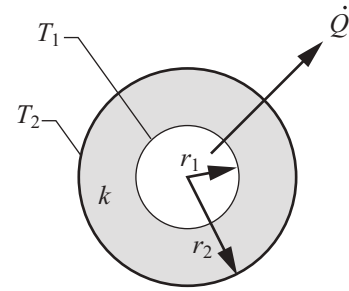
A = wall surface area normal to heat flow (m²)

L = wall thickness (m)

T_1 = temperature of one surface of the wall (K)

T_2 = temperature of the other surface of the wall (K)

Conduction Through a Cylindrical Wall

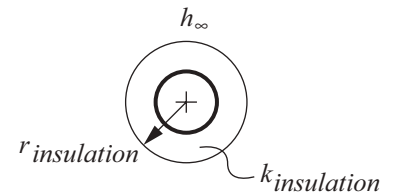


Cylinder (Length = L)

$$\dot{Q} = \frac{2\pi kL(T_1 - T_2)}{\ln\left(\frac{r_2}{r_1}\right)}$$

Critical Insulation Radius

$$r_{cr} = \frac{k_{insulation}}{h_\infty}$$



Thermal Resistance (R)

$$\dot{Q} = \frac{\Delta T}{R_{total}}$$

Resistances in series are added: $R_{total} = \Sigma R$, where

Plane Wall Conduction Resistance (K/W): $R = \frac{L}{kA}$, where

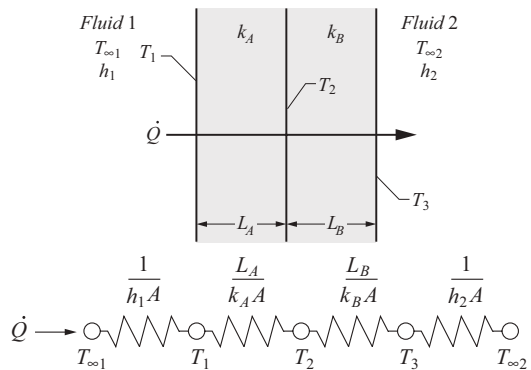
L = wall thickness

Cylindrical Wall Conduction Resistance (K/W): $R = \frac{\ln\left(\frac{r_2}{r_1}\right)}{2\pi kL}$, where

L = cylinder length

Convection Resistance (K/W) : $R = \frac{1}{hA}$

Composite Plane Wall



To evaluate surface or intermediate temperatures:

$$\dot{Q} = \frac{T_1 - T_2}{R_A} = \frac{T_2 - T_3}{R_B}$$

Transient Conduction Using the Lumped Capacitance Model

The lumped capacitance model is valid if

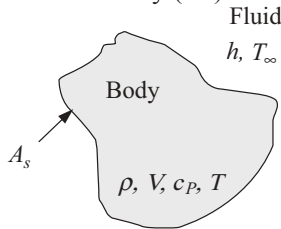
$$\text{Biot number, } Bi = \frac{hV}{kA_s} \ll 1, \text{ where}$$

h = the convection heat-transfer coefficient of the fluid
[W/(m²•K)]

V = the volume of the body (m³)

k = thermal conductivity of the body [W/(m•K)]

A_s = the surface area of the body (m²)



Constant Fluid Temperature

If the temperature may be considered uniform within the body at any time, the heat-transfer rate at the body surface is given by

$$\dot{Q} = hA_s(T - T_\infty) = -\rho V(c_p)\left(\frac{dT}{dt}\right), \text{ where}$$

T = the body temperature (K)

T_∞ = the fluid temperature (K)

ρ = the density of the body (kg/m³)

c_p = the heat capacity of the body [J/(kg•K)]

t = time (s)

The temperature variation of the body with time is

$$T - T_\infty = (T_i - T_\infty)e^{-\beta t}, \text{ where}$$

$$\beta = \frac{hA_s}{\rho V c_p} \quad \text{where } \beta = \frac{1}{\tau} \text{ and}$$

$$\tau = \text{time constant (s)}$$

The total heat transferred (Q_{total}) up to time t is

$$Q_{total} = \rho V c_p (T_i - T), \text{ where}$$

T_i = initial body temperature (K)

Fins

For a straight fin with uniform cross section (assuming negligible heat transfer from tip),

$$\dot{Q} = \sqrt{hPkA_c}(T_b - T_\infty)\tanh(mL_c), \text{ where}$$

h = the convection heat-transfer coefficient of the fluid
[W/(m²•K)]

P = perimeter of exposed fin cross section (m)

k = fin thermal conductivity [W/(m•K)]

A_c = fin cross-sectional area (m²)

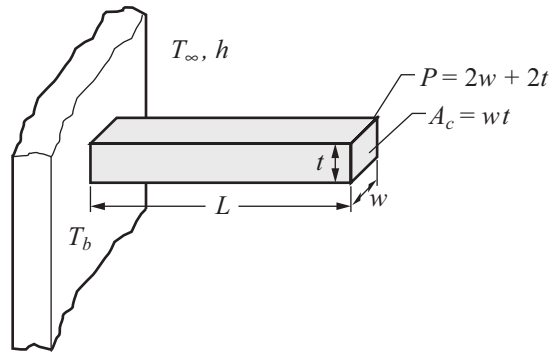
T_b = temperature at base of fin (K)

T_∞ = fluid temperature (K)

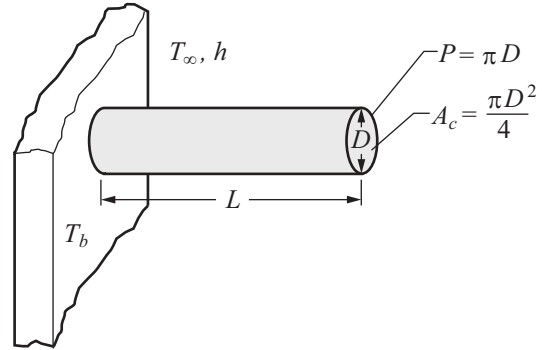
$$m = \sqrt{\frac{hP}{kA_c}}$$

$L_c = L + \frac{A_c}{P}$, corrected length of fin (m)

Rectangular Fin



Pin Fin



CONVECTION

Terms

D = diameter (m)

\bar{h} = average convection heat-transfer coefficient of the fluid
[W/(m²•K)]

L = length (m)

\overline{Nu} = average Nusselt number

Pr = Prandtl number = $\frac{c_p \mu}{k}$

u_m = mean velocity of fluid (m/s)

u_∞ = free stream velocity of fluid (m/s)

μ = dynamic viscosity of fluid [kg/(s•m)]

ρ = density of fluid (kg/m³)

External Flow

In all cases, evaluate fluid properties at average temperature between that of the body and that of the flowing fluid.

Flat Plate of Length L in Parallel Flow

$$Re_L = \frac{\rho u_\infty L}{\mu}$$

$$\overline{Nu}_L = \frac{\bar{h}L}{k} = 0.6640 Re_L^{1/2} Pr^{1/3} \quad (Re_L < 10^5)$$

$$\overline{Nu}_L = \frac{\bar{h}L}{k} = 0.0366 Re_L^{0.8} Pr^{1/3} \quad (Re_L > 10^5)$$

Cylinder of Diameter D in Cross Flow

$$Re_D = \frac{\rho u_\infty D}{\mu}$$

$$\overline{Nu}_D = \frac{\overline{h}D}{k} = C Re_D^n Pr^{1/3}, \text{ where}$$

| Re_D | C | n |
|------------------|--------|-------|
| 1 – 4 | 0.989 | 0.330 |
| 4 – 40 | 0.911 | 0.385 |
| 40 – 4,000 | 0.683 | 0.466 |
| 4,000 – 40,000 | 0.193 | 0.618 |
| 40,000 – 250,000 | 0.0266 | 0.805 |

Flow Over a Sphere of Diameter, D

$$\overline{Nu}_D = \frac{\overline{h}D}{k} = 2.0 + 0.60 Re_D^{1/2} Pr^{1/3},$$

$$(1 < Re_D < 70,000; 0.6 < Pr < 400)$$

Internal Flow

$$Re_D = \frac{\rho u_m D}{\mu}$$

Laminar Flow in Circular Tubes

For laminar flow ($Re_D < 2300$), fully developed conditions

$$Nu_D = 4.36 \quad (\text{uniform heat flux})$$

$$Nu_D = 3.66 \quad (\text{constant surface temperature})$$

For laminar flow ($Re_D < 2300$), combined entry length with constant surface temperature

$$Nu_D = 1.86 \left(\frac{Re_D Pr}{L/D} \right)^{1/3} \left(\frac{\mu_b}{\mu_s} \right)^{0.14}, \text{ where}$$

L = length of tube (m)

D = tube diameter (m)

μ_b = dynamic viscosity of fluid [kg/(s·m)] at bulk temperature of fluid, T_b

μ_s = dynamic viscosity of fluid [kg/(s·m)] at inside surface temperature of the tube, T_s

Turbulent Flow in Circular Tubes

For turbulent flow ($Re_D > 10^4$, $Pr > 0.7$) for either uniform surface temperature or uniform heat flux condition, Sieder-Tate equation offers good approximation:

$$Nu_D = 0.023 Re_D^{0.8} Pr^{1/3} \left(\frac{\mu_b}{\mu_s} \right)^{0.14}$$

Noncircular Ducts

In place of the diameter, D , use the equivalent (hydraulic) diameter (D_H) defined as

$$D_H = \frac{4 \times \text{cross-sectional area}}{\text{wetted perimeter}}$$

Circular Annulus ($D_o > D_i$)

In place of the diameter, D , use the equivalent (hydraulic) diameter (D_H) defined as

$$D_H = D_o - D_i$$

Liquid Metals ($0.003 < Pr < 0.05$)

$$Nu_D = 6.3 + 0.0167 Re_D^{0.85} Pr^{0.93} \quad (\text{uniform heat flux})$$

$$Nu_D = 7.0 + 0.025 Re_D^{0.8} Pr^{0.8} \quad (\text{constant wall temperature})$$

Boiling

Evaporation occurring at a solid-liquid interface when

$$T_{\text{solid}} > T_{\text{sat, liquid}}$$

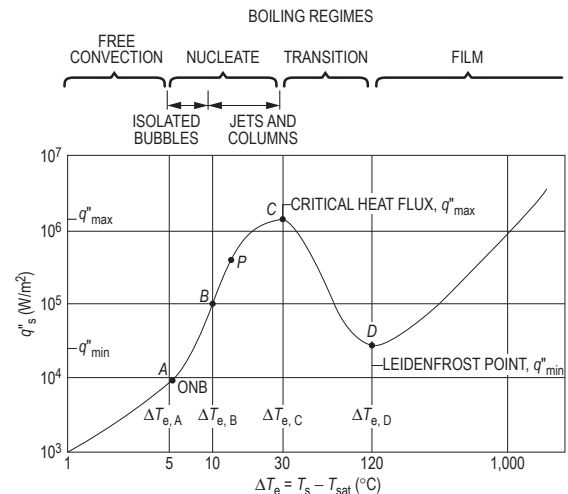
$$q'' = h(T_s - T_{\text{sat}}) = h\Delta T_e, \text{ where } \Delta T_e = \text{excess temperature}$$

Pool Boiling – Liquid is quiescent; motion near solid surface is due to free convection and mixing induced by bubble growth and detachment.

Forced Convection Boiling – Fluid motion is induced by external means in addition to free convection and bubble-induced mixing.

Sub-Cooled Boiling – Temperature of liquid is below saturation temperature; bubbles forming at surface may condense in the liquid.

Saturated Boiling – Liquid temperature slightly exceeds the saturation temperature; bubbles forming at the surface are propelled through liquid by buoyancy forces.



Typical boiling curve for water at one atmosphere: surface heat flux q''_s as a function of excess temperature, $\Delta T_e = T_s - T_{\text{sat}}$

Free Convection Boiling – Insufficient vapor is in contact with the liquid phase to cause boiling at the saturation temperature.

Nucleate Boiling – Isolated bubbles form at nucleation sites and separate from surface; vapor escapes as jets or columns.

◆ Incropera, Frank P. and David P. DeWitt, *Fundamentals of Heat and Mass Transfer*, 3rd ed., Wiley, 1990. Reproduced with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

◆ For nucleate boiling a widely used correlation was proposed in 1952 by Rohsenow:

$$\dot{q}_{\text{nucleate}} = \mu_l h_{fg} \left[\frac{g(\rho_l - \rho_v)}{\sigma} \right]^{1/2} \left[\frac{c_{pl}(T_s - T_{\text{sat}})}{C_{sf} h_{fg} \text{Pr}_l^n} \right]^3$$

- $\dot{q}_{\text{nucleate}}$ = nucleate boiling heat flux, W/m²
 μ_l = viscosity of the liquid, kg/(m•s)
 h_{fg} = enthalpy of vaporization, J/kg
 g = gravitational acceleration, m/s²
 ρ_l = density of the liquid, kg/m³
 ρ_v = density of the vapor, kg/m³
 σ = surface tension of liquid–vapor interface, N/m
 c_{pl} = specific heat of the liquid, J/(kg•°C)
 T_s = surface temperature of the heater, °C
 T_{sat} = saturation temperature of the fluid, °C
 C_{sf} = experimental constant that depends on surface–fluid combination
 Pr_l = Prandtl number of the liquid
 n = experimental constant that depends on the fluid

◆ Peak Heat Flux

The maximum (or critical) heat flux (CHF) in nucleate pool boiling:

$$\dot{q}_{\text{max}} = C_{cr} h_{fg} [\sigma g \rho_v^2 (\rho_l - \rho_v)]^{1/4}$$

C_{cr} is a constant whose value depends on the heater geometry, but generally is about 0.15.

The CHF is independent of the fluid–heating surface combination, as well as the viscosity, thermal conductivity, and specific heat of the liquid.

The CHF increases with pressure up to about one-third of the critical pressure, and then starts to decrease and becomes zero at the critical pressure.

The CHF is proportional to h_{fg} , and large maximum heat fluxes can be obtained using fluids with a large enthalpy of vaporization, such as water.

◆ **Values of the coefficient C_{cr} for maximum heat flux (dimensionless parameter $L^* = L[g(\rho_l - \rho_v)/\sigma]^{1/2}$)**

| Heater Geometry | C_{cr} | Charac. Dimension of Heater, L | Range of L^* |
|---|-------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------|
| Large horizontal flat heater | 0.149 | Width or diameter | $L^* > 27$ |
| Small horizontal flat heater ¹ | $18.9 K_1$ | Width or diameter | $9 < L^* < 20$ |
| Large horizontal cylinder | 0.12 | Radius | $L^* > 1.2$ |
| Small horizontal cylinder | $0.12 L^{*-0.25}$ | Radius | $0.15 < L^* < 1.2$ |
| Large sphere | 0.11 | Radius | $L^* > 4.26$ |
| Small sphere | $0.227 L^{*-0.5}$ | Radius | $0.15 < L^* < 4.26$ |

$$^1 K_1 = \sigma/[g(\rho_l - \rho_v)A_{\text{heater}}]$$

◆ Minimum Heat Flux

Minimum heat flux, which occurs at the Leidenfrost point, is of practical interest since it represents the lower limit for the heat flux in the film boiling regime.

Zuber derived the following expression for the minimum heat flux for a large horizontal plate

$$\dot{q}_{\text{min}} = 0.09 \rho_v h_{fg} \left[\frac{\sigma g (\rho_l - \rho_v)}{(\rho_l + \rho_v)^2} \right]^{1/4}$$

The relation above can be in error by 50% or more.

Transition Boiling – Rapid bubble formation results in vapor film on surface and oscillation between film and nucleate boiling.

Film Boiling – Surface completely covered by vapor blanket; includes significant radiation through vapor film.

◆ Film Boiling

The heat flux for film boiling on a horizontal cylinder or sphere of diameter D is given by

$$\dot{q}_{\text{film}} = C_{\text{film}} \left[\frac{g k_v^3 \rho_v (\rho_l - \rho_v) [h_{fg} + 0.4 c_{pv} (T_s - T_{\text{sat}})]}{\mu_v D (T_s - T_{\text{sat}})} \right]^{1/4} (T_s - T_{\text{sat}})$$

$$C_{\text{film}} = \begin{cases} 0.62 & \text{for horizontal cylinders} \\ 0.67 & \text{for spheres} \end{cases}$$

Film Condensation of a Pure Vapor On a Vertical Surface

$$\overline{Nu}_L = \frac{\bar{h}L}{k_l} = 0.943 \left[\frac{\rho_l^2 g h_{fg} L^3}{\mu_l k_l (T_{\text{sat}} - T_s)} \right]^{0.25}, \text{ where}$$

- ρ_l = density of liquid phase of fluid (kg/m³)
 g = gravitational acceleration (9.81 m/s²)
 h_{fg} = latent heat of vaporization [J/kg]
 L = length of surface [m]
 μ_l = dynamic viscosity of liquid phase of fluid [kg/(s•m)]
 k_l = thermal conductivity of liquid phase of fluid [W/(m•K)]
 T_{sat} = saturation temperature of fluid [K]
 T_s = temperature of vertical surface [K]

Note: Evaluate all liquid properties at the average temperature between the saturated temperature, T_{sat} , and the surface temperature, T_s .

Outside Horizontal Tubes

$$\overline{Nu}_D = \frac{\bar{h}D}{k} = 0.729 \left[\frac{\rho_l^2 g h_{fg} D^3}{\mu_l k_l (T_{\text{sat}} - T_s)} \right]^{0.25}, \text{ where}$$

D = tube outside diameter (m)

Note: Evaluate all liquid properties at the average temperature between the saturated temperature, T_{sat} , and the surface temperature, T_s .

◆ Cengel, Yunus A., and Afshin J. Ghajar, *Heat and Mass Transfer*, 4th ed., McGraw-Hill, 2011.

Natural (Free) Convection

Vertical Flat Plate in Large Body of Stationary Fluid

Equation also can apply to vertical cylinder of sufficiently large diameter in large body of stationary fluid.

$$\bar{h} = C \left(\frac{k}{L} \right) Ra_L^n, \text{ where}$$

L = the length of the plate (cylinder) in the vertical direction

$$Ra_L = \text{Rayleigh Number} = \frac{g\beta(T_s - T_\infty)L^3}{\nu^2} Pr$$

T_s = surface temperature (K)

T_∞ = fluid temperature (K)

β = coefficient of thermal expansion (1/K)

(For an ideal gas: $\beta = \frac{2}{T_s + T_\infty}$ with T in absolute temperature)

ν = kinematic viscosity (m^2/s)

| Range of Ra_L | C | n |
|------------------|------|-----|
| $10^4 - 10^9$ | 0.59 | 1/4 |
| $10^9 - 10^{13}$ | 0.10 | 1/3 |

Long Horizontal Cylinder in Large Body of Stationary Fluid

$$\bar{h} = C \left(\frac{k}{D} \right) Ra_D^n, \text{ where}$$

$$Ra_D = \frac{g\beta(T_s - T_\infty)D^3}{\nu^2} Pr$$

| Ra_D | C | n |
|------------------|-------|-------|
| $10^{-3} - 10^2$ | 1.02 | 0.148 |
| $10^2 - 10^4$ | 0.850 | 0.188 |
| $10^4 - 10^7$ | 0.480 | 0.250 |
| $10^7 - 10^{12}$ | 0.125 | 0.333 |

Heat Exchangers

The rate of heat transfer in a heat exchanger is

$$\dot{Q} = UAF\Delta T_{lm}, \text{ where}$$

A = any convenient reference area (m^2)

F = correction factor for log mean temperature difference for more complex heat exchangers (shell and tube arrangements with several tube or shell passes or cross-flow exchangers with mixed and unmixed flow); otherwise $F = 1$.

U = overall heat-transfer coefficient based on area A and the log mean temperature difference [$W/(m^2 \cdot K)$]

ΔT_{lm} = log mean temperature difference (K)

Overall Heat-Transfer Coefficient for Concentric Tube and Shell-and-Tube Heat Exchangers

$$\frac{1}{UA} = \frac{1}{h_i A_i} + \frac{R_{fi}}{A_i} + \frac{\ln\left(\frac{D_o}{D_i}\right)}{2\pi k L} + \frac{R_{fo}}{A_o} + \frac{1}{h_o A_o}, \text{ where}$$

A_i = inside area of tubes (m^2)

A_o = outside area of tubes (m^2)

D_i = inside diameter of tubes (m)

D_o = outside diameter of tubes (m)

h_i = convection heat-transfer coefficient for inside of tubes [$W/(m^2 \cdot K)$]

h_o = convection heat-transfer coefficient for outside of tubes [$W/(m^2 \cdot K)$]

k = thermal conductivity of tube material [$W/(m \cdot K)$]

R_{fi} = fouling factor for inside of tube [$(m^2 \cdot K)/W$]

R_{fo} = fouling factor for outside of tube [$(m^2 \cdot K)/W$]

Log Mean Temperature Difference (LMTD)

For *counterflow* in tubular heat exchangers

$$\Delta T_{lm} = \frac{(T_{Ho} - T_{Ci}) - (T_{Hi} - T_{Co})}{\ln\left(\frac{T_{Ho} - T_{Ci}}{T_{Hi} - T_{Co}}\right)}$$

For *parallel flow* in tubular heat exchangers

$$\Delta T_{lm} = \frac{(T_{Ho} - T_{Co}) - (T_{Hi} - T_{Ci})}{\ln\left(\frac{T_{Ho} - T_{Co}}{T_{Hi} - T_{Ci}}\right)}, \text{ where}$$

ΔT_{lm} = log mean temperature difference (K)

T_{Hi} = inlet temperature of the hot fluid (K)

T_{Ho} = outlet temperature of the hot fluid (K)

T_{Ci} = inlet temperature of the cold fluid (K)

T_{Co} = outlet temperature of the cold fluid (K)

Heat Exchanger Effectiveness, ϵ

$$\epsilon = \frac{\dot{Q}}{\dot{Q}_{\max}} = \frac{\text{actual heat transfer rate}}{\text{maximum possible heat transfer rate}}$$

$$\epsilon = \frac{C_H(T_{Hi} - T_{Ho})}{C_{\min}(T_{Hi} - T_{Ci})} \quad \text{or} \quad \epsilon = \frac{C_C(T_{Co} - T_{Ci})}{C_{\min}(T_{Hi} - T_{Ci})}$$

where

$C = \dot{m}c_p$ = heat capacity rate (W/K)

C_{\min} = smaller of C_C or C_H

Number of Transfer Units (NTU)

$$NTU = \frac{UA}{C_{\min}}$$

Effectiveness-NTU Relations

$$C_r = \frac{C_{\min}}{C_{\max}} = \text{heat capacity ratio}$$

For *parallel flow concentric tube* heat exchanger

$$\varepsilon = \frac{1 - \exp[-NTU(1 + C_r)]}{1 + C_r}$$

$$NTU = -\frac{\ln[1 - \varepsilon(1 + C_r)]}{1 + C_r}$$

For *counterflow concentric tube* heat exchanger

$$\varepsilon = \frac{1 - \exp[-NTU(1 - C_r)]}{1 - C_r \exp[-NTU(1 - C_r)]} \quad (C_r < 1)$$

$$\varepsilon = \frac{NTU}{1 + NTU} \quad (C_r = 1)$$

$$NTU = \frac{1}{C_r - 1} \ln\left(\frac{\varepsilon - 1}{\varepsilon C_r - 1}\right) \quad (C_r < 1)$$

$$NTU = \frac{\varepsilon}{1 - \varepsilon} \quad (C_r = 1)$$

RADIATION

Types of Bodies

Any Body

For any body, $\alpha + \rho + \tau = 1$, where

α = absorptivity (ratio of energy absorbed to incident energy)

ρ = reflectivity (ratio of energy reflected to incident energy)

τ = transmissivity (ratio of energy transmitted to incident energy)

Opaque Body

For an opaque body: $\alpha + \rho = 1$

Gray Body

A gray body is one for which

$$\alpha = \varepsilon, \quad (0 < \alpha < 1; 0 < \varepsilon < 1), \text{ where}$$

ε = the emissivity of the body

For a gray body: $\varepsilon + \rho = 1$

Real bodies are frequently approximated as gray bodies.

Black body

A black body is defined as one that absorbs all energy incident upon it. It also emits radiation at the maximum rate for a body of a particular size at a particular temperature. For such a body

$$\alpha = \varepsilon = 1$$

Shape Factor (View Factor, Configuration Factor) Relations

Reciprocity Relations

$$A_i F_{ij} = A_j F_{ji}, \text{ where}$$

A_i = surface area (m^2) of surface i

F_{ij} = shape factor (view factor, configuration factor); fraction of the radiation leaving surface i that is intercepted by surface j ; $0 \leq F_{ij} \leq 1$

Summation Rule for N Surfaces

$$\sum_{j=1}^N F_{ij} = 1$$

Net Energy Exchange by Radiation between Two Bodies Body Small Compared to its Surroundings

$$\dot{Q}_{12} = \varepsilon \sigma A (T_1^4 - T_2^4), \text{ where}$$

\dot{Q}_{12} = the net heat-transfer rate from the body (W)

ε = the emissivity of the body

σ = the Stefan-Boltzmann constant

$$[\sigma = 5.67 \times 10^{-8} \text{ W}/(\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{K}^4)]$$

A = the body surface area (m^2)

T_1 = the absolute temperature (K) of the body surface

T_2 = the absolute temperature (K) of the surroundings

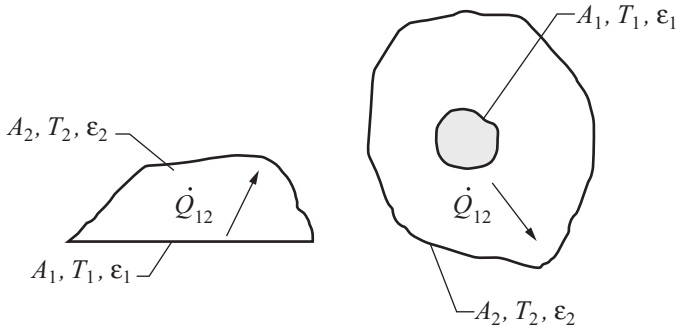
Net Energy Exchange by Radiation between Two Black Bodies

The net energy exchange by radiation between two black bodies that see each other is given by

$$\dot{Q}_{12} = A_1 F_{12} \sigma (T_1^4 - T_2^4)$$

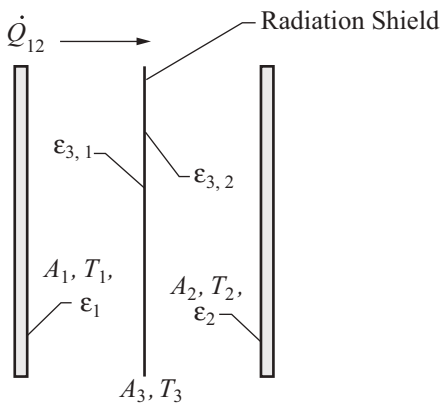
Net Energy Exchange by Radiation between Two Diffuse-Gray Surfaces that Form an Enclosure

Generalized Cases



$$\dot{Q}_{12} = \frac{\sigma (T_1^4 - T_2^4)}{\frac{1 - \epsilon_1}{\epsilon_1 A_1} + \frac{1}{A_1 F_{12}} + \frac{1 - \epsilon_2}{\epsilon_2 A_2}}$$

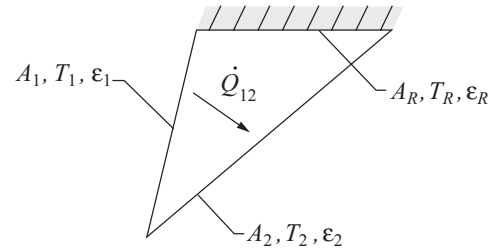
One-Dimensional Geometry with Thin Low-Emissivity Shield Inserted between Two Parallel Plates



$$\dot{Q}_{12} = \frac{\sigma (T_1^4 - T_2^4)}{\frac{1 - \epsilon_1}{\epsilon_1 A_1} + \frac{1}{A_1 F_{13}} + \frac{1 - \epsilon_{3,1}}{\epsilon_{3,1} A_3} + \frac{1 - \epsilon_{3,2}}{\epsilon_{3,2} A_3} + \frac{1}{A_3 F_{32}} + \frac{1 - \epsilon_2}{\epsilon_2 A_2}}$$

Reradiating Surface

Reradiating Surfaces are considered to be insulated or adiabatic ($\dot{Q}_R = 0$).



$$\dot{Q}_{12} = \frac{\sigma (T_1^4 - T_2^4)}{\frac{1 - \epsilon_1}{\epsilon_1 A_1} + \frac{1}{A_1 F_{12} + \left[\left(\frac{1}{A_1 F_{1R}} \right) + \left(\frac{1}{A_2 F_{2R}} \right) \right]^{-1}} + \frac{1 - \epsilon_2}{\epsilon_2 A_2}}$$

INSTRUMENTATION, MEASUREMENT, AND CONTROLS

MEASUREMENT

Definitions

Transducer – a device used to convert a physical parameter such as temperature, pressure, flow, light intensity, etc. into an electrical signal (also called a *sensor*).

Transducer Sensitivity – the ratio of change in electrical signal magnitude to the change in magnitude of the physical parameter being measured.

Resistance Temperature Detector (RTD) – a device used to relate change in resistance to change in temperature. Typically made from platinum, the controlling equation for an RTD is given by:

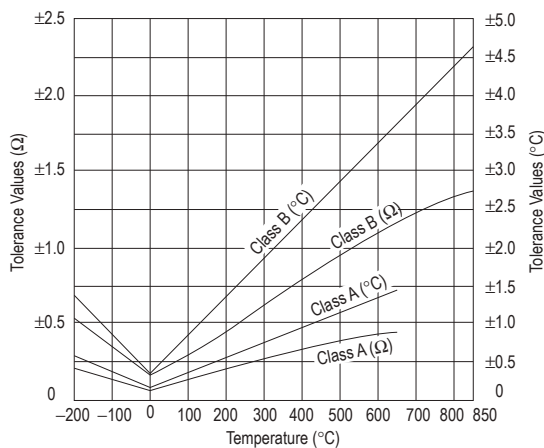
$$R_T = R_0[1 + \alpha(T - T_0)], \text{ where}$$

R_T = resistance of the RTD at temperature T (in °C)

R_0 = resistance of the RTD at the reference temperature T_0 (usually 0°C)

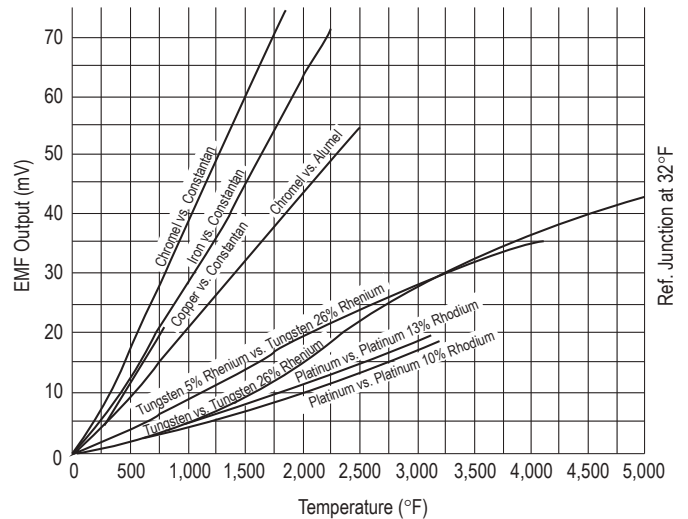
α = temperature coefficient of the RTD

The following graph shows tolerance values as a function of temperature for 100-Ω RTDs.

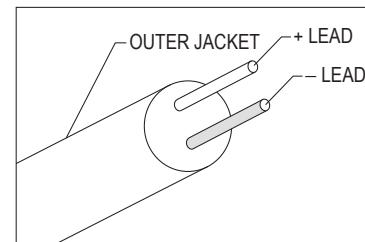


From Tempco Manufactured Products, as posted on www.tempco.com, July 2013.

Thermocouple (TC) – a device used to relate change in voltage to change in temperature. A thermocouple consists of two dissimilar conductors in contact, which produce a voltage when heated.



From Convectronics Inc., as posted on www.convectronics.com, July 2013.



Typical Thermocouple (TC) Cable

From Convectronics Inc., as posted on www.convectronics.com, July 2013.

| ANSI Code | Alloy Combination and Color | | Outer Jacket Color | | Maximum Thermocouple Temperature Range | Environment |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|---|--------------------|-----------------|--|--|
| | + Lead | - Lead | Thermocouple Leads | Extension Cable | | |
| J | IRON Fe (magnetic) White | CONSTANTAN COPPER-NICKEL Cu-Ni Red | Brown | Black | -346 to 2,193°F -210 to 1,200°C | Reducing, Vacuum, Inert. Limited use in Oxidizing at High Temperatures. Not Recommended for Low Temperatures |
| K | NICKELCHROMIUM Ni-Cr Yellow | NICKEL-ALUMINUM Ni-Al (magnetic) Red | Brown | Yellow | -454 to 2,501°F -270 to 1,372°C | Clean Oxidizing and Inert. Limited Use in Vacuum or Reducing. |
| T | COPPER Cu Blue | CONSTANTAN COPPER-NICKEL Cu-Ni Red | Brown | Blue | -454 to 752°F -270 to 400°C | Mild Oxidizing, Reducing Vacuum or Inert. Good where moisture is present. |
| E | NICKELCHROMIUM Ni-Cr Purple | CONSTANTAN COPPER-NICKEL Cu-Ni Red | Brown | Purple | -454 to 1,832°F -270 to 1,000°C | Oxidizing or Inert. Limited Use in Vacuum or Reducing. |

From Omega Engineering, as posted on www.omega.com, July 2013.

Strain Gauge – a device whose electrical resistance varies in proportion to the amount of strain in the device.

Gauge Factor (GF) – the ratio of fractional change in electrical resistance to the fractional change in length (strain):

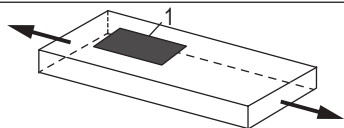
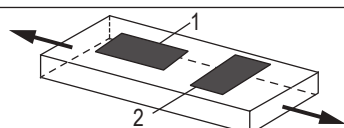
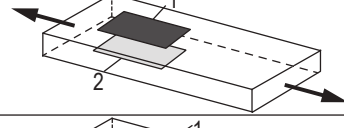
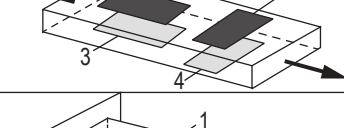
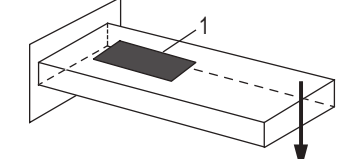
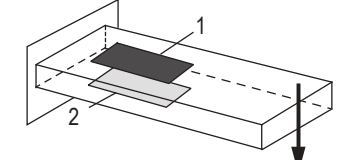
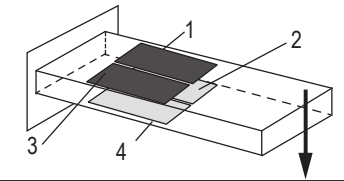
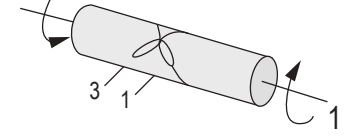
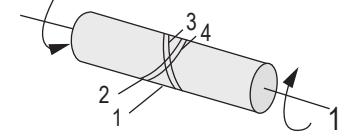
$$GF = \frac{\Delta R/R}{\Delta L/L} = \frac{\Delta R/R}{\epsilon}, \text{ where}$$

R = nominal resistance of the strain gauge at nominal length L

ΔR = change in resistance due the change in length ΔL

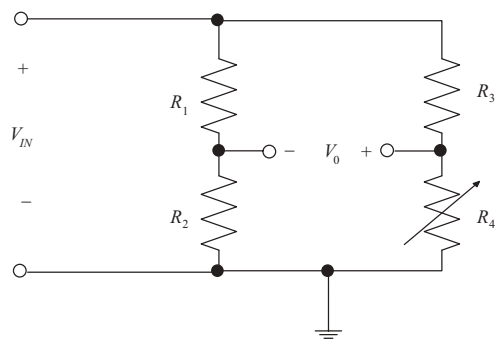
ϵ = normal strain sensed by the gauge

The gauge factor for metallic strain gauges is typically around 2.

| Strain | Gauge Setup | Bridge Type | Sensitivity mV/V @ 1,000 $\mu\epsilon$ | Details |
|---------------------|---|-------------|--|--|
| Axial |  | 1/4 | 0.5 | Good: Simplest to implement, but must use a dummy gauge if compensating for temperature. Also responds to bending strain. |
| |  | 1/2 | 0.65 | Better: Temperature compensated, but it is sensitive to bending strain. |
| |  | 1/2 | 1.0 | Better: Rejects bending strain, but not temperature. Must use dummy gauges if compensating for temperature |
| |  | Full | 1.3 | Best: More sensitive and compensates for both temperature and bending strain. |
| Bending |  | 1/4 | 0.5 | Good: Simplest to implement, but must use a dummy gauge if compensating for temperature. Responds equally to axial strain. |
| |  | 1/2 | 1.0 | Better: Rejects axial strain and is temperature compensated. |
| |  | Full | 2.0 | Best: Rejects axial strain and is temperature compensated. Most sensitive to bending strain. |
| Torsional and Shear |  | 1/2 | 1.0 | Good: Gauges must be mounted at 45 degrees from centerline. |
| |  | Full | 2.0 | Best: Most sensitive full-bridge version of previous setup. Rejects both axial and bending strains. |

From National Instruments Corporation, as posted on www.ni.com, July 2013.

Wheatstone Bridge – an electrical circuit used to measure changes in resistance.



WHEATSTONE BRIDGE

If $\frac{R_1}{R_2} = \frac{R_3}{R_4}$ then $V_0 = 0$ V and the bridge is said to be *balanced*.

If $R_1 = R_2 = R_3 = R$ and $R_4 = R + \Delta R$, where $\Delta R \ll R$, then

$$V_0 \approx \frac{\Delta R}{4R} \cdot V_{IN}$$

Piezoelectric Transducers – often comprised of a special ceramic that converts the electrical energy to mechanical energy, or electrical voltage to mechanical force, and vice versa. When an electric field is applied to the material, it will change dimension. Conversely, when a mechanical force is applied to the material, an electric field is produced. Piezoelectric transducers can have multiple layers and many different geometries.

A simple piezoelectric transducer generates a voltage that is proportional to the change in its ceramic's volume, or will change volume proportional to the applied voltage. Dimensional changes are usually very small and can be predominantly in one dimension.

◆ *Pressure Sensors* – can alternatively be called pressure transducers, pressure transmitters, pressure senders, pressure indicators, piezometers, and manometers.

◆

| Pressure Relative Measurement Types | Comparison |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Absolute | Relative to 0 Pa, the pressure in a vacuum |
| Gauge | Relative to local atmospheric pressure |
| Vacuum | Relative to either absolute vacuum (0 Pa) or local atmospheric pressure |
| Differential | Relative to another pressurized container |
| Sealed | Relative to sea level pressure |

• *pH Sensor* – a typical pH meter consists of a special measuring probe connected to an electronic meter that measures and displays the pH reading.

$$E_{el} = E^0 - S(\text{pH}_a - \text{pH}_i)$$

E_{el} = electrode potential

E^0 = zero potential

S = slope (mV per pH unit)

pH_a = pH value of the measured solution

pH_i = pH value of the internal buffer

◆ From National Instruments Corporation, as posted on www.ni.com, July 2013.

◆ From Alliance Technical Sales, Inc., as posted on www.alliancets.com, July 2013.

Examples of Common Chemical Sensors

| Sensor Type | Principle | Materials | Analyte |
|---|--------------------------------|---|--|
| Semiconducting oxide sensor | Conductivity impedance | SnO ₂ , TiO ₂ , ZnO ₂ , WO ₃ , polymers | O ₂ , H ₂ , CO, SO _x , NO _x , combustible hydrocarbons, alcohol, H ₂ S, NH ₃ |
| Electrochemical sensor (liquid electrolyte) | Amperimetric | composite Pt, Au catalyst | H ₂ , O ₂ , O ₃ , CO, H ₂ S, SO ₂ , NO _x , NH ₃ , glucose, hydrazine |
| Ion-selective electrode (ISE) | Potentiometric | glass, LaF ₃ , CaF ₂ | pH, K ⁺ , Na ⁺ , Cl ⁻ , Ca ²⁺ , Mg ²⁺ , F ⁻ , Ag ⁺ |
| Solid electrode sensor | Amperimetric Potentiometric | YSZ, H ⁺ -conductor YSZ, β-alumina, Nasicon, Nafion | O ₂ , H ₂ , CO, combustible hydrocarbons, O ₂ , H ₂ , CO ₂ , CO, NO _x , SO _x , H ₂ S, Cl ₂ H ₂ O, combustible hydrocarbons |
| Piezoelectric sensor | Mechanical w/ polymer film | quartz | combustible hydrocarbons, VOCs |
| Catalytic combustion sensor | Calorimetric | Pt/Al ₂ O ₃ , Pt-wire | H ₂ , CO, combustible hydrocarbons |
| Pyroelectric sensor | Calorimetric | Pyroelectric + film | Vapors |
| Optical sensors | Colorimetric fluorescence | optical fiber/indicator dye | Acids, bases, combustible hydrocarbons, biologicals |

Reprinted with permission from *Journal of The Electrochemical Society*, 150 (2), ©2003, The Electrochemical Society.

SAMPLING

When a continuous-time or analog signal is sampled using a discrete-time method, certain basic concepts should be considered. The sampling rate or frequency is given by

$$f_s = \frac{1}{\Delta t}$$

Nyquist's (Shannon's) sampling theorem states that in order to accurately reconstruct the analog signal from the discrete sample points, the sample rate must be larger than twice the highest frequency contained in the measured signal. Denoting this frequency, which is called the Nyquist frequency, as f_N , the sampling theorem requires that

$$f_s > 2f_N$$

When the above condition is not met, the higher frequencies in the measured signal will not be accurately represented and will appear as lower frequencies in the sampled data. These are known as alias frequencies.

Analog-to-Digital Conversion

When converting an analog signal to digital form, the resolution of the conversion is an important factor. For a measured analog signal over the nominal range $[V_L, V_H]$, where V_L is the low end of the voltage range and V_H is the nominal high end of the voltage range, the voltage resolution is given by

$$\epsilon_V = \frac{V_H - V_L}{2^n}$$

where n is the number of conversion bits of the A/D converter with typical values of 4, 8, 10, 12, or 16. This number is a key design parameter. After converting an analog signal, the A/D converter produces an integer number of n bits. Call this number N . Note that the range of N is $[0, 2^n - 1]$. When calculating the discrete voltage, V , using the reading, N , from the A/D converter the following equation is used.

$$V = \epsilon_V N + V_L$$

Note that with this strategy, the highest measurable voltage is one voltage resolution less than V_H , or $V_H - \epsilon_V$.

Signal Conditioning

Signal conditioning of the measured analog signal is often required to prevent alias frequencies from being measured, and to reduce measurement errors.

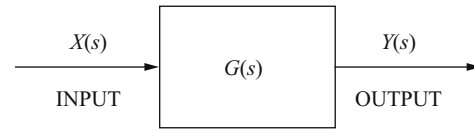
MEASUREMENT UNCERTAINTY

Suppose that a calculated result R depends on measurements whose values are $x_1 \pm w_1, x_2 \pm w_2, x_3 \pm w_3$, etc., where $R = f(x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n)$, x_i is the measured value, and w_i is the uncertainty in that value. The uncertainty in R , w_R , can be estimated using the Kline-McClintock equation:

$$w_R = \sqrt{\left(w_1 \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_1}\right)^2 + \left(w_2 \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_2}\right)^2 + \dots + \left(w_n \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_n}\right)^2}$$

CONTROL SYSTEMS

The linear time-invariant transfer function model represented by the block diagram

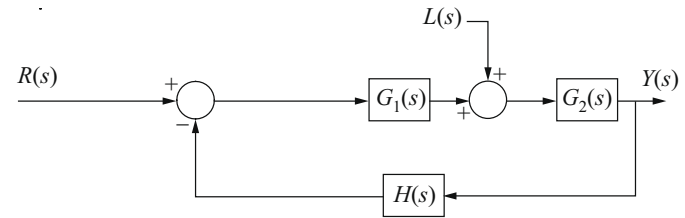


can be expressed as the ratio of two polynomials in the form

$$\frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = G(s) = \frac{N(s)}{D(s)} = K \frac{\prod_{m=1}^M (s - z_m)}{\prod_{n=1}^N (s - p_n)}$$

where the M zeros, z_m , and the N poles, p_n , are the roots of the numerator polynomial, $N(s)$, and the denominator polynomial, $D(s)$, respectively.

One classical negative feedback control system model block diagram is



where $G_1(s)$ is a controller or compensator, $G_2(s)$ represents a plant model, and $H(s)$ represents the measurement dynamics. $Y(s)$ represents the controlled variable, $R(s)$ represents the reference input, and $L(s)$ represents a disturbance. $Y(s)$ is related to $R(s)$ and $L(s)$ by

$$Y(s) = \frac{G_1(s)G_2(s)}{1 + G_1(s)G_2(s)H(s)}R(s) + \frac{G_2(s)}{1 + G_1(s)G_2(s)H(s)}L(s)$$

$G_1(s)G_2(s)H(s)$ is the open-loop transfer function. The closed-loop characteristic equation is

$$1 + G_1(s)G_2(s)H(s) = 0$$

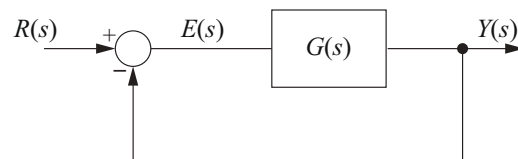
System performance studies normally include

1. Steady-state analysis using constant inputs based on the Final Value Theorem. If all poles of a $G(s)$ function have negative real parts, then

$$\text{dc gain} = \lim_{s \rightarrow 0} G(s)$$

Note that $G(s)$ could refer to either an open-loop or a closed-loop transfer function.

For the unity feedback control system model



with the open-loop transfer function defined by

$$G(s) = \frac{K_B}{s^T} \times \frac{\prod_{m=1}^M (1 + s/\omega_m)}{\prod_{n=1}^N (1 + s/\omega_n)}$$

The following steady-state error analysis table can be constructed where T denotes the type of system, i.e., type 0, type 1, etc.

| Steady-State Error e_{ss} | | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------|----------|---------|
| Input \ Type | $T = 0$ | $T = 1$ | $T = 2$ |
| Unit Step | $1/(K_B + 1)$ | 0 | 0 |
| Ramp | ∞ | $1/K_B$ | 0 |
| Acceleration | ∞ | ∞ | $1/K_B$ |

2. Frequency response evaluations to determine dynamic performance and stability. For example, relative stability can be quantified in terms of
 - a. Gain margin (GM), which is the additional gain required to produce instability in the unity gain feedback control system. If at $\omega = \omega_{180}$, $\angle G(j\omega_{180}) = -180^\circ$; then

$$GM = -20 \log_{10} (|G(j\omega_{180})|)$$
 - b. Phase margin (PM), which is the additional phase required to produce instability. Thus,

$$PM = 180^\circ + \angle G(j\omega_{0dB})$$
 where ω_{0dB} is the ω that satisfies $|G(j\omega)| = 1$.
3. Transient responses are obtained by using Laplace transforms or computer solutions with numerical integration.

Common Compensator/Controller forms are

PID Controller $G_C(s) = K \left(1 + \frac{1}{T_I s} + T_D s \right)$

Lag or Lead Compensator $G_C(s) = K \left(\frac{1 + sT_1}{1 + sT_2} \right)$ depending on the ratio of T_1/T_2 .

Routh Test

For the characteristic equation

$$a_n s^n + a_{n-1} s^{n-1} + a_{n-2} s^{n-2} + \dots + a_0 = 0$$

the coefficients are arranged into the first two rows of an array. Additional rows are computed. The array and coefficient computations are defined by:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} a_n & a_{n-2} & a_{n-4} & \dots & \dots & \dots & \\ a_{n-1} & a_{n-3} & a_{n-5} & \dots & \dots & \dots & \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 & \dots & \dots & \dots & \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 & \dots & \dots & \dots & \end{array}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} b_1 &= \frac{a_{n-1}a_{n-2} - a_n a_{n-3}}{a_{n-1}} & c_1 &= \frac{a_{n-3}b_1 - a_{n-1}b_2}{b_1} \\ b_2 &= \frac{a_{n-1}a_{n-4} - a_n a_{n-5}}{a_{n-1}} & c_2 &= \frac{a_{n-5}b_1 - a_{n-1}b_3}{b_1} \\ b_i &= \frac{a_{n-1}a_{n-2i} - a_n a_{n-2i-1}}{a_{n-1}} \\ c_i &= \frac{b_1 a_{n-2i-1} - a_{n-1} b_{i+1}}{b_1} \end{aligned}$$

The necessary and sufficient conditions for all the roots of the equation to have negative real parts is that all the elements in the first column be of the same sign and nonzero.

First-Order Control System Models

The transfer function model for a first-order system is

$$\frac{Y(s)}{R(s)} = \frac{K}{\tau s + 1}, \text{ where}$$

K = steady-state gain

τ = time constant

The step response of a first-order system to a step input of magnitude M is

$$y(t) = y_0 e^{-t/\tau} + KM(1 - e^{-t/\tau})$$

In the chemical process industry, y_0 is typically taken to be zero, and $y(t)$ is referred to as a deviation variable.

For systems with time delay (dead time or transport lag) θ , the transfer function is

$$\frac{Y(s)}{R(s)} = \frac{K e^{-\theta s}}{\tau s + 1}$$

The step response for $t \geq \theta$ to a step of magnitude M is

$$y(t) = \left[y_0 e^{-(t-\theta)/\tau} + KM(1 - e^{-(t-\theta)/\tau}) \right] u(t - \theta), \text{ where } u(t) \text{ is the unit step function.}$$

Second-Order Control System Models

One standard second-order control system model is

$$\frac{Y(s)}{R(s)} = \frac{K\omega_n^2}{s^2 + 2\zeta\omega_n s + \omega_n^2}, \text{ where}$$

K = steady-state gain

ζ = the damping ratio

ω_n = the undamped natural ($\zeta = 0$) frequency

$\omega_d = \omega_n \sqrt{1 - \zeta^2}$, the damped natural frequency

$\omega_r = \omega_n \sqrt{1 - 2\zeta^2}$, the damped resonant frequency

If the damping ratio ζ is less than unity, the system is said to be underdamped; if ζ is equal to unity, it is said to be critically damped; and if ζ is greater than unity, the system is said to be overdamped.

For a unit step input to a normalized underdamped second-order control system, the time required to reach a peak value t_p and the value of that peak M_p are given by

$$t_p = \frac{\pi}{\omega_n \sqrt{1 - \zeta^2}}$$

$$M_p = 1 + e^{-\pi\zeta/\sqrt{1 - \zeta^2}}$$

The percent overshoot (% OS) of the response is given by

$$\% \text{ OS} = 100e^{-\pi\zeta/\sqrt{1 - \zeta^2}}$$

For an underdamped second-order system, the logarithmic decrement is

$$\delta = \frac{1}{m} \ln\left(\frac{x_k}{x_{k+m}}\right) = \frac{2\pi\zeta}{\sqrt{1 - \zeta^2}}$$

where x_k and x_{k+m} are the amplitudes of oscillation at cycles k and $k + m$, respectively. The period of oscillation τ is related to ω_d by

$$\omega_d \tau = 2\pi$$

The time required for the output of a second-order system to settle to within 2% of its final value (2% settling time) is defined to be

$$T_s = \frac{4}{\zeta\omega_n}$$

An alternative form commonly employed in the chemical process industry is

$$\frac{Y(s)}{R(s)} = \frac{K}{\tau^2 s^2 + 2\zeta\tau s + 1}, \text{ where}$$

K = steady-state gain

ζ = the damping ratio

τ = the inverse natural frequency

Root Locus

The root locus is the locus of points in the complex s -plane satisfying

$$1 + K \frac{(s - z_1)(s - z_2) \dots (s - z_m)}{(s - p_1)(s - p_2) \dots (s - p_n)} = 0 \quad m \leq n$$

as K is varied. The p_i and z_j are the open-loop poles and zeros, respectively. When K is increased from zero, the locus has the following properties.

1. Locus branches exist on the real axis to the left of an odd number of open-loop poles and/or zeros.
2. The locus originates at the open-loop poles p_1, \dots, p_n and terminates at the zeros z_1, \dots, z_m . If $m < n$ then $(n - m)$ branches terminate at infinity at asymptote angles

$$\alpha = \frac{(2k + 1)180^\circ}{n - m} \quad k = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 3, \dots$$

with the real axis.

3. The intersection of the real axis with the asymptotes is called the asymptote centroid and is given by

$$\sigma_A = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n \text{Re}(p_i) - \sum_{i=1}^m \text{Re}(z_i)}{n - m}$$

4. If the locus crosses the imaginary (ω) axis, the values of K and ω are given by letting $s = j\omega$ in the defining equation.

State-Variable Control System Models

One common state-variable model for dynamic systems has the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(t) \quad (\text{state equation})$$

$$\mathbf{y}(t) = \mathbf{C}\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{u}(t) \quad (\text{output equation})$$

where

$\mathbf{x}(t) = N$ by 1 state vector (N state variables)

$\mathbf{u}(t) = R$ by 1 input vector (R inputs)

$\mathbf{y}(t) = M$ by 1 output vector (M outputs)

A = system matrix

B = input distribution matrix

C = output matrix

D = feed-through matrix

The orders of the matrices are defined via variable definitions.

State-variable models are used to handle multiple inputs and multiple outputs. Furthermore, state-variable models can be formulated for open-loop system components or the complete closed-loop system.

The Laplace transform of the time-invariant state equation is

$$s\mathbf{X}(s) - \mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{X}(s) + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{U}(s)$$

from which

$$\mathbf{X}(s) = \Phi(s) \mathbf{x}(0) + \Phi(s) \mathbf{B}\mathbf{U}(s)$$

where the Laplace transform of the state transition matrix is

$$\Phi(s) = [s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}]^{-1}.$$

The state-transition matrix

$$\Phi(t) = L^{-1}\{\Phi(s)\}$$

(also defined as $e^{\mathbf{A}t}$) can be used to write

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = \Phi(t) \mathbf{x}(0) + \int_0^t \Phi(t - \tau) \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(\tau) d\tau$$

The output can be obtained with the output equation; e.g., the Laplace transform output is

$$\mathbf{Y}(s) = \{\mathbf{C}\Phi(s) \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{D}\} \mathbf{U}(s) + \mathbf{C}\Phi(s) \mathbf{x}(0)$$

The latter term represents the output(s) due to initial conditions, whereas the former term represents the output(s) due to the $\mathbf{U}(s)$ inputs and gives rise to transfer function definitions.

ENGINEERING ECONOMICS

| Factor Name | Converts | Symbol | Formula |
|---------------------------------|------------------|-----------------|---|
| Single Payment Compound Amount | to F given P | $(F/P, i\%, n)$ | $(1 + i)^n$ |
| Single Payment Present Worth | to P given F | $(P/F, i\%, n)$ | $(1 + i)^{-n}$ |
| Uniform Series Sinking Fund | to A given F | $(A/F, i\%, n)$ | $\frac{i}{(1 + i)^n - 1}$ |
| Capital Recovery | to A given P | $(A/P, i\%, n)$ | $\frac{i(1 + i)^n}{(1 + i)^n - 1}$ |
| Uniform Series Compound Amount | to F given A | $(F/A, i\%, n)$ | $\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i}$ |
| Uniform Series Present Worth | to P given A | $(P/A, i\%, n)$ | $\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i(1 + i)^n}$ |
| Uniform Gradient Present Worth | to P given G | $(P/G, i\%, n)$ | $\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i^2(1 + i)^n} - \frac{n}{i(1 + i)^n}$ |
| Uniform Gradient † Future Worth | to F given G | $(F/G, i\%, n)$ | $\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i^2} - \frac{n}{i}$ |
| Uniform Gradient Uniform Series | to A given G | $(A/G, i\%, n)$ | $\frac{1}{i} - \frac{n}{(1 + i)^n - 1}$ |

NOMENCLATURE AND DEFINITIONS

- A Uniform amount per interest period
 B Benefit
 BV Book value
 C Cost
 d Inflation adjusted interest rate per interest period
 D_j Depreciation in year j
 EV Expected value
 F Future worth, value, or amount
 f General inflation rate per interest period
 G Uniform gradient amount per interest period
 i Interest rate per interest period
 i_e Annual effective interest rate
MARR..... Minimum acceptable/attractive rate of return
 m Number of compounding periods per year
 n Number of compounding periods; or the expected life of an asset
 P Present worth, value, or amount
 r Nominal annual interest rate
 S_n Expected salvage value in year n

Subscripts

- j at time j
 n at time n
† $F/G = (F/A - n)/i = (F/A) \times (A/G)$

Risk

Risk is the chance of an outcome other than what is planned to occur or expected in the analysis.

NON-ANNUAL COMPOUNDING

$$i_e = \left(1 + \frac{r}{m}\right)^m - 1$$

BREAK-EVEN ANALYSIS

By altering the value of any one of the variables in a situation, holding all of the other values constant, it is possible to find a value for that variable that makes the two alternatives equally economical. This value is the break-even point.

Break-even analysis is used to describe the percentage of capacity of operation for a manufacturing plant at which income will just cover expenses.

The payback period is the period of time required for the profit or other benefits of an investment to equal the cost of the investment.

INFLATION

To account for inflation, the dollars are deflated by the general inflation rate per interest period f , and then they are shifted over the time scale using the interest rate per interest period i . Use an inflation adjusted interest rate per interest period d for computing present worth values P .

The formula for d is $d = i + f + (i \times f)$

DEPRECIATION

Straight Line

$$D_j = \frac{C - S_n}{n}$$

Modified Accelerated Cost Recovery System (MACRS)

$$D_j = (\text{factor}) C$$

A table of MACRS factors is provided below.

BOOK VALUE

$$BV = \text{initial cost} - \sum D_j$$

TAXATION

Income taxes are paid at a specific rate on taxable income.

Taxable income is total income less depreciation and ordinary expenses. Expenses do not include capital items, which should be depreciated.

CAPITALIZED COSTS

Capitalized costs are present worth values using an assumed perpetual period of time.

$$\text{Capitalized Costs} = P = \frac{A}{i}$$

BONDS

Bond value equals the present worth of the payments the purchaser (or holder of the bond) receives during the life of the bond at some interest rate i .

Bond yield equals the computed interest rate of the bond value when compared with the bond cost.

RATE-OF-RETURN

The minimum acceptable rate-of-return (MARR) is that interest rate that one is willing to accept, or the rate one desires to earn on investments. The rate-of-return on an investment is the interest rate that makes the benefits and costs equal.

BENEFIT-COST ANALYSIS

In a benefit-cost analysis, the benefits B of a project should exceed the estimated costs C .

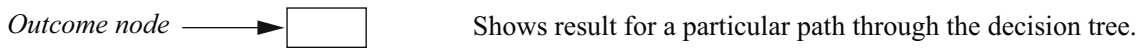
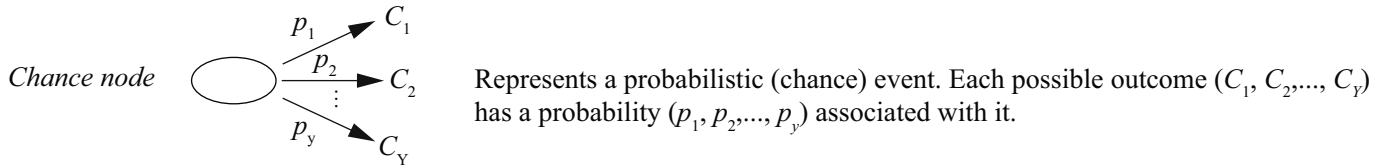
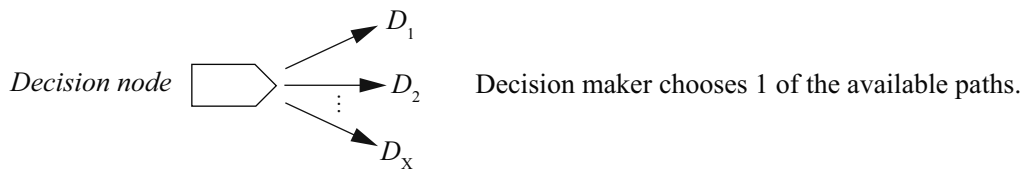
$$B - C \geq 0, \text{ or } B/C \geq 1$$

MODIFIED ACCELERATED COST RECOVERY SYSTEM (MACRS)

| MACRS FACTORS | | | | |
|---------------|-------------------------|-------|-------|-------|
| Year | Recovery Period (Years) | | | |
| | 3 | 5 | 7 | 10 |
| | Recovery Rate (Percent) | | | |
| 1 | 33.33 | 20.00 | 14.29 | 10.00 |
| 2 | 44.45 | 32.00 | 24.49 | 18.00 |
| 3 | 14.81 | 19.20 | 17.49 | 14.40 |
| 4 | 7.41 | 11.52 | 12.49 | 11.52 |
| 5 | | 11.52 | 8.93 | 9.22 |
| 6 | | 5.76 | 8.92 | 7.37 |
| 7 | | | 8.93 | 6.55 |
| 8 | | | 4.46 | 6.55 |
| 9 | | | | 6.56 |
| 10 | | | | 6.55 |
| 11 | | | | 3.28 |

ECONOMIC DECISION TREES

The following symbols are used to model decisions with decision trees:



Expected Value: $EV = (C_1)(p_1) + (C_2)(p_2) + \dots$

Interest Rate Tables
Factor Table - $i = 0.50\%$

| <i>n</i> | <i>P/F</i> | <i>P/A</i> | <i>P/G</i> | <i>F/P</i> | <i>F/A</i> | <i>A/P</i> | <i>A/F</i> | <i>A/G</i> |
|------------|---------------|----------------|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1 | 0.9950 | 0.9950 | 0.0000 | 1.0050 | 1.0000 | 1.0050 | 1.0000 | 0.0000 |
| 2 | 0.9901 | 1.9851 | 0.9901 | 1.0100 | 2.0050 | 0.5038 | 0.4988 | 0.4988 |
| 3 | 0.9851 | 2.9702 | 2.9604 | 1.0151 | 3.0150 | 0.3367 | 0.3317 | 0.9967 |
| 4 | 0.9802 | 3.9505 | 5.9011 | 1.0202 | 4.0301 | 0.2531 | 0.2481 | 1.4938 |
| 5 | 0.9754 | 4.9259 | 9.8026 | 1.0253 | 5.0503 | 0.2030 | 0.1980 | 1.9900 |
| 6 | 0.9705 | 5.8964 | 14.6552 | 1.0304 | 6.0755 | 0.1696 | 0.1646 | 2.4855 |
| 7 | 0.9657 | 6.8621 | 20.4493 | 1.0355 | 7.1059 | 0.1457 | 0.1407 | 2.9801 |
| 8 | 0.9609 | 7.8230 | 27.1755 | 1.0407 | 8.1414 | 0.1278 | 0.1228 | 3.4738 |
| 9 | 0.9561 | 8.7791 | 34.8244 | 1.0459 | 9.1821 | 0.1139 | 0.1089 | 3.9668 |
| 10 | 0.9513 | 9.7304 | 43.3865 | 1.0511 | 10.2280 | 0.1028 | 0.0978 | 4.4589 |
| 11 | 0.9466 | 10.6770 | 52.8526 | 1.0564 | 11.2792 | 0.0937 | 0.0887 | 4.9501 |
| 12 | 0.9419 | 11.6189 | 63.2136 | 1.0617 | 12.3356 | 0.0861 | 0.0811 | 5.4406 |
| 13 | 0.9372 | 12.5562 | 74.4602 | 1.0670 | 13.3972 | 0.0796 | 0.0746 | 5.9302 |
| 14 | 0.9326 | 13.4887 | 86.5835 | 1.0723 | 14.4642 | 0.0741 | 0.0691 | 6.4190 |
| 15 | 0.9279 | 14.4166 | 99.5743 | 1.0777 | 15.5365 | 0.0694 | 0.0644 | 6.9069 |
| 16 | 0.9233 | 15.3399 | 113.4238 | 1.0831 | 16.6142 | 0.0652 | 0.0602 | 7.3940 |
| 17 | 0.9187 | 16.2586 | 128.1231 | 1.0885 | 17.6973 | 0.0615 | 0.0565 | 7.8803 |
| 18 | 0.9141 | 17.1728 | 143.6634 | 1.0939 | 18.7858 | 0.0582 | 0.0532 | 8.3658 |
| 19 | 0.9096 | 18.0824 | 160.0360 | 1.0994 | 19.8797 | 0.0553 | 0.0503 | 8.8504 |
| 20 | 0.9051 | 18.9874 | 177.2322 | 1.1049 | 20.9791 | 0.0527 | 0.0477 | 9.3342 |
| 21 | 0.9006 | 19.8880 | 195.2434 | 1.1104 | 22.0840 | 0.0503 | 0.0453 | 9.8172 |
| 22 | 0.8961 | 20.7841 | 214.0611 | 1.1160 | 23.1944 | 0.0481 | 0.0431 | 10.2993 |
| 23 | 0.8916 | 21.6757 | 233.6768 | 1.1216 | 24.3104 | 0.0461 | 0.0411 | 10.7806 |
| 24 | 0.8872 | 22.5629 | 254.0820 | 1.1272 | 25.4320 | 0.0443 | 0.0393 | 11.2611 |
| 25 | 0.8828 | 23.4456 | 275.2686 | 1.1328 | 26.5591 | 0.0427 | 0.0377 | 11.7407 |
| 30 | 0.8610 | 27.7941 | 392.6324 | 1.1614 | 32.2800 | 0.0360 | 0.0310 | 14.1265 |
| 40 | 0.8191 | 36.1722 | 681.3347 | 1.2208 | 44.1588 | 0.0276 | 0.0226 | 18.8359 |
| 50 | 0.7793 | 44.1428 | 1,035.6966 | 1.2832 | 56.6452 | 0.0227 | 0.0177 | 23.4624 |
| 60 | 0.7414 | 51.7256 | 1,448.6458 | 1.3489 | 69.7700 | 0.0193 | 0.0143 | 28.0064 |
| 100 | 0.6073 | 78.5426 | 3,562.7934 | 1.6467 | 129.3337 | 0.0127 | 0.0077 | 45.3613 |

Factor Table - $i = 1.00\%$

| <i>n</i> | <i>P/F</i> | <i>P/A</i> | <i>P/G</i> | <i>F/P</i> | <i>F/A</i> | <i>A/P</i> | <i>A/F</i> | <i>A/G</i> |
|------------|---------------|----------------|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1 | 0.9901 | 0.9901 | 0.0000 | 1.0100 | 1.0000 | 1.0100 | 1.0000 | 0.0000 |
| 2 | 0.9803 | 1.9704 | 0.9803 | 1.0201 | 2.0100 | 0.5075 | 0.4975 | 0.4975 |
| 3 | 0.9706 | 2.9410 | 2.9215 | 1.0303 | 3.0301 | 0.3400 | 0.3300 | 0.9934 |
| 4 | 0.9610 | 3.9020 | 5.8044 | 1.0406 | 4.0604 | 0.2563 | 0.2463 | 1.4876 |
| 5 | 0.9515 | 4.8534 | 9.6103 | 1.0510 | 5.1010 | 0.2060 | 0.1960 | 1.9801 |
| 6 | 0.9420 | 5.7955 | 14.3205 | 1.0615 | 6.1520 | 0.1725 | 0.1625 | 2.4710 |
| 7 | 0.9327 | 6.7282 | 19.9168 | 1.0721 | 7.2135 | 0.1486 | 0.1386 | 2.9602 |
| 8 | 0.9235 | 7.6517 | 26.3812 | 1.0829 | 8.2857 | 0.1307 | 0.1207 | 3.4478 |
| 9 | 0.9143 | 8.5650 | 33.6959 | 1.0937 | 9.3685 | 0.1167 | 0.1067 | 3.9337 |
| 10 | 0.9053 | 9.4713 | 41.8435 | 1.1046 | 10.4622 | 0.1056 | 0.0956 | 4.4179 |
| 11 | 0.8963 | 10.3676 | 50.8067 | 1.1157 | 11.5668 | 0.0965 | 0.0865 | 4.9005 |
| 12 | 0.8874 | 11.2551 | 60.5687 | 1.1268 | 12.6825 | 0.0888 | 0.0788 | 5.3815 |
| 13 | 0.8787 | 12.1337 | 71.1126 | 1.1381 | 13.8093 | 0.0824 | 0.0724 | 5.8607 |
| 14 | 0.8700 | 13.0037 | 82.4221 | 1.1495 | 14.9474 | 0.0769 | 0.0669 | 6.3384 |
| 15 | 0.8613 | 13.8651 | 94.4810 | 1.1610 | 16.0969 | 0.0721 | 0.0621 | 6.8143 |
| 16 | 0.8528 | 14.7179 | 107.2734 | 1.1726 | 17.2579 | 0.0679 | 0.0579 | 7.2886 |
| 17 | 0.8444 | 15.5623 | 120.7834 | 1.1843 | 18.4304 | 0.0643 | 0.0543 | 7.7613 |
| 18 | 0.8360 | 16.3983 | 134.9957 | 1.1961 | 19.6147 | 0.0610 | 0.0510 | 8.2323 |
| 19 | 0.8277 | 17.2260 | 149.8950 | 1.2081 | 20.8109 | 0.0581 | 0.0481 | 8.7017 |
| 20 | 0.8195 | 18.0456 | 165.4664 | 1.2202 | 22.0190 | 0.0554 | 0.0454 | 9.1694 |
| 21 | 0.8114 | 18.8570 | 181.6950 | 1.2324 | 23.2392 | 0.0530 | 0.0430 | 9.6354 |
| 22 | 0.8034 | 19.6604 | 198.5663 | 1.2447 | 24.4716 | 0.0509 | 0.0409 | 10.0998 |
| 23 | 0.7954 | 20.4558 | 216.0660 | 1.2572 | 25.7163 | 0.0489 | 0.0389 | 10.5626 |
| 24 | 0.7876 | 21.2434 | 234.1800 | 1.2697 | 26.9735 | 0.0471 | 0.0371 | 11.0237 |
| 25 | 0.7798 | 22.0232 | 252.8945 | 1.2824 | 28.2432 | 0.0454 | 0.0354 | 11.4831 |
| 30 | 0.7419 | 25.8077 | 355.0021 | 1.3478 | 34.7849 | 0.0387 | 0.0277 | 13.7557 |
| 40 | 0.6717 | 32.8347 | 596.8561 | 1.4889 | 48.8864 | 0.0305 | 0.0205 | 18.1776 |
| 50 | 0.6080 | 39.1961 | 879.4176 | 1.6446 | 64.4632 | 0.0255 | 0.0155 | 22.4363 |
| 60 | 0.5504 | 44.9550 | 1,192.8061 | 1.8167 | 81.6697 | 0.0222 | 0.0122 | 26.5333 |
| 100 | 0.3697 | 63.0289 | 2,605.7758 | 2.7048 | 170.4814 | 0.0159 | 0.0059 | 41.3426 |

Interest Rate Tables
Factor Table - $i = 1.50\%$

| <i>n</i> | <i>P/F</i> | <i>P/A</i> | <i>P/G</i> | <i>F/P</i> | <i>F/A</i> | <i>A/P</i> | <i>A/F</i> | <i>A/G</i> |
|------------|---------------|----------------|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1 | 0.9852 | 0.9852 | 0.0000 | 1.0150 | 1.0000 | 1.0150 | 1.0000 | 0.0000 |
| 2 | 0.9707 | 1.9559 | 0.9707 | 1.0302 | 2.0150 | 0.5113 | 0.4963 | 0.4963 |
| 3 | 0.9563 | 2.9122 | 2.8833 | 1.0457 | 3.0452 | 0.3434 | 0.3284 | 0.9901 |
| 4 | 0.9422 | 3.8544 | 5.7098 | 1.0614 | 4.0909 | 0.2594 | 0.2444 | 1.4814 |
| 5 | 0.9283 | 4.7826 | 9.4229 | 1.0773 | 5.1523 | 0.2091 | 0.1941 | 1.9702 |
| 6 | 0.9145 | 5.6972 | 13.9956 | 1.0934 | 6.2296 | 0.1755 | 0.1605 | 2.4566 |
| 7 | 0.9010 | 6.5982 | 19.4018 | 1.1098 | 7.3230 | 0.1516 | 0.1366 | 2.9405 |
| 8 | 0.8877 | 7.4859 | 26.6157 | 1.1265 | 8.4328 | 0.1336 | 0.1186 | 3.4219 |
| 9 | 0.8746 | 8.3605 | 32.6125 | 1.1434 | 9.5593 | 0.1196 | 0.1046 | 3.9008 |
| 10 | 0.8617 | 9.2222 | 40.3675 | 1.1605 | 10.7027 | 0.1084 | 0.0934 | 4.3772 |
| 11 | 0.8489 | 10.0711 | 48.8568 | 1.1779 | 11.8633 | 0.0993 | 0.0843 | 4.8512 |
| 12 | 0.8364 | 10.9075 | 58.0571 | 1.1956 | 13.0412 | 0.0917 | 0.0767 | 5.3227 |
| 13 | 0.8240 | 11.7315 | 67.9454 | 1.2136 | 14.2368 | 0.0852 | 0.0702 | 5.7917 |
| 14 | 0.8118 | 12.5434 | 78.4994 | 1.2318 | 15.4504 | 0.0797 | 0.0647 | 6.2582 |
| 15 | 0.7999 | 13.3432 | 89.6974 | 1.2502 | 16.6821 | 0.0749 | 0.0599 | 6.7223 |
| 16 | 0.7880 | 14.1313 | 101.5178 | 1.2690 | 17.9324 | 0.0708 | 0.0558 | 7.1839 |
| 17 | 0.7764 | 14.9076 | 113.9400 | 1.2880 | 19.2014 | 0.0671 | 0.0521 | 7.6431 |
| 18 | 0.7649 | 15.6726 | 126.9435 | 1.3073 | 20.4894 | 0.0638 | 0.0488 | 8.0997 |
| 19 | 0.7536 | 16.4262 | 140.5084 | 1.3270 | 21.7967 | 0.0609 | 0.0459 | 8.5539 |
| 20 | 0.7425 | 17.1686 | 154.6154 | 1.3469 | 23.1237 | 0.0582 | 0.0432 | 9.0057 |
| 21 | 0.7315 | 17.9001 | 169.2453 | 1.3671 | 24.4705 | 0.0559 | 0.0409 | 9.4550 |
| 22 | 0.7207 | 18.6208 | 184.3798 | 1.3876 | 25.8376 | 0.0537 | 0.0387 | 9.9018 |
| 23 | 0.7100 | 19.3309 | 200.0006 | 1.4084 | 27.2251 | 0.0517 | 0.0367 | 10.3462 |
| 24 | 0.6995 | 20.0304 | 216.0901 | 1.4295 | 28.6335 | 0.0499 | 0.0349 | 10.7881 |
| 25 | 0.6892 | 20.7196 | 232.6310 | 1.4509 | 30.0630 | 0.0483 | 0.0333 | 11.2276 |
| 30 | 0.6398 | 24.0158 | 321.5310 | 1.5631 | 37.5387 | 0.0416 | 0.0266 | 13.3883 |
| 40 | 0.5513 | 29.9158 | 524.3568 | 1.8140 | 54.2679 | 0.0334 | 0.0184 | 17.5277 |
| 50 | 0.4750 | 34.9997 | 749.9636 | 2.1052 | 73.6828 | 0.0286 | 0.0136 | 21.4277 |
| 60 | 0.4093 | 39.3803 | 988.1674 | 2.4432 | 96.2147 | 0.0254 | 0.0104 | 25.0930 |
| 100 | 0.2256 | 51.6247 | 1,937.4506 | 4.4320 | 228.8030 | 0.0194 | 0.0044 | 37.5295 |

Factor Table - $i = 2.00\%$

| <i>n</i> | <i>P/F</i> | <i>P/A</i> | <i>P/G</i> | <i>F/P</i> | <i>F/A</i> | <i>A/P</i> | <i>A/F</i> | <i>A/G</i> |
|------------|---------------|----------------|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1 | 0.9804 | 0.9804 | 0.0000 | 1.0200 | 1.0000 | 1.0200 | 1.0000 | 0.0000 |
| 2 | 0.9612 | 1.9416 | 0.9612 | 1.0404 | 2.0200 | 0.5150 | 0.4950 | 0.4950 |
| 3 | 0.9423 | 2.8839 | 2.8458 | 1.0612 | 3.0604 | 0.3468 | 0.3268 | 0.9868 |
| 4 | 0.9238 | 3.8077 | 5.6173 | 1.0824 | 4.1216 | 0.2626 | 0.2426 | 1.4752 |
| 5 | 0.9057 | 4.7135 | 9.2403 | 1.1041 | 5.2040 | 0.2122 | 0.1922 | 1.9604 |
| 6 | 0.8880 | 5.6014 | 13.6801 | 1.1262 | 6.3081 | 0.1785 | 0.1585 | 2.4423 |
| 7 | 0.8706 | 6.4720 | 18.9035 | 1.1487 | 7.4343 | 0.1545 | 0.1345 | 2.9208 |
| 8 | 0.8535 | 7.3255 | 24.8779 | 1.1717 | 8.5830 | 0.1365 | 0.1165 | 3.3961 |
| 9 | 0.8368 | 8.1622 | 31.5720 | 1.1951 | 9.7546 | 0.1225 | 0.1025 | 3.8681 |
| 10 | 0.8203 | 8.9826 | 38.9551 | 1.2190 | 10.9497 | 0.1113 | 0.0913 | 4.3367 |
| 11 | 0.8043 | 9.7868 | 46.9977 | 1.2434 | 12.1687 | 0.1022 | 0.0822 | 4.8021 |
| 12 | 0.7885 | 10.5753 | 55.6712 | 1.2682 | 13.4121 | 0.0946 | 0.0746 | 5.2642 |
| 13 | 0.7730 | 11.3484 | 64.9475 | 1.2936 | 14.6803 | 0.0881 | 0.0681 | 5.7231 |
| 14 | 0.7579 | 12.1062 | 74.7999 | 1.3195 | 15.9739 | 0.0826 | 0.0626 | 6.1786 |
| 15 | 0.7430 | 12.8493 | 85.2021 | 1.3459 | 17.2934 | 0.0778 | 0.0578 | 6.6309 |
| 16 | 0.7284 | 13.5777 | 96.1288 | 1.3728 | 18.6393 | 0.0737 | 0.0537 | 7.0799 |
| 17 | 0.7142 | 14.2919 | 107.5554 | 1.4002 | 20.0121 | 0.0700 | 0.0500 | 7.5256 |
| 18 | 0.7002 | 14.9920 | 119.4581 | 1.4282 | 21.4123 | 0.0667 | 0.0467 | 7.9681 |
| 19 | 0.6864 | 15.6785 | 131.8139 | 1.4568 | 22.8406 | 0.0638 | 0.0438 | 8.4073 |
| 20 | 0.6730 | 16.3514 | 144.6003 | 1.4859 | 24.2974 | 0.0612 | 0.0412 | 8.8433 |
| 21 | 0.6598 | 17.0112 | 157.7959 | 1.5157 | 25.7833 | 0.0588 | 0.0388 | 9.2760 |
| 22 | 0.6468 | 17.6580 | 171.3795 | 1.5460 | 27.2990 | 0.0566 | 0.0366 | 9.7055 |
| 23 | 0.6342 | 18.2922 | 185.3309 | 1.5769 | 28.8450 | 0.0547 | 0.0347 | 10.1317 |
| 24 | 0.6217 | 18.9139 | 199.6305 | 1.6084 | 30.4219 | 0.0529 | 0.0329 | 10.5547 |
| 25 | 0.6095 | 19.5235 | 214.2592 | 1.6406 | 32.0303 | 0.0512 | 0.0312 | 10.9745 |
| 30 | 0.5521 | 22.3965 | 291.7164 | 1.8114 | 40.5681 | 0.0446 | 0.0246 | 13.0251 |
| 40 | 0.4529 | 27.3555 | 461.9931 | 2.2080 | 60.4020 | 0.0366 | 0.0166 | 16.8885 |
| 50 | 0.3715 | 31.4236 | 642.3606 | 2.6916 | 84.5794 | 0.0318 | 0.0118 | 20.4420 |
| 60 | 0.3048 | 34.7609 | 823.6975 | 3.2810 | 114.0515 | 0.0288 | 0.0088 | 23.6961 |
| 100 | 0.1380 | 43.0984 | 1,464.7527 | 7.2446 | 312.2323 | 0.0232 | 0.0032 | 33.9863 |

Interest Rate Tables
Factor Table - $i = 4.00\%$

| n | P/F | P/A | P/G | F/P | F/A | A/P | A/F | A/G |
|------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|-------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1 | 0.9615 | 0.9615 | 0.0000 | 1.0400 | 1.0000 | 1.0400 | 1.0000 | 0.0000 |
| 2 | 0.9246 | 1.8861 | 0.9246 | 1.0816 | 2.0400 | 0.5302 | 0.4902 | 0.4902 |
| 3 | 0.8890 | 2.7751 | 2.7025 | 1.1249 | 3.1216 | 0.3603 | 0.3203 | 0.9739 |
| 4 | 0.8548 | 3.6299 | 5.2670 | 1.1699 | 4.2465 | 0.2755 | 0.2355 | 1.4510 |
| 5 | 0.8219 | 4.4518 | 8.5547 | 1.2167 | 5.4163 | 0.2246 | 0.1846 | 1.9216 |
| 6 | 0.7903 | 5.2421 | 12.5062 | 1.2653 | 6.6330 | 0.1908 | 0.1508 | 2.3857 |
| 7 | 0.7599 | 6.0021 | 17.0657 | 1.3159 | 7.8983 | 0.1666 | 0.1266 | 2.8433 |
| 8 | 0.7307 | 6.7327 | 22.1806 | 1.3686 | 9.2142 | 0.1485 | 0.1085 | 3.2944 |
| 9 | 0.7026 | 7.4353 | 27.8013 | 1.4233 | 10.5828 | 0.1345 | 0.0945 | 3.7391 |
| 10 | 0.6756 | 8.1109 | 33.8814 | 1.4802 | 12.0061 | 0.1233 | 0.0833 | 4.1773 |
| 11 | 0.6496 | 8.7605 | 40.3772 | 1.5395 | 13.4864 | 0.1141 | 0.0741 | 4.6090 |
| 12 | 0.6246 | 9.3851 | 47.2477 | 1.6010 | 15.0258 | 0.1066 | 0.0666 | 5.0343 |
| 13 | 0.6006 | 9.9856 | 54.4546 | 1.6651 | 16.6268 | 0.1001 | 0.0601 | 5.4533 |
| 14 | 0.5775 | 10.5631 | 61.9618 | 1.7317 | 18.2919 | 0.0947 | 0.0547 | 5.8659 |
| 15 | 0.5553 | 11.1184 | 69.7355 | 1.8009 | 20.0236 | 0.0899 | 0.0499 | 6.2721 |
| 16 | 0.5339 | 11.6523 | 77.7441 | 1.8730 | 21.8245 | 0.0858 | 0.0458 | 6.6720 |
| 17 | 0.5134 | 12.1657 | 85.9581 | 1.9479 | 23.6975 | 0.0822 | 0.0422 | 7.0656 |
| 18 | 0.4936 | 12.6593 | 94.3498 | 2.0258 | 25.6454 | 0.0790 | 0.0390 | 7.4530 |
| 19 | 0.4746 | 13.1339 | 102.8933 | 2.1068 | 27.6712 | 0.0761 | 0.0361 | 7.8342 |
| 20 | 0.4564 | 13.5903 | 111.5647 | 2.1911 | 29.7781 | 0.0736 | 0.0336 | 8.2091 |
| 21 | 0.4388 | 14.0292 | 120.3414 | 2.2788 | 31.9692 | 0.0713 | 0.0313 | 8.5779 |
| 22 | 0.4220 | 14.4511 | 129.2024 | 2.3699 | 34.2480 | 0.0692 | 0.0292 | 8.9407 |
| 23 | 0.4057 | 14.8568 | 138.1284 | 2.4647 | 36.6179 | 0.0673 | 0.0273 | 9.2973 |
| 24 | 0.3901 | 15.2470 | 147.1012 | 2.5633 | 39.0826 | 0.0656 | 0.0256 | 9.6479 |
| 25 | 0.3751 | 15.6221 | 156.1040 | 2.6658 | 41.6459 | 0.0640 | 0.0240 | 9.9925 |
| 30 | 0.3083 | 17.2920 | 201.0618 | 3.2434 | 56.0849 | 0.0578 | 0.0178 | 11.6274 |
| 40 | 0.2083 | 19.7928 | 286.5303 | 4.8010 | 95.0255 | 0.0505 | 0.0105 | 14.4765 |
| 50 | 0.1407 | 21.4822 | 361.1638 | 7.1067 | 152.6671 | 0.0466 | 0.0066 | 16.8122 |
| 60 | 0.0951 | 22.6235 | 422.9966 | 10.5196 | 237.9907 | 0.0442 | 0.0042 | 18.6972 |
| 100 | 0.0198 | 24.5050 | 563.1249 | 50.5049 | 1,237.6237 | 0.0408 | 0.0008 | 22.9800 |

Factor Table - $i = 6.00\%$

| n | P/F | P/A | P/G | F/P | F/A | A/P | A/F | A/G |
|------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1 | 0.9434 | 0.9434 | 0.0000 | 1.0600 | 1.0000 | 1.0600 | 1.0000 | 0.0000 |
| 2 | 0.8900 | 1.8334 | 0.8900 | 1.1236 | 2.0600 | 0.5454 | 0.4854 | 0.4854 |
| 3 | 0.8396 | 2.6730 | 2.5692 | 1.1910 | 3.1836 | 0.3741 | 0.3141 | 0.9612 |
| 4 | 0.7921 | 3.4651 | 4.9455 | 1.2625 | 4.3746 | 0.2886 | 0.2286 | 1.4272 |
| 5 | 0.7473 | 4.2124 | 7.9345 | 1.3382 | 5.6371 | 0.2374 | 0.1774 | 1.8836 |
| 6 | 0.7050 | 4.9173 | 11.4594 | 1.4185 | 6.9753 | 0.2034 | 0.1434 | 2.3304 |
| 7 | 0.6651 | 5.5824 | 15.4497 | 1.5036 | 8.3938 | 0.1791 | 0.1191 | 2.7676 |
| 8 | 0.6274 | 6.2098 | 19.8416 | 1.5938 | 9.8975 | 0.1610 | 0.1010 | 3.1952 |
| 9 | 0.5919 | 6.8017 | 24.5768 | 1.6895 | 11.4913 | 0.1470 | 0.0870 | 3.6133 |
| 10 | 0.5584 | 7.3601 | 29.6023 | 1.7908 | 13.1808 | 0.1359 | 0.0759 | 4.0220 |
| 11 | 0.5268 | 7.8869 | 34.8702 | 1.8983 | 14.9716 | 0.1268 | 0.0668 | 4.4213 |
| 12 | 0.4970 | 8.3838 | 40.3369 | 2.0122 | 16.8699 | 0.1193 | 0.0593 | 4.8113 |
| 13 | 0.4688 | 8.8527 | 45.9629 | 2.1329 | 18.8821 | 0.1130 | 0.0530 | 5.1920 |
| 14 | 0.4423 | 9.2950 | 51.7128 | 2.2609 | 21.0151 | 0.1076 | 0.0476 | 5.5635 |
| 15 | 0.4173 | 9.7122 | 57.5546 | 2.3966 | 23.2760 | 0.1030 | 0.0430 | 5.9260 |
| 16 | 0.3936 | 10.1059 | 63.4592 | 2.5404 | 25.6725 | 0.0990 | 0.0390 | 6.2794 |
| 17 | 0.3714 | 10.4773 | 69.4011 | 2.6928 | 28.2129 | 0.0954 | 0.0354 | 6.6240 |
| 18 | 0.3505 | 10.8276 | 75.3569 | 2.8543 | 30.9057 | 0.0924 | 0.0324 | 6.9597 |
| 19 | 0.3305 | 11.1581 | 81.3062 | 3.0256 | 33.7600 | 0.0896 | 0.0296 | 7.2867 |
| 20 | 0.3118 | 11.4699 | 87.2304 | 3.2071 | 36.7856 | 0.0872 | 0.0272 | 7.6051 |
| 21 | 0.2942 | 11.7641 | 93.1136 | 3.3996 | 39.9927 | 0.0850 | 0.0250 | 7.9151 |
| 22 | 0.2775 | 12.0416 | 98.9412 | 3.6035 | 43.3923 | 0.0830 | 0.0230 | 8.2166 |
| 23 | 0.2618 | 12.3034 | 104.7007 | 3.8197 | 46.9958 | 0.0813 | 0.0213 | 8.5099 |
| 24 | 0.2470 | 12.5504 | 110.3812 | 4.0489 | 50.8156 | 0.0797 | 0.0197 | 8.7951 |
| 25 | 0.2330 | 12.7834 | 115.9732 | 4.2919 | 54.8645 | 0.0782 | 0.0182 | 9.0722 |
| 30 | 0.1741 | 13.7648 | 142.3588 | 5.7435 | 79.0582 | 0.0726 | 0.0126 | 10.3422 |
| 40 | 0.0972 | 15.0463 | 185.9568 | 10.2857 | 154.7620 | 0.0665 | 0.0065 | 12.3590 |
| 50 | 0.0543 | 15.7619 | 217.4574 | 18.4202 | 290.3359 | 0.0634 | 0.0034 | 13.7964 |
| 60 | 0.0303 | 16.1614 | 239.0428 | 32.9877 | 533.1282 | 0.0619 | 0.0019 | 14.7909 |
| 100 | 0.0029 | 16.6175 | 272.0471 | 339.3021 | 5,638.3681 | 0.0602 | 0.0002 | 16.3711 |

Interest Rate Tables
Factor Table - $i = 8.00\%$

| <i>n</i> | <i>P/F</i> | <i>P/A</i> | <i>P/G</i> | <i>F/P</i> | <i>F/A</i> | <i>A/P</i> | <i>A/F</i> | <i>A/G</i> |
|----------|---------------|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|--------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1 | 0.9259 | 0.9259 | 0.0000 | 1.0800 | 1.0000 | 1.0800 | 1.0000 | 0.0000 |
| 2 | 0.8573 | 1.7833 | 0.8573 | 1.1664 | 2.0800 | 0.5608 | 0.4808 | 0.4808 |
| 3 | 0.7938 | 2.5771 | 2.4450 | 1.2597 | 3.2464 | 0.3880 | 0.3080 | 0.9487 |
| 4 | 0.7350 | 3.3121 | 4.6501 | 1.3605 | 4.5061 | 0.3019 | 0.2219 | 1.4040 |
| 5 | 0.6806 | 3.9927 | 7.3724 | 1.4693 | 5.8666 | 0.2505 | 0.1705 | 1.8465 |
| 6 | 0.6302 | 4.6229 | 10.5233 | 1.5869 | 7.3359 | 0.2163 | 0.1363 | 2.2763 |
| 7 | 0.5835 | 5.2064 | 14.0242 | 1.7138 | 8.9228 | 0.1921 | 0.1121 | 2.6937 |
| 8 | 0.5403 | 5.7466 | 17.8061 | 1.8509 | 10.6366 | 0.1740 | 0.0940 | 3.0985 |
| 9 | 0.5002 | 6.2469 | 21.8081 | 1.9990 | 12.4876 | 0.1601 | 0.0801 | 3.4910 |
| 10 | 0.4632 | 6.7101 | 25.9768 | 2.1589 | 14.4866 | 0.1490 | 0.0690 | 3.8713 |
| 11 | 0.4289 | 7.1390 | 30.2657 | 2.3316 | 16.6455 | 0.1401 | 0.0601 | 4.2395 |
| 12 | 0.3971 | 7.5361 | 34.6339 | 2.5182 | 18.9771 | 0.1327 | 0.0527 | 4.5957 |
| 13 | 0.3677 | 7.9038 | 39.0463 | 2.7196 | 21.4953 | 0.1265 | 0.0465 | 4.9402 |
| 14 | 0.3405 | 8.2442 | 43.4723 | 2.9372 | 24.2149 | 0.1213 | 0.0413 | 5.2731 |
| 15 | 0.3152 | 8.5595 | 47.8857 | 3.1722 | 27.1521 | 0.1168 | 0.0368 | 5.5945 |
| 16 | 0.2919 | 8.8514 | 52.2640 | 3.4259 | 30.3243 | 0.1130 | 0.0330 | 5.9046 |
| 17 | 0.2703 | 9.1216 | 56.5883 | 3.7000 | 33.7502 | 0.1096 | 0.0296 | 6.2037 |
| 18 | 0.2502 | 9.3719 | 60.8426 | 3.9960 | 37.4502 | 0.1067 | 0.0267 | 6.4920 |
| 19 | 0.2317 | 9.6036 | 65.0134 | 4.3157 | 41.4463 | 0.1041 | 0.0241 | 6.7697 |
| 20 | 0.2145 | 9.8181 | 69.0898 | 4.6610 | 45.7620 | 0.1019 | 0.0219 | 7.0369 |
| 21 | 0.1987 | 10.0168 | 73.0629 | 5.0338 | 50.4229 | 0.0998 | 0.0198 | 7.2940 |
| 22 | 0.1839 | 10.2007 | 76.9257 | 5.4365 | 55.4568 | 0.0980 | 0.0180 | 7.5412 |
| 23 | 0.1703 | 10.3711 | 80.6726 | 5.8715 | 60.8933 | 0.0964 | 0.0164 | 7.7786 |
| 24 | 0.1577 | 10.5288 | 84.2997 | 6.3412 | 66.7648 | 0.0950 | 0.0150 | 8.0066 |
| 25 | 0.1460 | 10.6748 | 87.8041 | 6.8485 | 73.1059 | 0.0937 | 0.0137 | 8.2254 |
| 30 | 0.0994 | 11.2578 | 103.4558 | 10.0627 | 113.2832 | 0.0888 | 0.0088 | 9.1897 |
| 40 | 0.0460 | 11.9246 | 126.0422 | 21.7245 | 259.0565 | 0.0839 | 0.0039 | 10.5699 |
| 50 | 0.0213 | 12.2335 | 139.5928 | 46.9016 | 573.7702 | 0.0817 | 0.0017 | 11.4107 |
| 60 | 0.0099 | 12.3766 | 147.3000 | 101.2571 | 1,253.2133 | 0.0808 | 0.0008 | 11.9015 |
| 100 | 0.0005 | 12.4943 | 155.6107 | 2,199.7613 | 27,484.5157 | 0.0800 | | 12.4545 |

Factor Table - $i = 10.00\%$

| <i>n</i> | <i>P/F</i> | <i>P/A</i> | <i>P/G</i> | <i>F/P</i> | <i>F/A</i> | <i>A/P</i> | <i>A/F</i> | <i>A/G</i> |
|----------|---------------|---------------|----------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 | 0.9091 | 0.9091 | 0.0000 | 1.1000 | 1.0000 | 1.1000 | 1.0000 | 0.0000 |
| 2 | 0.8264 | 1.7355 | 0.8264 | 1.2100 | 2.1000 | 0.5762 | 0.4762 | 0.4762 |
| 3 | 0.7513 | 2.4869 | 2.3291 | 1.3310 | 3.3100 | 0.4021 | 0.3021 | 0.9366 |
| 4 | 0.6830 | 3.1699 | 4.3781 | 1.4641 | 4.6410 | 0.3155 | 0.2155 | 1.3812 |
| 5 | 0.6209 | 3.7908 | 6.8618 | 1.6105 | 6.1051 | 0.2638 | 0.1638 | 1.8101 |
| 6 | 0.5645 | 4.3553 | 9.6842 | 1.7716 | 7.7156 | 0.2296 | 0.1296 | 2.2236 |
| 7 | 0.5132 | 4.8684 | 12.7631 | 1.9487 | 9.4872 | 0.2054 | 0.1054 | 2.6216 |
| 8 | 0.4665 | 5.3349 | 16.0287 | 2.1436 | 11.4359 | 0.1874 | 0.0874 | 3.0045 |
| 9 | 0.4241 | 5.7590 | 19.4215 | 2.3579 | 13.5735 | 0.1736 | 0.0736 | 3.3724 |
| 10 | 0.3855 | 6.1446 | 22.8913 | 2.5937 | 15.9374 | 0.1627 | 0.0627 | 3.7255 |
| 11 | 0.3505 | 6.4951 | 26.3962 | 2.8531 | 18.5312 | 0.1540 | 0.0540 | 4.0641 |
| 12 | 0.3186 | 6.8137 | 29.9012 | 3.1384 | 21.3843 | 0.1468 | 0.0468 | 4.3884 |
| 13 | 0.2897 | 7.1034 | 33.3772 | 3.4523 | 24.5227 | 0.1408 | 0.0408 | 4.6988 |
| 14 | 0.2633 | 7.3667 | 36.8005 | 3.7975 | 27.9750 | 0.1357 | 0.0357 | 4.9955 |
| 15 | 0.2394 | 7.6061 | 40.1520 | 4.1772 | 31.7725 | 0.1315 | 0.0315 | 5.2789 |
| 16 | 0.2176 | 7.8237 | 43.4164 | 4.5950 | 35.9497 | 0.1278 | 0.0278 | 5.5493 |
| 17 | 0.1978 | 8.0216 | 46.5819 | 5.0545 | 40.5447 | 0.1247 | 0.0247 | 5.8071 |
| 18 | 0.1799 | 8.2014 | 49.6395 | 5.5599 | 45.5992 | 0.1219 | 0.0219 | 6.0526 |
| 19 | 0.1635 | 8.3649 | 52.5827 | 6.1159 | 51.1591 | 0.1195 | 0.0195 | 6.2861 |
| 20 | 0.1486 | 8.5136 | 55.4069 | 6.7275 | 57.2750 | 0.1175 | 0.0175 | 6.5081 |
| 21 | 0.1351 | 8.6487 | 58.1095 | 7.4002 | 64.0025 | 0.1156 | 0.0156 | 6.7189 |
| 22 | 0.1228 | 8.7715 | 60.6893 | 8.1403 | 71.4027 | 0.1140 | 0.0140 | 6.9189 |
| 23 | 0.1117 | 8.8832 | 63.1462 | 8.9543 | 79.5430 | 0.1126 | 0.0126 | 7.1085 |
| 24 | 0.1015 | 8.9847 | 65.4813 | 9.8497 | 88.4973 | 0.1113 | 0.0113 | 7.2881 |
| 25 | 0.0923 | 9.0770 | 67.6964 | 10.8347 | 98.3471 | 0.1102 | 0.0102 | 7.4580 |
| 30 | 0.0573 | 9.4269 | 77.0766 | 17.4494 | 164.4940 | 0.1061 | 0.0061 | 8.1762 |
| 40 | 0.0221 | 9.7791 | 88.9525 | 45.2593 | 442.5926 | 0.1023 | 0.0023 | 9.0962 |
| 50 | 0.0085 | 9.9148 | 94.8889 | 117.3909 | 1,163.9085 | 0.1009 | 0.0009 | 9.5704 |
| 60 | 0.0033 | 9.9672 | 97.7010 | 304.4816 | 3,034.8164 | 0.1003 | 0.0003 | 9.8023 |
| 100 | 0.0001 | 9.9993 | 99.9202 | 13,780.6123 | 137,796.1234 | 0.1000 | | 9.9927 |

Interest Rate Tables
Factor Table - $i = 12.00\%$

| <i>n</i> | <i>P/F</i> | <i>P/A</i> | <i>P/G</i> | <i>F/P</i> | <i>F/A</i> | <i>A/P</i> | <i>A/F</i> | <i>A/G</i> |
|------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 | 0.8929 | 0.8929 | 0.0000 | 1.1200 | 1.0000 | 1.1200 | 1.0000 | 0.0000 |
| 2 | 0.7972 | 1.6901 | 0.7972 | 1.2544 | 2.1200 | 0.5917 | 0.4717 | 0.4717 |
| 3 | 0.7118 | 2.4018 | 2.2208 | 1.4049 | 3.3744 | 0.4163 | 0.2963 | 0.9246 |
| 4 | 0.6355 | 3.0373 | 4.1273 | 1.5735 | 4.7793 | 0.3292 | 0.2092 | 1.3589 |
| 5 | 0.5674 | 3.6048 | 6.3970 | 1.7623 | 6.3528 | 0.2774 | 0.1574 | 1.7746 |
| 6 | 0.5066 | 4.1114 | 8.9302 | 1.9738 | 8.1152 | 0.2432 | 0.1232 | 2.1720 |
| 7 | 0.4523 | 4.5638 | 11.6443 | 2.2107 | 10.0890 | 0.2191 | 0.0991 | 2.5515 |
| 8 | 0.4039 | 4.9676 | 14.4714 | 2.4760 | 12.2997 | 0.2013 | 0.0813 | 2.9131 |
| 9 | 0.3606 | 5.3282 | 17.3563 | 2.7731 | 14.7757 | 0.1877 | 0.0677 | 3.2574 |
| 10 | 0.3220 | 5.6502 | 20.2541 | 3.1058 | 17.5487 | 0.1770 | 0.0570 | 3.5847 |
| 11 | 0.2875 | 5.9377 | 23.1288 | 3.4785 | 20.6546 | 0.1684 | 0.0484 | 3.8953 |
| 12 | 0.2567 | 6.1944 | 25.9523 | 3.8960 | 24.1331 | 0.1614 | 0.0414 | 4.1897 |
| 13 | 0.2292 | 6.4235 | 28.7024 | 4.3635 | 28.0291 | 0.1557 | 0.0357 | 4.4683 |
| 14 | 0.2046 | 6.6282 | 31.3624 | 4.8871 | 32.3926 | 0.1509 | 0.0309 | 4.7317 |
| 15 | 0.1827 | 6.8109 | 33.9202 | 5.4736 | 37.2797 | 0.1468 | 0.0268 | 4.9803 |
| 16 | 0.1631 | 6.9740 | 36.3670 | 6.1304 | 42.7533 | 0.1434 | 0.0234 | 5.2147 |
| 17 | 0.1456 | 7.1196 | 38.6973 | 6.8660 | 48.8837 | 0.1405 | 0.0205 | 5.4353 |
| 18 | 0.1300 | 7.2497 | 40.9080 | 7.6900 | 55.7497 | 0.1379 | 0.0179 | 5.6427 |
| 19 | 0.1161 | 7.3658 | 42.9979 | 8.6128 | 63.4397 | 0.1358 | 0.0158 | 5.8375 |
| 20 | 0.1037 | 7.4694 | 44.9676 | 9.6463 | 72.0524 | 0.1339 | 0.0139 | 6.0202 |
| 21 | 0.0926 | 7.5620 | 46.8188 | 10.8038 | 81.6987 | 0.1322 | 0.0122 | 6.1913 |
| 22 | 0.0826 | 7.6446 | 48.5543 | 12.1003 | 92.5026 | 0.1308 | 0.0108 | 6.3514 |
| 23 | 0.0738 | 7.7184 | 50.1776 | 13.5523 | 104.6029 | 0.1296 | 0.0096 | 6.5010 |
| 24 | 0.0659 | 7.7843 | 51.6929 | 15.1786 | 118.1552 | 0.1285 | 0.0085 | 6.6406 |
| 25 | 0.0588 | 7.8431 | 53.1046 | 17.0001 | 133.3339 | 0.1275 | 0.0075 | 6.7708 |
| 30 | 0.0334 | 8.0552 | 58.7821 | 29.9599 | 241.3327 | 0.1241 | 0.0041 | 7.2974 |
| 40 | 0.0107 | 8.2438 | 65.1159 | 93.0510 | 767.0914 | 0.1213 | 0.0013 | 7.8988 |
| 50 | 0.0035 | 8.3045 | 67.7624 | 289.0022 | 2,400.0182 | 0.1204 | 0.0004 | 8.1597 |
| 60 | 0.0011 | 8.3240 | 68.8100 | 897.5969 | 7,471.6411 | 0.1201 | 0.0001 | 8.2664 |
| 100 | | 8.3332 | 69.4336 | 83,522.2657 | 696,010.5477 | 0.1200 | | 8.3321 |

Factor Table - $i = 18.00\%$

| <i>n</i> | <i>P/F</i> | <i>P/A</i> | <i>P/G</i> | <i>F/P</i> | <i>F/A</i> | <i>A/P</i> | <i>A/F</i> | <i>A/G</i> |
|------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 | 0.8475 | 0.8475 | 0.0000 | 1.1800 | 1.0000 | 1.1800 | 1.0000 | 0.0000 |
| 2 | 0.7182 | 1.5656 | 0.7182 | 1.3924 | 2.1800 | 0.6387 | 0.4587 | 0.4587 |
| 3 | 0.6086 | 2.1743 | 1.9354 | 1.6430 | 3.5724 | 0.4599 | 0.2799 | 0.8902 |
| 4 | 0.5158 | 2.6901 | 3.4828 | 1.9388 | 5.2154 | 0.3717 | 0.1917 | 1.2947 |
| 5 | 0.4371 | 3.1272 | 5.2312 | 2.2878 | 7.1542 | 0.3198 | 0.1398 | 1.6728 |
| 6 | 0.3704 | 3.4976 | 7.0834 | 2.6996 | 9.4423 | 0.2859 | 0.1059 | 2.0252 |
| 7 | 0.3139 | 3.8115 | 8.9670 | 3.1855 | 12.1415 | 0.2624 | 0.0824 | 2.3526 |
| 8 | 0.2660 | 4.0776 | 10.8292 | 3.7589 | 15.3270 | 0.2452 | 0.0652 | 2.6558 |
| 9 | 0.2255 | 4.3030 | 12.6329 | 4.4355 | 19.0859 | 0.2324 | 0.0524 | 2.9358 |
| 10 | 0.1911 | 4.4941 | 14.3525 | 5.2338 | 23.5213 | 0.2225 | 0.0425 | 3.1936 |
| 11 | 0.1619 | 4.6560 | 15.9716 | 6.1759 | 28.7551 | 0.2148 | 0.0348 | 3.4303 |
| 12 | 0.1372 | 4.7932 | 17.4811 | 7.2876 | 34.9311 | 0.2086 | 0.0286 | 3.6470 |
| 13 | 0.1163 | 4.9095 | 18.8765 | 8.5994 | 42.2187 | 0.2037 | 0.0237 | 3.8449 |
| 14 | 0.0985 | 5.0081 | 20.1576 | 10.1472 | 50.8180 | 0.1997 | 0.0197 | 4.0250 |
| 15 | 0.0835 | 5.0916 | 21.3269 | 11.9737 | 60.9653 | 0.1964 | 0.0164 | 4.1887 |
| 16 | 0.0708 | 5.1624 | 22.3885 | 14.1290 | 72.9390 | 0.1937 | 0.0137 | 4.3369 |
| 17 | 0.0600 | 5.2223 | 23.3482 | 16.6722 | 87.0680 | 0.1915 | 0.0115 | 4.4708 |
| 18 | 0.0508 | 5.2732 | 24.2123 | 19.6731 | 103.7403 | 0.1896 | 0.0096 | 4.5916 |
| 19 | 0.0431 | 5.3162 | 24.9877 | 23.2144 | 123.4135 | 0.1881 | 0.0081 | 4.7003 |
| 20 | 0.0365 | 5.3527 | 25.6813 | 27.3930 | 146.6280 | 0.1868 | 0.0068 | 4.7978 |
| 21 | 0.0309 | 5.3837 | 26.3000 | 32.3238 | 174.0210 | 0.1857 | 0.0057 | 4.8851 |
| 22 | 0.0262 | 5.4099 | 26.8506 | 38.1421 | 206.3448 | 0.1848 | 0.0048 | 4.9632 |
| 23 | 0.0222 | 5.4321 | 27.3394 | 45.0076 | 244.4868 | 0.1841 | 0.0041 | 5.0329 |
| 24 | 0.0188 | 5.4509 | 27.7725 | 53.1090 | 289.4944 | 0.1835 | 0.0035 | 5.0950 |
| 25 | 0.0159 | 5.4669 | 28.1555 | 62.6686 | 342.6035 | 0.1829 | 0.0029 | 5.1502 |
| 30 | 0.0070 | 5.5168 | 29.4864 | 143.3706 | 790.9480 | 0.1813 | 0.0013 | 5.3448 |
| 40 | 0.0013 | 5.5482 | 30.5269 | 750.3783 | 4,163.2130 | 0.1802 | 0.0002 | 5.5022 |
| 50 | 0.0003 | 5.5541 | 30.7856 | 3,927.3569 | 21,813.0937 | 0.1800 | | 5.5428 |
| 60 | 0.0001 | 5.5553 | 30.8465 | 20,555.1400 | 114,189.6665 | 0.1800 | | 5.5526 |
| 100 | | 5.5556 | 30.8642 | 15,424,131.91 | 85,689,616.17 | 0.1800 | | 5.5555 |

CHEMICAL ENGINEERING

CHEMICAL REACTION ENGINEERING

Nomenclature

A chemical reaction may be expressed by the general equation



The rate of reaction of any component is defined as the moles of that component formed per unit time per unit volume.

$$-r_A = -\frac{1}{V} \frac{dN_A}{dt} \quad (\text{negative because A disappears})$$

$$-r_A = -\frac{dC_A}{dt} \quad \text{if } V \text{ is constant}$$

The rate of reaction is frequently expressed by

$$-r_A = k_f(C_A, C_B, \dots), \text{ where}$$

k = reaction rate constant

C_I = concentration of component I

In the conversion of A , the fractional conversion X_A is defined as the moles of A reacted per mole of A fed.

$$X_A = (C_{A0} - C_A)/C_{A0} \quad \text{if } V \text{ is constant}$$

The Arrhenius equation gives the dependence of k on temperature

$$k = Ae^{-E_a/\bar{R}T}, \text{ where}$$

A = pre-exponential or frequency factor

E_a = activation energy (J/mol, cal/mol)

T = temperature (K)

\bar{R} = gas law constant = 8.314 J/(mol•K)

For values of rate constant (k_i) at two temperatures (T_i),

$$E_a = \frac{RT_1T_2}{(T_1 - T_2)} \ln\left(\frac{k_1}{k_2}\right)$$

Reaction Order

$$\text{If } -r_A = kC_A^x C_B^y$$

the reaction is x order with respect to reactant A and y order with respect to reactant B . The overall order is

$$n = x + y$$

Batch Reactor, Constant Volume

For a well-mixed, constant-volume batch reactor

$$-r_A = -dC_A/dt$$

$$t = -C_{A0} \int_0^{X_A} dX_A / (-r_A)$$

Zero-Order Irreversible Reaction

$$-r_A = kC_A^0 = k(1)$$

$$-dC_A/dt = k \quad \text{or}$$

$$C_A = C_{A0} - kt$$

$$dX_A/dt = k/C_{A0} \quad \text{or}$$

$$C_{A0}X_A = kt$$

First-Order Irreversible Reaction

$$-r_A = kC_A$$

$$-dC_A/dt = kC_A \quad \text{or}$$

$$\ln(C_A/C_{A0}) = -kt$$

$$dX_A/dt = k(1 - X_A) \quad \text{or}$$

$$\ln(1 - X_A) = -kt$$

Second-Order Irreversible Reaction

$$-r_A = kC_A^2$$

$$-dC_A/dt = kC_A^2 \quad \text{or}$$

$$1/C_A - 1/C_{A0} = kt$$

$$dX_A/dt = kC_{A0}(1 - X_A)^2 \quad \text{or}$$

$$X_A/[C_{A0}(1 - X_A)] = kt$$

First-Order Reversible Reactions

$$A \xrightleftharpoons[k_2]{k_1} R$$

$$-r_A = -\frac{dC_A}{dt} = k_1 C_A - k_2 C_R$$

$$K_c = k_1/k_2 = \hat{C}_R/\hat{C}_A$$

$$M = C_{R0}/C_{A0}$$

$$\frac{dX_A}{dt} = \frac{k_1(M+1)}{M+\hat{X}_A} (\hat{X}_A - X_A)$$

$$-\ln\left(1 - \frac{X_A}{\hat{X}_A}\right) = -\ln \frac{C_A - \hat{C}_A}{C_{A0} - \hat{C}_A}$$

$$= \frac{(M+1)}{(M+\hat{X}_A)} k_1 t$$

\hat{X}_A is the equilibrium conversion.

Reactions of Shifting Order

$$-r_A = \frac{k_1 C_A}{1 + k_2 C_A}$$

$$\ln\left(\frac{C_{A_0}}{C_A}\right) + k_2(C_{A_0} - C_A) = k_1 t$$

$$\frac{\ln(C_{A_0}/C_A)}{C_{A_0} - C_A} = -k_2 + \frac{k_1 t}{C_{A_0} - C_A}$$

This form of the rate equation is used for elementary enzyme-catalyzed reactions and for elementary surfaced-catalyzed reactions.

Batch Reactor, Variable Volume

If the volume of the reacting mass varies with the conversion (such as a variable-volume batch reactor) according to

$$V = V_{X_A=0}(1 + \varepsilon_A X_A)$$

(i.e., at constant pressure), where

$$\varepsilon_A = \frac{V_{X_A=1} - V_{X_A=0}}{V_{X_A=0}} = \frac{\Delta V}{V_{X_A=0}}$$

then at any time

$$C_A = C_{A_0} \left[\frac{1 - X_A}{1 + \varepsilon_A X_A} \right]$$

and

$$t = -C_{A_0} \int_0^{X_A} dX_A \left[(1 + \varepsilon_A X_A)(-r_A) \right]$$

For a first-order irreversible reaction,

$$kt = -\ln(1 - X_A) = -\ln\left(1 - \frac{\Delta V}{\varepsilon_A V_{X_A=0}}\right)$$

Flow Reactors, Steady State

Space-time τ is defined as the reactor volume divided by the inlet volumetric feed rate. Space-velocity SV is the reciprocal of space-time, $SV = 1/\tau$.

Plug-Flow Reactor (PFR)

$$\tau = \frac{C_{A_0} V_{PFR}}{F_{A_0}} = C_{A_0} \int_0^{X_A} \frac{dX_A}{(-r_A)}, \text{ where}$$

F_{A_0} = moles of A fed per unit time.

Continuous-Stirred Tank Reactor (CSTR)

For a constant-volume, well-mixed CSTR

$$\frac{\tau}{C_{A_0}} = \frac{V_{CSTR}}{F_{A_0}} = \frac{X_A}{-r_A}, \text{ where}$$

$-r_A$ is evaluated at exit stream conditions.

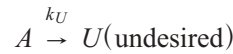
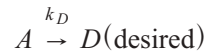
Continuous-Stirred Tank Reactors in Series

With a first-order reaction $A \rightarrow R$, no change in volume.

$$\begin{aligned} \tau_{N\text{-reactors}} &= N\tau_{\text{individual}} \\ &= \frac{N}{k} \left[\left(\frac{C_{A_0}}{C_{A_N}} \right)^{1/N} - 1 \right], \text{ where} \end{aligned}$$

N = number of CSTRs (equal volume) in series, and C_{A_N} = concentration of A leaving the N th CSTR.

Two Irreversible Reactions in Parallel



$$-r_A = -dc_A/dt = k_D C_A^x + k_U C_A^y$$

$$r_D = dc_D/dt = k_D C_A^x$$

$$r_U = dc_U/dt = k_U C_A^y$$

Y_D = instantaneous fractional yield of D

$$= dC_D/(-dC_A)$$

\bar{Y}_D = overall fractional yield of D

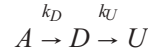
$$= N_{D_f} / (N_{A_0} - N_{A_f})$$

where N_{A_f} and N_{D_f} are measured at the outlet of the flow reactor.

\bar{S}_{DU} = overall selectivity to D

$$= N_{D_f} / N_{U_f}$$

Two First-Order Irreversible Reactions in Series



$$r_A = -dC_A/dt = k_D C_A$$

$$r_D = dC_D/dt = k_D C_A - k_U C_D$$

$$r_U = dC_U/dt = k_U C_D$$

Yield and selectivity definitions are identical to those for two irreversible reactions in parallel. The optimal yield of D in a PFR is

$$\frac{C_{D,max}}{C_{A_0}} = \left(\frac{k_D}{k_U} \right)^{k_U/(k_U - k_D)}$$

at time

$$\tau_{max} = \frac{1}{k_{\log \text{ mean}}} = \frac{\ln(k_U/k_D)}{(k_U - k_D)}$$

The optimal yield of D in a CSTR is

$$\frac{C_{D,max}}{C_{A_0}} = \frac{1}{\left[(k_U/k_D)^{1/2} + 1 \right]^2}$$

at time

$$\tau_{max} = 1/\sqrt{k_D k_U}$$

MASS TRANSFER

Diffusion

Molecular Diffusion

$$\text{Gas: } N_A = \frac{p_A}{P}(N_A + N_B) - \frac{D_m}{RT} \frac{\partial p_A}{\partial z}$$

$$\text{Liquid: } N_A = x_A(N_A + N_B) - CD_m \frac{\partial x_A}{\partial z}$$

where,

N_i = molar flux of component i

P = pressure

p_i = partial pressure of component i

D_m = mass diffusivity

R = universal gas constant

T = temperature

z = length

Unidirectional Diffusion of a Gas A Through a Second Stagnant Gas B ($N_B = 0$)

$$N_A = \frac{D_m P}{RT(p_B)_{lm}} \times \frac{(p_{A2} - p_{A1})}{z_2 - z_1}$$

in which $(p_B)_{lm}$ is the log mean of p_{B2} and p_{B1}

$$(p_{BM})_{lm} = \frac{p_{B2} - p_{B1}}{\ln\left(\frac{p_{B2}}{p_{B1}}\right)}$$

N_i = diffusive flux [mole/(time \times area)] of component i through area A , in z direction

D_m = mass diffusivity

p_i = partial pressure of species i

C = concentration (mole/volume)

$(z_2 - z_1)$ = diffusion flow path length

Equimolar Counter-Diffusion (Gases)

($N_B = -N_A$)

$$N_A = D_m / (RT) \times [(p_{A1} - p_{A2}) / (\Delta z)]$$

$$N_A = D_m (C_{A1} - C_{A2}) / \Delta z$$

Convection

Two-Film Theory (for Equimolar Counter-Diffusion)

$$\begin{aligned} N_A &= k'_G (p_{AG} - p_{Ai}) \\ &= k'_L (C_{Ai} - C_{AL}) \\ &= K'_G (p_{AG} - p_A^*) \\ &= K'_L (C_A^* - C_{AL}) \end{aligned}$$

where,

N_A = molar flux of component A

k'_G = gas phase mass-transfer coefficient

k'_L = liquid phase mass-transfer coefficient

K'_G = overall gas phase mass-transfer coefficient

K'_L = overall liquid phase mass-transfer coefficient

p_{AG} = partial pressure in component A in the bulk gas phase

p_{Ai} = partial pressure at component A at the gas-liquid interface

C_{Ai} = concentration (mole/volume) of component A in the liquid phase at the gas-liquid interface

C_{AL} = concentration of component A in the bulk liquid phase

p_A^* = partial pressure of component A in equilibrium with C_{AL}

C_A^* = concentration of component A in equilibrium with the bulk gas vapor composition of A

Overall Coefficients

$$1/K'_G = 1/k'_G + H/k'_L$$

$$1/K'_L = 1/Hk'_G + 1/k'_L$$

H = Henry's Law constant where $p_A^* = H C_{AL}$ and $C_A^* = p_{AG}/H$

Dimensionless Group Equation (Sherwood)

For the turbulent flow inside a tube the Sherwood number

$$\text{Sh} = \left(\frac{k_m D}{D_m}\right) = 0.023 \left(\frac{DV\rho}{\mu}\right)^{0.8} \left(\frac{\mu}{\rho D_m}\right)^{1/3}$$

where,

D = inside diameter

D_m = diffusion coefficient

V = average velocity in the tube

ρ = fluid density

μ = fluid viscosity

k_m = mass-transfer coefficient

Distillation

Definitions:

α = relative volatility

B = molar bottoms-product rate

D = molar overhead-product rate

F = molar feed rate

L = molar liquid downflow rate

R_D = ratio of reflux to overhead product

V = molar vapor upflow rate

W = total moles in still pot

x = mole fraction of the more volatile component in the liquid phase

y = mole fraction of the more volatile component in the vapor phase

Subscripts:

B = bottoms product

D = overhead product

F = feed

m = any plate in stripping section of column

$m+1$ = plate below plate m

n = any plate in rectifying section of column

$n+1$ = plate below plate n

o = original charge in still pot

Flash (or equilibrium) Distillation

Component material balance:

$$Fz_F = yV + xL$$

Overall material balance:

$$F = V + L$$

Differential (Simple or Rayleigh) Distillation

$$\ln\left(\frac{W}{W_o}\right) = \int_{x_o}^x \frac{dx}{y-x}$$

When the relative volatility α is constant,

$$y = \alpha x / [1 + (\alpha - 1)x]$$

can be substituted to give

$$\ln\left(\frac{W}{W_o}\right) = \frac{1}{(\alpha - 1)} \ln\left[\frac{x(1 - x_o)}{x_o(1 - x)}\right] + \ln\left[\frac{1 - x_o}{1 - x}\right]$$

For binary system following Raoult's Law

$$\alpha = (y/x)_a / (y/x)_b = p_a / p_b, \text{ where}$$

p_i = partial pressure of component i .

Continuous Distillation (Binary System)

Constant molal overflow is assumed.

Equilibrium stages numbered from top.

Overall Material Balances

Total Material:

$$F = D + B$$

Component A :

$$Fz_F = Dx_D + Bx_B$$

Operating Lines

Rectifying section

Total Material:

$$V_{n+1} = L_n + D$$

Component A :

$$V_{n+1}y_{n+1} = L_nx_n + Dx_D$$

$$y_{n+1} = [L_n / (L_n + D)] x_n + Dx_D / (L_n + D)$$

Stripping section

Total Material:

$$L_m = V_{m+1} + B$$

Component A :

$$L_mx_m = V_{m+1}y_{m+1} + Bx_B$$

$$y_{m+1} = [L_m / (L_m - B)] x_m - Bx_B / (L_m - B)$$

Reflux ratio

Ratio of reflux to overhead product

$$R_D = L_R / D = (V_R - D) / D$$

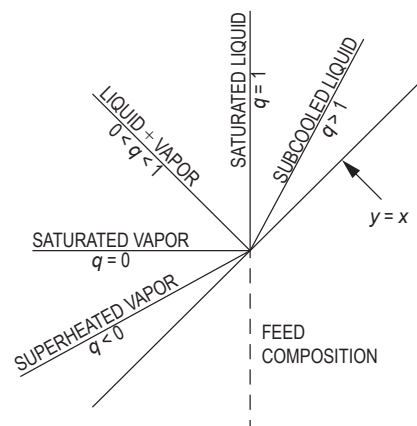
Minimum reflux ratio is defined as that value which results in an infinite number of contact stages. For a binary system the equation of the operating line is

$$y = \frac{R_{\min}}{R_{\min} + 1} x + \frac{x_D}{R_{\min} + 1}$$

Feed condition line

slope = $q / (q - 1)$, where

$$q = \frac{\text{heat to convert one mol of feed to saturated vapor}}{\text{molar heat of vaporization}}$$

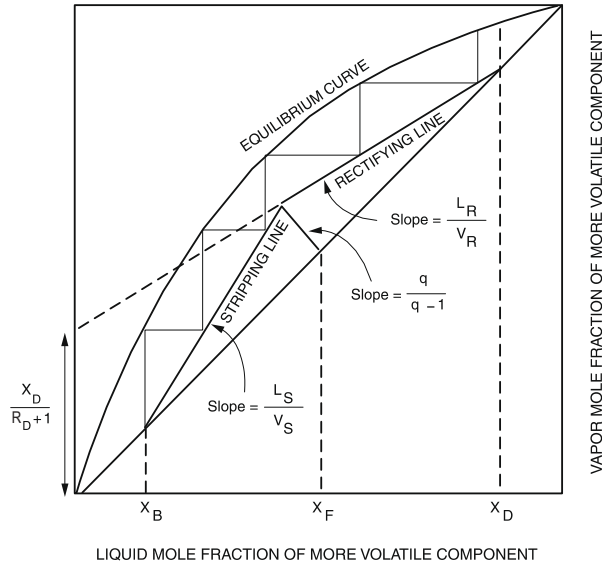
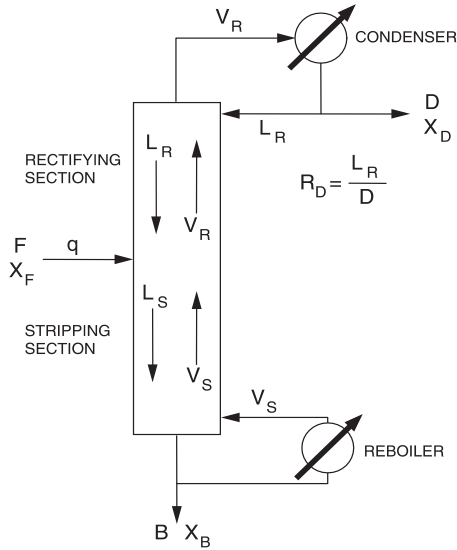


q-LINE SLOPES

Murphree plate efficiency

$$E_{ME} = (y_n - y_{n+1}) / (y_n^* - y_{n+1}), \text{ where}$$

- y_n = concentration of vapor above equilibrium stage n
- y_{n+1} = concentration of vapor entering from equilibrium stage below n
- y_n^* = concentration of vapor in equilibrium with liquid leaving equilibrium stage n



Vapor-Liquid Equilibrium (VLE) Diagram

Absorption (packed columns)

Continuous Contact Columns

$$Z = NTU_G \cdot HTU_G = NTU_L \cdot HTU_L = N_{EQ} \cdot HETP$$

- Z = column height
- NTU_G = number of transfer units (gas phase)
- NTU_L = number of transfer units (liquid phase)
- N_{EQ} = number of equilibrium stages
- HTU_G = height of transfer unit (gas phase)
- HTU_L = height of transfer unit (liquid phase)
- $HETP$ = height equivalent to theoretical plate (stage)

$$HTU_G = \frac{G}{K'_G a} \quad HTU_L = \frac{L}{K'_L a}$$

- G = gas phase mass velocity (mass or moles/flow area • time)
- L = liquid phase mass velocity (mass or moles/flow area • time)
- K'_G = overall gas phase mass-transfer coefficient (mass or moles/mass-transfer area • time)
- K'_L = overall liquid phase mass-transfer coefficient (mass or moles/mass-transfer area • time)
- a = mass-transfer area/volume of column (length⁻¹)

$$NTU_G = \int_{y_1}^{y_2} \frac{dy}{(y - y^*)} \quad NTU_L = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} \frac{dx}{(x^* - x)}$$

- y = gas phase solute mole fraction
- x = liquid phase solute mole fraction
- y^* = $K \cdot x$, where K = equilibrium constant
- x^* = y/K , where K = equilibrium constant
- y_2, x_2 = mole fractions at the lean end of column
- y_1, x_1 = mole fractions at the rich end of column

For dilute solutions (constant G/L and constant K value for entire column):

$$NTU_G = \frac{y_1 - y_2}{(y - y^*)_{LM}}$$

$$(y - y^*)_{LM} = \frac{(y_1 - y_1^*) - (y_2 - y_2^*)}{\ln \left(\frac{y_1 - y_1^*}{y_2 - y_2^*} \right)}$$

For a chemically reacting system—absorbed solute reacts in the liquid phase—the preceding relation simplifies to:

$$NTU_G = \ln \left(\frac{y_1}{y_2} \right)$$

TRANSPORT PHENOMENA—MOMENTUM, HEAT, AND MASS-TRANSFER ANALOGY

For the equations which apply to *turbulent flow in circular tubes*, the following definitions apply:

$$\text{Nu} = \text{Nusselt Number} \left[\frac{hD}{k} \right]$$

$$\text{Pr} = \text{Prandtl Number} (c_p \mu / k)$$

$$\text{Re} = \text{Reynolds Number} (DV\rho/\mu)$$

$$\text{Sc} = \text{Schmidt Number} [\mu/(\rho D_m)]$$

$$\text{Sh} = \text{Sherwood Number} (k_m D/D_m)$$

$$\text{St} = \text{Stanton Number} [h/(c_p G)]$$

$$c_m = \text{concentration (mol/m}^3\text{)}$$

$$c_p = \text{heat capacity of fluid [J/(kg}\cdot\text{K)]}$$

$$D = \text{tube inside diameter (m)}$$

$$D_m = \text{diffusion coefficient (m}^2\text{/s)}$$

$$(dc_m/dy)_w = \text{concentration gradient at the wall (mol/m}^4\text{)}$$

$$(dT/dy)_w = \text{temperature gradient at the wall (K/m)}$$

$$(dv/dy)_w = \text{velocity gradient at the wall (s}^{-1}\text{)}$$

$$f = \text{Moody friction factor}$$

$$G = \text{mass velocity [kg/(m}^2\cdot\text{s)]}$$

$$h = \text{heat-transfer coefficient at the wall [W/(m}^2\cdot\text{K)]}$$

$$k = \text{thermal conductivity of fluid [W/(m}\cdot\text{K)]}$$

$$k_m = \text{mass-transfer coefficient (m/s)}$$

$$L = \text{length over which pressure drop occurs (m)}$$

$$(N/A)_w = \text{inward mass-transfer flux at the wall [mol/(m}^2\cdot\text{s)]}$$

$$(\dot{Q}/A)_w = \text{inward heat-transfer flux at the wall (W/m}^2\text{)}$$

$$y = \text{distance measured from inner wall toward centerline (m)}$$

$$\Delta c_m = \text{concentration difference between wall and bulk fluid (mol/m}^3\text{)}$$

$$\Delta T = \text{temperature difference between wall and bulk fluid (K)}$$

$$\mu = \text{absolute dynamic viscosity (N}\cdot\text{s/m}^2\text{)}$$

$$\tau_w = \text{shear stress (momentum flux) at the tube wall (N/m}^2\text{)}$$

Definitions already introduced also apply.

Rate of Transfer as a Function of Gradients at the Wall

Momentum Transfer

$$\tau_w = -\mu \left(\frac{dv}{dy} \right)_w = -\frac{f\rho V^2}{8} = \left(\frac{D}{4} \right) \left(-\frac{\Delta p}{L} \right)_f$$

Heat Transfer

$$\left(\frac{\dot{Q}}{A} \right)_w = -k \left(\frac{dT}{dy} \right)_w$$

Mass Transfer in Dilute Solutions

$$\left(\frac{N}{A} \right)_w = -D_m \left(\frac{dc_m}{dy} \right)_w$$

Rate of Transfer in Terms of Coefficients

Momentum Transfer

$$\tau_w = \frac{f\rho V^2}{8}$$

Heat Transfer

$$\left(\frac{\dot{Q}}{A} \right)_w = h\Delta T$$

Mass Transfer

$$\left(\frac{N}{A} \right)_w = k_m \Delta c_m$$

Use of Friction Factor (f) to Predict Heat-Transfer and Mass-Transfer Coefficients (Turbulent Flow)

Heat Transfer

$$j_H = \left(\frac{\text{Nu}}{\text{RePr}} \right) \text{Pr}^{2/3} = \frac{f}{8}$$

Mass Transfer

$$j_M = \left(\frac{\text{Sh}}{\text{ReSc}} \right) \text{Sc}^{2/3} = \frac{f}{8}$$

COST ESTIMATION

Cost Indexes

Cost indexes are used to update historical cost data to the present. If a purchase cost is available for an item of equipment in year M , the equivalent current cost would be found by:

$$\text{Current \$} = (\text{Cost in year } M) \left(\frac{\text{Current Index}}{\text{Index in year } M} \right)$$

Capital Cost Estimation

| Type of plant | Lang factors | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| | Fixed capital investment | Total capital investment |
| Solid processing | 4.0 | 4.7 |
| Solid-fluid processing | 4.3 | 5.0 |
| Fluid processing | 5.0 | 6.0 |

From Green, Don W., and Robert H. Perry, *Perry's Chemical Engineers' Handbook*, 8th ed., McGraw-Hill, 2008.

Adapted from M. S. Peters, K. D. Timmerhaus, and R. West, *Plant Design and Economics for Chemical Engineers*, 5th ed., McGraw-Hill, 2004.

| Component | Range |
|--|---------|
| <i>Direct costs</i> | |
| Purchased equipment-delivered (including fabricated equipment and process machinery such as pumps and compressors) | 100 |
| Purchased-equipment installation | 39–47 |
| Instrumentation and controls (installed) | 9–18 |
| Piping (installed) | 16–66 |
| Electrical (installed) | 10–11 |
| Buildings (including services) | 18–29 |
| Yard improvements | 10–13 |
| Service facilities (installed) | 40–70 |
| Land (if purchase is required) | 6 |
| Total direct plant cost | 264–346 |
| <i>Indirect costs</i> | |
| Engineering and supervision | 32–33 |
| Construction expenses | 34–41 |
| Total direct and indirect plant costs | 336–420 |
| Contractor's fee (about 5% of direct and indirect plant costs) | 17–21 |
| Contingency (about 10% of direct and indirect plant costs) | 36–42 |
| Fixed-capital investment | 387–483 |
| Working capital (about 15% of total capital investment) | 68–86 |
| Total capital investment | 455–569 |

Scaling of Equipment Costs

The cost of Unit A at one capacity related to the cost of a similar Unit B with X times the capacity of Unit A is approximately X^n times the cost of Unit B.

$$\text{Cost of Unit A} = \text{Cost of Unit B} \left(\frac{\text{Capacity of Unit A}}{\text{Capacity of Unit B}} \right)^n$$

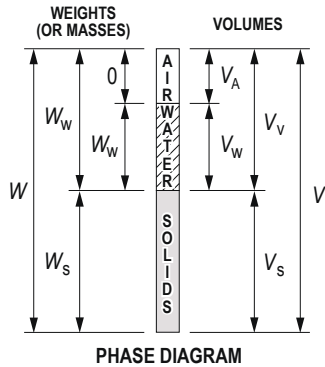
Typical Exponents (n) for Equipment Cost vs. Capacity

| Equipment | Size range | Exponent |
|---|---|-----------------|
| Dryer, drum, single vacuum | 10 to 10 ² ft ² | 0.76 |
| Dryer, drum, single atmospheric | 10 to 10 ² ft ² | 0.40 |
| Fan, centrifugal | 10 ³ to 10 ⁴ ft ³ /min | 0.44 |
| Fan, centrifugal | 2 × 10 ⁴ to 7 × 10 ⁴ ft ³ /min | 1.17 |
| Heat exchanger, shell and tube, floating head, c.s. | 100 to 400 ft ² | 0.60 |
| Heat exchanger, shell and tube, fixed sheet, c.s. | 100 to 400 ft ² | 0.44 |
| Motor, squirrel cage, induction, 440 volts, explosion proof | 5 to 20 hp | 0.69 |
| Motor, squirrel cage, induction, 440 volts, explosion proof | 20 to 200 hp | 0.99 |
| Tray, bubble cup, c.s. | 3- to 10-ft diameter | 1.20 |
| Tray, sieve, c.s. | 3- to 10-ft diameter | 0.86 |

CIVIL ENGINEERING

GEOTECHNICAL

Phase Relationships



Volume of voids

$$V_v = V_a + V_w$$

Total unit weight

$$\gamma = W/V$$

Saturated unit weight

$$\gamma_{\text{sat}} = (G_s + e) \gamma_w / (1 + e)$$

$$\gamma_w = 62.4 \text{ lb/ft}^3 \text{ or } 9.81 \text{ kN/m}^3$$

Effective (submerged) unit weight

$$\gamma' = \gamma_{\text{sat}} - \gamma_w$$

Unit weight of solids

$$\gamma_s = W_s / V_s$$

Dry unit weight

$$\gamma_D = W_s / V$$

Water content (%)

$$\omega = (W_w / W_s) \times 100$$

Specific gravity of soil solids

$$G_s = (W_s / V_s) / \gamma_w$$

Void ratio

$$e = V_v / V_s$$

Porosity

$$n = V_v / V = e / (1 + e)$$

Degree of saturation (%)

$$S = (V_w / V_v) \times 100$$

$$S = \omega G_s / e$$

Relative density

$$D_r = [(e_{\text{max}} - e) / (e_{\text{max}} - e_{\text{min}})] \times 100$$

$$= [(\gamma_{D \text{ field}} - \gamma_{D \text{ min}}) / (\gamma_{D \text{ max}} - \gamma_{D \text{ min}})] [\gamma_{D \text{ max}} / \gamma_{D \text{ field}}] \times 100$$

Relative compaction (%)

$$RC = (\gamma_{D \text{ field}} / \gamma_{D \text{ max}}) \times 100$$

Plasticity index

$$PI = LL - PL$$

LL = liquid limit

PL = Plastic limit

Coefficient of uniformity

$$C_u = D_{60} / D_{10}$$

Coefficient of concavity (or curvature)

$$C_c = (D_{30})^2 / (D_{10} \times D_{60})$$

Hydraulic conductivity (also coefficient of permeability)

From constant head test: $k = Q / (iAt_c)$

$$i = dh/dL$$

Q = total quantity of water

From falling head test: $k = 2.303[(aL)/(At_c)] \log_{10}(h_1/h_2)$

A = cross-sectional area of test specimen perpendicular to flow

a = cross-sectional area of reservoir tube

t_c = elapsed time

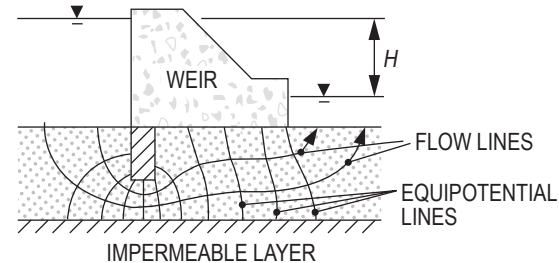
h_1 = head at time $t = 0$

h_2 = head at time $t = t_c$

L = length of soil column

Discharge velocity, $v = ki$

Flow Nets



FLOW NET

$$Q = kH (N_f / N_d), \text{ where}$$

Q = flow per unit time

N_f = number of flow channels

N_d = number of equipotential drops

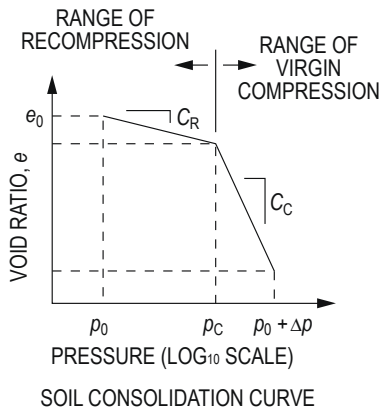
H = total hydraulic head differential

Factor of safety against seepage liquefaction

$$FS_s = i_c / i_e$$

$$i_c = (\gamma_{\text{sat}} - \gamma_w) / \gamma_w$$

i_e = seepage exit gradient



e_0 = initial void ratio (prior to consolidation)

Δe = change in void ratio

p_0 = initial effective consolidation stress, σ'_0

p_c = past maximum consolidation stress, σ'_c

Δp = induced change in consolidation stress at center of consolidating stratum

$\Delta p = I q_s$

I = Stress influence value at center of consolidating stratum

q_s = applied surface stress causing consolidation

$$\text{If } (p_0 \text{ and } p_0 + \Delta p) < p_c, \text{ then } \Delta H = \frac{H_0}{1 + e_0} \left[C_R \log \frac{p_0 + \Delta p}{p_0} \right]$$

$$\text{If } (p_0 \text{ and } p_0 + \Delta p) > p_c, \text{ then } \Delta H = \frac{H_0}{1 + e_0} \left[C_C \log \frac{p_0 + \Delta p}{p_0} \right]$$

$$\text{If } p_0 < p_c < (p_0 + \Delta p), \text{ then } \Delta H = \frac{H_0}{1 + e_0} \left[C_R \log \frac{p_c}{p_0} + C_C \log \frac{p_0 + \Delta p}{p_c} \right]$$

where: ΔH = change in thickness of soil layer

Compression index

In virgin compression range: $C_C = \Delta e / \Delta \log p$

By correlation to liquid limit: $C_C = 0.009 (LL - 10)$

Recompression index

In recompression range: $C_R = \Delta e / \Delta \log p$

By correlation to compression index, C_C : $C_R = C_C / 6$

Ultimate consolidation settlement in soil layer

$$S_{ULT} = \epsilon_v H_S$$

H_S = thickness of soil layer

$$\epsilon_v = \Delta e_{TOT} / (1 + e_0)$$

Δe_{TOT} = total change in void ratio due to recompression and virgin compression

Approximate settlement (at time $t = t_c$)

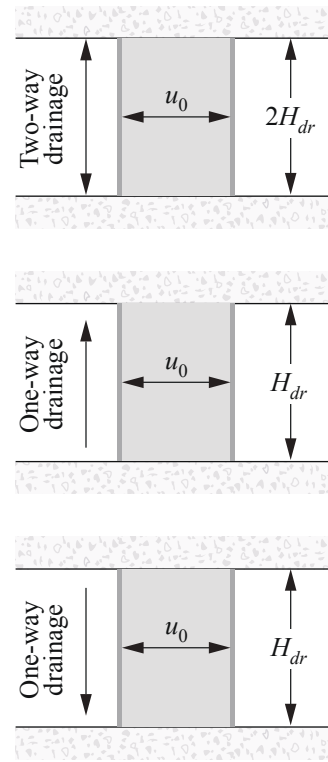
$$S_T = U_{AV} S_{ULT}$$

U_{AV} = average degree of consolidation

t_c = elapsed time since application of consolidation load

Variation of time factor with degree of consolidation*

| U (%) | T_v | U (%) | T_v | U (%) | T_v |
|---------|---------|---------|--------|---------|----------|
| 0 | 0 | 34 | 0.0907 | 68 | 0.377 |
| 1 | 0.00008 | 35 | 0.0962 | 69 | 0.390 |
| 2 | 0.0003 | 36 | 0.102 | 70 | 0.403 |
| 3 | 0.00071 | 37 | 0.107 | 71 | 0.417 |
| 4 | 0.00126 | 38 | 0.113 | 72 | 0.431 |
| 5 | 0.00196 | 39 | 0.119 | 73 | 0.446 |
| 6 | 0.00283 | 40 | 0.126 | 74 | 0.461 |
| 7 | 0.00385 | 41 | 0.132 | 75 | 0.477 |
| 8 | 0.00502 | 42 | 0.138 | 76 | 0.493 |
| 9 | 0.00636 | 43 | 0.145 | 77 | 0.511 |
| 10 | 0.00785 | 44 | 0.152 | 78 | 0.529 |
| 11 | 0.0095 | 45 | 0.159 | 79 | 0.547 |
| 12 | 0.0113 | 46 | 0.166 | 80 | 0.567 |
| 13 | 0.0133 | 47 | 0.173 | 81 | 0.588 |
| 14 | 0.0154 | 48 | 0.181 | 82 | 0.610 |
| 15 | 0.0177 | 49 | 0.188 | 83 | 0.633 |
| 16 | 0.0201 | 50 | 0.197 | 84 | 0.658 |
| 17 | 0.0227 | 51 | 0.204 | 85 | 0.684 |
| 18 | 0.0254 | 52 | 0.212 | 86 | 0.712 |
| 19 | 0.0283 | 53 | 0.221 | 87 | 0.742 |
| 20 | 0.0314 | 54 | 0.230 | 88 | 0.774 |
| 21 | 0.0346 | 55 | 0.239 | 89 | 0.809 |
| 22 | 0.0380 | 56 | 0.248 | 90 | 0.848 |
| 23 | 0.0415 | 57 | 0.257 | 91 | 0.891 |
| 24 | 0.0452 | 58 | 0.267 | 92 | 0.938 |
| 25 | 0.0491 | 59 | 0.276 | 93 | 0.993 |
| 26 | 0.0531 | 60 | 0.286 | 94 | 1.055 |
| 27 | 0.0572 | 61 | 0.297 | 95 | 1.129 |
| 28 | 0.0615 | 62 | 0.307 | 96 | 1.219 |
| 29 | 0.0660 | 63 | 0.318 | 97 | 1.336 |
| 30 | 0.0707 | 64 | 0.329 | 98 | 1.500 |
| 31 | 0.0754 | 65 | 0.340 | 99 | 1.781 |
| 32 | 0.0803 | 66 | 0.352 | 100 | ∞ |
| 33 | 0.0855 | 67 | 0.364 | | |

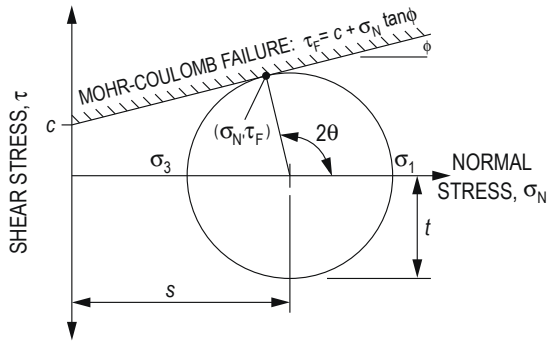


Different types of drainage
with u_0 constant

* u_0 constant with depth.

where time factor is $T_v = \frac{c_v t}{H_{dr}^2}$

Das, Braja M., *Fundamentals of Geotechnical Engineering*, Cengage Learning (formerly Brooks/Cole), 2000.



s = mean normal stress
 t = maximum shear stress
 σ_1 = major principal stress
 σ_3 = minor principal stress
 θ = orientation angle between plane of existing normal stress and plane of major principal stress

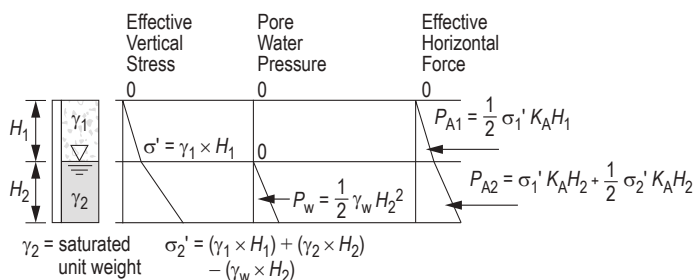
Total normal stress
 $\sigma_N = P/A$
 P = normal force
 A = cross-sectional area over which force acts

Effective stress
 $\sigma' = \sigma - u$
 $u = h_u \gamma_w$
 h_u = uplift or pressure head

Shear stress
 $\tau = T/A$
 T = shearing force

Shear stress at failure
 $\tau_F = c + \sigma_N \tan \phi$
 c = cohesion
 ϕ = angle of internal friction

Horizontal Stress Profiles and Forces



Active forces on retaining wall per unit wall length (as shown):
 K_A = Rankine active earth pressure coefficient (smooth wall, $c = 0$, level backfill) = $\tan^2(45^\circ - \phi/2)$

Passive forces on retaining wall per unit wall length (similar to the active forces shown):

K_p = Rankine passive earth pressure coefficient (smooth wall, $c = 0$, level backfill) = $\tan^2(45^\circ + \phi/2)$

At rest forces on wall per unit length of wall

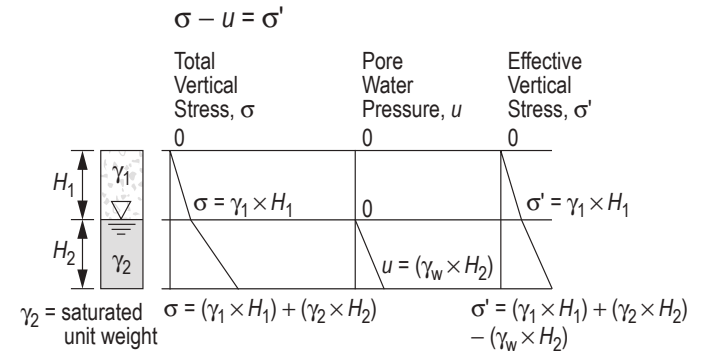
K_0 = at rest earth pressure coefficient (smooth wall, $C = 0$, level backfill)

$K_0 \approx 1 - \sin \phi$ for normally consolidated soil

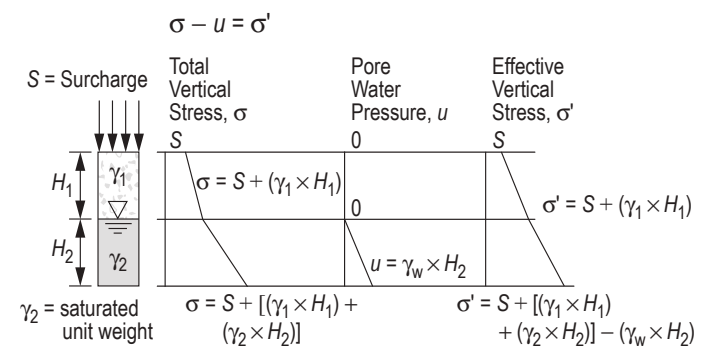
$K_0 = (1 - \sin \phi) \text{OCR}^{\sin \phi}$ for overconsolidated soil where

OCR = overconsolidation ratio

Vertical Stress Profiles



Vertical Stress Profiles with Surcharge



Ultimate Bearing Capacity

$$q_{ULT} = cN_c + \gamma' D_f N_q + \frac{1}{2} \gamma' B N_\gamma$$

N_c = bearing capacity factor for cohesion

N_q = bearing capacity factor for depth

N_γ = bearing capacity factor for unit weight

D_f = depth of footing below ground surface

B = width of strip footing

Retaining Walls

$$FS_{\text{overturning}} = \frac{\sum M_R}{M_O}$$

$$FS_{\text{sliding}} = \frac{\sum F_R}{\sum F_D}$$

$$FS_{\text{sliding}} = \frac{(\sum V) \tan \delta + BC_a + P_p}{P_a \cos \alpha}$$

$$FS_{\text{bearing capacity}} = \frac{q_{\text{ULT}}}{q_{\text{toe}}}$$

$$q_{\text{toe}} = \frac{\sum V}{B} \left(1 + \frac{6e}{B} \right)$$

$$e = \frac{B}{2} - \left(\frac{\sum M_R - M_O}{\sum V} \right)$$

e = eccentricity

B = width of base

M_R = resisting moment

M_O = overturning moment

F_R = resisting forces

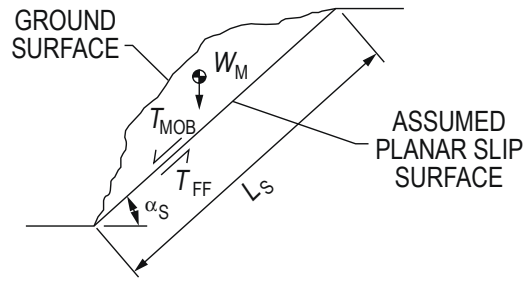
F_D = driving forces

V = vertical forces

$\delta = k_1 \phi_2$

$C_a = k_2 C_2$

k_1 and k_2 are given, ranging from 1/2 to 2/3



SLOPE FAILURE ALONG PLANAR SURFACE

FS = factor of safety against slope instability

$$= T_{FF}/T_{MOB}$$

T_{FF} = available shearing resistance along slip surface

$$= cL_S + W_M \cos \alpha_S \tan \phi$$

T_{MOB} = mobilized shear force along slip surface

$$= W_M \sin \alpha_S$$

L_S = length of assumed planar slip surface

W_M = weight of soil above slip surface

α_S = angle of assumed slip surface with respect to horizontal

AASHTO Soil Classification

| GENERAL CLASSIFICATION | GRANULAR MATERIALS (35% OR LESS PASSING 0.075 SIEVE) | | | | | | SILT-CLAY MATERIALS (MORE THAN 35% PASSING 0.075 SIEVE) | | | | |
|--|--|-------|--------------|---------------------------------|-------|-------|---|-------------|------|--------------|----------------|
| | A-1 | | A-3 | A-2 | | | | A-4 | A-5 | A-6 | A-7-5 A-7-6 |
| GROUP CLASSIFICATION | A-1-a | A-1-b | | A-2-4 | A-2-5 | A-2-6 | A-2-7 | | | | |
| SIEVE ANALYSIS, PERCENT PASSING: 2.00 mm (No. 10) 0.425 mm (No. 40) 0.075 mm (No. 200) | ≤ 50 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| | ≤ 30 | ≤ 50 | ≥ 51 | — | — | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| | ≤ 15 | ≤ 25 | ≤ 10 | ≤ 35 | ≤ 35 | ≤ 35 | ≤ 35 | ≥ 36 | ≥ 36 | ≥ 36 | ≥ 36 |
| CHARACTERISTICS OF FRACTION PASSING 0.425 SIEVE (No. 40): LIQUID LIMIT PLASTICITY INDEX * | — | | — | ≤ 40 | ≥ 41 | ≤ 40 | ≥ 41 | ≤ 40 | ≥ 41 | ≤ 40 | ≥ 41 |
| | 6 max | | NP | ≤ 10 | ≤ 10 | ≥ 11 | ≥ 11 | ≤ 10 | ≤ 10 | ≥ 11 | ≥ 11 |
| USUAL TYPES OF CONSTITUENT MATERIALS | STONE FRAGM'TS, GRAVEL, SAND | | FINE SAND | SILTY OR CLAYEY GRAVEL AND SAND | | | | SILTY SOILS | | CLAYEY SOILS | |
| GENERAL RATING AS A SUBGRADE | EXCELLENT TO GOOD | | | | | | FAIR TO POOR | | | | |

*Plasticity index of A-7-5 subgroup is equal to or less than $LL - 30$. Plasticity index of A-7-6 subgroup is greater than $LL - 30$.

NP = Non-plastic (use "0"). Symbol "—" means that the particular sieve analysis is not considered for that classification.

If the soil classification is A4-A7, then calculate the group index (GI) as shown below and report with classification. The higher the GI, the less suitable the soil. Example: A-6 with GI = 15 is less suitable than A-6 with GI = 10.

$$GI = (F - 35) [0.2 + 0.005 (LL - 40)] + 0.01 (F - 15) (PI - 10)$$

where: F = Percent passing No. 200 sieve, expressed as a whole number. This percentage is based only on the material passing the No. 200 sieve.

LL = Liquid limit

PI = Plasticity index

If the computed value of $GI < 0$, then use $GI = 0$.

ASTM D2487-11 Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)

| Criteria for Assigning Group Symbols and Group Names Using Laboratory Tests ^A | | | | Soil Classification | | |
|--|--|---|---|---|-----------------------------------|--|
| | | | | Group Symbol | Group Name ^B | |
| COARSE-GRAINED SOILS | Gravels (more than 50% of coarse fraction retained on No. 4 sieve) | Clean Gravels (Less than 5% fines ^C) | $Cu \geq 4$ and $1 \leq Cc \leq 3^D$ | GW | Well-graded gravel ^E | |
| | | Gravels with Fines (More than 12% fines ^C) | $Cu < 4$ and/or $[Cc < 1$ or $Cc > 3]^D$ | GP | Poorly graded gravel ^E | |
| | | | Fines classify as ML or MH | GM | Silty gravel ^{E, F, G} | |
| | More than 50% retained on No. 200 sieve | Sands (50% or more of coarse fraction passes No. 4 sieve) | Clean Sands (Less than 5% fines ^H) | $Cu \geq 6$ and $1 \leq Cc \leq 3^D$ | SW | Well-graded sand ^I |
| | | | Sands with Fines (More than 12% fines ^H) | $Cu < 6$ and/or $[Cc < 1$ or $Cc > 3]^D$ | SP | Poorly graded sand ^I |
| | | Fines classify as CL or CH | | SM | Silty sand ^{F, G, I} | |
| FINE-GRAINED SOILS | Silts and Clays | inorganic | $PI > 7$ and plots on or above "A" line ^J | CL | Lean clay ^{K, L, M} | |
| | | organic | $PI < 4$ or plots below "A" line ^J | ML | Silt ^{K, L, M} | |
| | 50% or more passes the No. 200 sieve | Silts and Clays | inorganic | Liquid limit - oven dried / Liquid & #10 < 0.75 | OL | Organic clay ^{K, L, M, N} Organic silt ^{K, L, M, O} |
| | | | organic | PI plots on or above "A" line | CH | Fat clay ^{K, L, M} |
| | | Silts and Clays | inorganic | PI plots below "A" line | MH | Elastic silt ^{K, L, M} |
| | | | organic | Liquid limit - oven dried / Liquid & #10 < 0.75 | OH | Organic clay ^{K, L, M, P} Organic silt ^{K, L, M, Q} |
| | | HIGHLY ORGANIC SOILS | Primarily organic matter, dark in color, and organic odor | | PT | Peat |

^ABased on the material passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve.

^BIf field sample contained cobbles or boulders, or both, add "with cobbles or boulders, or both" to group name.

^CGravels with 5 to 12% fines require dual symbols:

- GW-GM well-graded gravel with silt
- GW-GC well-graded gravel with clay
- GP-GM poorly graded gravel with silt
- GP-GC poorly graded gravel with clay

$$^D Cu = D_{60}/D_{10} \quad Cc = \frac{(D_{30})^2}{D_{10} \times D_{60}}$$

^EIf soil contains $\geq 15\%$ sand, add "with sand" to group name.

^FIf fines classify as CL-ML, use dual symbol GC-GM, or SC-SM.

^GIf fines are organic, add "with organic fines" to group name.

^HSands with 5 to 12% fines require dual symbols:

- SW-SM well-graded sand with silt
- SW-SC well-graded sand with clay
- SP-SM poorly graded sand with silt
- SP-SC poorly graded sand with clay

^IIf soil contains $\geq 15\%$ gravel, add "with gravel" to group name.

^JIf Atterberg limits plot in hatched area, soil is a CL-ML, silty clay.

^KIf soil contains 15 to 30% plus No. 200, add "with sand" or "with gravel", whichever is predominant.

^LIf soil contains $\geq 30\%$ plus No. 200, predominantly sand, add "sandy" to group name.

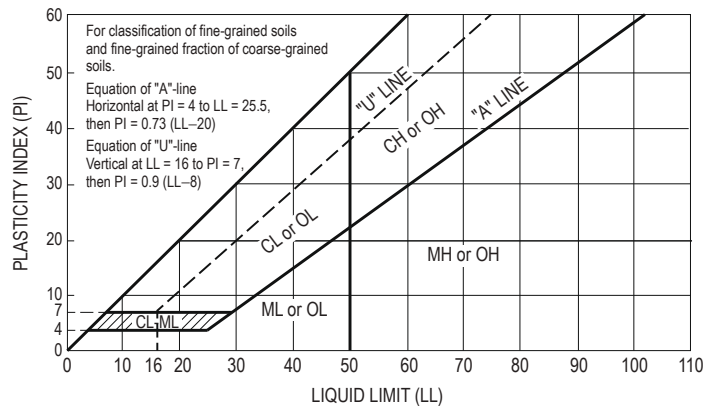
^MIf soil contains $\geq 30\%$ plus No. 200, predominantly gravel, add "gravelly" to group name.

^N $PI \geq 4$ and plots on or above "A" line.

^O $PI < 4$ or plots below "A" line.

^PPI plots on or above "A" line.

^QPI plots below "A" line.

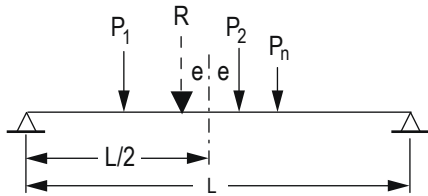


STRUCTURAL ANALYSIS

Influence Lines for Beams and Trusses

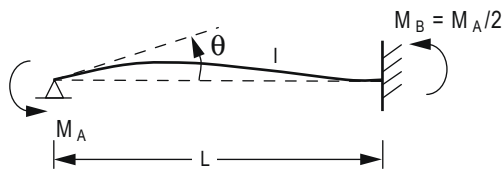
An influence line shows the variation of an effect (reaction, shear and moment in beams, bar force in a truss) caused by moving a unit load across the structure. An influence line is used to determine the position of a moveable set of loads that causes the maximum value of the effect.

Moving Concentrated Load Sets



The **absolute maximum moment** produced in a beam by a set of "n" moving loads occurs when the resultant "R" of the load set and an adjacent load are equal distance from the centerline of the beam. In general, two possible load set positions must be considered, one for each adjacent load.

Beam Stiffness and Moment Carryover



$$\theta = \frac{M L}{4 E I} \Rightarrow M = \left(\frac{4 E I}{L} \right) \theta = k_{AB} \theta$$

$$k_{AB} = \text{stiffness} \quad M_B = M_A/2 = \text{carryover}$$

Truss Deflection by Unit Load Method

The displacement of a truss joint caused by external effects (truss loads, member temperature change, member misfit) is found by applying a unit load at the point that corresponds to the desired displacement.

$$\Delta_{\text{joint}} = \sum_{i=1}^{\text{members}} f_i (\Delta L)_i$$

where: Δ_{joint} = joint displacement at point of application of unit load (+ in direction of unit load)

f_i = force in member "i" caused by unit load (+ tension)

$(\Delta L)_i$ = change in length caused by external effect (+ for increase in member length):

$$= \left(\frac{F L}{A E} \right)_i \text{ for bar force } F \text{ caused by external load}$$

$$= \alpha L_i (\Delta T)_i \text{ for temperature change in member } (\alpha = \text{coefficient of thermal expansion})$$

= member misfit

L, A = member length and cross-sectional area

E = member elastic modulus

Frame Deflection by Unit Load Method

The displacement of any point on a frame caused by external loads is found by applying a unit load at that point that corresponds to the desired displacement:

$$\Delta = \sum_{i=1}^{\text{members}} \int_{x=0}^{x=L_i} \frac{m_i M_i}{E I_i} dx$$

where: Δ = displacement at point of application of unit load (+ in direction of unit load)

m_i = moment equation in member "i" caused by the unit load

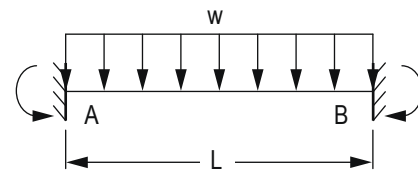
M_i = moment equation in member "i" caused by loads applied to frame

L_i = length of member "i"

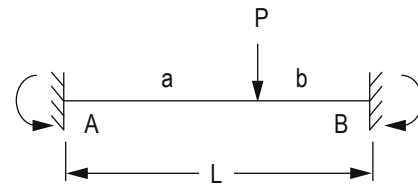
I_i = moment of inertia of member "i"

If either the real loads or the unit load cause no moment in a member, that member can be omitted from the summation.

Member Fixed-End Moments (Magnitudes)



$$FEM_{AB} = FEM_{BA} = \frac{w L^2}{12}$$



$$FEM_{AB} = \frac{P a b^2}{L^2} \quad FEM_{BA} = \frac{P a^2 b}{L^2}$$

STABILITY, DETERMINACY, AND CLASSIFICATION OF STRUCTURES

m = number of members

r = number of independent reaction components

j = number of joints

c = number of condition equations based on known internal moments or forces, such as internal moment of zero at a hinge

Plane Truss

Static Analysis

Classification

$m + r < 2j$ Unstable

$m + r = 2j$ Stable and statically determinate

$m + r > 2j$ Stable and statically indeterminate

Plane Frame

Static Analysis Classification

- $3m + r < 3j + c$ Unstable
 $3m + r = 3j + c$ Stable and statically determinate
 $3m + r > 3j + c$ Stable and statically indeterminate

Stability also requires an appropriate arrangement of members and reaction components.

STRUCTURAL DESIGN

Live Load Reduction

The effect on a building member of nominal occupancy live loads may often be reduced based on the loaded floor area supported by the member. A typical model used for computing reduced live load (as found in ASCE 7 and many building codes) is:

For members supporting one floor

$$L_{\text{reduced}} = L_{\text{nominal}} \left(0.25 + \frac{15}{\sqrt{K_u A_T}} \right) \geq 0.5 L_{\text{nominal}}$$

For members supporting two or more floors

$$L_{\text{reduced}} = L_{\text{nominal}} \left(0.25 + \frac{15}{\sqrt{K_{LL} A_T}} \right) \geq 0.4 L_{\text{nominal}}$$

where: L_{nominal} = nominal live load given in ASCE 7 or a building code

A_T = the cumulative floor tributary area supported by the member

$K_{LL} A_T$ = area of influence supported by the member

K_{LL} = ratio of area of influence to the tributary area supported by the member:

$K_{LL} = 4$ (typical columns)

$K_{LL} = 2$ (typical beams and girders)

Load Combinations using Strength Design (LRFD, USD)

Nominal loads used in following combinations:

- D = dead loads
 E = earthquake loads
 L = live loads (floor)
 L_r = live loads (roof)
 R = rain load
 S = snow load
 W = wind load

Load factors λ : λ_D (dead load), λ_L (live load), etc.

Basic combinations $L_r/S/R = \text{largest of } L_r, S, R$
 $L \text{ or } 0.8W = \text{larger of } L, 0.8W$

$1.4D$

$1.2D + 1.6L + 0.5(L_r/S/R)$

$1.2D + 1.6(L_r/S/R) + (L \text{ or } 0.8W)$

$1.2D + 1.6W + L + 0.5(L_r/S/R)$

$1.2D + 1.0E + L + 0.2S$

$0.9D + 1.6W$

$0.9D + 1.0E$

DESIGN OF REINFORCED CONCRETE COMPONENTS (ACI 318-11)

U.S. Customary units

Definitions

a = depth of equivalent rectangular stress block, in.

A_g = gross area of column, in²

A_s = area of tension reinforcement, in²

A_{st} = total area of longitudinal reinforcement, in²

A_v = area of shear reinforcement within a distance s , in.

b = width of compression face of member, in.

β_1 = ratio of depth of rectangular stress block, a , to depth to neutral axis, c

$$= 0.85 \geq 0.85 - 0.05 \left(\frac{f'_c - 4,000}{1,000} \right) \geq 0.65$$

c = distance from extreme compression fiber to neutral axis, in.

d = distance from extreme compression fiber to centroid of nonprestressed tension reinforcement, in.

d_t = distance from extreme compression fiber to extreme tension steel, in.

E_c = modulus of elasticity = $33w_c^{1.5} \sqrt{f'_c}$, psi

ϵ_t = net tensile strain in extreme tension steel at nominal strength

f'_c = compressive strength of concrete, psi

f_y = yield strength of steel reinforcement, psi

M_n = nominal moment strength at section, in.-lb

ϕM_n = design moment strength at section, in.-lb

M_u = factored moment at section, in.-lb

P_n = nominal axial load strength at given eccentricity, lb

ϕP_n = design axial load strength at given eccentricity, lb

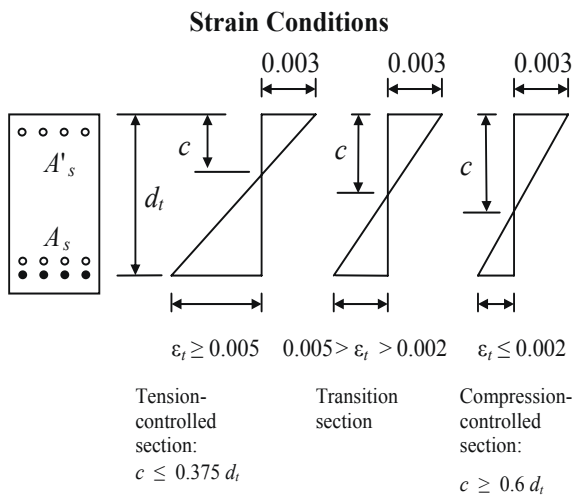
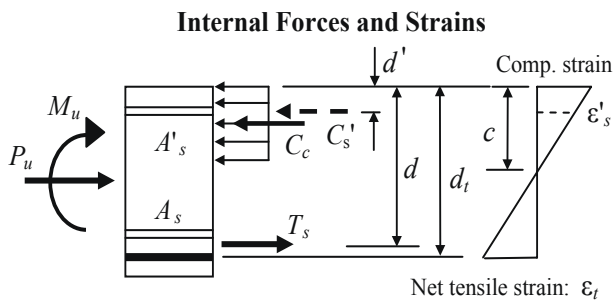
P_u = factored axial force at section, lb

ρ_g = ratio of total reinforcement area to cross-sectional area of column = A_{st}/A_g

- s = spacing of shear ties measured along longitudinal axis of member, in.
- V_c = nominal shear strength provided by concrete, lb
- V_n = nominal shear strength at section, lb
- ϕV_n = design shear strength at section, lb
- V_s = nominal shear strength provided by reinforcement, lb
- V_u = factored shear force at section, lb

| ASTM STANDARD REINFORCING BARS | | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| BAR SIZE | DIAMETER, IN. | AREA, IN ² | WEIGHT, LB/FT |
| #3 | 0.375 | 0.11 | 0.376 |
| #4 | 0.500 | 0.20 | 0.668 |
| #5 | 0.625 | 0.31 | 1.043 |
| #6 | 0.750 | 0.44 | 1.502 |
| #7 | 0.875 | 0.60 | 2.044 |
| #8 | 1.000 | 0.79 | 2.670 |
| #9 | 1.128 | 1.00 | 3.400 |
| #10 | 1.270 | 1.27 | 4.303 |
| #11 | 1.410 | 1.56 | 5.313 |
| #14 | 1.693 | 2.25 | 7.650 |
| #18 | 2.257 | 4.00 | 13.60 |

UNIFIED DESIGN PROVISIONS



RESISTANCE FACTORS, ϕ

- Tension-controlled sections ($\epsilon_t \geq 0.005$): $\phi = 0.9$
- Compression-controlled sections ($\epsilon_t \leq 0.002$):
 - Members with tied reinforcement $\phi = 0.65$
 - Transition sections ($0.002 < \epsilon_t < 0.005$):
 - Members with tied reinforcement $\phi = 0.48 + 83\epsilon_t$
- Shear and torsion $\phi = 0.75$
- Bearing on concrete $\phi = 0.65$

BEAMS—FLEXURE

$$\phi M_n \geq M_u$$

For All Beams

Net tensile strain: $a = \beta_1 c$

$$\epsilon_t = \frac{0.003(d_t - c)}{c} = \frac{0.003(\beta_1 d_t - a)}{a}$$

Design moment strength: ϕM_n

- where: $\phi = 0.9$ [$\epsilon_t \geq 0.005$]
- $\phi = 0.48 + 83\epsilon_t$ [$0.002 \leq \epsilon_t < 0.005$]
- $\phi = 0.65$ [$\epsilon_t < 0.002$]

Singly-Reinforced Beams

$$a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.85 f'_c b}$$

$$M_n = 0.85 f'_c a b \left(d - \frac{a}{2} \right) = A_s f_y \left(d - \frac{a}{2} \right)$$

BEAMS—SHEAR

$$\phi V_n \geq V_u$$

Nominal shear strength:

$$V_n = V_c + V_s$$

$$V_c = 2 b_w d \sqrt{f'_c}$$

$$V_s = \frac{A_v f_y d}{s} \text{ (may not exceed } 8 b_w d \sqrt{f'_c} \text{)}$$

Required and maximum-permitted stirrup spacing, s

$V_u \leq \frac{\phi V_c}{2}$: No stirrups required

$V_u > \frac{\phi V_c}{2}$: Use the following table (A_v given)

| | $\frac{\phi V_c}{2} < V_u \leq \phi V_c$ | $V_u > \phi V_c$ |
|---------------------------|---|--|
| Required spacing | Smaller of: $s = \frac{A_v f_y}{50 b_w}$ $s = \frac{A_v f_y}{0.75 b_w \sqrt{f_c'}}$ | $V_s = \frac{V_u}{\phi} - V_c$ $s = \frac{A_v f_y d}{V_s}$ |
| Maximum permitted spacing | Smaller of: $s = \frac{d}{2}$ OR $s = 24''$ | $V_s \leq 4 b_w d \sqrt{f_c'}$ Smaller of: $s = \frac{d}{2}$ OR $s = 24''$ <hr/> $V_s > 4 b_w d \sqrt{f_c'}$ Smaller of: $s = \frac{d}{4}$ $s = 12''$ |

SHORT COLUMNS

Limits for Main Reinforcements

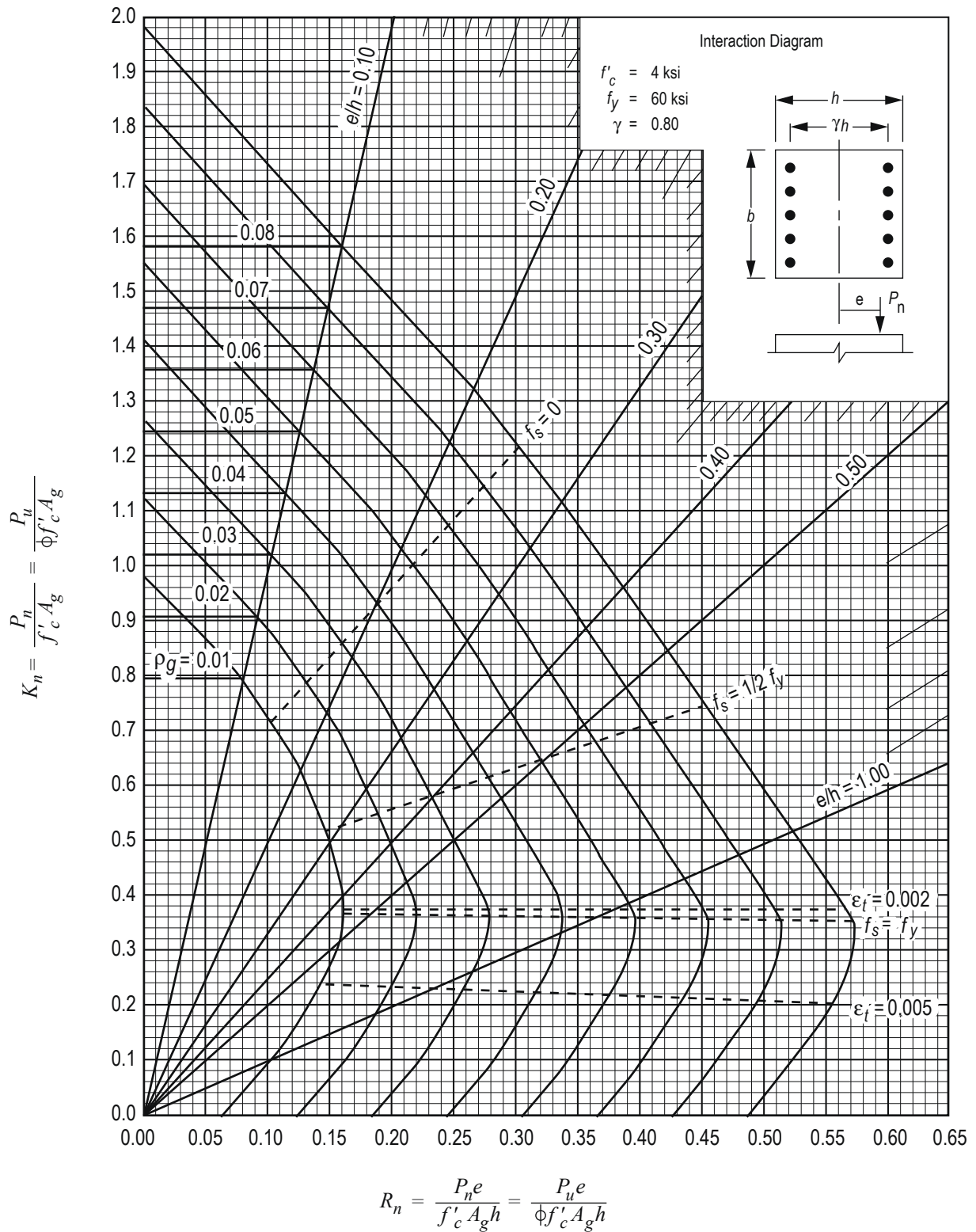
$$\rho_g = \frac{A_{st}}{A_g}$$

$$0.01 \leq \rho_g \leq 0.08$$

Design Column Strength, Tied Columns

$$\phi = 0.65$$

$$\phi P_n = 0.80 \phi [0.85 f_c' (A_g - A_{st}) + A_{st} f_y]$$



GRAPH A.11

Column strength interaction diagram for rectangular section with bars on end faces and $\gamma = 0.80$ (for instructional use only).

Nilson, Arthur H., David Darwin, and Charles W. Dolan, *Design of Concrete Structures*, 13th ed., McGraw-Hill, 2004.

DESIGN OF STEEL COMPONENTS (ANSI/AISC 360-10)

LRFD, $E = 29,000$ ksi

BEAMS

For doubly symmetric compact I-shaped members bent about their major axis, the *design flexural strength* $\phi_b M_n$ is determined with $\phi_b = 0.90$ as follows:

Yielding

$$M_n = M_p = F_y Z_x$$

where

F_y = specified minimum yield stress

Z_x = plastic section modulus about the x-axis

Lateral-Torsional Buckling

Based on bracing where L_b is the length between points that are either braced against lateral displacement of the compression flange or braced against twist of the cross section with respect to the length limits L_p and L_r :

When $L_b \leq L_p$, the limit state of lateral-torsional buckling does not apply.

When $L_p < L_b \leq L_r$

$$M_n = C_b \left[M_p - (M_p - 0.7 F_y S_x) \left(\frac{L_b - L_p}{L_r - L_p} \right) \right] \leq M_p$$

where

$$C_b = \frac{12.5 M_{\max}}{2.5 M_{\max} + 3 M_A + 4 M_B + 3 M_C}$$

M_{\max} = absolute value of maximum moment in the unbraced segment

M_A = absolute value of maximum moment at quarter point of the unbraced segment

M_B = absolute value of maximum moment at centerline of the unbraced segment

M_C = absolute value of maximum moment at three-quarter of the unbraced segment

Shear

The *design shear strength* $\phi_v V_n$ is determined with $\phi_v = 1.00$ for webs of rolled I-shaped members and is determined as follows:

$$V_n = 0.6 F_y A_w C_v$$

$$C_v = 1.0$$

A_w = area of web, the overall depth times the web thickness, dt_w , in² (mm²)

COLUMNS

The *design compressive strength* $\phi_c P_n$ is determined with $\phi_c = 0.90$ for flexural buckling of members without slender elements and is determined as follows:

$$P_n = F_{cr} A_g$$

where the critical stress F_{cr} is determined as follows:

$$(a) \text{ When } \frac{KL}{r} \leq 4.71 \sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}, F_{cr} = \left[0.658 \frac{F_y}{F_c} \right] F_y$$

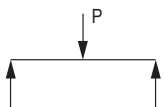
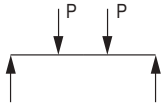
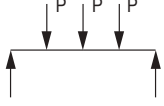
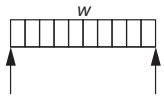
$$(b) \text{ When } \frac{KL}{r} > 4.71 \sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}, F_{cr} = 0.877 F_e$$

where

KL/r is the effective slenderness ratio based on the column effective length (KL) and radius of gyration (r)

KL is determined from AISC Table C-A-7.1 or AISC Figures C-A-7.1 and C-A-7.2 in the Civil Engineering section of this handbook.

F_e is the elastic buckling stress = $\pi^2 E / (KL/r)^2$

| VALUES OF C_b FOR SIMPLY SUPPORTED BEAMS | | |
|--|--|-------|
| LOAD | LATERAL BRACING ALONG SPAN | C_b |
|  | NONE LOAD AT MIDPOINT | 1.32 |
| | AT LOAD POINT | 1.67 |
|  | NONE LOADS AT THIRD POINTS | 1.14 |
| | AT LOAD POINTS LOADS SYMMETRICALLY PLACED | 1.67 |
|  | NONE LOADS AT QUARTER POINTS | 1.14 |
| | AT LOAD POINTS LOADS AT QUARTER POINTS | 1.67 |
|  | NONE | 1.14 |
| | AT MIDPOINT | 1.30 |
| | AT THIRD POINTS | 1.45 |
| | AT QUARTER POINTS | 1.52 |
| | AT FIFTH POINTS | 1.56 |

NOTE: LATERAL BRACING MUST ALWAYS BE PROVIDED AT POINTS OF SUPPORT PER AISC SPECIFICATION CHAPTER F.
Adapted from *Steel Construction Manual*, 14th ed., AISC, 2011.

TENSION MEMBERS

Flat bars or angles, bolted or welded

Definitions

Bolt diameter: d_b

Nominal hole diameter: $d_h = d_b + 1/16"$

Gross width of member: b_g

Member thickness: t

Connection eccentricity: \bar{x}

Gross area: $A_g = b_g t$ (use tabulated areas for angles)

Net area (parallel holes): $A_n = \left[b_g - \sum \left(d_h + \frac{1}{16} " \right) \right] t$

Net area (staggered holes):

$$A_n = \left[b_g - \sum \left(d_h + \frac{1}{16} " \right) + \sum \frac{s^2}{4g} \right] t$$

s = longitudinal spacing of consecutive holes

g = transverse spacing between lines of holes

Effective area (bolted members):

$$A_e = UA_n \quad \begin{cases} \text{Flat bars: } U = 1.0 \\ \text{Angles: } U = 1 - \bar{x}/L \end{cases}$$

Effective area (welded members):

$$A_e = UA_n \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Flat bars or angles with transverse welds: } U = 1.0 \\ \text{Flat bars of width "w", longitudinal welds of length "L" only:} \\ \quad U = 1.0 \quad (L \geq 2w) \\ \quad U = 0.87 \quad (2w > L \geq 1.5w) \\ \quad U = 0.75 \quad (1.5w > L > w) \\ \text{Angles with longitudinal welds only} \\ \quad U = 1 - \bar{x}/L \end{array} \right.$$

Limit States and Available Strengths

Yielding: $\phi_y = 0.90$
 $\phi T_n = \phi_y F_y A_g$

Fracture: $\phi_f = 0.75$
 $\phi T_n = \phi_f F_u A_e$

Block shear: $\phi = 0.75$
 $U_{bs} = 1.0$ (flat bars and angles)
 A_{gv} = gross area for shear
 A_{nv} = net area for shear
 A_{nt} = net area for tension

$$\phi T_n = \underset{\text{smaller}}{\begin{cases} 0.75 F_u [0.6A_{nv} + U_{bs} A_{nt}] \\ 0.75 [0.6F_y A_{gv} + U_{bs} F_u A_{nt}] \end{cases}}$$

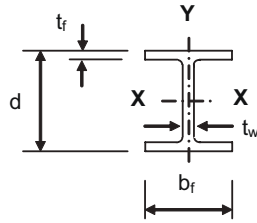


Table 1-1: W Shapes Dimensions and Properties

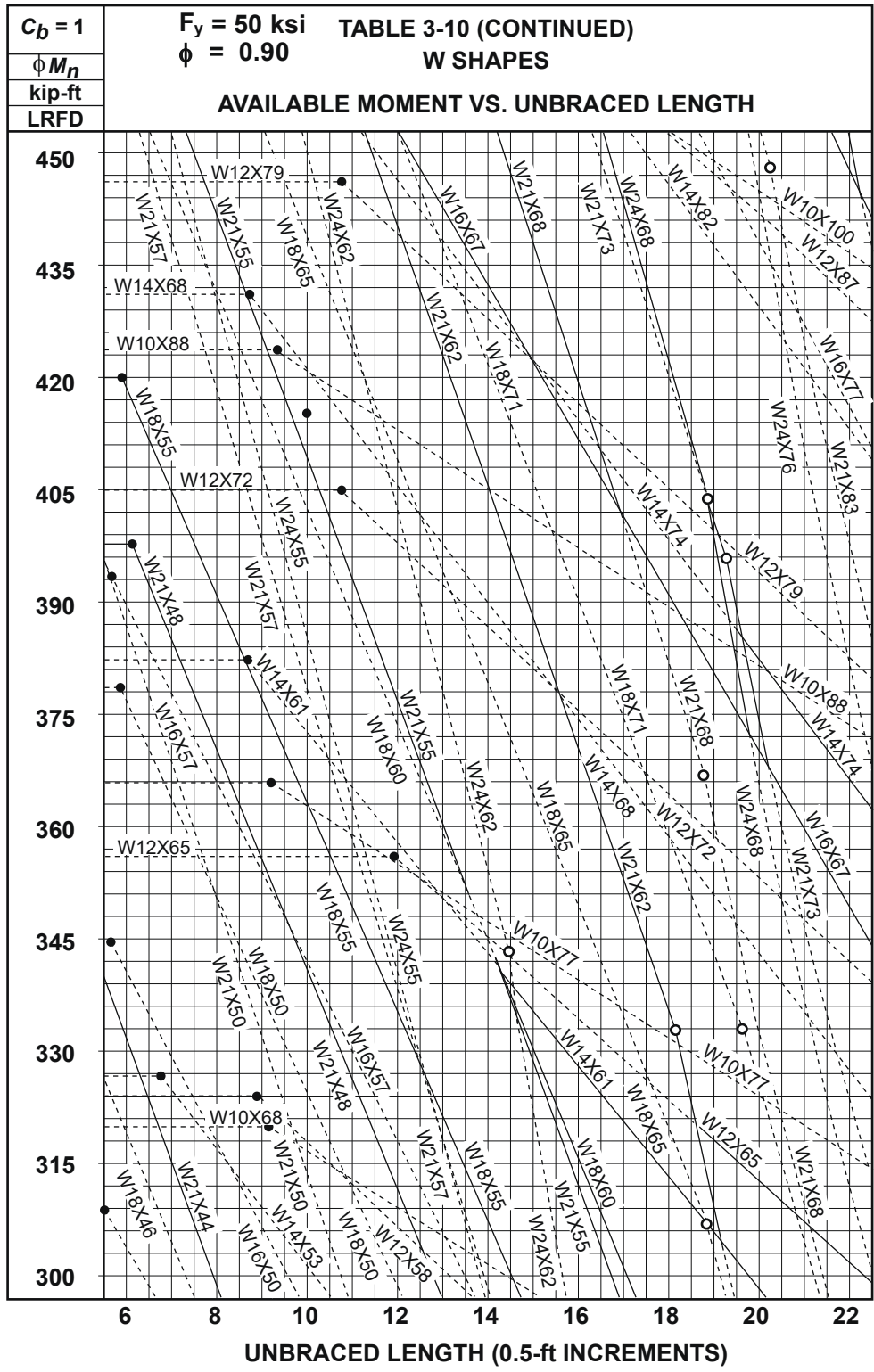
| Shape | Area | Depth | Web | Flange | | Axis X-X | | | | Axis Y-Y | |
|--------|------------------|-------|----------------|----------------|----------------|------------------|------------------|------|------------------|------------------|------|
| | A | d | t _w | b _f | t _f | I | S | r | Z | I | r |
| | In. ² | In. | In. | In. | In. | In. ⁴ | In. ³ | In. | In. ³ | In. ⁴ | In. |
| W24X68 | 20.1 | 23.7 | 0.415 | 8.97 | 0.585 | 1830 | 154 | 9.55 | 177 | 70.4 | 1.87 |
| W24X62 | 18.2 | 23.7 | 0.430 | 7.04 | 0.590 | 1550 | 131 | 9.23 | 153 | 34.5 | 1.38 |
| W24X55 | 16.3 | 23.6 | 0.395 | 7.01 | 0.505 | 1350 | 114 | 9.11 | 134 | 29.1 | 1.34 |
| W21X73 | 21.5 | 21.2 | 0.455 | 8.30 | 0.740 | 1600 | 151 | 8.64 | 172 | 70.6 | 1.81 |
| W21X68 | 20.0 | 21.1 | 0.430 | 8.27 | 0.685 | 1480 | 140 | 8.60 | 160 | 64.7 | 1.80 |
| W21X62 | 18.3 | 21.0 | 0.400 | 8.24 | 0.615 | 1330 | 127 | 8.54 | 144 | 57.5 | 1.77 |
| W21X55 | 16.2 | 20.8 | 0.375 | 8.22 | 0.522 | 1140 | 110 | 8.40 | 126 | 48.4 | 1.73 |
| W21X57 | 16.7 | 21.1 | 0.405 | 6.56 | 0.650 | 1170 | 111 | 8.36 | 129 | 30.6 | 1.35 |
| W21X50 | 14.7 | 20.8 | 0.380 | 6.53 | 0.535 | 984 | 94.5 | 8.18 | 110 | 24.9 | 1.30 |
| W21X48 | 14.1 | 20.6 | 0.350 | 8.14 | 0.430 | 959 | 93.0 | 8.24 | 107 | 38.7 | 1.66 |
| W21X44 | 13.0 | 20.7 | 0.350 | 6.50 | 0.450 | 843 | 81.6 | 8.06 | 95.4 | 20.7 | 1.26 |
| W18X71 | 20.8 | 18.5 | 0.495 | 7.64 | 0.810 | 1170 | 127 | 7.50 | 146 | 60.3 | 1.70 |
| W18X65 | 19.1 | 18.4 | 0.450 | 7.59 | 0.750 | 1070 | 117 | 7.49 | 133 | 54.8 | 1.69 |
| W18X60 | 17.6 | 18.2 | 0.415 | 7.56 | 0.695 | 984 | 108 | 7.47 | 123 | 50.1 | 1.68 |
| W18X55 | 16.2 | 18.1 | 0.390 | 7.53 | 0.630 | 890 | 98.3 | 7.41 | 112 | 44.9 | 1.67 |
| W18X50 | 14.7 | 18.0 | 0.355 | 7.50 | 0.570 | 800 | 88.9 | 7.38 | 101 | 40.1 | 1.65 |
| W18X46 | 13.5 | 18.1 | 0.360 | 6.06 | 0.605 | 712 | 78.8 | 7.25 | 90.7 | 22.5 | 1.29 |
| W18X40 | 11.8 | 17.9 | 0.315 | 6.02 | 0.525 | 612 | 68.4 | 7.21 | 78.4 | 19.1 | 1.27 |
| W16X67 | 19.7 | 16.3 | 0.395 | 10.2 | 0.67 | 954 | 117 | 6.96 | 130 | 119 | 2.46 |
| W16X57 | 16.8 | 16.4 | 0.430 | 7.12 | 0.715 | 758 | 92.2 | 6.72 | 105 | 43.1 | 1.60 |
| W16X50 | 14.7 | 16.3 | 0.380 | 7.07 | 0.630 | 659 | 81.0 | 6.68 | 92.0 | 37.2 | 1.59 |
| W16X45 | 13.3 | 16.1 | 0.345 | 7.04 | 0.565 | 586 | 72.7 | 6.65 | 82.3 | 32.8 | 1.57 |
| W16X40 | 11.8 | 16.0 | 0.305 | 7.00 | 0.505 | 518 | 64.7 | 6.63 | 73.0 | 28.9 | 1.57 |
| W16X36 | 10.6 | 15.9 | 0.295 | 6.99 | 0.430 | 448 | 56.5 | 6.51 | 64.0 | 24.5 | 1.52 |
| W14X74 | 21.8 | 14.2 | 0.450 | 10.1 | 0.785 | 795 | 112 | 6.04 | 126 | 134 | 2.48 |
| W14X68 | 20.0 | 14.0 | 0.415 | 10.0 | 0.720 | 722 | 103 | 6.01 | 115 | 121 | 2.46 |
| W14X61 | 17.9 | 13.9 | 0.375 | 9.99 | 0.645 | 640 | 92.1 | 5.98 | 102 | 107 | 2.45 |
| W14X53 | 15.6 | 13.9 | 0.370 | 8.06 | 0.660 | 541 | 77.8 | 5.89 | 87.1 | 57.7 | 1.92 |
| W14X48 | 14.1 | 13.8 | 0.340 | 8.03 | 0.595 | 484 | 70.2 | 5.85 | 78.4 | 51.4 | 1.91 |
| W12X79 | 23.2 | 12.4 | 0.470 | 12.1 | 0.735 | 662 | 107 | 5.34 | 119 | 216 | 3.05 |
| W12X72 | 21.1 | 12.3 | 0.430 | 12.0 | 0.670 | 597 | 97.4 | 5.31 | 108 | 195 | 3.04 |
| W12X65 | 19.1 | 12.1 | 0.390 | 12.0 | 0.605 | 533 | 87.9 | 5.28 | 96.8 | 174 | 3.02 |
| W12X58 | 17.0 | 12.2 | 0.360 | 10.0 | 0.640 | 475 | 78.0 | 5.28 | 86.4 | 107 | 2.51 |
| W12X53 | 15.6 | 12.1 | 0.345 | 9.99 | 0.575 | 425 | 70.6 | 5.23 | 77.9 | 95.8 | 2.48 |
| W12X50 | 14.6 | 12.2 | 0.370 | 8.08 | 0.640 | 391 | 64.2 | 5.18 | 71.9 | 56.3 | 1.96 |
| W12X45 | 13.1 | 12.1 | 0.335 | 8.05 | 0.575 | 348 | 57.7 | 5.15 | 64.2 | 50.0 | 1.95 |
| W12X40 | 11.7 | 11.9 | 0.295 | 8.01 | 0.515 | 307 | 51.5 | 5.13 | 57.0 | 44.1 | 1.94 |
| W10x60 | 17.6 | 10.2 | 0.420 | 10.1 | 0.680 | 341 | 66.7 | 4.39 | 74.6 | 116 | 2.57 |
| W10x54 | 15.8 | 10.1 | 0.370 | 10.0 | 0.615 | 303 | 60.0 | 4.37 | 66.6 | 103 | 2.56 |
| W10x49 | 14.4 | 10.0 | 0.340 | 10.0 | 0.560 | 272 | 54.6 | 4.35 | 60.4 | 93.4 | 2.54 |
| W10x45 | 13.3 | 10.1 | 0.350 | 8.02 | 0.620 | 248 | 49.1 | 4.32 | 54.9 | 53.4 | 2.01 |
| W10x39 | 11.5 | 9.92 | 0.315 | 7.99 | 0.530 | 209 | 42.1 | 4.27 | 46.8 | 45.0 | 1.98 |

Adapted from *Steel Construction Manual*, 14th ed., AISC, 2011.

| Z_x | | AISC Table 3-2 W Shapes – Selection by Z_x | | | | | F_y = 50 ksi φ_b = 0.90 φ_v = 1.00 | |
|----------------------|--|---|---|---------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|---|---|
| Shape | Z_x in.³ | φ_bM_{px} kip-ft | φ_bM_{rx} kip-ft | φ_bBF kips | L_p ft. | L_r ft. | I_x in.⁴ | φ_vV_{nx} kips |
| W24 x 55 | 134 | 503 | 299 | 22.2 | 4.73 | 13.9 | 1350 | 251 |
| W18 x 65 | 133 | 499 | 307 | 14.9 | 5.97 | 18.8 | 1070 | 248 |
| W12 x 87 | 132 | 495 | 310 | 5.76 | 10.8 | 43.0 | 740 | 194 |
| W16 x 67 | 130 | 488 | 307 | 10.4 | 8.69 | 26.1 | 954 | 194 |
| W10 x 100 | 130 | 488 | 294 | 4.01 | 9.36 | 57.7 | 623 | 226 |
| W21 x 57 | 129 | 484 | 291 | 20.1 | 4.77 | 14.3 | 1170 | 256 |
| W21 x 55 | 126 | 473 | 289 | 16.3 | 6.11 | 17.4 | 1140 | 234 |
| W14 x 74 | 126 | 473 | 294 | 8.03 | 8.76 | 31.0 | 795 | 191 |
| W18 x 60 | 123 | 461 | 284 | 14.5 | 5.93 | 18.2 | 984 | 227 |
| W12 x 79 | 119 | 446 | 281 | 5.67 | 10.8 | 39.9 | 662 | 175 |
| W14 x 68 | 115 | 431 | 270 | 7.81 | 8.69 | 29.3 | 722 | 175 |
| W10 x 88 | 113 | 424 | 259 | 3.95 | 9.29 | 51.1 | 534 | 197 |
| W18 x 55 | 112 | 420 | 258 | 13.9 | 5.90 | 17.5 | 890 | 212 |
| W21 x 50 | 110 | 413 | 248 | 18.3 | 4.59 | 13.6 | 984 | 237 |
| W12 x 72 | 108 | 405 | 256 | 5.59 | 10.7 | 37.4 | 597 | 158 |
| W21 x 48 | 107 | 398 | 244 | 14.7 | 6.09 | 16.6 | 959 | 217 |
| W16 x 57 | 105 | 394 | 242 | 12.0 | 5.56 | 18.3 | 758 | 212 |
| W14 x 61 | 102 | 383 | 242 | 7.46 | 8.65 | 27.5 | 640 | 156 |
| W18 x 50 | 101 | 379 | 233 | 13.1 | 5.83 | 17.0 | 800 | 192 |
| W10 x 77 | 97.6 | 366 | 225 | 3.90 | 9.18 | 45.2 | 455 | 169 |
| W12 x 65 | 96.8 | 356 | 231 | 5.41 | 11.9 | 35.1 | 533 | 142 |
| W21 x 44 | 95.4 | 358 | 214 | 16.8 | 4.45 | 13.0 | 843 | 217 |
| W16 x 50 | 92.0 | 345 | 213 | 11.4 | 5.62 | 17.2 | 659 | 185 |
| W18 x 46 | 90.7 | 340 | 207 | 14.6 | 4.56 | 13.7 | 712 | 195 |
| W14 x 53 | 87.1 | 327 | 204 | 7.93 | 6.78 | 22.2 | 541 | 155 |
| W12 x 58 | 86.4 | 324 | 205 | 5.66 | 8.87 | 29.9 | 475 | 132 |
| W10 x 68 | 85.3 | 320 | 199 | 3.86 | 9.15 | 40.6 | 394 | 147 |
| W16 x 45 | 82.3 | 309 | 191 | 10.8 | 5.55 | 16.5 | 586 | 167 |
| W18 x 40 | 78.4 | 294 | 180 | 13.3 | 4.49 | 13.1 | 612 | 169 |
| W14 x 48 | 78.4 | 294 | 184 | 7.66 | 6.75 | 21.1 | 484 | 141 |
| W12 x 53 | 77.9 | 292 | 185 | 5.48 | 8.76 | 28.2 | 425 | 125 |
| W10 x 60 | 74.6 | 280 | 175 | 3.80 | 9.08 | 36.6 | 341 | 129 |
| W16 x 40 | 73.0 | 274 | 170 | 10.1 | 5.55 | 15.9 | 518 | 146 |
| W12 x 50 | 71.9 | 270 | 169 | 5.97 | 6.92 | 23.9 | 391 | 135 |
| W8 x 67 | 70.1 | 263 | 159 | 2.60 | 7.49 | 47.7 | 272 | 154 |
| W14 x 43 | 69.6 | 261 | 164 | 7.24 | 6.68 | 20.0 | 428 | 125 |
| W10 x 54 | 66.6 | 250 | 158 | 3.74 | 9.04 | 33.7 | 303 | 112 |
| W18 x 35 | 66.5 | 249 | 151 | 12.3 | 4.31 | 12.4 | 510 | 159 |
| W12 x 45 | 64.2 | 241 | 151 | 5.75 | 6.89 | 22.4 | 348 | 121 |
| W16 x 36 | 64.0 | 240 | 148 | 9.31 | 5.37 | 15.2 | 448 | 140 |
| W14 x 38 | 61.5 | 231 | 143 | 8.10 | 5.47 | 16.2 | 385 | 131 |
| W10 x 49 | 60.4 | 227 | 143 | 3.67 | 8.97 | 31.6 | 272 | 102 |
| W8 x 58 | 59.8 | 224 | 137 | 2.56 | 7.42 | 41.7 | 228 | 134 |
| W12 x 40 | 57.0 | 214 | 135 | 5.50 | 6.85 | 21.1 | 307 | 106 |
| W10 x 45 | 54.9 | 206 | 129 | 3.89 | 7.10 | 26.9 | 248 | 106 |

$$M_{rx} = (0.7F_y)S_x \quad BF = \frac{M_{px} - M_{rx}}{L_r - L_p}$$

Adapted from *Steel Construction Manual*, 14th ed., AISC, 2011.



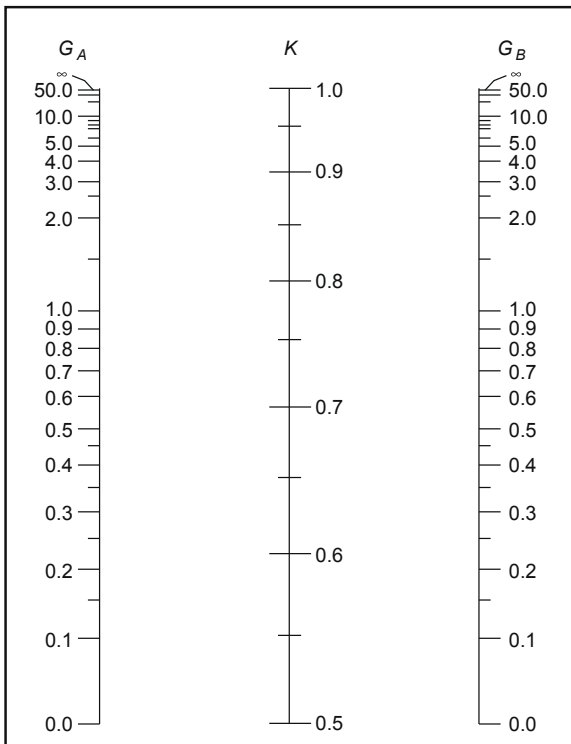
Steel Construction Manual, 14th ed., AISC, 2011.

| TABLE C-A-7.1 APPROXIMATE VALUES OF EFFECTIVE LENGTH FACTOR, K | | | | | | |
|---|--|------|-----|-----|------|-----|
| BUCKLED SHAPE OF COLUMN IS SHOWN BY DASHED LINE. | (a) | (b) | (c) | (d) | (e) | (f) |
| THEORETICAL K VALUE | 0.5 | 0.7 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 |
| RECOMMENDED DESIGN VALUE WHEN IDEAL CONDITIONS ARE APPROXIMATED | 0.65 | 0.80 | 1.2 | 1.0 | 2.10 | 2.0 |
| END CONDITION CODE | ROTATION FIXED AND TRANSLATION FIXED ROTATION FREE AND TRANSLATION FIXED ROTATION FIXED AND TRANSLATION FREE ROTATION FREE AND TRANSLATION FREE | | | | | |

FOR COLUMN ENDS SUPPORTED BY, BUT NOT RIGIDLY CONNECTED TO, A FOOTING OR FOUNDATION, G IS THEORETICALLY INFINITY BUT UNLESS DESIGNED AS A TRUE FRICTION-FREE PIN, MAY BE TAKEN AS 10 FOR PRACTICAL DESIGNS. IF THE COLUMN END IS RIGIDLY ATTACHED TO A PROPERLY DESIGNED FOOTING, G MAY BE TAKEN AS 1.0. SMALLER VALUES MAY BE USED IF JUSTIFIED BY ANALYSIS.

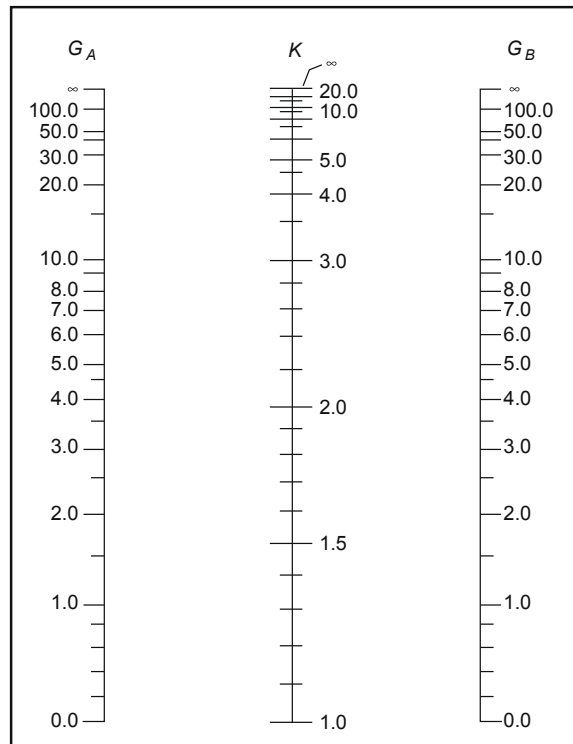
AISC Figure C-A-7.1

Alignment chart, sidesway inhibited (braced frame)



AISC Figure C-A-7.2

Alignment chart, sidesway uninhibited (moment frame)




Steel Construction Manual, 14th ed., AISC, 2011.

AISC Table 4-22
 Available Critical Stress $\phi_c F_{cr}$ for Compression Members
 $F_y = 50$ ksi $\phi_c = 0.90$

| $\frac{KL}{r}$ | ϕF_{cr} ksi | $\frac{KL}{r}$ | ϕF_{cr} ksi | $\frac{KL}{r}$ | ϕF_{cr} ksi | $\frac{KL}{r}$ | ϕF_{cr} ksi | $\frac{KL}{r}$ | ϕF_{cr} ksi |
|----------------|----------------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------|----------------------|
| 1 | 45.0 | 41 | 39.8 | 81 | 27.9 | 121 | 15.4 | 161 | 8.72 |
| 2 | 45.0 | 42 | 39.5 | 82 | 27.5 | 122 | 15.2 | 162 | 8.61 |
| 3 | 45.0 | 43 | 39.3 | 83 | 27.2 | 123 | 14.9 | 163 | 8.50 |
| 4 | 44.9 | 44 | 39.1 | 84 | 26.9 | 124 | 14.7 | 164 | 8.40 |
| 5 | 44.9 | 45 | 38.8 | 85 | 26.5 | 125 | 14.5 | 165 | 8.30 |
| 6 | 44.9 | 46 | 38.5 | 86 | 26.2 | 126 | 14.2 | 166 | 8.20 |
| 7 | 44.8 | 47 | 38.3 | 87 | 25.9 | 127 | 14.0 | 167 | 8.10 |
| 8 | 44.8 | 48 | 38.0 | 88 | 25.5 | 128 | 13.8 | 168 | 8.00 |
| 9 | 44.7 | 49 | 37.7 | 89 | 25.2 | 129 | 13.6 | 169 | 7.89 |
| 10 | 44.7 | 50 | 37.5 | 90 | 24.9 | 130 | 13.4 | 170 | 7.82 |
| 11 | 44.6 | 51 | 37.2 | 91 | 24.6 | 131 | 13.2 | 171 | 7.73 |
| 12 | 44.5 | 52 | 36.9 | 92 | 24.2 | 132 | 13.0 | 172 | 7.64 |
| 13 | 44.4 | 53 | 36.7 | 93 | 23.9 | 133 | 12.8 | 173 | 7.55 |
| 14 | 44.4 | 54 | 36.4 | 94 | 23.6 | 134 | 12.6 | 174 | 7.46 |
| 15 | 44.3 | 55 | 36.1 | 95 | 23.3 | 135 | 12.4 | 175 | 7.38 |
| 16 | 44.2 | 56 | 35.8 | 96 | 22.9 | 136 | 12.2 | 176 | 7.29 |
| 17 | 44.1 | 57 | 35.5 | 97 | 22.6 | 137 | 12.0 | 177 | 7.21 |
| 18 | 43.9 | 58 | 35.2 | 98 | 22.3 | 138 | 11.9 | 178 | 7.13 |
| 19 | 43.8 | 59 | 34.9 | 99 | 22.0 | 139 | 11.7 | 179 | 7.05 |
| 20 | 43.7 | 60 | 34.6 | 100 | 21.7 | 140 | 11.5 | 180 | 6.97 |
| 21 | 43.6 | 61 | 34.3 | 101 | 21.3 | 141 | 11.4 | 181 | 6.90 |
| 22 | 43.4 | 62 | 34.0 | 102 | 21.0 | 142 | 11.2 | 182 | 6.82 |
| 23 | 43.3 | 63 | 33.7 | 103 | 20.7 | 143 | 11.0 | 183 | 6.75 |
| 24 | 43.1 | 64 | 33.4 | 104 | 20.4 | 144 | 10.9 | 184 | 6.67 |
| 25 | 43.0 | 65 | 33.0 | 105 | 20.1 | 145 | 10.7 | 185 | 6.60 |
| 26 | 42.8 | 66 | 32.7 | 106 | 19.8 | 146 | 10.6 | 186 | 6.53 |
| 27 | 42.7 | 67 | 32.4 | 107 | 19.5 | 147 | 10.5 | 187 | 6.46 |
| 28 | 42.5 | 68 | 32.1 | 108 | 19.2 | 148 | 10.3 | 188 | 6.39 |
| 29 | 42.3 | 69 | 31.8 | 109 | 18.9 | 149 | 10.2 | 189 | 6.32 |
| 30 | 42.1 | 70 | 31.4 | 110 | 18.6 | 150 | 10.0 | 190 | 6.26 |
| 31 | 41.9 | 71 | 31.1 | 111 | 18.3 | 151 | 9.91 | 191 | 6.19 |
| 32 | 41.8 | 72 | 30.8 | 112 | 18.0 | 152 | 9.78 | 192 | 6.13 |
| 33 | 41.6 | 73 | 30.5 | 113 | 17.7 | 153 | 9.65 | 193 | 6.06 |
| 34 | 41.4 | 74 | 30.2 | 114 | 17.4 | 154 | 9.53 | 194 | 6.00 |
| 35 | 41.2 | 75 | 29.8 | 115 | 17.1 | 155 | 9.40 | 195 | 5.94 |
| 36 | 40.9 | 76 | 29.5 | 116 | 16.8 | 156 | 9.28 | 196 | 5.88 |
| 37 | 40.7 | 77 | 29.2 | 117 | 16.5 | 157 | 9.17 | 197 | 5.82 |
| 38 | 40.5 | 78 | 28.8 | 118 | 16.2 | 158 | 9.05 | 198 | 5.76 |
| 39 | 40.3 | 79 | 28.5 | 119 | 16.0 | 159 | 8.94 | 199 | 5.70 |
| 40 | 40.0 | 80 | 28.2 | 120 | 15.7 | 160 | 8.82 | 200 | 5.65 |

Adapted from *Steel Construction Manual*, 14th ed., AISC, 2011.

|  Selected W14, W12, W10 | | AISC Table 4-1 Available Strength in Axial Compression, kips—W shapes LRFD: ϕP_n | | | | | | | | | | | $F_y = 50 \text{ ksi}$ $\phi_c = 0.90$ | | | |
|---|-----|--|-----|------|------|-----|------|------|------|------|-----|-----|---|------|------|--|
| Shape wt/ft | W14 | | | | | W12 | | | | | W10 | | | | | |
| | 74 | 68 | 61 | 53 | 48 | 58 | 53 | 50 | 45 | 40 | 60 | 54 | 49 | 45 | 39 | |
| 0 | 980 | 899 | 806 | 702 | 636 | 767 | 701 | 657 | 590 | 526 | 794 | 712 | 649 | 597 | 516 | |
| 6 | 922 | 844 | 757 | 633 | 573 | 722 | 659 | 595 | 534 | 475 | 750 | 672 | 612 | 543 | 469 | |
| 7 | 901 | 826 | 740 | 610 | 552 | 707 | 644 | 574 | 516 | 458 | 734 | 658 | 599 | 525 | 452 | |
| 8 | 878 | 804 | 721 | 585 | 529 | 689 | 628 | 551 | 495 | 439 | 717 | 643 | 585 | 505 | 435 | |
| 9 | 853 | 781 | 700 | 557 | 504 | 670 | 610 | 526 | 472 | 419 | 698 | 625 | 569 | 483 | 415 | |
| 10 | 826 | 755 | 677 | 528 | 477 | 649 | 590 | 499 | 448 | 397 | 677 | 607 | 551 | 460 | 395 | |
| 11 | 797 | 728 | 652 | 497 | 449 | 627 | 569 | 471 | 422 | 375 | 655 | 586 | 533 | 435 | 373 | |
| 12 | 766 | 700 | 626 | 465 | 420 | 603 | 547 | 443 | 396 | 351 | 631 | 565 | 513 | 410 | 351 | |
| 13 | 734 | 670 | 599 | 433 | 391 | 578 | 525 | 413 | 370 | 328 | 606 | 543 | 493 | 384 | 328 | |
| 14 | 701 | 639 | 572 | 401 | 361 | 553 | 501 | 384 | 343 | 304 | 581 | 520 | 471 | 358 | 305 | |
| 15 | 667 | 608 | 543 | 369 | 332 | 527 | 477 | 354 | 317 | 280 | 555 | 496 | 450 | 332 | 282 | |
| 16 | 632 | 576 | 515 | 338 | 304 | 500 | 452 | 326 | 291 | 257 | 528 | 472 | 428 | 306 | 260 | |
| 17 | 598 | 544 | 486 | 308 | 276 | 473 | 427 | 297 | 265 | 234 | 501 | 448 | 405 | 281 | 238 | |
| 18 | 563 | 512 | 457 | 278 | 250 | 446 | 402 | 270 | 241 | 212 | 474 | 423 | 383 | 256 | 216 | |
| 19 | 528 | 480 | 428 | 250 | 224 | 420 | 378 | 244 | 217 | 191 | 447 | 399 | 360 | 233 | 195 | |
| 20 | 494 | 448 | 400 | 226 | 202 | 393 | 353 | 220 | 196 | 172 | 420 | 375 | 338 | 210 | 176 | |
| 22 | 428 | 387 | 345 | 186 | 167 | 342 | 306 | 182 | 162 | 142 | 367 | 327 | 295 | 174 | 146 | |
| 24 | 365 | 329 | 293 | 157 | 140 | 293 | 261 | 153 | 136 | 120 | 317 | 282 | 254 | 146 | 122 | |
| 26 | 311 | 281 | 250 | 133 | 120 | 249 | 222 | 130 | 116 | 102 | 270 | 241 | 216 | 124 | 104 | |
| 28 | 268 | 242 | 215 | 115 | 103 | 215 | 192 | 112 | 99.8 | 88.0 | 233 | 208 | 186 | 107 | 90.0 | |
| 30 | 234 | 211 | 187 | 100 | 89.9 | 187 | 167 | 97.7 | 87.0 | 76.6 | 203 | 181 | 162 | 93.4 | 78.4 | |
| 32 | 205 | 185 | 165 | 88.1 | | 165 | 147 | 82.9 | 76.4 | 67.3 | 179 | 159 | 143 | 82.1 | 68.9 | |
| 34 | 182 | 164 | 146 | | | 146 | 130 | | | | 158 | 141 | 126 | | | |
| 36 | 162 | 146 | 130 | | | 130 | 116 | | | | 141 | 126 | 113 | | | |
| 38 | 146 | 131 | 117 | | | 117 | 104 | | | | 127 | 113 | 101 | | | |
| 40 | 131 | 119 | 105 | | | 105 | 93.9 | | | | 114 | 102 | 91.3 | | | |

Heavy line indicates KL/r equal to or greater than 200

Adapted from *Steel Construction Manual*, 14th ed., AISC, 2011

HYDROLOGY/WATER RESOURCES

NRCS (SCS) Rainfall-Runoff

$$Q = \frac{(P - 0.2S)^2}{P + 0.8S}$$

$$S = \frac{1,000}{CN} - 10$$

$$CN = \frac{1,000}{S + 10}$$

P = precipitation (inches)

S = maximum basin retention (inches)

Q = runoff (inches)

CN = curve number

Rational Formula

$$Q = CIA, \text{ where}$$

A = watershed area (acres)

C = runoff coefficient

I = rainfall intensity (in./hr)

Q = peak discharge (cfs)

Darcy's Law

$$Q = -KA(dh/dx), \text{ where}$$

Q = discharge rate (ft³/sec or m³/s)

K = hydraulic conductivity (ft/sec or m/s)

h = hydraulic head (ft or m)

A = cross-sectional area of flow (ft² or m²)

$q = -K(dh/dx)$

q = specific discharge (also called Darcy velocity or superficial velocity)

$$v = q/n = \frac{-K}{n} \frac{dh}{dx}$$

v = average seepage velocity

n = effective porosity

Unit hydrograph: The direct runoff hydrograph that would result from one unit of runoff occurring uniformly in space and time over a specified period of time.

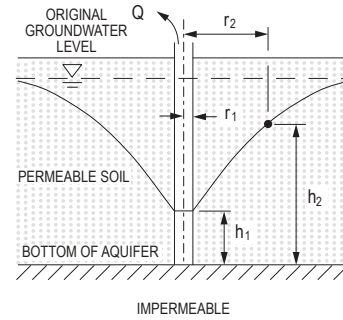
Transmissivity, T : The product of hydraulic conductivity and thickness, b , of the aquifer (L^2T^{-1}).

Storativity or storage coefficient of an aquifer, S :

The volume of water taken into or released from storage per unit surface area per unit change in potentiometric (piezometric) head.

Well Drawdown

Unconfined aquifer



Dupuit's Formula

$$Q = \frac{\pi K(h_2^2 - h_1^2)}{\ln\left(\frac{r_2}{r_1}\right)}, \text{ where}$$

Q = flowrate of water drawn from well (cfs)

K = coefficient of permeability of soil
= hydraulic conductivity (ft/sec)

h_1 = height of water surface above bottom of aquifer at perimeter of well (ft)

h_2 = height of water surface above bottom of aquifer at distance r_2 from well centerline (ft)

r_1 = radius to water surface at perimeter of well, i.e., radius of well (ft)

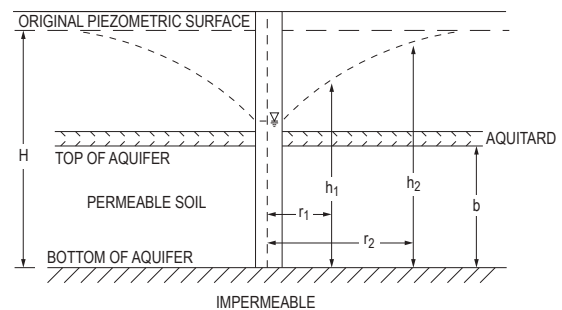
r_2 = radius to water surface whose height is h_2 above bottom of aquifer (ft)

\ln = natural logarithm

Q/D_w = specific capacity

D_w = well drawdown (ft)

Confined aquifer



Theim Equation

$$Q = \frac{2\pi T(h_2 - h_1)}{\ln\left(\frac{r_2}{r_1}\right)}, \text{ where}$$

T = Kb = transmissivity (ft²/sec)

b = thickness of confined aquifer (ft)

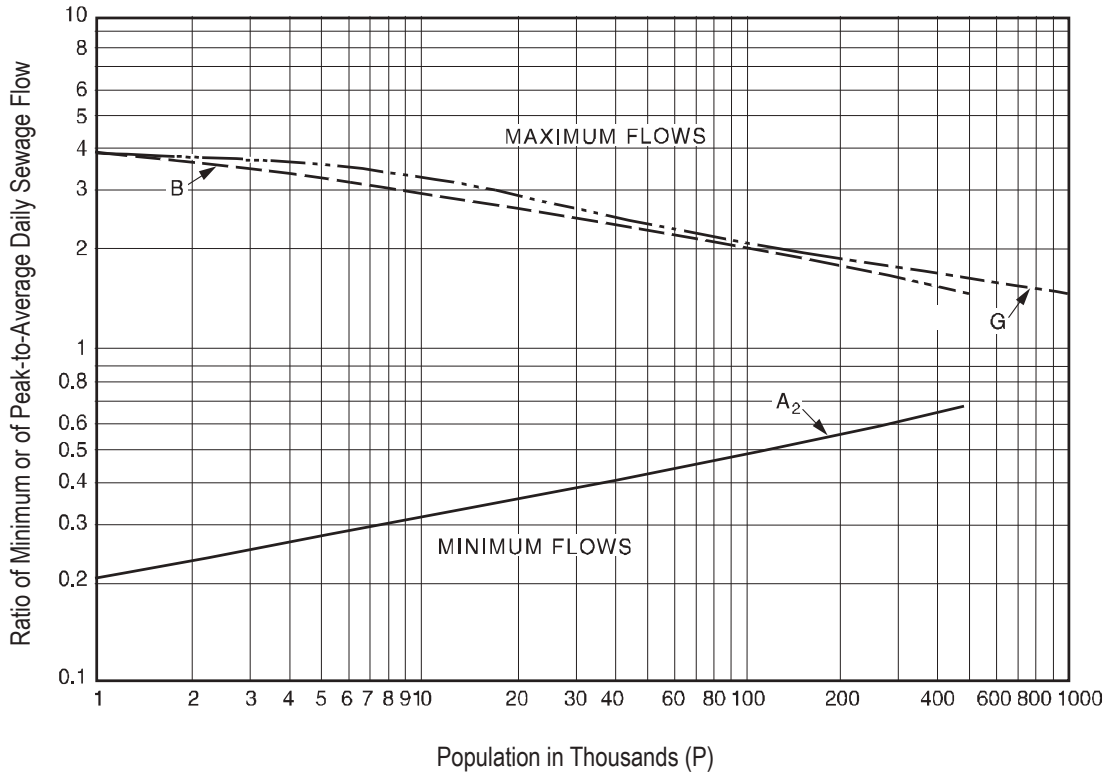
h_1, h_2 = heights of piezometric surface above bottom of aquifer (ft)

r_1, r_2 = radii from pumping well (ft)

\ln = natural logarithm

H = height of piezometric surface prior to pumping (ft)

Sewage Flow Ratio Curves



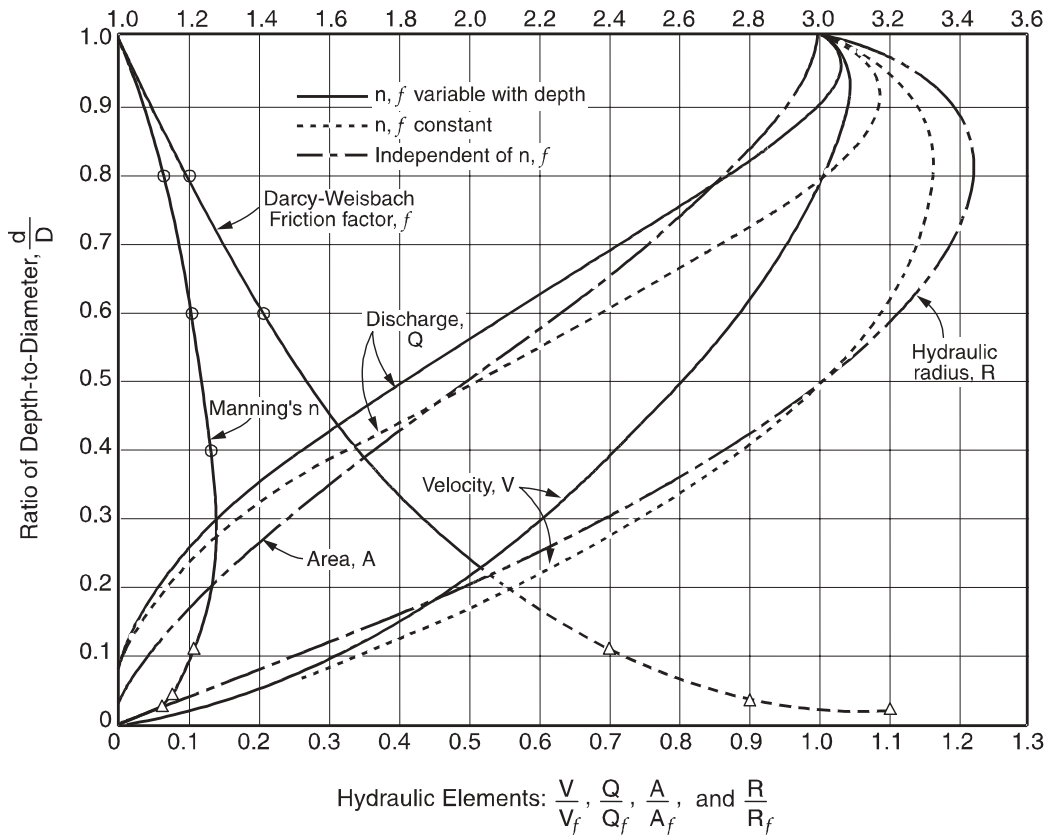
$$\text{Curve A}_2: \frac{P^{0.2}}{5}$$

$$\text{Curve B: } \frac{14}{4 + \sqrt{P}} + 1$$

$$\text{Curve G: } \frac{18 + \sqrt{P}}{4 + \sqrt{P}}$$

Hydraulic-Elements Graph for Circular Sewers

Values of: $\frac{f}{f_f}$ and $\frac{n}{n_f}$



◆ *Design and Construction of Sanitary and Storm Sewers*, Water Pollution Control Federation and American Society of Civil Engineers, 1970. Reprinted with permission from ASCE. This material may be downloaded from ncees.org for personal use only. Any other use requires prior permission of ASCE.

Open-Channel Flow

Specific Energy

$$E = \alpha \frac{V^2}{2g} + y = \frac{\alpha Q^2}{2gA^2} + y, \text{ where}$$

E = specific energy

Q = discharge

V = velocity

y = depth of flow

A = cross-sectional area of flow

α = kinetic energy correction factor, usually 1.0

Critical Depth = that depth in a channel at minimum specific energy

$$\frac{Q^2}{g} = \frac{A^3}{T}$$

where Q and A are as defined above,

g = acceleration due to gravity

T = width of the water surface

For rectangular channels

$$y_c = \left(\frac{q^2}{g}\right)^{1/3}, \text{ where}$$

y_c = critical depth

q = unit discharge = Q/B

B = channel width

g = acceleration due to gravity

Froude Number = ratio of inertial forces to gravity forces

$$Fr = \frac{V}{\sqrt{gy_h}} = \sqrt{\frac{Q^2 T}{gA^3}}, \text{ where}$$

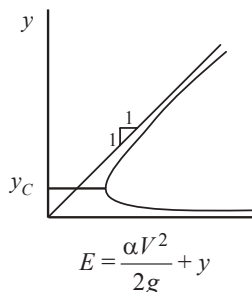
y_h = hydraulic depth = A/T

Supercritical flow: $Fr > 1$

Subcritical flow: $Fr < 1$

Critical flow: $Fr = 1$

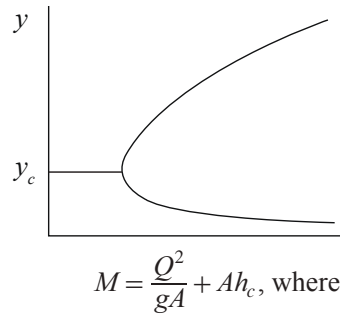
Specific Energy Diagram



Alternate depths: depths with the same specific energy

Uniform flow: a flow condition where depth and velocity do not change along a channel

Momentum Depth Diagram



h_c = vertical distance from liquid surface to centroid of area
Sequent (conjugate) depths: depths with the same momentum

Hydraulic Jump

$$y_2 = \frac{y_1}{2} \left(-1 + \sqrt{1 + 8Fr_1^2} \right), \text{ where}$$

y_1 = flow depth at upstream supercritical flow location

y_2 = flow depth at downstream subcritical flow location

Fr_1 = Froude number at upstream supercritical flow location

Manning's Equation

$$Q = (K/n)AR_H^{2/3}S^{1/2}$$

$$V = (K/n)R_H^{2/3}S^{1/2}$$

Q = discharge (ft³/sec or m³/s)

V = velocity (ft/sec or m/s)

K = 1.486 for USCS units, 1.0 for SI units

A = cross-sectional area of flow (ft² or m²)

R_H = hydraulic radius = A/P (ft or m)

P = wetted perimeter (ft or m)

S = slope (ft/ft or m/m)

n = roughness coefficient

Weir Formulas

Rectangular

Free discharge suppressed

$$Q = CLH^{3/2}$$

Free discharge contracted

$$Q = C(L - 0.2H)H^{3/2}$$

V-Notch

$$Q = CH^{5/2}, \text{ where}$$

Q = discharge (cfs or m³/s)

C = 3.33 for rectangular weir (USCS units)

C = 1.84 for rectangular weir (SI units)

C = 2.54 for 90° V-notch weir (USCS units)

C = 1.40 for 90° V-notch weir (SI units)

L = weir length (ft or m)

H = head (depth of discharge over weir) ft or m

Hazen-Williams Equation

$$V = k_1 C R_H^{0.63} S^{0.54}, \text{ where}$$

$$Q = k_1 C A R_H^{0.63} S^{0.54}$$

C = roughness coefficient

k_1 = 0.849 for SI units

k_1 = 1.318 for USCS units

R_H = hydraulic radius (ft or m)

S = slope of energy grade line
= h_f/L (ft/ft or m/m)

V = velocity (ft/sec or m/s)

Q = discharge (ft³/sec or m³/s)

Circular Pipe Head Loss Equation (Head Loss Expressed in Feet)

$$h_f = \frac{4.73 L}{C^{1.852} D^{4.87}} Q^{1.852}, \text{ where}$$

h_f = head loss (ft)

L = pipe length (ft)

D = pipe diameter (ft)

Q = flow (cfs)

C = Hazen-Williams coefficient

Circular Pipe Head Loss Equation (Head Loss Expressed as Pressure)

U.S. Customary Units

$$P = \frac{4.52 Q^{1.85}}{C^{1.85} D^{4.87}}, \text{ where}$$

P = pressure loss (psi per foot of pipe)

Q = flow (gpm)

D = pipe diameter (inches)

C = Hazen-Williams coefficient

SI Units

$$P = \frac{6.05 Q^{1.85}}{C^{1.85} D^{4.87}} \times 10^5, \text{ where}$$

P = pressure loss (bars per meter of pipe)

Q = flow (liters/minute)

D = pipe diameter (mm)

Values of Hazen-Williams Coefficient C

| Pipe Material | C |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Ductile iron | 140 |
| Concrete (regardless of age) | 130 |
| Cast iron: | |
| New | 130 |
| 5 yr old | 120 |
| 20 yr old | 100 |
| Welded steel, new | 120 |
| Wood stave (regardless of age) | 120 |
| Vitrified clay | 110 |
| Riveted steel, new | 110 |
| Brick sewers | 100 |
| Asbestos-cement | 140 |
| Plastic | 150 |

◆ Formula for Calculating Rated Capacity at 20 psi from Fire Hydrant

$$Q_R = Q_F \times (H_R/H_F)^{0.54}, \text{ where}$$

Q_R = rated capacity (gpm) at 20 psi

Q_F = total test flow

H_R = $P_S - 20$ psi

H_F = $P_S - P_R$

P_S = static pressure

P_R = residual pressure

◆ Fire Hydrant Discharging to Atmosphere

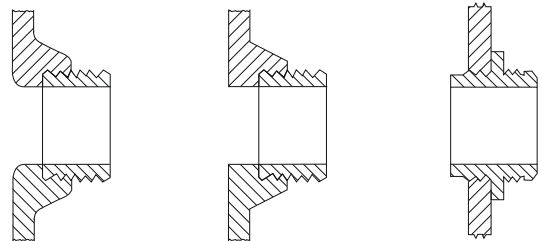
$$Q = 29.8 D^2 C_d P^{1/2}, \text{ where}$$

Q = discharge (gpm)

D = outlet diameter (in.)

P = pressure detected by pitot gauge (psi)

C_d = hydrant coefficient based on hydrant outlet geometry



OUTLET SMOOTH AND WELL-ROUNDED
COEF. 0.90

OUTLET SQUARE AND SHARP
COEF. 0.80

OUTLET SQUARE AND PROJECTING INTO BARREL
COEF. 0.70

• Fire Sprinkler Discharge

$$Q = K P^{1/2}, \text{ where}$$

Q = flow (gpm)

K = measure of the ease of getting water out of the orifice, related to size and shape of the orifice in units of gpm per (psi)^{1/2}

P = pressure (psi)

- ◆ NFPA Standard 291, *Recommended Practice for Fire Flow Testing and Marking of Hydrants*, Section 4.10.1.2
- Isman, Kenneth E., P.E., 2001, "Which Sprinkler to Choose?", *Fire Protection Engineering*, Winter 2001 (9), Society of Fire Protection Engineers, p. 28.

Sprinkler K Factors

| Orifice Size | Name | K Factor |
|--------------|-------------|----------|
| 1/2" | Standard | 5.6 |
| 17/32" | Large | 8.0 |
| 5/8" | Extra large | 11.2 |

TRANSPORTATION

U.S. Customary Units

a = deceleration rate (ft/sec²)

A = absolute value of algebraic difference in grades (%)

e = superelevation (%)

f = side friction factor

$\pm G$ = percent grade divided by 100 (uphill grade "+")

h_1 = height of driver's eyes above the roadway surface (ft)

h_2 = height of object above the roadway surface (ft)

L = length of curve (ft)

L_s = spiral transition length (ft)

R = radius of curve (ft)

SSD = stopping sight distance (ft)

ISD = intersection sight distance (ft)

t_g = time gap for vehicle entering roadway (sec)

t = driver reaction time (sec)

V = design speed (mph)

v = vehicle approach speed (fps)

W = width of intersection, curb-to-curb (ft)

l = length of vehicle (ft)

y = length of yellow interval to nearest 0.1 sec (sec)

r = length of red clearance interval to nearest 0.1 sec (sec)

Vehicle Signal Change Interval

$$y = t + \frac{v}{2a \pm 64.4 G}$$

$$r = \frac{W + l}{v}$$

Stopping Sight Distance

$$SSD = 1.47Vt + \frac{V^2}{30\left(\left(\frac{a}{32.2}\right) \pm G\right)}$$

$$ISD = 1.47 V_{\text{major}} t_g$$

Peak Hour Factor (PHF)

$$PHF = \frac{\text{Hourly Volume}}{\text{Hourly Flow Rate}} = \frac{\text{Hourly Volume}}{4 \times \text{Peak 15-minute Volume}}$$

Queueing models are found in the Industrial Engineering section.

• SIGHT DISTANCE

| Vertical Curves: Sight Distance Related to Curve Length | | |
|---|---|--|
| | $S \leq L$ | $S > L$ |
| Crest Vertical Curve General equation: | $L = \frac{AS^2}{100(\sqrt{2h_1} + \sqrt{2h_2})^2}$ | $L = 2S - \frac{200(\sqrt{h_1} + \sqrt{h_2})^2}{A}$ |
| Standard Criteria: $h_1 = 3.50$ ft and $h_2 = 2.0$ ft: | $L = \frac{AS^2}{2,158}$ | $L = 2S - \frac{2,158}{A}$ |
| Sag Vertical Curve (based on standard headlight criteria) | $L = \frac{AS^2}{400 + 3.5S}$ | $L = 2S - \left(\frac{400 + 3.5S}{A}\right)$ |
| Sag Vertical Curve (based on riding comfort) | $L = \frac{AV^2}{46.5}$ | |
| Sag Vertical Curve (based on adequate sight distance under an overhead structure to see an object beyond a sag vertical curve) | $L = \frac{AS^2}{800\left(C - \frac{h_1 + h_2}{2}\right)}$ | $L = 2S - \frac{800}{A}\left(C - \frac{h_1 + h_2}{2}\right)$ |
| | C = vertical clearance for overhead structure (overpass) located within 200 feet of the midpoint of the curve | |

• Compiled from AASHTO, *A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets*, 6th ed., 2011.

| Horizontal Curves | |
|--|---|
| Side friction factor (based on superelevation) | $0.01e + f = \frac{V^2}{15R}$ |
| Spiral Transition Length | $L_s = \frac{3.15V^3}{RC}$ C = rate of increase of lateral acceleration [use 1 ft/sec ³ unless otherwise stated] |
| Sight Distance (to see around obstruction) | $HSO = R \left[1 - \cos\left(\frac{28.65S}{R}\right) \right]$ HSO = Horizontal sight line offset |

◆ Basic Freeway Segment Highway Capacity

| Flow Rate Range | | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| FFS (mi/h) | Breakpoint (pc/h/ln) | $\geq 0 \leq \text{Breakpoint}$ | $> \text{Breakpoint} \leq \text{Capacity}$ |
| 75 | 1,000 | 75 | $75 - 0.00001107 (v_p - 1,000)^2$ |
| 70 | 1,200 | 70 | $70 - 0.00001160 (v_p - 1,200)^2$ |
| 65 | 1,400 | 65 | $65 - 0.00001418 (v_p - 1,400)^2$ |
| 60 | 1,600 | 60 | $60 - 0.00001816 (v_p - 1,600)^2$ |
| 55 | 1,800 | 55 | $55 - 0.00002469 (v_p - 1,800)^2$ |

Notes: FFS = free-flow speed, v_p = demand flow rate (pc/h/ln) under equivalent base conditions.
Maximum flow rate for the equations is capacity: 2,400 pc/h/ln for 70- and 75-mph FFS;
2,350 pc/h/ln for 65-mph FFS; 2,300 pc/h/ln for 60-mph FFS; and 2,250 pc/h/ln for 55-mph FFS.

| LOS | Density (pc/mi/ln) |
|-----|-----------------------------------|
| A | ≤ 11 |
| B | $> 11 - 18$ |
| C | $> 18 - 26$ |
| D | $> 26 - 35$ |
| E | $> 35 - 45$ |
| F | Demand exceeds capacity > 45 |

$$FFS = 75.4 - f_{LW} - f_{LC} - 3.22 TRD^{0.84}$$

where

FFS = free flow speed of basic freeway segment (mi/h)
 f_{LW} = adjustment for lane width (mi/h)
 f_{LC} = adjustment for right-side lateral clearance (mi/h)
 TRD = total ramp density (ramps/mi)

| Average Lane Width (ft) | Reduction in FFS, f_{LW} (mi/h) |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| ≥ 12 | 0.0 |
| $\geq 11 - 12$ | 1.9 |
| $\geq 10 - 11$ | 6.6 |

| Right-Side Lateral Clearance (ft) | Lanes in One Direction | | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|-----|-----|----------|
| | 2 | 3 | 4 | ≥ 5 |
| ≥ 6 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 |
| 5 | 0.6 | 0.4 | 0.2 | 0.1 |
| 4 | 1.2 | 0.8 | 0.4 | 0.2 |
| 3 | 1.8 | 1.2 | 0.6 | 0.3 |
| 2 | 2.4 | 1.6 | 0.8 | 0.4 |
| 1 | 3.0 | 2.0 | 1.0 | 0.5 |
| 0 | 3.6 | 2.4 | 1.2 | 0.6 |

◆ HCM 2010: Highway Capacity Manual, Vol 2, Uninterrupted Flow, Transportation Research Board of the National Academics, Washington, DC, 2010.

$$v_p = \frac{V}{PHF \times N \times f_{HV} \times f_p}$$

where

- v_p = demand flowrate under equivalent base conditions (pc/h/ln)
- V = demand volume under prevailing conditions (veh/h)
- PHF = peak-hour factor
- N = number of lanes in analysis direction
- f_{HV} = adjustment factor for presence of heavy vehicles in traffic stream
- f_p = adjustment factor for unfamiliar driver populations

$$f_{HV} = \frac{1}{1 + P_T(E_T - 1) + P_R(E_R - 1)}$$

where

- f_{HV} = heavy-vehicle adjustment factor
- P_T = proportion of trucks and buses in traffic stream
- P_R = proportion of RVs in traffic stream
- E_T = passenger-car equivalent (PCE) of one truck or bus in traffic stream
- E_R = PCE of one RV in traffic stream

| Vehicle | PCE by Type of Terrain | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|---------|-------------|
| | Level | Rolling | Mountainous |
| Trucks and buses, E_T | 1.5 | 2.5 | 4.5 |
| RVs, E_R | 1.2 | 2.0 | 4.0 |

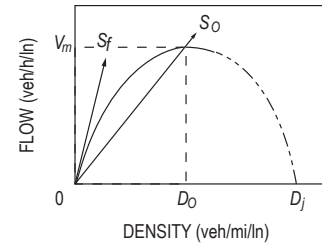
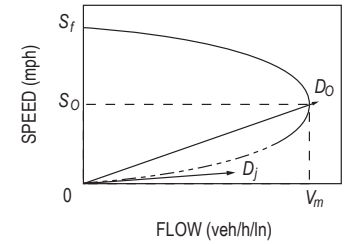
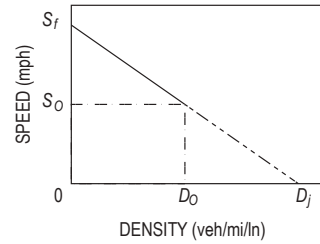
$$D = \frac{v_p}{S}$$

where

- D = density (pc/mi/ln)
- v_p = demand flowrate (pc/h/ln)
- S = mean speed of traffic stream under base conditions (mi/h)

• Traffic Flow Relationships

Greenshields Model



----- Oversaturated flow

$$S = S_f - \frac{S_f}{D_j} D$$

$$V = S_f D - \frac{S_f}{D_j} D^2$$

$$V_m = \frac{D_j S_f}{4}$$

$$D_o = \frac{D_j}{2}$$

where

- D = density (veh/mi)
- S = speed (mi/hr)
- V = flow (veh/hr)
- V_m = maximum flow
- D_o = optimum density (sometimes called critical density)
- D_j = jam density
- S_o = optimum speed (often called critical speed)
- S_f = theoretical speed selected by the first driver entering a facility (i.e., under zero density and zero flowrate conditions)

Gravity Model

$$T_{ij} = P_i \left[\frac{A_j F_{ij} K_{ij}}{\sum_j A_j F_{ij} K_{ij}} \right]$$

where

- T_{ij} = number of trips that are produced in zone i and attracted to zone j
- P_i = total number of trips produced in zone i
- A_j = number of trips attracted to zone j
- F_{ij} = a friction factor that is an inverse function of travel time between zones i and j
- K_{ij} = socioeconomic adjustment factor for interchange ij

• AASHTO, *A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets*, 6th ed., 2011. Used by permission.

Logit Models

$$U_x = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i X_i$$

where

U_x = utility of mode x

n = number of attributes

X_i = attribute value (time, cost, and so forth)

a_i = coefficient value for attributes i (negative, since the values are disutilities)

If two modes, auto (A) and transit (T), are being considered, the probability of selecting the auto mode A can be written as

$$P(A) = \frac{e^{U_A}}{e^{U_A} + e^{U_T}} \quad P(x) = \frac{e^{U_x}}{\sum_{e=1}^n e^{U_{xi}}}$$

Traffic Safety Equations

Crash Rates at Intersections

$$RMEV = \frac{A \times 1,000,000}{V}$$

where

$RMEV$ = crash rate per million entering vehicles

A = number of crashes, total or by type occurring in a single year at the location

V = $ADT \times 365$

ADT = average daily traffic entering intersection

Crash Rates for Roadway Segments

$$RMVM = \frac{A \times 100,000,000}{VMT}$$

where

$RMVM$ = crash rate per hundred million vehicle miles

A = number of crashes, total or by type at the study location, during a given period

VMT = vehicle miles of travel during the given period

= $ADT \times (\text{number of days in study period}) \times$
(length of road)

ADT = average daily traffic on the roadway segment

Crash Reduction

$$\text{Crashes prevented} = N \times CR \frac{(ADT \text{ after improvement})}{(ADT \text{ before improvement})}$$

where

N = expected number of crashes if countermeasure is not implemented and if the traffic volume remains the same

CR = $CR_1 + (1 - CR_1)CR_2 + (1 - CR_1)(1 - CR_2)CR_3 + \dots + (1 - CR_1) \dots (1 - CR_{m-1}) CR_m$
= overall crash reduction factor for multiple mutually exclusive improvements at a single site

CR_i = crash reduction factor for a specific countermeasure i

m = number of countermeasures at the site

Garber, Nicholas J., and Lester A. Hoel, *Traffic and Highway Engineering*, 4th ed., Cengage Learning, 2009.

Highway Pavement Design

| AASHTO Structural Number Equation |
|---|
| $SN = a_1D_1 + a_2D_2 + \dots + a_nD_n, \text{ where}$ |
| $SN = \text{structural number for the pavement}$ |
| $a_i = \text{layer coefficient and } D_i = \text{thickness of layer (inches).}$ |

| Gross Axle Load | | Load Equivalency Factors | | Gross Axle Load | | Load Equivalency Factors | |
|-----------------|---------------|--------------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------------------|--------------|
| kN | lb | Single Axles | Tandem Axles | kN | lb | Single Axles | Tandem Axles |
| 4.45 | 1,000 | 0.00002 | | 187.0 | 42,000 | 25.64 | 2.51 |
| 8.9 | 2,000 | 0.00018 | | 195.7 | 44,000 | 31.00 | 3.00 |
| 17.8 | 4,000 | 0.00209 | | 200.0 | 45,000 | 34.00 | 3.27 |
| 22.25 | 5,000 | 0.00500 | | 204.5 | 46,000 | 37.24 | 3.55 |
| 26.7 | 6,000 | 0.01043 | | 213.5 | 48,000 | 44.50 | 4.17 |
| 35.6 | 8,000 | 0.0343 | | 222.4 | 50,000 | 52.88 | 4.86 |
| 44.5 | 10,000 | 0.0877 | 0.00688 | 231.3 | 52,000 | | 5.63 |
| 53.4 | 12,000 | 0.189 | 0.0144 | 240.2 | 54,000 | | 6.47 |
| 62.3 | 14,000 | 0.360 | 0.0270 | 244.6 | 55,000 | | 6.93 |
| 66.7 | 15,000 | 0.478 | 0.0360 | 249.0 | 56,000 | | 7.41 |
| 71.2 | 16,000 | 0.623 | 0.0472 | 258.0 | 58,000 | | 8.45 |
| 80.0 | 18,000 | 1.000 | 0.0773 | 267.0 | 60,000 | | 9.59 |
| 89.0 | 20,000 | 1.51 | 0.1206 | 275.8 | 62,000 | | 10.84 |
| 97.8 | 22,000 | 2.18 | 0.180 | 284.5 | 64,000 | | 12.22 |
| 106.8 | 24,000 | 3.03 | 0.260 | 289.0 | 65,000 | | 12.96 |
| 111.2 | 25,000 | 3.53 | 0.308 | 293.5 | 66,000 | | 13.73 |
| 115.6 | 26,000 | 4.09 | 0.364 | 302.5 | 68,000 | | 15.38 |
| 124.5 | 28,000 | 5.39 | 0.495 | 311.5 | 70,000 | | 17.19 |
| 133.5 | 30,000 | 6.97 | 0.658 | 320.0 | 72,000 | | 19.16 |
| 142.3 | 32,000 | 8.88 | 0.857 | 329.0 | 74,000 | | 21.32 |
| 151.2 | 34,000 | 11.18 | 1.095 | 333.5 | 75,000 | | 22.47 |
| 155.7 | 35,000 | 12.50 | 1.23 | 338.0 | 76,000 | | 23.66 |
| 160.0 | 36,000 | 13.93 | 1.38 | 347.0 | 78,000 | | 26.22 |
| 169.0 | 38,000 | 17.20 | 1.70 | 356.0 | 80,000 | | 28.99 |
| 178.0 | 40,000 | 21.08 | 2.08 | | | | |

Note: kN converted to lb are within 0.1 percent of lb shown

Superpave

PERFORMANCE-GRADED (PG) BINDER GRADING SYSTEM

| PERFORMANCE GRADE | PG 52 | | | | | | PG 58 | | | | | PG 64 | | | | | |
|--|--------|------|------|------|------|------|-------|------|------|------|------|-------|------|------|------|------|------|
| | -10 | -16 | -22 | -28 | -34 | -40 | -46 | -16 | -22 | -28 | -34 | -40 | -16 | -22 | -28 | -34 | -40 |
| AVERAGE 7-DAY MAXIMUM PAVEMENT DESIGN TEMPERATURE, °C ^a | <52 | | | | | | <58 | | | | | <64 | | | | | |
| MINIMUM PAVEMENT DESIGN TEMPERATURE, °C ^a | >-10 | >-16 | >-22 | >-28 | >-34 | >-40 | >-46 | >-16 | >-22 | >-28 | >-34 | >-40 | >-16 | >-22 | >-28 | >-34 | >-40 |
| ORIGINAL BINDER | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| FLASH POINT TEMP, T48: MINIMUM °C | 230 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| VISCOSITY, ASTM D 4402: ^b MAXIMUM, 3 Pa-s (3,000 cP), TEST TEMP, °C | 135 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| DYNAMIC SHEAR, TP5: ^c G*/sin δ, MINIMUM, 1.00 kPa TEST TEMPERATURE @ 10 rad/sec., °C | 52 | | | | | | 58 | | | | | 64 | | | | | |
| ROLLING THIN FILM OVEN (T240) OR THIN FILM OVEN (T179) RESIDUE | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| MASS LOSS, MAXIMUM, % | 1.00 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| DYNAMIC SHEAR, TP5: G*/sin δ, MINIMUM, 2.20 kPa TEST TEMP @ 10 rad/sec. °C | 52 | | | | | | 58 | | | | | 64 | | | | | |
| PRESSURE AGING VESSEL RESIDUE (PP1) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| PAV AGING TEMPERATURE, °C ^d | 90 | | | | | | 100 | | | | | 100 | | | | | |
| DYNAMIC SHEAR, TP5: G*/sin δ, MAXIMUM, 5,000 kPa TEST TEMP @ 10 rad/sec. °C | 25 | 22 | 19 | 16 | 13 | 10 | 7 | 25 | 22 | 19 | 16 | 13 | 28 | 25 | 22 | 19 | 16 |
| PHYSICAL HARDENING ^e | REPORT | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| CREEP STIFFNESS, TP1: ^f S, MAXIMUM, 300 MPa M-VALUE, MINIMUM, 0.300 TEST TEMP, @ 60 sec., °C | 0 | -6 | -12 | -18 | -24 | -30 | -36 | -6 | -12 | -18 | -24 | -30 | -6 | -12 | -18 | -24 | -30 |
| DIRECT TENSION, TP3: ^f FAILURE STRAIN, MINIMUM, 1.0% TEST TEMP @ 1.0 mm/min, °C | 0 | -6 | -12 | -18 | -24 | -30 | -36 | -6 | -12 | -18 | -24 | -30 | -6 | -12 | -18 | -24 | -30 |

Superpave Mixture Design: Compaction Requirements

| TRAFFIC, MILLION ESALS | SUPERPAVE GYRATORY COMPACTION EFFORT | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| | AVERAGE DESIGN HIGH AIR TEMPERATURE | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | < 39°C | | | 39° – 40°C | | | 41° – 42°C | | | 42° – 43°C | | |
| | N _{int} | N _{des} | N _{max} | N _{int} | N _{des} | N _{max} | N _{int} | N _{des} | N _{max} | N _{int} | N _{des} | N _{max} |
| < 0.3 | 7 | 68 | 104 | 7 | 74 | 114 | 7 | 78 | 121 | 7 | 82 | 127 |
| < 1 | 7 | 76 | 117 | 7 | 83 | 129 | 7 | 88 | 138 | 8 | 93 | 146 |
| < 3 | 7 | 86 | 134 | 8 | 95 | 150 | 8 | 100 | 158 | 8 | 105 | 167 |
| < 10 | 8 | 96 | 152 | 8 | 106 | 169 | 8 | 113 | 181 | 9 | 119 | 192 |
| < 30 | 8 | 109 | 174 | 9 | 121 | 195 | 9 | 128 | 208 | 9 | 135 | 220 |
| < 100 | 9 | 126 | 204 | 9 | 139 | 228 | 9 | 146 | 240 | 10 | 153 | 253 |
| ≥ 100 | 9 | 142 | 233 | 10 | 158 | 262 | 10 | 165 | 275 | 10 | 177 | 288 |

| VFA REQUIREMENTS @ 4% AIR VOIDS | |
|---------------------------------|----------------|
| TRAFFIC, MILLION ESALS | DESIGN VFA (%) |
| < 0.3 | 70 – 80 |
| < 1 | 65 – 78 |
| < 3 | 65 – 78 |
| < 10 | 65 – 75 |
| < 30 | 65 – 75 |
| < 100 | 65 – 75 |
| ≥ 100 | 65 – 75 |

| VMA REQUIREMENTS @ 4% AIR VOIDS | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----|------|------|------|------|
| NOMINAL MAXIMUM AGGREGATE SIZE (mm) | 9.5 | 12.5 | 19.0 | 25.0 | 37.5 |
| MINIMUM VMA (%) | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 |

| COMPACTION KEY | | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| SUPERPAVE GYRATORY COMPACTION | N _{int} | N _{des} | N _{max} |
| PERCENT OF Gmm | ≤ 89% | 96% | ≤ 98% |

Horizontal Curve Formulas

- D = Degree of Curve, Arc Definition
- PC = Point of Curve (also called BC)
- PT = Point of Tangent (also called EC)
- PI = Point of Intersection
- I = Intersection Angle (also called Δ)
Angle Between Two Tangents
- L = Length of Curve, from PC to PT
- T = Tangent Distance
- E = External Distance
- R = Radius
- LC = Length of Long Chord
- M = Length of Middle Ordinate
- c = Length of Sub-Chord
- d = Angle of Sub-Chord
- l = Curve Length for Sub-Chord

$$R = \frac{5729.58}{D}$$

$$R = \frac{LC}{2 \sin(I/2)}$$

$$T = R \tan(I/2) = \frac{LC}{2 \cos(I/2)}$$

$$L = RI \frac{\pi}{180} = \frac{I}{D} 100$$

$$M = R[1 - \cos(I/2)]$$

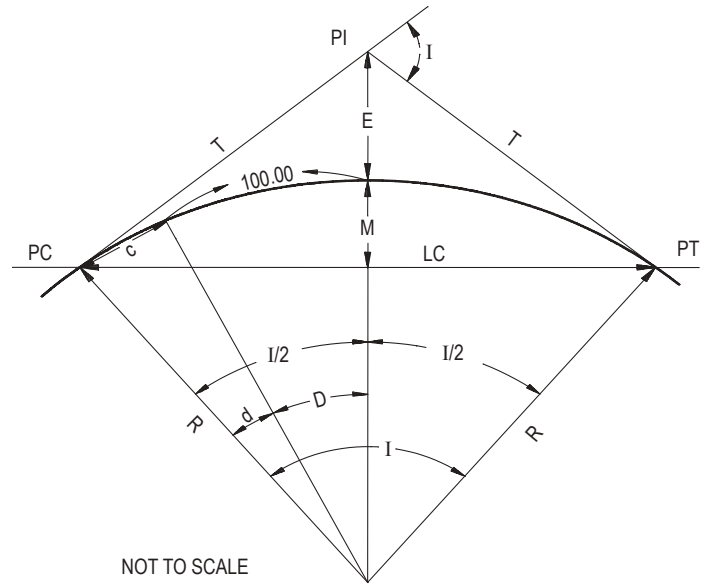
$$\frac{R}{E + R} = \cos(I/2)$$

$$\frac{R - M}{R} = \cos(I/2)$$

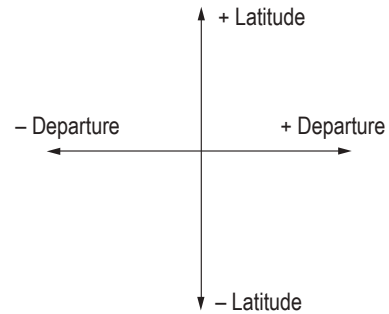
$$c = 2R \sin(d/2)$$

$$l = Rd \left(\frac{\pi}{180} \right)$$

$$E = R \left[\frac{1}{\cos(I/2)} - 1 \right]$$

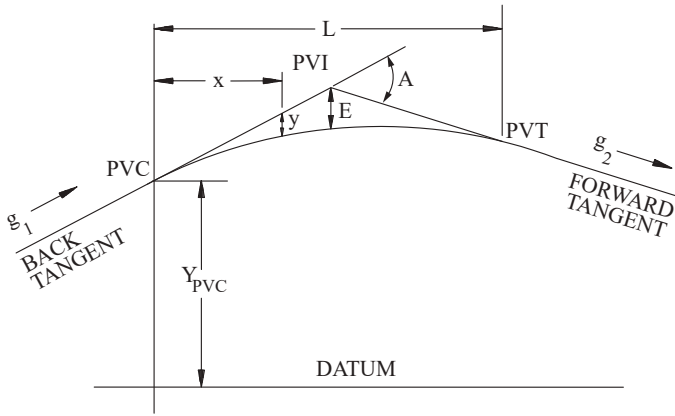


LATITUDES AND DEPARTURES



Deflection angle per 100 feet of arc length equals $D/2$

Vertical Curve Formulas



VERTICAL CURVE FORMULAS
NOT TO SCALE

$$y = ax^2$$

$$A = g_2 - g_1$$

$$a = \frac{A}{2L} = \frac{g_2 - g_1}{2L}$$

$$E = a\left(\frac{L}{2}\right)^2$$

$$r = \frac{g_2 - g_1}{L}$$

$$K = \frac{L}{A}$$

$$x_m = -\frac{g_1}{2a} = \frac{g_1 L}{g_1 - g_2}$$

PVC = Point of vertical curvature, or beginning of curve

PVI = Point of vertical intersection, or vertex

PVT = Point of vertical tangency, or end of curve

L = Length of curve

y = Tangent offset

x = Horizontal distance from *PVC* to point on curve

x_m = Horizontal distance to min/max elevation on curve

Tangent elevation = $Y_{PVC} + g_1 x = Y_{PVI} + g_2 (x - L/2)$

Curve elevation = $Y_{PVC} + g_1 x + ax^2 = Y_{PVC} + g_1 x + [(g_2 - g_1)/(2L)]x^2$

EARTHWORK FORMULAS

Average End Area Formula, $V = L(A_1 + A_2)/2$

Prismoidal Formula, $V = L(A_1 + 4A_m + A_2)/6$

where A_m = area of mid-section

L = distance between A_1 and A_2

Pyramid or Cone, $V = h(\text{Area of Base})/3$

AREA FORMULAS

Area by Coordinates: Area = $[X_A(Y_B - Y_N) + X_B(Y_C - Y_A) + X_C(Y_D - Y_B) + \dots + X_N(Y_A - Y_{N-1})] / 2$

Trapezoidal Rule: Area = $w\left(\frac{h_1 + h_n}{2} + h_2 + h_3 + h_4 + \dots + h_{n-1}\right)$

w = common interval

Simpson's 1/3 Rule: Area = $w\left[h_1 + 2\left(\sum_{k=3,5,\dots}^{n-2} h_k\right) + 4\left(\sum_{k=2,4,\dots}^{n-1} h_k\right) + h_n\right] / 3$

n must be odd number of measurements
(only for Simpson's 1/3 Rule)

CONSTRUCTION

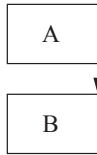
Construction project scheduling and analysis questions may be based on either the activity-on-node method or the activity-on-arrow method.

CPM PRECEDENCE RELATIONSHIPS

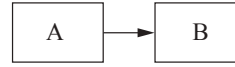
ACTIVITY-ON-NODE



START-TO-START: START OF B
DEPENDS ON THE START OF A

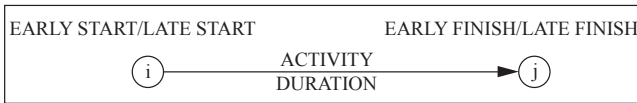


FINISH-TO-FINISH: FINISH OF B
DEPENDS ON THE FINISH OF A



FINISH-TO-START: START OF B
DEPENDS ON THE FINISH OF A

ACTIVITY-ON-ARROW ANNOTATION



ACTIVITY-ON-NODE ANNOTATION

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| EARLY START | EARLY FINISH |
| ACTIVITY DESCRIPTION | |
| DURATION | FLOAT |
| LATE START | LATE FINISH |

Nomenclature

ES = Early start = Latest EF of predecessors

EF = Early finish = ES + duration

LS = Late start = LF - duration

LF = Late finish = Earliest LS of successors

D = Duration

Float = LS - ES or LF - EF

Determining the Project Size Modifier

| Square Foot Base Size | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| Building Type | Median Cost per S.F. | Typical Size Gross S.F. | Typical Range Gross S.F. | Building Type | Median Cost per S.F. | Typical Size Gross S.F. | Typical Range Gross S.F. |
| Apartments, Low Rise | \$ 54.05 | 21,000 | 9,700–37,200 | Jails | \$ 165.00 | 13,700 | 7,500–28,000 |
| Apartments, Mid Rise | 68.25 | 50,000 | 32,000–100,000 | Libraries | 97.30 | 12,000 | 7,000–31,000 |
| Apartments, High Rise | 78.30 | 310,000 | 100,000–650,000 | Medical Clinics | 93.15 | 7,200 | 4,200–15,700 |
| Auditoriums | 90.35 | 25,000 | 7,600–39,000 | Medical Offices | 87.50 | 6,000 | 4,000–15,000 |
| Auto Sales | 55.90 | 20,000 | 10,800–28,600 | Motels | 67.00 | 27,000 | 15,800–51,000 |
| Banks | 121.00 | 4,200 | 2,500–7,500 | Nursing Homes | 89.95 | 23,000 | 15,000–37,000 |
| Churches | 81.60 | 9,000 | 5,300–13,200 | Offices, Low Rise | 73.00 | 8,600 | 4,700–19,000 |
| Clubs, Country | 81.40 | 6,500 | 4,500–15,000 | Offices, Mid Rise | 76.65 | 52,000 | 31,300–83,100 |
| Clubs, Social | 79.15 | 10,000 | 6,000–13,500 | Offices, High Rise | 98.05 | 260,000 | 151,000–468,000 |
| Clubs, YMCA | 81.60 | 28,300 | 12,800–39,400 | Police Stations | 122.00 | 10,500 | 4,000–19,000 |
| Colleges (Class) | 107.00 | 50,000 | 23,500–98,500 | Post Offices | 90.40 | 12,400 | 6,800–30,000 |
| Colleges (Science Lab) | 156.00 | 45,600 | 16,600–80,000 | Power Plants | 678.00 | 7,500 | 1,000–20,000 |
| College (Student Union) | 119.00 | 33,400 | 16,000–85,000 | Religious Education | 74.85 | 9,000 | 6,000–12,000 |
| Community Center | 85.05 | 9,400 | 5,300–16,700 | Research | 127.00 | 19,000 | 6,300–45,000 |
| Court Houses | 116.00 | 32,400 | 17,800–106,000 | Restaurants | 110.00 | 4,400 | 2,800–6,000 |
| Dept. Stores | 50.50 | 90,000 | 44,000–122,000 | Retail Stores | 53.70 | 7,200 | 4,000–17,600 |
| Dormitories, Low Rise | 87.20 | 24,500 | 13,400–40,000 | Schools, Elementary | 78.20 | 41,000 | 24,500–55,000 |
| Dormitories, Mid Rise | 113.00 | 55,600 | 36,100–90,000 | Schools, Jr. High | 79.65 | 92,000 | 52,000–119,000 |
| Factories | 48.95 | 26,400 | 12,900–50,000 | Schools, Sr. High | 79.65 | 101,000 | 50,500–175,000 |
| Fire Stations | 85.45 | 5,800 | 4,000–8,700 | Schools, Vocational | 79.35 | 37,000 | 20,500–82,000 |
| Fraternity Houses | 84.10 | 12,500 | 8,200–14,800 | Sports Arenas | 66.45 | 15,000 | 5,000–40,000 |
| Funeral Homes | 94.00 | 7,800 | 4,500–11,000 | Supermarkets | 53.85 | 20,000 | 12,000–30,000 |
| Garages, Commercial | 59.70 | 9,300 | 5,000–13,600 | Swimming Pools | 125.00 | 13,000 | 7,800–22,000 |
| Garages, Municipal | 76.40 | 8,300 | 4,500–12,600 | Telephone Exchange | 145.00 | 4,500 | 1,200–10,600 |
| Garages, Parking | 31.30 | 163,000 | 76,400–225,300 | Theaters | 79.70 | 10,500 | 8,800–17,500 |
| Gymnasiums | 78.95 | 19,200 | 11,600–41,000 | Town Halls | 87.65 | 10,800 | 4,800–23,400 |
| Hospitals | 149.00 | 55,000 | 27,200–125,000 | Warehouses | 36.15 | 25,000 | 8,000–72,000 |
| House (Elderly) | 73.90 | 37,000 | 21,000–66,000 | Warehouse and Office | 41.75 | 25,000 | 8,000–72,000 |
| Housing (Public) | 68.45 | 36,000 | 14,400–74,400 | | | | |
| Ice Rinks | 76.00 | 29,000 | 27,200–33,600 | | | | |

From *RS Means Assemblies Cost Data, 2000*, ©RSMMeans, Norwell, MA, 781-422-5000. All rights reserved.

Earned-Value Analysis

BCWS = Budgeted cost of work scheduled (Planned)

ACWP = Actual cost of work performed (Actual)

BCWP = Budgeted cost of work performed (Earned)

Variances

CV = BCWP – ACWP (Cost variance = Earned – Actual)

SV = BCWP – BCWS (Schedule variance = Earned – Planned)

Indices

$CPI = \frac{BCWP}{ACWP}$ (Cost Performance Index = $\frac{\text{Earned}}{\text{Actual}}$)

$SPI = \frac{BCWP}{BCWS}$ (Schedule Performance Index = $\frac{\text{Earned}}{\text{Planned}}$)

Forecasting

BAC = Original project estimate (Budget at completion)

$ETC = \frac{BAC - BCWP}{CPI}$ (Estimate to complete)

$EAC = (ACWP + ETC)$ (Estimate at completion)

ENVIRONMENTAL ENGINEERING

AIR POLLUTION

Nomenclature

$$\frac{\mu\text{g}}{\text{m}^3} = \text{ppb} \times \frac{P(\text{MW})}{RT}$$

ppb = parts per billion

P = pressure (atm)

R = ideal gas law constant
= 0.0821 L·atm/(mole·K)

T = absolute temperature, K = 273.15 + °C

MW = molecular weight (g/mole)

Atmospheric Dispersion Modeling (Gaussian)

σ_y and σ_z as a function of downwind distance and stability class, see following figures.

$$C = \frac{Q}{2\pi u \sigma_y \sigma_z} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \frac{y^2}{\sigma_y^2}\right) \left[\exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \frac{(z-H)^2}{\sigma_z^2}\right) + \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \frac{(z+H)^2}{\sigma_z^2}\right) \right]$$

where

C = steady-state concentration at a point (x, y, z) ($\mu\text{g}/\text{m}^3$)

Q = emissions rate ($\mu\text{g}/\text{s}$)

σ_y = horizontal dispersion parameter (m)

σ_z = vertical dispersion parameter (m)

u = average wind speed at stack height (m/s)

y = horizontal distance from plume centerline (m)

z = vertical distance from ground level (m)

H = effective stack height (m) = $h + \Delta h$

where h = physical stack height

Δh = plume rise

x = downwind distance along plume centerline (m)

Maximum concentration at ground level and directly downwind from an elevated source.

$$C_{\max} = \frac{Q}{\pi u \sigma_y \sigma_z} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \frac{(H^2)}{\sigma_z^2}\right)$$

where variables are as above except

C_{\max} = maximum ground-level concentration

$\sigma_z = \frac{H}{\sqrt{2}}$ for neutral atmospheric conditions

Selected Properties of Air

| | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Nitrogen (N ₂) by volume | 78.09% |
| Oxygen (O ₂) by volume | 20.94% |
| Argon (Ar) by volume | 0.93% |
| Molecular weight of air | 28.966 g/mol |
| Absolute viscosity, μ | |
| at 80°F | 0.045 lbm/(hr-ft) |
| at 100°F | 0.047 lbm/(hr-ft) |
| Density | |
| at 80°F | 0.0734 lbm/ft ³ |
| at 100°F | 0.0708 lbm/ft ³ |

The dry adiabatic lapse rate Γ_{AD} is 0.98°C per 100 m (5.4°F per 1,000 ft). This is the rate at which dry air cools adiabatically with altitude.

$$\text{Lapse rate} = \Gamma = -\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta z}$$

where ΔT is the change in temperature and Δz is the change in elevation.

The actual (environmental) lapse rate Γ is compared to Γ_{AD} to determine stability as follows:

| Lapse Rate | Stability Condition |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| $\Gamma > \Gamma_{AD}$ | Unstable |
| $\Gamma = \Gamma_{AD}$ | Neutral |
| $\Gamma < \Gamma_{AD}$ | Stable |

Atmospheric Stability Under Various Conditions

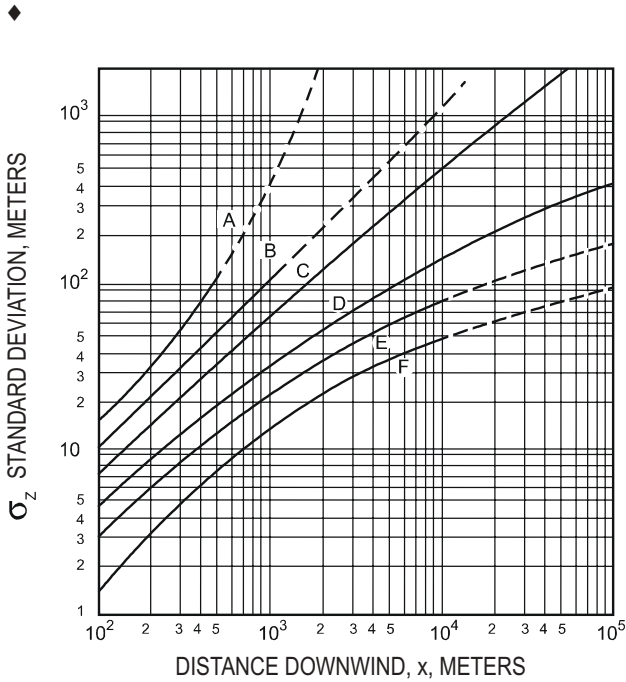
| Surface Wind Speed ^a (m/s) | Day Solar Insolation | | | Night Cloudiness ^e | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------|
| | Strong ^b | Moderate ^c | Slight ^d | Cloudy (≥4/8) | Clear (≤3/8) |
| <2 | A | A-B ^f | B | E | F |
| 2-3 | A-B | B | C | E | F |
| 3-5 | B | B-C | C | D | E |
| 5-6 | C | C-D | D | D | D |
| >6 | C | D | D | D | D |

Notes:

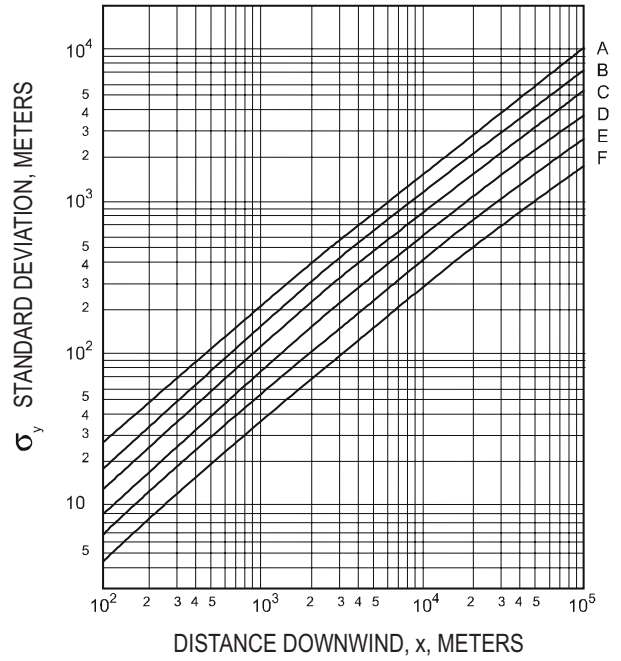
- a. Surface wind speed is measured at 10 m above the ground.
 - b. Corresponds to clear summer day with sun higher than 60° above the horizon.
 - c. Corresponds to a summer day with a few broken clouds, or a clear day with sun 35-60° above the horizon.
 - d. Corresponds to a fall afternoon, or a cloudy summer day, or clear summer day with the sun 15-35°.
 - e. Cloudiness is defined as the fraction of sky covered by the clouds.
 - f. For A-B, B-C, or C-D conditions, average the values obtained for each.
- * A = Very unstable D = Neutral
 B = Moderately unstable E = Slightly stable
 C = Slightly unstable F = Stable

Regardless of wind speed, Class D should be assumed for overcast conditions, day or night.

Turner, D.B., "Workbook of Atmospheric Dispersion Estimates: An Introduction to Dispersion Modeling," 2nd ed., Lewis Publishing/CRC Press, Florida, 1994.



VERTICAL STANDARD DEVIATIONS OF A PLUME

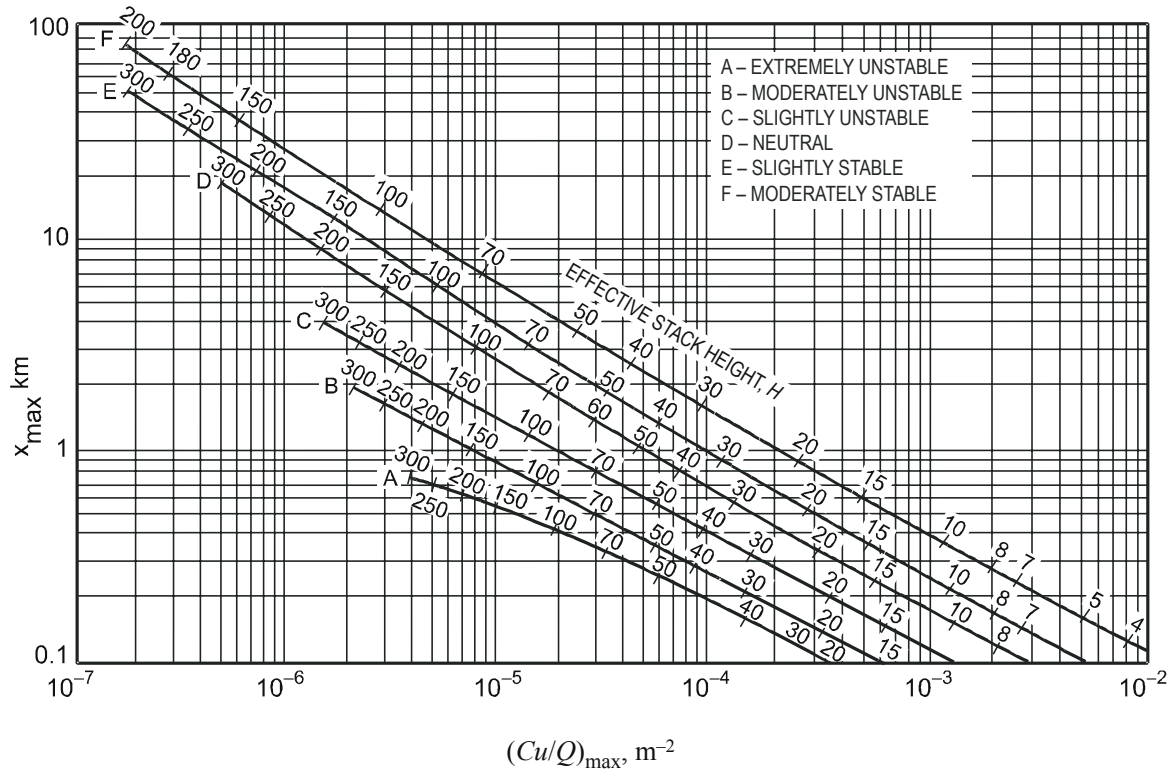


HORIZONTAL STANDARD DEVIATIONS OF A PLUME

- A - EXTREMELY UNSTABLE
- B - MODERATELY UNSTABLE
- C - SLIGHTLY UNSTABLE
- D - NEUTRAL
- E - SLIGHTLY STABLE
- F - MODERATELY STABLE

◆ Turner, D.B., "Workbook of Atmospheric Dispersion Estimates," U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, Washington, DC, 1970.

Downwind distance where the maximum concentration occurs, x_{\max} , versus $(Cu/Q)_{\max}$ as a function of stability class



NOTES: Effective stack height shown on curves numerically.

x_{\max} = distance along plume centerline to the point of maximum concentration

$$(Cu/Q)_{\max} = e^{[a + b \ln H + c (\ln H)^2 + d (\ln H)^3]}$$

H = effective stack height, stack height + plume rise, m

Values of Curve-Fit Constants for Estimating $(Cu/Q)_{\max}$ from H as a Function of Atmospheric Stability

| Stability | Constants | | | |
|-----------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|
| | a | b | c | d |
| A | -1.0563 | -2.7153 | 0.1261 | 0 |
| B | -1.8060 | -2.1912 | 0.0389 | 0 |
| C | -1.9748 | -1.9980 | 0 | 0 |
| D | -2.5302 | -1.5610 | -0.0934 | 0 |
| E | -1.4496 | -2.5910 | 0.2181 | -0.0343 |
| F | -1.0488 | -3.2252 | 0.4977 | -0.0765 |

Adapted from Ranchoux, R.J.P., 1976.

◆ Turner, D.B., "Workbook of Atmospheric Dispersion Estimates: An Introduction to Dispersion Modeling," 2nd ed., Lewis Publishing/CRC Press, Florida, 1994.

Cyclone

Cyclone Collection (Particle Removal) Efficiency

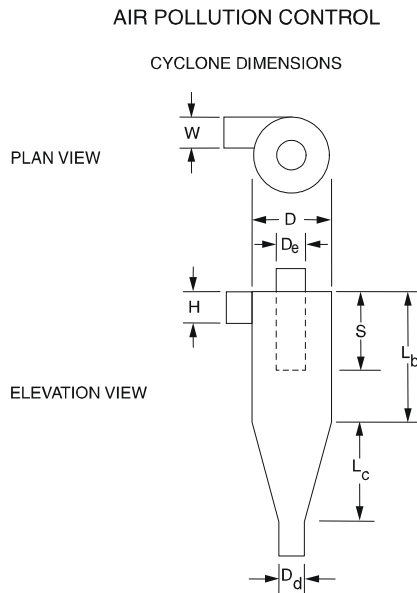
$$\eta = \frac{1}{1 + (d_{pc}/d_p)^2}, \text{ where}$$

d_{pc} = diameter of particle collected with 50% efficiency

d_p = diameter of particle of interest

η = fractional particle collection efficiency

◆



Cyclone Effective Number of Turns Approximation

$$N_e = \frac{1}{H} \left[L_b + \frac{L_c}{2} \right], \text{ where}$$

N_e = number of effective turns gas makes in cyclone

H = inlet height of cyclone (m)

L_b = length of body cyclone (m)

L_c = length of cone of cyclone (m)

◆

Cyclone Ratio of Dimensions to Body Diameter

| Dimension | High Efficiency | Conventional | High Throughput |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| Inlet height, H | 0.44 | 0.50 | 0.80 |
| Inlet width, W | 0.21 | 0.25 | 0.35 |
| Body length, L_b | 1.40 | 1.75 | 1.70 |
| Cone length, L_c | 2.50 | 2.00 | 2.00 |
| Vortex finder length, S | 0.50 | 0.60 | 0.85 |
| Gas exit diameter, D_e | 0.40 | 0.50 | 0.75 |
| Dust outlet diameter, D_d | 0.40 | 0.40 | 0.40 |

◆ Adapted from Cooper, David C., and F.C. Alley, *Air Pollution Control: A Design Approach*, 2nd ed., Waveland Press, Illinois, 1986.

Cyclone 50% Collection Efficiency for Particle Diameter

$$d_{pc} = \left[\frac{9\mu W}{2\pi N_e V_i (\rho_p - \rho_g)} \right]^{0.5}, \text{ where}$$

d_{pc} = diameter of particle that is collected with 50% efficiency (m)

μ = dynamic viscosity of gas (kg/m•s)

W = inlet width of cyclone (m)

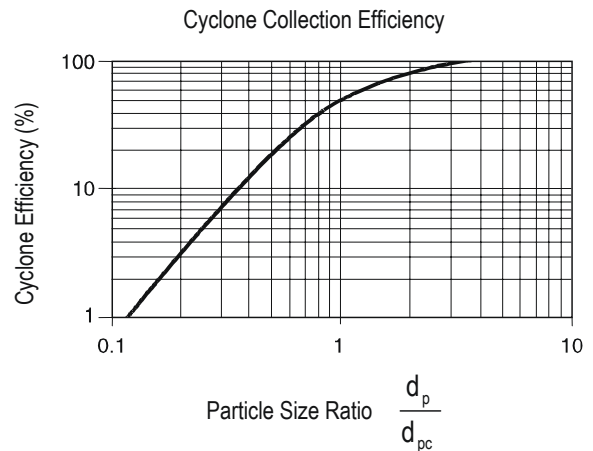
N_e = number of effective turns gas makes in cyclone

V_i = inlet velocity into cyclone (m/s)

ρ_p = density of particle (kg/m³)

ρ_g = density of gas (kg/m³)

◆



Baghouse

Air-to-Cloth Ratio for Baghouses

| Dust | Shaker/Woven | Pulse |
|-----------------|---|---|
| | Reverse Air/Woven [m ³ /(min•m ²)] | Jet/Felt [m ³ /(min•m ²)] |
| alumina | 0.8 | 2.4 |
| asbestos | 0.9 | 3.0 |
| bauxite | 0.8 | 2.4 |
| carbon black | 0.5 | 1.5 |
| coal | 0.8 | 2.4 |
| cocoa | 0.8 | 3.7 |
| clay | 0.8 | 2.7 |
| cement | 0.6 | 2.4 |
| cosmetics | 0.5 | 3.0 |
| enamel frit | 0.8 | 2.7 |
| feeds, grain | 1.1 | 4.3 |
| feldspar | 0.7 | 2.7 |
| fertilizer | 0.9 | 2.4 |
| flour | 0.9 | 3.7 |
| fly ash | 0.8 | 1.5 |
| graphite | 0.6 | 1.5 |
| gypsum | 0.6 | 3.0 |
| iron ore | 0.9 | 3.4 |
| iron oxide | 0.8 | 2.1 |
| iron sulfate | 0.6 | 1.8 |
| lead oxide | 0.6 | 1.8 |
| leather dust | 1.1 | 3.7 |
| lime | 0.8 | 3.0 |
| limestone | 0.8 | 2.4 |
| mica | 0.8 | 2.7 |
| paint pigments | 0.8 | 2.1 |
| paper | 1.1 | 3.0 |
| plastics | 0.8 | 2.1 |
| quartz | 0.9 | 2.7 |
| rock dust | 0.9 | 2.7 |
| sand | 0.8 | 3.0 |
| sawdust (wood) | 1.1 | 3.7 |
| silica | 0.8 | 2.1 |
| slate | 1.1 | 3.7 |
| soap detergents | 0.6 | 1.5 |
| spices | 0.8 | 3.0 |
| starch | 0.9 | 2.4 |
| sugar | 0.6 | 2.1 |
| talc | 0.8 | 3.0 |
| tobacco | 1.1 | 4.0 |

U.S. EPA OAQPS Control Cost Manual, 4th ed., EPA 450/3-90-006 (NTIS PB 90-169954), January 1990.

Electrostatic Precipitator Efficiency

Deutsch-Anderson equation:

$$\eta = 1 - e^{(-WA/Q)}$$

where

η = fractional collection efficiency

W = terminal drift velocity

A = total collection area

Q = volumetric gas flowrate

Note that any consistent set of units can be used for W , A , and Q (for example, ft/min, ft², and ft³/min).

Incineration

$$DRE = \frac{W_{in} - W_{out}}{W_{in}} \times 100\%$$

where

DRE = destruction and removal efficiency (%)

W_{in} = mass feed rate of a particular POHC (kg/h or lb/h)

W_{out} = mass emission rate of the same POHC (kg/h or lb/h)

POHC = principal organic hazardous contaminant

$$CE = \frac{CO_2}{CO_2 + CO} \times 100\%$$

CO_2 = volume concentration (dry) of CO_2
(parts per million, volume, ppm_v)

CO = volume concentration (dry) of CO (ppm_v)

CE = combustion efficiency

Kiln Formula

$$t = \frac{2.28 L/D}{SN}$$

where

t = mean residence time, min

L/D = internal length-to-diameter ratio

S = kiln rake slope, in./ft of length

N = rotational speed, rev/min

Energy Content of Waste

| Typical Waste Values | Moisture, % | Energy, Btu/lb |
|----------------------|-------------|----------------|
| Food Waste | 70 | 2,000 |
| Paper | 6 | 7,200 |
| Cardboard | 5 | 7,000 |
| Plastics | 2 | 14,000 |
| Wood | 20 | 8,000 |
| Glass | 2 | 60 |
| Bi-metallic Cans | 3 | 300 |

FATE AND TRANSPORT

Mass Calculations

$$\text{Mass balance: } \frac{dM}{dt} = \frac{dM_{in}}{dt} + \frac{dM_{out}}{dt} \pm r$$

$$M = CQ = CV$$

$$\text{Continuity equation} = Q = vA$$

M = mass

M_{in} = mass in

M_{out} = mass out

r = reaction rate = kC^n

k = reaction rate constant (1/time)

n = order of reaction

C = concentration

Q = flowrate

V = volume

v = velocity

A = cross-sectional area of flow

$$M \text{ (lb/day)} = C \text{ (mg/L)} \times Q \text{ (MGD)} \times 8.34 \text{ [lb-L/(mg-MG)]}$$

where:

MGD = million gallons per day

MG = million gallons

Microbial Kinetics

BOD Exertion

$$BOD_t = L_o(1 - e^{-kt})$$

where

k = BOD decay rate constant (base e, days⁻¹)

L_o = ultimate BOD (mg/L)

t = time (days)

BOD_t = the amount of BOD exerted at time t (mg/L)

Stream Modeling

Streeter Phelps

$$D = \frac{k_d L_a}{k_r - k_d} [\exp(-k_d t) - \exp(-k_r t)] + D_a \exp(-k_r t)$$

$$t_c = \frac{1}{k_r - k_d} \ln \left[\frac{k_r}{k_d} \left(1 - D_a \frac{(k_r - k_d)}{k_d L_a} \right) \right]$$

$$DO = DO_{sat} - D$$

where

D = dissolved oxygen deficit (mg/L)

DO = dissolved oxygen concentration (mg/L)

D_a = initial dissolved oxygen deficit in mixing zone (mg/L)

DO_{sat} = saturated dissolved oxygen concentration (mg/L)

k_d = deoxygenation rate constant, base e (days⁻¹)

k_r = reaeration rate constant, base e (days⁻¹)

L_a = initial ultimate BOD in mixing zone (mg/L)

t = time (days)

t_c = time at which minimum dissolved oxygen occurs (days)

Davis and Cornwell, *Introduction to Environmental Engineering*, 4th ed., McGraw-Hill, 2008.

Monod Kinetics—Substrate Limited Growth

Continuous flow systems where growth is limited by one substrate (chemostat):

$$\mu = \frac{Yk_m S}{K_s + S} - k_d = \mu_{max} \frac{S}{K_s + S} - k_d$$

Multiple Limiting Substrates

$$\frac{\mu}{\mu_{max}} = [\mu_1(S_1)][\mu_2(S_2)][\mu_3(S_3)] \dots [\mu_n(S_n)]$$

$$\text{where } \mu_i = \frac{S_i}{K_{s_i} + S_i} \text{ for } i = 1 \text{ to } n$$

Non-steady State Continuous Flow

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = Dx_0 + (\mu - k_d - D)x$$

Steady State Continuous Flow

$$\mu = D \text{ with } k_d \ll \mu$$

Product production at steady state, single substrate limiting

$$X_1 = Y_{P/S}(S_0 - S_i)$$

k_d = microbial death rate or endogenous decay rate constant (time⁻¹)

k_m = maximum growth rate constant (time⁻¹)

K_s = saturation constant or half-velocity constant
[= concentration at $\mu_{max}/2$]

S = concentration of substrate in solution (mass/unit volume)

Y = yield coefficient [(mass/L product)/(mass/L food used)]

μ = specific growth rate (time⁻¹)

μ_{max} = maximum specific growth rate (time⁻¹) = Yk_m

Kinetic Temperature Corrections

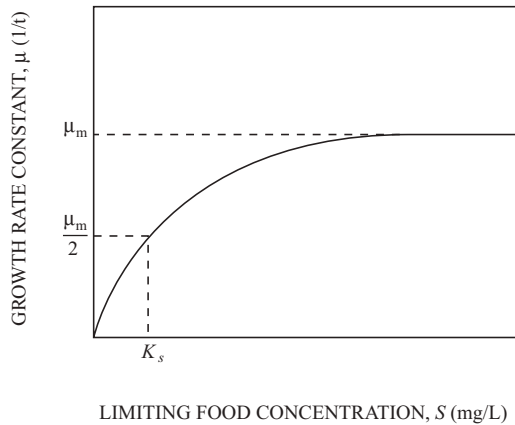
$$k_T = k_{20} (\theta)^{T-20}$$

BOD (k): $\theta = 1.135$ (T = 4 – 20°C)

$\theta = 1.056$ (T = 20 – 30°C)

Reaeration (k_r) $\theta = 1.024$

- ◆ Monod growth rate constant as a function of limiting food concentration.



- X_1 = product (mg/L)
- V_r = volume (L)
- D = dilution rate (flow f /reactor volume V_r ; hr^{-1})
- f = flowrate (L/hr)
- μ_i = growth rate with one or multiple limiting substrates (hr^{-1})
- S_i = substrate i concentration (mass/unit volume)
- S_0 = initial substrate concentration (mass/unit volume)
- $Y_{P/S}$ = product yield per unit of substrate (mass/mass)
- p = product concentration (mass/unit volume)
- x = cell concentration (mass/unit volume)
- x_0 = initial cell concentration (mass/unit volume)
- t = time (time)

Partition Coefficients

- ◆ Bioconcentration Factor BCF

The amount of a chemical to accumulate in aquatic organisms.

$$BCF = C_{\text{org}}/C$$

where

- C_{org} = equilibrium concentration in organism (mg/kg or ppm)
- C = concentration in water (ppm)

- ◆ Octanol-Water Partition Coefficient

The ratio of a chemical's concentration in the octanol phase to its concentration in the aqueous phase of a two-phase octanol-water system.

$$K_{ow} = C_o/C_w$$

where

- C_o = concentration of chemical in octanol phase (mg/L or $\mu\text{g/L}$)
- C_w = concentration of chemical in aqueous phase (mg/L or $\mu\text{g/L}$)

- ◆ Organic Carbon Partition Coefficient K_{oc}

$$K_{oc} = C_{\text{soil}}/C_{\text{water}}$$

where

- C_{soil} = concentration of chemical in organic carbon component of soil ($\mu\text{g adsorbed/kg organic C}$, or ppb)
- C_{water} = concentration of chemical in water (ppb or $\mu\text{g/kg}$)

- Retardation Factor R

$$R = 1 + (\rho_b/n_e)K_d$$

where

- ρ_b = bulk density (mass/length³)
- n_e = effective porosity of the media at saturation
- K_d = partition or distribution coefficient = $K_{oc}f_{oc}$

- Soil-Water Partition Coefficient $K_{sw} = K_p$

$$K_{sw} = X/C$$

where

- X = concentration of chemical in soil (ppb or $\mu\text{g/kg}$)
- C = concentration of chemical in water (ppb or $\mu\text{g/kg}$)
- $K_{sw} = K_{oc}f_{oc}$
- K_p = partition coefficient
- f_{oc} = fraction of organic carbon in the soil (dimensionless)

- ◆ Davis, M.L., and D. Cornwell, *Introduction to Environmental Engineering*, 3rd ed., McGraw-Hill, 1998.
- USEPA 402-R-99-004B, 1999, Understanding variations in partition coefficient, K_p , values.
- LaGrega, Michael D., et al, *Hazardous Waste Management*, 2nd ed, McGraw-Hill, 2001.

Steady-State Reactor Parameters (Constant Density Systems)

Comparison of Steady-State Retention Times (θ) for Decay Reactions of Different Order^a

| Reaction Order | r | Equations for Mean Retention Times (θ) | | |
|-------------------|------------------|---|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| | | Ideal Batch | Ideal Plug Flow | Ideal CMFR |
| Zero ^b | -k | $\frac{(C_o - C_t)}{k}$ | $\frac{(C_o - C_t)}{k}$ | $\frac{(C_o - C_t)}{k}$ |
| First | -kC | $\frac{\ln(C_o/C_t)}{k}$ | $\frac{\ln(C_o/C_t)}{k}$ | $\frac{(C_o/C_t) - 1}{k}$ |
| Second | -kC ² | $\frac{(C_o/C_t) - 1}{kC_o}$ | $\frac{(C_o/C_t) - 1}{kC_o}$ | $\frac{(C_o/C_t) - 1}{kC_t}$ |

^aC_o = initial concentration or influent concentration; C_t = final condition or effluent concentration.

^bExpressions are valid for $k\theta \leq C_o$; otherwise C_t = 0.

Comparison of Steady-State Performance for Decay Reactions of Different Order^a

| Reaction Order | r | Equations for C _t | | |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|
| | | Ideal Batch | Ideal Plug Flow | Ideal CMFR |
| Zero ^b | -k | C _o - kt | C _o - kθ | C _o - kθ |
| | | 0 | | |
| First | -kC | C _o [exp(-kt)] | C _o [exp(-kθ)] | $\frac{C_o}{1 + k\theta}$ |
| Second | -kC ² | $\frac{C_o}{1 + ktC_o}$ | $\frac{C_o}{1 + k\theta C_o}$ | $\frac{(4k\theta C_o + 1)^{1/2} - 1}{2k\theta}$ |

^aC_o = initial concentration or influent concentration; C_t = final condition or effluent concentration.

^bTime conditions are for ideal batch reactor only.

Davis, M.L., and S.J. Masten, *Principles of Environmental Engineering and Science*, 2nd ed., McGraw-Hill, 2004.

LANDFILL

Break-Through Time for Leachate to Penetrate a Clay Liner

$$t = \frac{d^2 \eta}{K(d + h)}$$

where

t = breakthrough time (yr)

d = thickness of clay liner (ft)

η = porosity

K = hydraulic conductivity (ft/yr)

h = hydraulic head (ft)

Typical porosity values for clays with a coefficient of permeability in the range of 10⁻⁶ to 10⁻⁸ cm/s vary from 0.1 to 0.3.

Effect of Overburden Pressure

$$SW_p = SW_i + \frac{p}{a + bp}$$

where

SW_p = specific weight of the waste material at pressure p (lb/yd³) (typical 1,750 to 2,150)

SW_i = initial compacted specific weight of waste (lb/yd³) (typical 1,000)

p = overburden pressure (lb/in²)

a = empirical constant (yd³/in²)

b = empirical constant (yd³/lb)

Tchobanoglous and F. Kreith, *Handbook of Solid Waste Management*, 2nd ed., McGraw-Hill, 2002.

Gas Flux

$$N_A = \frac{D\eta^{4/3}(C_{A_{\text{atm}}} - C_{A_{\text{fill}}})}{L}$$

where

N_A = gas flux of compound A , [g/(cm²·s)][lb·mol/(ft²·d)]

$C_{A_{\text{atm}}}$ = concentration of compound A at the surface of the landfill cover, g/cm³ (lb·mol/ft³)

$C_{A_{\text{fill}}}$ = concentration of compound A at the bottom of the landfill cover, g/cm³ (lb·mol/ft³)

L = depth of the landfill cover, cm (ft)

Typical values for the coefficient of diffusion for methane and carbon dioxide are 0.20 cm²/s (18.6 ft²/d) and 0.13 cm²/s (12.1 ft²/d), respectively.

D = diffusion coefficient, cm²/s (ft²/d)

η_{gas} = gas-filled porosity, cm³/cm³ (ft³/ft³)

η = porosity, cm³/cm³ (ft³/ft³)

Soil Landfill Cover Water Balance

$$\Delta S_{\text{LC}} = P - R - \text{ET} - \text{PER}_{\text{sw}}$$

where

ΔS_{LC} = change in the amount of water held in storage in a unit volume of landfill cover (in.)

P = amount of precipitation per unit area (in.)

R = amount of runoff per unit area (in.)

ET = amount of water lost through evapotranspiration per unit area (in.)

PER_{sw} = amount of water percolating through the unit area of landfill cover into compacted solid waste (in.)

Tchobanoglous and Kreith, *Handbook of Solid Waste Management*, 2nd ed., McGraw-Hill, 2002.

POPULATION MODELING

Population Projection Equations

Linear Projection = Algebraic Projection

$$P_t = P_0 + k\Delta t$$

where

P_t = population at time t

P_0 = population at time zero

k = growth rate

Δt = elapsed time in years relative to time zero

Log Growth = Exponential Growth = Geometric Growth

$$P_t = P_0 e^{k\Delta t}$$

$$\ln P_t = \ln P_0 + k\Delta t$$

where

P_t = population at time t

P_0 = population at time zero

k = growth rate

Δt = elapsed time in years relative to time zero

Percent Growth

$$P_t = P_0(1 + k)^n$$

where

P_t = population at time t

P_0 = population at time zero

k = growth rate

n = number of periods

Ratio and Correlation Growth

$$\frac{P_2}{P_{2R}} = \frac{P_1}{P_{1R}} = k$$

where

P_2 = projected population

P_{2R} = projected population of a larger region

P_1 = population at last census

P_{1R} = population of larger region at last census

k = growth ratio constant

Decreasing-Rate-of-Increase Growth

$$P_t = P_0 + (S - P_0)(1 - e^{-k(t-t_0)})$$

where

P_t = population at time t

P_0 = population at time zero

k = growth rate constant

S = saturation population

t, t_0 = future time, initial time

RADIATION

Effective Half-Life

Effective half-life, τ_e , is the combined radioactive and biological half-life.

$$\frac{1}{\tau_e} = \frac{1}{\tau_r} + \frac{1}{\tau_b}$$

where

τ_r = radioactive half-life

τ_b = biological half-life

Half-Life

$$N = N_0 e^{-0.693 t/\tau}$$

where

N_0 = original number of atoms

N = final number of atoms

t = time

τ = half-life

Flux at distance 2 = (Flux at distance 1) $(r_1/r_2)^2$

where r_1 and r_2 are distances from source.

The half-life of a biologically degraded contaminant assuming a first-order rate constant is given by:

$$t_{1/2} = \frac{0.693}{k}$$

k = rate constant (time⁻¹)

$t_{1/2}$ = half-life (time)

Daughter Product Activity

$$N_2 = \frac{\lambda_1 N_{10}}{\lambda_2 - \lambda_1} (e^{-\lambda_1 t} - e^{-\lambda_2 t})$$

where $\lambda_{1,2}$ = decay constants (time⁻¹)

N_{10} = initial activity (curies) of parent nuclei

t = time

Daughter Product Maximum Activity Time

$$t' = \frac{\ln \lambda_2 - \ln \lambda_1}{\lambda_2 - \lambda_1}$$

Inverse Square Law

$$\frac{I_1}{I_2} = \frac{(R_2)^2}{(R_1)^2}$$

where $I_{1,2}$ = Radiation intensity at locations 1 and 2

$R_{1,2}$ = Distance from the source at locations 1 and 2

SAMPLING AND MONITORING

Data Quality Objectives (DQO) for Sampling Soils and Solids

| Investigation Type | Confidence Level (1- α) (%) | Power (1- β) (%) | Minimum Detectable Relative Difference (%) |
|--|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| Preliminary site investigation | 70-80 | 90-95 | 10-30 |
| Emergency clean-up | 80-90 | 90-95 | 10-20 |
| Planned removal and remedial response operations | 90-95 | 90-95 | 10-20 |

Confidence level: 1- (Probability of a Type I error) = 1 - α = size probability of not making a Type I error.

Power = 1- (Probability of a Type II error) = 1 - β = probability of not making a Type II error.

EPA Document "EPA/600/8-89/046" *Soil Sampling Quality Assurance User's Guide*, Chapter 7.

$$CV = (100 * s) / \bar{x}$$

CV = coefficient of variation

s = standard deviation of sample

\bar{x} = sample average

Minimum Detectable Relative Difference = Relative increase over background [100 ($\mu_s - \mu_b$)/ μ_b] to be detectable with a probability (1 - β)

μ_s = mean of pollutant concentration of the site of the contamination

μ_b = mean of pollutant concentration of the site before contamination or the noncontaminated area (background)

Number of Samples Required in a One-Sided One-Sample t-Test to Achieve a Minimum Detectable Relative Difference at Confidence Level (1- α) and Power (1- β)

| Coefficient of Variation (%) | Power (%) | Confidence Level (%) | Minimum Detectable Relative Difference (%) | | | | |
|------------------------------|-----------|----------------------|--|-----|----|----|----|
| | | | 5 | 10 | 20 | 30 | 40 |
| 15 | 95 | 99 | 145 | 39 | 12 | 7 | 5 |
| | | 95 | 99 | 26 | 8 | 5 | 3 |
| | | 90 | 78 | 21 | 6 | 3 | 3 |
| | | 80 | 57 | 15 | 4 | 2 | 2 |
| | 90 | 99 | 120 | 32 | 11 | 6 | 5 |
| | | 95 | 79 | 21 | 7 | 4 | 3 |
| | | 90 | 60 | 16 | 5 | 3 | 2 |
| | | 80 | 41 | 11 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| | 80 | 99 | 94 | 26 | 9 | 6 | 5 |
| | | 95 | 58 | 16 | 5 | 3 | 3 |
| | | 90 | 42 | 11 | 4 | 2 | 2 |
| | | 80 | 26 | 7 | 2 | 2 | 1 |
| 25 | 95 | 99 | 397 | 102 | 28 | 14 | 9 |
| | | 95 | 272 | 69 | 19 | 9 | 6 |
| | | 90 | 216 | 55 | 15 | 7 | 5 |
| | | 80 | 155 | 40 | 11 | 5 | 3 |
| | 90 | 99 | 329 | 85 | 24 | 12 | 8 |
| | | 95 | 272 | 70 | 19 | 9 | 6 |
| | | 90 | 166 | 42 | 12 | 6 | 4 |
| | | 80 | 114 | 29 | 8 | 4 | 3 |
| | 80 | 99 | 254 | 66 | 19 | 10 | 7 |
| | | 95 | 156 | 41 | 12 | 6 | 4 |
| | | 90 | 114 | 30 | 8 | 4 | 3 |
| | | 80 | 72 | 19 | 5 | 3 | 2 |
| 35 | 95 | 99 | 775 | 196 | 42 | 25 | 15 |
| | | 95 | 532 | 134 | 35 | 17 | 10 |
| | | 90 | 421 | 106 | 28 | 13 | 8 |
| | | 80 | 304 | 77 | 20 | 9 | 6 |
| | 90 | 99 | 641 | 163 | 43 | 21 | 13 |
| | | 95 | 421 | 107 | 28 | 14 | 8 |
| | | 90 | 323 | 82 | 21 | 10 | 6 |
| | | 80 | 222 | 56 | 15 | 7 | 4 |
| | 80 | 99 | 495 | 126 | 34 | 17 | 11 |
| | | 95 | 305 | 78 | 21 | 10 | 7 |
| | | 90 | 222 | 57 | 15 | 7 | 5 |
| | | 80 | 140 | 36 | 10 | 5 | 3 |

WASTEWATER TREATMENT AND TECHNOLOGIES

Activated Sludge

$$X_A = \frac{\theta_c Y (S_0 - S_e)}{\theta (1 + k_d \theta_c)}$$

Steady-State Mass Balance around Secondary Clarifier:

$$(Q_0 + Q_R)X_A = Q_e X_e + Q_R X_r + Q_w X_w$$

$$\theta_c = \text{Solids residence time} = \frac{V(X_A)}{Q_w X_w + Q_e X_e}$$

$$\text{Sludge volume/day: } Q_s = \frac{M(100)}{\rho_s (\% \text{ solids})}$$

$$\text{SVI} = \frac{\text{Sludge volume after settling (mL/L)} * 1,000}{\text{MLSS (mg/L)}}$$

k_d = microbial death ratio; kinetic constant; day⁻¹; typical range 0.1–0.01, typical domestic wastewater value = 0.05 day⁻¹

S_e = effluent BOD or COD concentration (kg/m³)

S_0 = influent BOD or COD concentration (kg/m³)

X_A = biomass concentration in aeration tank (MLSS or MLVSS kg/m³)

Y = yield coefficient (kg biomass/kg BOD or COD consumed); range 0.4–1.2

θ = hydraulic residence time = V/Q

Solids loading rate = $Q X_A$

For activated sludge secondary clarifier $Q = Q_0 + Q_R$

Organic loading rate (volumetric) = $Q_0 S_0 / Vol$

Organic loading rate (F:M) = $Q_0 S_0 / (Vol X_A)$

Organic loading rate (surface area) = $Q_0 S_0 / A_M$

ρ_s = density of solids

A = surface area of unit

A_M = surface area of media in fixed-film reactor

A_x = cross-sectional area of channel

M = sludge production rate (dry weight basis)

Q_0 = influent flowrate

Q_e = effluent flowrate

Q_w = waste sludge flowrate

ρ_s = wet sludge density

R = recycle ratio = Q_R / Q_0

Q_R = recycle flowrate = $Q_0 R$

X_e = effluent suspended solids concentration

X_w = waste sludge suspended solids concentration

V = aeration basin volume

Q = flowrate

X_r = recycled sludge suspended solids concentration

Design and Operational Parameters for Activated-Sludge Treatment of Municipal Wastewater

| Type of Process | Mean cell residence time (θ_c , d) | Food-to-mass ratio [(kg BOD ₅ /day·kg MLSS)] | Volumetric loading (kg BOD ₅ /m ³) | Hydraulic residence time in aeration basin (θ , h) | Mixed liquor suspended solids (MLSS, mg/L) | Recycle ratio (Q_r/Q) | Flow regime* | BOD ₅ removal efficiency (%) | Air supplied (m ³ /kg BOD ₅) |
|-----------------------|--|---|---|--|--|---------------------------|--------------|---|---|
| Tapered aeration | 5–15 | 0.2–0.4 | 0.3–0.6 | 4–8 | 1,500–3,000 | 0.25–0.5 | PF | 85–95 | 45–90 |
| Conventional | 4–15 | 0.2–0.4 | 0.3–0.6 | 4–8 | 1,500–3,000 | 0.25–0.5 | PF | 85–95 | 45–90 |
| Step aeration | 4–15 | 0.2–0.4 | 0.6–1.0 | 3–5 | 2,000–3,500 | 0.25–0.75 | PF | 85–95 | 45–90 |
| Completely mixed | 4–15 | 0.2–0.4 | 0.8–2.0 | 3–5 | 3,000–6,000 | 0.25–1.0 | CM | 85–95 | 45–90 |
| Contact stabilization | 4–15 | 0.2–0.6 | 1.0–1.2 | | | 0.25–1.0 | | | 45–90 |
| Contact basin | | | | 0.5–1.0 | 1,000–3,000 | | PF | 80–90 | |
| Stabilization basin | | | | 4–6 | 4,000–10,000 | | PF | | |
| High-rate aeration | 4–15 | 0.4–1.5 | 1.6–16 | 0.5–2.0 | 4,000–10,000 | 1.0–5.0 | CM | 75–90 | 25–45 |
| Pure oxygen | 8–20 | 0.2–1.0 | 1.6–4 | 1–3 | 6,000–8,000 | 0.25–0.5 | CM | 85–95 | |
| Extended aeration | 20–30 | 0.05–0.15 | 0.16–0.40 | 18–24 | 3,000–6,000 | 0.75–1.50 | CM | 75–90 | 90–125 |

*PF = plug flow, CM = completely mixed.

Metcalf and Eddy, *Wastewater Engineering: Treatment, Disposal, and Reuse*, 3rd ed., McGraw-Hill, 1991.

Facultative Pond

BOD Loading Total System ≤ 35 pounds BOD₅/(acre-day)

Minimum = 3 ponds

Depth = 3–8 ft

Minimum $t = 90$ –120 days

Biotower

Fixed-Film Equation without Recycle

$$\frac{S_e}{S_0} = e^{-kD/q^n}$$

Fixed-Film Equation with Recycle

$$\frac{S_e}{S_a} = \frac{e^{-kD/q^n}}{(1 + R) - R(e^{-kD/q^n})}$$

where

S_e = effluent BOD₅ (mg/L)

S_0 = influent BOD₅ (mg/L)

R = recycle ratio = Q_R/Q_0

Q_R = recycle flowrate

$$S_a = \frac{S_0 + RS_e}{1 + R}$$

D = depth of biotower media (m)

q = hydraulic loading [$\text{m}^3/(\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{min})$]

$$= (Q_0 + RQ_0)/A_{\text{plan}} \text{ (with recycle)}$$

k = treatability constant; functions of wastewater and medium (min^{-1}); range 0.01–0.1; for municipal wastewater and modular plastic media 0.06 min^{-1} @ 20°C

$$k_T = k_{20}(1.035)^{T-20}$$

n = coefficient relating to media characteristics; modular plastic, $n = 0.5$

◆ Aerobic Digestion

Design criteria for aerobic digesters^a

| Parameter | Value |
|--|----------|
| Sludge retention time, d | |
| At 20°C | 40 |
| At 15°C | 60 |
| Solids loading, lb volatile solids/ft ³ ·d | 0.1–0.3 |
| Oxygen requirements, lb O ₂ /lb solids destroyed | |
| Cell tissue | ~2.3 |
| BOD ₅ in primary sludge | 1.6–1.9 |
| Energy requirements for mixing | |
| Mechanical aerators, hp/10 ³ ft ³ | 0.7–1.50 |
| Diffused-air mixing, ft ³ /10 ³ ft ³ ·min | 20–40 |
| Dissolved-oxygen residual in liquid, mg/L | 1–2 |
| Reduction in volatile suspended solids (VSS), % | 40–50 |

Tank Volume

$$V = \frac{Q_i(X_i + FS_i)}{X_d(k_d P_v + 1/\theta_c)}$$

where

V = volume of aerobic digester (ft³)

Q_i = influent average flowrate to digester (ft³/d)

X_i = influent suspended solids (mg/L)

F = fraction of the influent BOD₅ consisting of raw primary sludge (expressed as a decimal)

S_i = influent BOD₅ (mg/L)

X_d = digester suspended solids (mg/L); typically $X_d = (0.7)X_i$

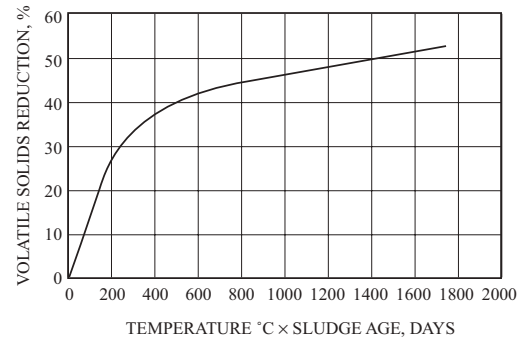
k_d = reaction-rate constant (d⁻¹)

P_v = volatile fraction of digester suspended solids (expressed as a decimal)

θ_c = solids residence time (sludge age) (d)

$F S_i$ can be neglected if primary sludge is not included on the sludge flow to the digester.

◆



VOLATILE SOLIDS REDUCTION IN AN AEROBIC DIGESTER AS A FUNCTION OF DIGESTER LIQUID TEMPERATURE AND DIGESTER SLUDGE AGE

• Anaerobic Digestion

Design parameters for anaerobic digesters

| Parameter | Standard-rate | High-rate |
|---|---------------|-----------|
| Solids residence time, d | 30–90 | 10–20 |
| Volatile solids loading, kg/m ³ /d | 0.5–1.6 | 1.6–6.4 |
| Digested solids concentration, % | 4–6 | 4–6 |
| Volatile solids reduction, % | 35–50 | 45–55 |
| Gas production (m ³ /kg VSS added) | 0.5–0.55 | 0.6–0.65 |
| Methane content, % | 65 | 65 |

Standard Rate

$$\text{Reactor Volume} = \frac{V_1 + V_2}{2} t_r + V_2 t_s$$

High Rate

First stage

$$\text{Reactor Volume} = V_1 t_r$$

Second Stage

$$\text{Reactor Volume} = \frac{V_1 + V_2}{2} t_t + V_2 t_s$$

where

V_1 = raw sludge input (volume/day)

V_2 = digested sludge accumulation (volume/day)

t_r = time to react in a high-rate digester = time to react and thicken in a standard-rate digester

t_t = time to thicken in a high-rate digester

t_s = storage time

◆ Tchobanoglous, G., and Metcalf and Eddy, *Wastewater Engineering: Treatment, Disposal, and Reuse*, 4th ed., McGraw-Hill, 2003.

• Peavy, HS, D.R. Rowe, and G. Tchobanoglous, *Environmental Engineering*, McGraw-Hill, 1985.

WATER TREATMENT TECHNOLOGIES

Activated Carbon Adsorption

Freundlich Isotherm

$$\frac{x}{m} = X = KC_e^{1/n}$$

where

x = mass of solute adsorbed

m = mass of adsorbent

X = mass ratio of the solid phase—that is, the mass of adsorbed solute per mass of adsorbent

C_e = equilibrium concentration of solute, mass/volume

K, n = experimental constants

Linearized Form

$$\ln \frac{x}{m} = \frac{1}{n} \ln C_e + \ln K$$

For linear isotherm, $n = 1$

Langmuir Isotherm

$$\frac{x}{m} = X = \frac{aKC_e}{1 + KC_e}$$

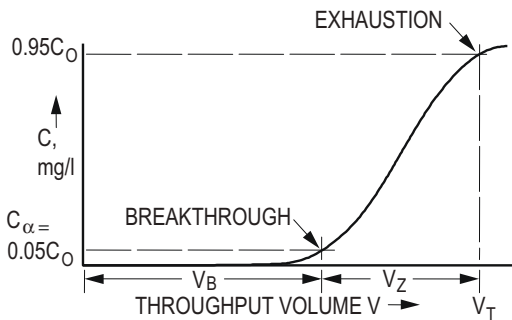
where

a = mass of adsorbed solute required to saturate completely a unit mass of adsorbent

K = experimental constant

Linearized Form

$$\frac{m}{x} = \frac{1}{a} + \frac{1}{aK} \frac{1}{C_e}$$



Depth of Sorption Zone

$$Z_s = Z \left[\frac{V_Z}{V_T - 0.5V_Z} \right]$$

where

$$V_Z = V_T - V_B$$

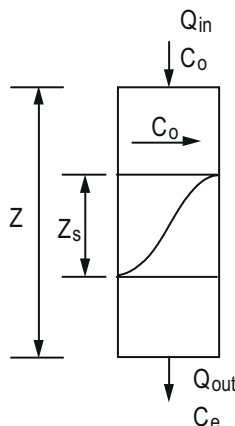
Z_s = depth of sorption zone

Z = total carbon depth

V_T = total volume treated at exhaustion ($C = 0.95 C_0$)

V_B = total volume at breakthrough ($C = C_\alpha = 0.05 C_0$)

C_0 = concentration of contaminant in influent



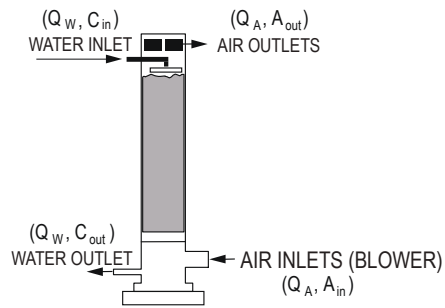
Air Stripping

$P_i = HC_i$ = Henry's Law

P_i = partial pressure of component i , atm

H = Henry's Law constant, atm·m³/kmol

C_i = concentration of component i in solvent, kmol/m³



$$A_{out} = HC_{in}$$

$$Q_W \cdot C_{in} = Q_A H C_{in}$$

$$Q_W = Q_A H'$$

$$H' (Q_A / Q_W) = 1$$

where

A_{out} = concentration in the effluent air (kmol/m³); in this formulation of the equation A_{in} and C_{out} are assumed to be negligible for simplicity.

Q_W = water flowrate (m³/s)

Q_A = air flowrate (m³/s)

A_{in} = concentration of contaminant in air (kmol/m³)

C_{out} = concentration of contaminants in effluent water (kmol/m³)

C_{in} = concentration of contaminants in influent water (kmol/m³)

Stripper Packing Height = Z

$$Z = HTU \times NTU$$

Assuming rapid equilibrium:

$$NTU = \left(\frac{R_S}{R_S - 1} \right) \ln \left(\frac{(C_{in}/C_{out})(R_S - 1) + 1}{R_S} \right)$$

where

NTU = number of transfer units

H = Henry's Law constant

H' = H/RT = dimensionless Henry's Law constant

T = temperature in units consistent with K

R = universal gas constant, atm·m³/(kmol·K)

R_S = stripping factor $H'(Q_A/Q_W)$

C_{in} = concentration in the influent water (kmol/m³)

C_{out} = concentration in the effluent water (kmol/m³)

HTU = Height of Transfer Units = $\frac{L}{M_W K_L a}$, where

L = liquid molar loading rate [kmol/(s·m²)]

M_W = molar density of water
(55.6 kmol/m³) = 3.47 lbmol/ft³

$K_L a$ = overall transfer rate constant (s⁻¹)

Clarifier

Overflow rate = Hydraulic loading rate = $v_o = Q/A_{\text{surface}}$

v_o = critical settling velocity

= terminal settling velocity of smallest particle that is 100% removed

Weir loading = weir overflow rate, WOR = $Q/\text{Weir Length}$

Horizontal velocity = approach velocity = v_h

$$= Q/A_{\text{cross-section}} = Q/A_x$$

Hydraulic residence time = $V/Q = \theta$

where

Q = flowrate

A_x = cross-sectional area

A = surface area, plan view

V = tank volume

Typical Primary Clarifier Efficiency Percent Removal

| | Overflow rates | | | |
|------------------|--|--|--|--|
| | 1,200 (gpd/ft ²) 48.9 (m/d) | 1,000 (gpd/ft ²) 40.7 (m/d) | 800 (gpd/ft ²) 32.6 (m/d) | 600 (gpd/ft ²) 24.4 (m/d) |
| Suspended Solids | 54% | 58% | 64% | 68% |
| BOD ₅ | 30% | 32% | 34% | 36% |

Weir Loadings

1. Water Treatment—weir overflow rates should not exceed 20,000 gpd/ft
2. Wastewater Treatment
 - a. Flow ≤ 1 MGD: weir overflow rates should not exceed 10,000 gpd/ft
 - b. Flow > 1 MGD: weir overflow rates should not exceed 15,000 gpd/ft

Horizontal Velocities

1. Water Treatment—horizontal velocities should not exceed 0.5 fpm
2. Wastewater Treatment—no specific requirements (use the same criteria as for water)

Dimensions

1. Rectangular Tanks
 - a. Length:Width ratio = 3:1 to 5:1
 - b. Basin width is determined by the scraper width (or multiples of the scraper width)
 - c. Bottom slope is set at 1%
2. Circular Tanks
 - a. Diameters up to 200 ft
 - b. Diameters must match the dimensions of the sludge scraping mechanism
 - c. Bottom slope is less than 8%

Design Criteria for Sedimentation Basins

| Type of Basin | Overflow Rate | | Solids Loading Rate | | Hydraulic Residence Time (hr) | Depth (ft) | |
|--|--------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|------------|---|
| | Average (gpd/ft ²) | Peak (m ³ /m ² ·d) | Average (lb/ft ² -d) | Peak (kg/m ² ·h) | | | |
| Water Treatment | | | | | | | |
| Clarification following coagulation and flocculation: | | | | | | | |
| Alum coagulation | 350–550 | 14–22 | | | 4–8 | 12–16 | |
| Ferric coagulation | 550–700 | 22–28 | | | 4–8 | 12–16 | |
| Upflow clarifiers | | | | | | | |
| Groundwater | 1,500–2,200 | 61–90 | | | 1 | | |
| Surface water | 1,000–1,500 | 41–61 | | | 4 | | |
| Clarification following lime-soda softening | | | | | | | |
| Conventional | 550–1,000 | 22–41 | | | 2–4 | | |
| Upflow clarifiers | | | | | | | |
| Groundwater | 1,000–2,500 | 41–102 | | | 1 | | |
| Surface water | 1,000–1,800 | 41–73 | | | 4 | | |
| Wastewater Treatment | | | | | | | |
| Primary clarifiers | 800–1,200 | 32–49 | 1,200–2,000 | 50–80 | 2 | 10–12 | |
| Settling basins following fixed film reactors | 400–800 | 16–33 | | | 2 | | |
| Settling basins following air-activated sludge reactors | | | | | | | |
| All configurations EXCEPT extended aeration | 400–700 | 16–28 | | | 2 | 12–15 | |
| Extended aeration | 200–400 | 8–16 | 1,000–1,200 | 40–64 | 2 | 12–15 | |
| Settling basins following chemical flocculation reactors | 800–1,200 | | 600–800 | 24–32 | 2 | | |
| | | | 5–24 | | 1–5 | 34 | 7 |

Settling Equations

General Spherical

$$v_t = \sqrt{\frac{4g(\rho_p - \rho_f)d}{3C_D\rho_f}}$$

where

$$C_D = \text{drag coefficient}$$

$$= 24/\text{Re} \quad (\text{Laminar; } \text{Re} \leq 1.0)$$

$$= 24/\text{Re} + 3/(\text{Re}^{1/2}) + 0.34 \quad (\text{Transitional})$$

$$= 0.4 \quad (\text{Turbulent; } \text{Re} \geq 10^4)$$

$$\text{Re} = \text{Reynolds number} = \frac{v_t \rho d}{\mu}$$

$$g = \text{gravitational constant}$$

$$\rho_p \text{ and } \rho_f = \text{density of particle and fluid respectively}$$

$$d = \text{diameter of sphere}$$

$$\mu = \text{bulk viscosity of liquid} = \text{absolute viscosity}$$

$$v_t = \text{terminal settling velocity}$$

Stokes' Law

$$v_t = \frac{g(\rho_p - \rho_f)d^2}{18\mu} = \frac{g \rho_f (S.G. - 1)d^2}{18\mu}$$

$$\text{Approach velocity} = \text{horizontal velocity} = Q/A_x$$

$$\text{Hydraulic loading rate} = Q/A$$

$$\text{Hydraulic residence time} = V/Q = \theta$$

where

$$Q = \text{flowrate}$$

$$A_x = \text{cross-sectional area}$$

$$A = \text{surface area, plan view}$$

$$V = \text{tank volume}$$

$$\rho_f = \text{fluid mass density}$$

$$S.G. = \text{specific gravity}$$

Filtration Equations

$$\text{Filter bay length:width ratio} = 1.2:1 \text{ to } 1.5:1$$

$$\text{Effective size} = d_{10}$$

$$\text{Uniformity coefficient} = d_{60}/d_{10}$$

$$d_x = \text{diameter of particle class for which } x\% \text{ of sample is less than (units meters or feet)}$$

Filter equations can be used with any consistent set of units.

Head Loss Through Clean Bed

Rose Equation

Monosized Media

$$h_f = \frac{1067(v_s)^2 LC_D}{g\eta^4 d}$$

Multisized Media

$$h_f = \frac{1067(v_s)^2 L}{g\eta^4} \sum \frac{C_{Dij} x_{ij}}{d_{ij}}$$

Carmen-Kozeny Equation

Monosized Media

$$h_f = \frac{f' L (1 - \eta) v_s^2}{\eta^3 g d}$$

Multisized Media

$$h_f = \frac{L(1 - \eta) v_s^2}{\eta^3 g} \sum \frac{f'_{ij} x_{ij}}{d_{ij}}$$

$$f' = \text{friction factor} = 150 \left(\frac{1 - \eta}{\text{Re}} \right) + 1.75$$

where

$$h_f = \text{head loss through the clean bed (m of H}_2\text{O)}$$

$$L = \text{depth of filter media (m)}$$

$$\eta = \text{porosity of bed} = \text{void volume/total volume}$$

$$v_s = \text{filtration rate} = \text{empty bed approach velocity}$$

$$= Q/A_{\text{plan}} \text{ (m/s)}$$

$$g = \text{gravitational acceleration (m/s}^2\text{)}$$

$$\text{Re} = \text{Reynolds number} = \frac{v_s \rho d}{\mu}$$

$$d_{ij}, d = \text{diameter of filter media particles; arithmetic average of adjacent screen openings (m)}$$

$$i = \text{filter media (sand, anthracite, garnet)}$$

$$j = \text{filter media particle size}$$

$$x_{ij} = \text{mass fraction of media retained between adjacent sieves}$$

$$f'_{ij} = \text{friction factors for each media fraction}$$

$$C_D = \text{drag coefficient as defined in settling velocity equations}$$

Bed Expansion

Monosized

$$L_f = \frac{L_o(1 - \eta_o)}{1 - \left(\frac{v_B}{v_t} \right)^{0.22}}$$

Multisized

$$L_f = L_o(1 - \eta_o) \sum \frac{x_{ij}}{1 - \left(\frac{v_B}{v_{t,ij}} \right)^{0.22}}$$

$$\eta_f = \left(\frac{v_B}{v_t} \right)^{0.22}$$

where

$$L_f = \text{depth of fluidized filter media (m)}$$

$$v_B = \text{backwash velocity (m/s), } Q_B/A_{\text{plan}}$$

$$Q_B = \text{backwash flowrate}$$

$$v_t = \text{terminal setting velocity}$$

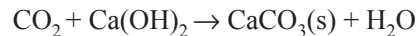
$$\eta_f = \text{porosity of fluidized bed}$$

$$L_o = \text{initial bed depth}$$

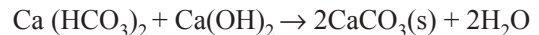
$$\eta_o = \text{initial bed porosity}$$

Lime-Soda Softening Equations

1. Carbon dioxide removal



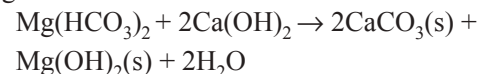
2. Calcium carbonate hardness removal



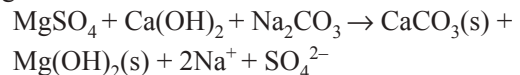
3. Calcium non-carbonate hardness removal



4. Magnesium carbonate hardness removal



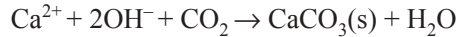
5. Magnesium non-carbonate hardness removal



6. Destruction of excess alkalinity



7. Recarbonation



| Molecular Formulas | Molecular Weight | n | | Equivalent Weight |
|------------------------------------|------------------|-----|----------------|-------------------|
| | | # | Equiv per mole | |
| CO ₃ ²⁻ | 60.0 | 2 | | 30.0 |
| CO ₂ | 44.0 | 2 | | 22.0 |
| Ca(OH) ₂ | 74.1 | 2 | | 37.1 |
| CaCO ₃ | 100.1 | 2 | | 50.0 |
| Ca(HCO ₃) ₂ | 162.1 | 2 | | 81.1 |
| CaSO ₄ | 136.1 | 2 | | 68.1 |
| Ca ²⁺ | 40.1 | 2 | | 20.0 |
| H ⁺ | 1.0 | 1 | | 1.0 |
| HCO ₃ ⁻ | 61.0 | 1 | | 61.0 |
| Mg(HCO ₃) ₂ | 146.3 | 2 | | 73.2 |
| Mg(OH) ₂ | 58.3 | 2 | | 29.2 |
| MgSO ₄ | 120.4 | 2 | | 60.2 |
| Mg ²⁺ | 24.3 | 2 | | 12.2 |
| Na ⁺ | 23.0 | 1 | | 23.0 |
| Na ₂ CO ₃ | 106.0 | 2 | | 53.0 |
| OH ⁻ | 17.0 | 1 | | 17.0 |
| SO ₄ ²⁻ | 96.1 | 2 | | 48.0 |

Rapid Mix and Flocculator Design

$$G = \sqrt{\frac{P}{\mu V}} = \sqrt{\frac{\gamma H_L}{t \mu}}$$

$$Gt = 10^4 \text{ to } 10^5$$

where

G = root mean square velocity gradient (mixing intensity)
[ft/(sec-ft) or m/(s•m)]

P = power to the fluid (ft-lb/sec or N•m/s)

V = volume (ft³ or m³)

μ = dynamic viscosity [lb/(ft-sec) or Pa•s]

γ = specific weight of water (lb/ft³ or N/m³)

H_L = head loss (ft or m)

t = time (sec or s)

Reel and Paddle

$$P = \frac{C_D A_p \rho_f v_r^3}{2}$$

where

C_D = drag coefficient = 1.8 for flat blade with a L:W > 20:1

A_p = area of blade (m²) perpendicular to the direction of travel through the water

ρ_f = density of H₂O (kg/m³)

v_p = velocity of paddle (m/s)

v_r = relative or effective paddle velocity

$$= v_p \cdot \text{slip coefficient}$$

slip coefficient = 0.5 to 0.75

Turbulent Flow Impeller Mixer

$$P = K_T (n)^3 (D_i)^5 \rho_f$$

where

K_T = impeller constant (see table)

n = rotational speed (rev/sec)

D_i = impeller diameter (m)

Values of the Impeller Constant K_T (Assume Turbulent Flow)

| Type of Impeller | K_T |
|---|-------|
| Propeller, pitch of 1, 3 blades | 0.32 |
| Propeller, pitch of 2, 3 blades | 1.00 |
| Turbine, 6 flat blades, vaned disc | 6.30 |
| Turbine, 6 curved blades | 4.80 |
| Fan turbine, 6 blades at 45° | 1.65 |
| Shrouded turbine, 6 curved blades | 1.08 |
| Shrouded turbine, with stator, no baffles | 1.12 |

Note: Constant assumes baffled tanks having four baffles at the tank wall with a width equal to 10% of the tank diameter.

Reprinted with permission from *Industrial & Engineering Chemistry*, "Mixing of Liquids in Chemical Processing," J. Henry Rushton, 1952, v. 44, no. 12. p. 2934, American Chemical Society.

Reverse Osmosis

Osmotic Pressure of Solutions of Electrolytes

$$\Pi = \phi v \frac{n}{V} RT$$

where

Π = osmotic pressure, Pa

ϕ = osmotic coefficient

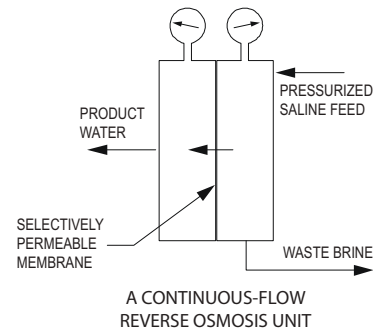
v = number of ions formed from one molecule of electrolyte

n = number of moles of electrolyte

V = specific volume of solvent, m³/kmol

R = universal gas constant, Pa • m³/(kmol • K)

T = absolute temperature, K



Salt Flux through the Membrane

$$J_s = (D_s K_s / \Delta Z)(C_{in} - C_{out})$$

where

J_s = salt flux through the membrane [kmol/(m² • s)]

D_s = diffusivity of the solute in the membrane (m²/s)

K_s = solute distribution coefficient (dimensionless)

C = concentration (kmol/m³)

ΔZ = membrane thickness (m)

$$J_s = K_p (C_{in} - C_{out})$$

K_p = membrane solute mass-transfer coefficient

$$= \frac{D_s K_s}{\Delta Z} (L/t, m/s)$$

Water Flux

$$J_w = W_p (\Delta P - \Delta \pi)$$

where

J_w = water flux through the membrane [kmol/(m² • s)]

W_p = coefficient of water permeation, a characteristic of the particular membrane [kmol/(m² • s • Pa)]

ΔP = pressure differential across membrane = $P_{in} - P_{out}$ (Pa)

$\Delta \pi$ = osmotic pressure differential across membrane

$$\pi_{in} - \pi_{out} \text{ (Pa)}$$

Ultrafiltration

$$J_w = \frac{\varepsilon r^2 \int \Delta P}{8\mu\delta}$$

where

ε = membrane porosity

r = membrane pore size

ΔP = net transmembrane pressure

μ = viscosity

δ = membrane thickness

J_w = volumetric flux (m/s)

◆ Disinfection

Chlorine contact chamber length:width ratio = 20:1 to 50:1

$$CT_{calc} = C \times t_{10}$$

CT_{calc} = calculated CT value (mg • mm/L)

C = residual disinfectant concentration measured during peak hourly flow (mg/L)

t_{10} = time it takes 10% of the water to flow through the reactor measured during peak hourly flow (min)

= can be determined from traces study data or the following relationship

$$t_{10(\text{approx})} = \theta \times BF$$

θ = hydraulic residence time (min)

BF = baffling factor

◆ Adapted from *Guidance Manual LT1ESWTR Disinfection Profiling and Benchmarking*, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2003.

Baffling Factors

| Baffling Condition | Baffling Factor | Baffling Description |
|------------------------|-----------------|--|
| Unbaffled (mixed flow) | 0.1 | None, agitated basin, very low length to width ratio, high inlet and outlet flow velocities. |
| Poor | 0.3 | Single or multiple unbaffled inlets and outlets, no intra-basin baffles. |
| Average | 0.5 | Baffled inlet or outlet with some intra-basin baffles. |
| Superior | 0.7 | Perforated inlet baffle, serpentine or perforated intra-basin baffles, outlet weir or perforated launders. |
| Perfect (plug flow) | 1.0 | Very high length to width ratio (pipeline flow), perforated inlet, outlet, and intra-basin baffles. |

◆ *Guidance Manual LT1ESWTR Disinfection Profiling and Benchmarking*, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2003.

◆ **Removal and Inactivation Requirements**

| Microorganism | Required Log Reduction | Treatment |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Giardia</i> | 3-log (99.9%) | Removal and/or inactivation |
| Viruses | 4-log (99.99%) | Removal and/or inactivation |
| <i>Cryptosporidium</i> | 2-log (99%) | Removal |

◆ **Typical Removal Credits and Inactivation Requirements for Various Treatment Technologies**

| Process | Typical Log Removal Credits | | Resulting Disinfection Log Inactivation Requirements | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------|---|---------|
| | <i>Giardia</i> | Viruses | <i>Giardia</i> | Viruses |
| Conventional Treatment | 2.5 | 2.0 | 0.5 | 2.0 |
| Direct Filtration | 2.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 3.0 |
| Slow Sand Filtration | 2.0 | 2.0 | 1.0 | 2.0 |
| Diatomaceous Earth Filtration | 2.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 3.0 |
| Unfiltered | 0 | 0 | 3.0 | 4.0 |

◆ *Guidance Manual LT1ESWTR Disinfection Profiling and Benchmarking*, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2003.

**CT Values* For 3-LOG Inactivation
Of *Giardia* Cysts By Free Chlorine**

| Chlorine Concentration (mg/L) | Temperature <= 0.5°C | | | | | | | | Temperature = 5°C | | | | | | | | Temperature = 10°C | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|--|--|--|
| | pH | | | | | | | | pH | | | | | | | | pH | | | | | | | |
| | <=6.0 | 6.5 | 7.0 | 7.5 | 8.0 | 8.5 | 9.0 | <=6.0 | 6.5 | 7.0 | 7.5 | 8.0 | 8.5 | 9.0 | <=6.0 | 6.5 | 7.0 | 7.5 | 8.0 | 8.5 | 9.0 | | | |
| <=0.4 | 137 | 163 | 195 | 237 | 277 | 329 | 390 | 97 | 117 | 139 | 166 | 198 | 236 | 279 | 73 | 88 | 104 | 125 | 149 | 177 | 209 | | | |
| 0.6 | 141 | 168 | 200 | 239 | 286 | 342 | 407 | 100 | 120 | 143 | 171 | 204 | 244 | 291 | 75 | 90 | 107 | 128 | 153 | 183 | 218 | | | |
| 0.8 | 145 | 172 | 205 | 246 | 295 | 354 | 422 | 103 | 122 | 146 | 175 | 210 | 252 | 301 | 78 | 92 | 110 | 131 | 158 | 189 | 226 | | | |
| 1.0 | 148 | 176 | 210 | 253 | 304 | 365 | 437 | 105 | 125 | 149 | 179 | 216 | 260 | 312 | 79 | 94 | 112 | 134 | 162 | 195 | 234 | | | |
| 1.2 | 152 | 180 | 215 | 259 | 313 | 376 | 451 | 107 | 127 | 152 | 183 | 221 | 267 | 320 | 80 | 95 | 114 | 137 | 166 | 200 | 240 | | | |
| 1.4 | 155 | 184 | 221 | 266 | 321 | 387 | 464 | 109 | 130 | 155 | 187 | 227 | 274 | 329 | 82 | 98 | 116 | 140 | 170 | 206 | 247 | | | |
| 1.6 | 157 | 189 | 226 | 273 | 329 | 397 | 477 | 111 | 132 | 158 | 192 | 232 | 281 | 337 | 83 | 99 | 119 | 144 | 174 | 211 | 253 | | | |
| 1.8 | 162 | 193 | 231 | 279 | 338 | 407 | 489 | 114 | 135 | 162 | 196 | 238 | 287 | 345 | 86 | 101 | 122 | 147 | 179 | 215 | 259 | | | |
| 2.0 | 165 | 197 | 236 | 286 | 346 | 417 | 500 | 116 | 138 | 165 | 200 | 243 | 294 | 353 | 87 | 104 | 124 | 150 | 182 | 221 | 265 | | | |
| 2.2 | 169 | 201 | 242 | 297 | 353 | 426 | 511 | 118 | 140 | 169 | 204 | 248 | 300 | 361 | 89 | 105 | 127 | 153 | 186 | 225 | 271 | | | |
| 2.4 | 172 | 205 | 247 | 298 | 361 | 435 | 522 | 120 | 143 | 172 | 209 | 253 | 306 | 368 | 90 | 107 | 129 | 157 | 190 | 230 | 276 | | | |
| 2.6 | 175 | 209 | 252 | 304 | 368 | 444 | 533 | 122 | 146 | 175 | 213 | 258 | 312 | 375 | 92 | 110 | 131 | 160 | 194 | 234 | 281 | | | |
| 2.8 | 178 | 213 | 257 | 310 | 375 | 452 | 543 | 124 | 148 | 178 | 217 | 263 | 318 | 382 | 93 | 111 | 134 | 163 | 197 | 239 | 287 | | | |
| 3.0 | 181 | 217 | 261 | 316 | 382 | 460 | 552 | 126 | 151 | 182 | 221 | 268 | 324 | 389 | 95 | 113 | 137 | 166 | 201 | 243 | 292 | | | |
| Chlorine Concentration (mg/L) | Temperature = 15°C | | | | | | | | Temperature = 20°C | | | | | | | | Temperature = 25°C | | | | | | | |
| | pH | | | | | | | | pH | | | | | | | | pH | | | | | | | |
| | <=6.0 | 6.5 | 7.0 | 7.5 | 8.0 | 8.5 | 9.0 | <=6.0 | 6.5 | 7.0 | 7.5 | 8.0 | 8.5 | 9.0 | <=6.0 | 6.5 | 7.0 | 7.5 | 8.0 | 8.5 | 9.0 | | | |
| <=0.4 | 49 | 59 | 70 | 83 | 99 | 118 | 140 | 36 | 44 | 52 | 62 | 74 | 89 | 105 | 24 | 29 | 35 | 42 | 50 | 59 | 70 | | | |
| 0.6 | 50 | 60 | 72 | 86 | 102 | 122 | 146 | 38 | 45 | 54 | 64 | 77 | 92 | 109 | 25 | 30 | 36 | 43 | 51 | 61 | 73 | | | |
| 0.8 | 52 | 61 | 73 | 88 | 105 | 126 | 151 | 39 | 46 | 55 | 66 | 79 | 95 | 113 | 26 | 31 | 37 | 44 | 53 | 63 | 75 | | | |
| 1.0 | 53 | 63 | 75 | 90 | 108 | 130 | 156 | 39 | 47 | 56 | 67 | 81 | 98 | 117 | 26 | 31 | 37 | 45 | 54 | 65 | 78 | | | |
| 1.2 | 54 | 64 | 76 | 92 | 111 | 134 | 160 | 40 | 48 | 57 | 69 | 83 | 100 | 120 | 27 | 32 | 38 | 46 | 55 | 67 | 80 | | | |
| 1.4 | 55 | 65 | 78 | 94 | 114 | 137 | 165 | 41 | 49 | 58 | 70 | 85 | 103 | 123 | 27 | 33 | 39 | 47 | 57 | 69 | 82 | | | |
| 1.6 | 56 | 66 | 79 | 96 | 116 | 141 | 169 | 42 | 50 | 59 | 72 | 87 | 105 | 126 | 28 | 33 | 40 | 48 | 58 | 70 | 84 | | | |
| 1.8 | 57 | 68 | 81 | 98 | 119 | 144 | 173 | 43 | 51 | 61 | 74 | 89 | 106 | 129 | 29 | 34 | 41 | 49 | 60 | 72 | 86 | | | |
| 2.0 | 58 | 69 | 83 | 100 | 122 | 147 | 177 | 44 | 52 | 62 | 75 | 91 | 110 | 132 | 29 | 35 | 41 | 50 | 61 | 74 | 88 | | | |
| 2.2 | 59 | 70 | 85 | 102 | 124 | 150 | 181 | 44 | 53 | 63 | 77 | 93 | 113 | 135 | 30 | 35 | 42 | 51 | 62 | 75 | 90 | | | |
| 2.4 | 60 | 72 | 86 | 105 | 127 | 153 | 184 | 45 | 54 | 65 | 78 | 95 | 115 | 138 | 30 | 36 | 43 | 52 | 63 | 77 | 92 | | | |
| 2.6 | 61 | 73 | 88 | 107 | 129 | 156 | 188 | 46 | 55 | 66 | 80 | 97 | 117 | 141 | 31 | 37 | 44 | 53 | 65 | 78 | 94 | | | |
| 2.8 | 62 | 74 | 89 | 109 | 132 | 159 | 191 | 47 | 56 | 67 | 81 | 99 | 119 | 143 | 31 | 37 | 45 | 54 | 66 | 80 | 96 | | | |
| 3.0 | 63 | 76 | 91 | 111 | 134 | 162 | 195 | 47 | 57 | 68 | 83 | 101 | 122 | 146 | 32 | 38 | 46 | 55 | 67 | 81 | 97 | | | |

*Although units did not appear in the original tables, units are min-mg/L

**CT VALUES* FOR
4-LOG INACTIVATION OF VIRUSES BY FREE CHLORINE**

| Temperature (°C) | pH | |
|------------------|-----|----|
| | 6-9 | 10 |
| 0.5 | 12 | 90 |
| 5 | 8 | 60 |
| 10 | 6 | 45 |
| 15 | 4 | 30 |
| 20 | 3 | 22 |
| 25 | 2 | 15 |

*Although units did not appear in the original tables, units are min-mg/L

◆ Guidance Manual LTIESWTR Disinfection Profiling and Benchmarking, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2003.

ELECTRICAL AND COMPUTER ENGINEERING

UNITS

The basic electrical units are coulombs for charge, volts for voltage, amperes for current, and ohms for resistance and impedance.

ELECTROSTATICS

$$\mathbf{F}_2 = \frac{Q_1 Q_2}{4\pi\epsilon r^2} \mathbf{a}_{r12}, \text{ where}$$

\mathbf{F}_2 = the force on charge 2 due to charge 1

Q_i = the i th point charge

r = the distance between charges 1 and 2

\mathbf{a}_{r12} = a unit vector directed from 1 to 2

ϵ = the permittivity of the medium

For free space or air:

$$\epsilon = \epsilon_0 = 8.85 \times 10^{-12} \text{ farads/meter}$$

Electrostatic Fields

Electric field intensity \mathbf{E} (volts/meter) at point 2 due to a point charge Q_1 at point 1 is

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{Q_1}{4\pi\epsilon r^2} \mathbf{a}_{r12}$$

For a line charge of density ρ_L coulombs/meter on the z -axis, the radial electric field is

$$\mathbf{E}_L = \frac{\rho_L}{2\pi\epsilon r} \mathbf{a}_r$$

For a sheet charge of density ρ_s coulombs/meter² in the x - y plane:

$$\mathbf{E}_s = \frac{\rho_s}{2\epsilon} \mathbf{a}_z, z > 0$$

Gauss' law states that the integral of the electric flux density $\mathbf{D} = \epsilon\mathbf{E}$ over a closed surface is equal to the charge enclosed or

$$Q_{encl} = \oint_S \epsilon \mathbf{E} \cdot d\mathbf{S}$$

The force on a point charge Q in an electric field with intensity \mathbf{E} is $\mathbf{F} = Q\mathbf{E}$.

The work done by an external agent in moving a charge Q in an electric field from point p_1 to point p_2 is

$$W = -Q \int_{p_1}^{p_2} \mathbf{E} \cdot d\mathbf{l}$$

The energy W_E stored in an electric field \mathbf{E} is

$$W_E = (1/2) \iiint_V \epsilon |\mathbf{E}|^2 dV$$

Voltage

The potential difference V between two points is the work per unit charge required to move the charge between the points.

For two parallel plates with potential difference V , separated by distance d , the strength of the E field between the plates is

$$E = \frac{V}{d}$$

directed from the + plate to the - plate.

Current

Electric current $i(t)$ through a surface is defined as the rate of charge transport through that surface or

$$i(t) = dq(t)/dt, \text{ which is a function of time } t$$

since $q(t)$ denotes instantaneous charge.

A constant current $i(t)$ is written as I , and the vector current density in amperes/m² is defined as \mathbf{J} .

Magnetic Fields

For a current-carrying wire on the z -axis

$$\mathbf{H} = \frac{\mathbf{B}}{\mu} = \frac{I\mathbf{a}_\phi}{2\pi r}, \text{ where}$$

\mathbf{H} = the magnetic field strength (amperes/meter)

\mathbf{B} = the magnetic flux density (tesla)

\mathbf{a}_ϕ = the unit vector in positive ϕ direction in cylindrical coordinates

I = the current

μ = the permeability of the medium

For air: $\mu = \mu_0 = 4\pi \times 10^{-7} \text{ H/m}$

Force on a current-carrying conductor in a uniform magnetic field is

$$\mathbf{F} = I\mathbf{L} \times \mathbf{B}, \text{ where}$$

\mathbf{L} = the length vector of a conductor

The energy stored W_H in a magnetic field \mathbf{H} is

$$W_H = (1/2) \iiint_V \mu |\mathbf{H}|^2 dV$$

Induced Voltage

Faraday's Law states for a coil of N turns enclosing flux ϕ :

$$v = -N d\phi/dt, \text{ where}$$

v = the induced voltage

ϕ = the average flux (webers) enclosed by each turn

$\phi = \int_S \mathbf{B} \cdot d\mathbf{S}$

Resistivity

For a conductor of length L , electrical resistivity ρ , and cross-sectional area A , the resistance is

$$R = \frac{\rho L}{A}$$

For metallic conductors, the resistivity and resistance vary linearly with changes in temperature according to the following relationships:

$$\rho = \rho_0 [1 + \alpha(T - T_0)], \text{ and}$$

$$R = R_0 [1 + \alpha(T - T_0)], \text{ where}$$

ρ_0 = resistivity at T_0

R_0 = resistance at T_0

α = temperature coefficient

Ohm's Law: $V = IR$; $v(t) = i(t)R$

Resistors in Series and Parallel

For series connections, the current in all resistors is the same and the equivalent resistance for n resistors in series is

$$R_s = R_1 + R_2 + \dots + R_n$$

For parallel connections of resistors, the voltage drop across each resistor is the same and the equivalent resistance for n resistors in parallel is

$$R_p = 1 / (1/R_1 + 1/R_2 + \dots + 1/R_n)$$

For two resistors R_1 and R_2 in parallel

$$R_p = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1 + R_2}$$

Power Absorbed by a Resistive Element

$$P = VI = \frac{V^2}{R} = I^2 R$$

Kirchhoff's Laws

Kirchhoff's voltage law for a closed path is expressed by

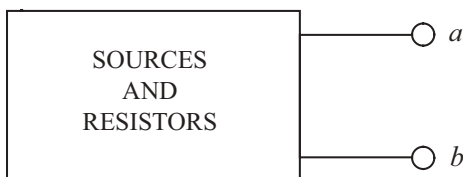
$$\sum V_{\text{rises}} = \sum V_{\text{drops}}$$

Kirchhoff's current law for a closed surface is

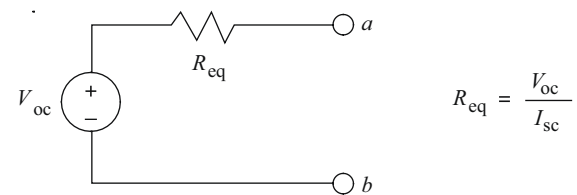
$$\sum I_{\text{in}} = \sum I_{\text{out}}$$

SOURCE EQUIVALENTS

For an arbitrary circuit

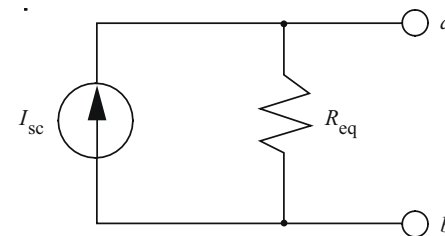


The Thévenin equivalent is



The open circuit voltage V_{oc} is $V_a - V_b$, and the short circuit current is I_{sc} from a to b .

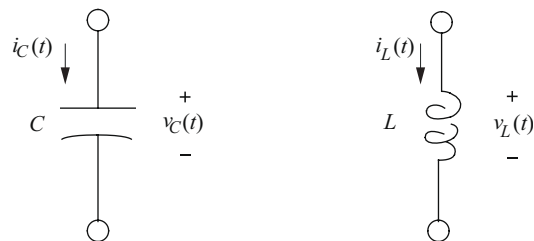
The Norton equivalent circuit is



where I_{sc} and R_{eq} are defined above.

A load resistor R_L connected across terminals a and b will draw maximum power when $R_L = R_{\text{eq}}$.

CAPACITORS AND INDUCTORS



The charge $q_C(t)$ and voltage $v_C(t)$ relationship for a capacitor C in farads is

$$C = q_C(t) / v_C(t) \quad \text{or} \quad q_C(t) = C v_C(t)$$

A parallel plate capacitor of area A with plates separated a distance d by an insulator with a permittivity ϵ has a capacitance

$$C = \frac{\epsilon A}{d}$$

ϵ is often given as $\epsilon = \epsilon_r (\epsilon_0)$ where ϵ_r is the relative permittivity or dielectric constant and $\epsilon_0 = 8.85 \times 10^{-12}$ F/m.

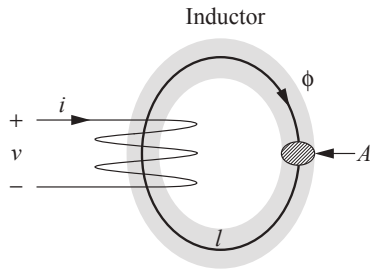
The current-voltage relationships for a capacitor are

$$v_C(t) = v_C(0) + \frac{1}{C} \int_0^t i_C(\tau) d\tau$$

and $i_C(t) = C (dv_C/dt)$

The energy stored in a capacitor is expressed in joules and given by

$$\text{Energy} = C v_C^2 / 2 = q_C^2 / 2C = q_C v_C / 2$$



The inductance L (henrys) of a coil of N turns wound on a core with cross-sectional area A (m^2), permeability μ and flux ϕ with a mean path of l (m) is given as:

$$L = N^2 \mu A / l = N^2 / \mathfrak{R}$$

$$N\phi = Li$$

where $\mathfrak{R} = \text{reluctance} = l/\mu A$ (H^{-1}). μ is sometimes given as $\mu = \mu_r \cdot \mu_0$ where μ_r is the relative permeability and $\mu_0 = 4\pi \times 10^{-7} \text{ H/m}$.

Using Faraday's law, the voltage-current relations for an inductor are

$$v_L(t) = L (di_L/dt)$$

$$i_L(t) = i_L(0) + \frac{1}{L} \int_0^t v_L(\tau) d\tau, \text{ where}$$

v_L = inductor voltage

L = inductance (henrys)

i_L = inductor current (amperes)

The energy stored in an inductor is expressed in joules and given by

$$\text{Energy} = Li_L^2/2$$

Capacitors and Inductors in Parallel and Series

Capacitors in Parallel

$$C_P = C_1 + C_2 + \dots + C_n$$

Capacitors in Series

$$C_S = \frac{1}{1/C_1 + 1/C_2 + \dots + 1/C_n}$$

Inductors in Parallel

$$L_P = \frac{1}{1/L_1 + 1/L_2 + \dots + 1/L_n}$$

Inductors in Series

$$L_S = L_1 + L_2 + \dots + L_n$$

AC CIRCUITS

For a sinusoidal voltage or current of frequency f (Hz) and period T (seconds),

$$f = 1/T = \omega/(2\pi), \text{ where}$$

ω = the angular frequency in radians/s

Average Value

For a periodic waveform (either voltage or current) with period T ,

$$X_{\text{ave}} = (1/T) \int_0^T x(t) dt$$

The average value of a full-wave rectified sinusoid is

$$X_{\text{ave}} = (2X_{\text{max}})/\pi$$

and half this for half-wave rectification, where

X_{max} = the peak amplitude of the sinusoid.

Effective or RMS Values

For a periodic waveform with period T , the rms or effective value is

$$X_{\text{eff}} = X_{\text{rms}} = \left[(1/T) \int_0^T x^2(t) dt \right]^{1/2}$$

For a sinusoidal waveform and full-wave rectified sine wave,

$$X_{\text{eff}} = X_{\text{rms}} = X_{\text{max}}/\sqrt{2}$$

For a half-wave rectified sine wave,

$$X_{\text{eff}} = X_{\text{rms}} = X_{\text{max}}/2$$

For a periodic signal,

$$X_{\text{rms}} = \sqrt{X_{\text{dc}}^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} X_n^2} \text{ where}$$

X_{dc} is the dc component of $x(t)$

X_n is the rms value of the n th harmonic

Sine-Cosine Relations and Trigonometric Identities

$$\cos(\omega t) = \sin(\omega t + \pi/2) = -\sin(\omega t - \pi/2)$$

$$\sin(\omega t) = \cos(\omega t - \pi/2) = -\cos(\omega t + \pi/2)$$

Other trigonometric identities for sinusoids are given in the section on Trigonometry.

Phasor Transforms of Sinusoids

$$P[V_{\text{max}} \cos(\omega t + \phi)] = V_{\text{rms}} \angle \phi = \mathbf{V}$$

$$P[I_{\text{max}} \cos(\omega t + \theta)] = I_{\text{rms}} \angle \theta = \mathbf{I}$$

For a circuit element, the impedance is defined as the ratio of phasor voltage to phasor current.

$$\mathbf{Z} = \mathbf{V}/\mathbf{I}$$

For a resistor, $\mathbf{Z}_R = R$

For a capacitor, $\mathbf{Z}_C = \frac{1}{j\omega C} = jX_C$

For an inductor,

$$\mathbf{Z}_L = j\omega L = jX_L, \text{ where}$$

X_C and X_L are the capacitive and inductive reactances respectively defined as

$$X_C = -\frac{1}{\omega C} \text{ and } X_L = \omega L$$

Impedances in series combine additively while those in parallel combine according to the reciprocal rule just as in the case of resistors.

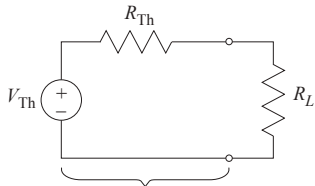
Maximum Power-Transfer Theorem

DC Circuits

Maximum power transfer to the load R_L occurs when $R_L = R_{Th}$.

$$P_{max} = \frac{V_{Th}^2}{4 R_{Th}}$$

$$\text{Efficiency: } \eta = \frac{P_L}{P_S} = \frac{R_L}{R_L + R_{Th}}$$

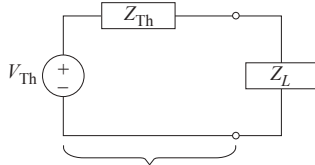


Thevenin Equivalent Circuit

AC Circuits

In an ac circuit maximum power transfer to the load impedance Z_L occurs when the load impedance equals the complex conjugate of the Thevenin equivalent impedance:

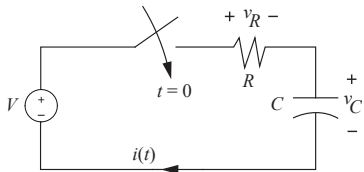
$$Z_L = Z_{Th}^*$$



Thevenin Equivalent Circuit

*If the load is purely resistive (R_L) then for maximum power transfer $R_L = |Z_{Th}|$

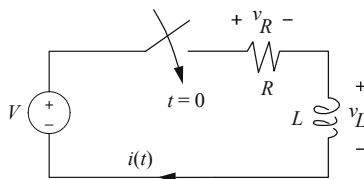
RC AND RL TRANSIENTS



$$t \geq 0; v_C(t) = v_C(0)e^{-t/RC} + V(1 - e^{-t/RC})$$

$$i(t) = \{[V - v_C(0)]/R\}e^{-t/RC}$$

$$v_R(t) = i(t)R = [V - v_C(0)]e^{-t/RC}$$



$$t \geq 0; i(t) = i(0)e^{-Rt/L} + \frac{V}{R}(1 - e^{-Rt/L})$$

$$v_R(t) = i(t)R = i(0)Re^{-Rt/L} + V(1 - e^{-Rt/L})$$

$$v_L(t) = L(di/dt) = -i(0)Re^{-Rt/L} + Ve^{-Rt/L}$$

where $v(0)$ and $i(0)$ denote the initial conditions and the parameters RC and L/R are termed the respective circuit time constants.

RESONANCE

The radian resonant frequency for both parallel and series resonance situations is

$$\omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}} = 2\pi f_0 \text{ rad/s}$$

Series Resonance

$$\omega_0 L = \frac{1}{\omega_0 C}$$

$$Z = R \text{ at resonance}$$

$$Q = \frac{\omega_0 L}{R} = \frac{1}{\omega_0 CR}$$

$$BW = \frac{\omega_0}{Q} \text{ rad/s}$$

Parallel Resonance

$$\omega_0 L = \frac{1}{\omega_0 C}$$

$$Z = R \text{ at resonance}$$

$$Q = \omega_0 RC = \frac{R}{\omega_0 L}$$

$$BW = \frac{\omega_0}{Q} \text{ rad/s}$$

AC POWER

Complex Power

Real power P (watts) is defined by

$$P = (1/2)V_{max} I_{max} \cos \theta = V_{rms} I_{rms} \cos \theta$$

where θ is the angle measured from \mathbf{V} to \mathbf{I} . If \mathbf{I} leads (lags) \mathbf{V} , then the power factor (pf),

$$pf = \cos \theta$$

is said to be a leading (lagging) pf .

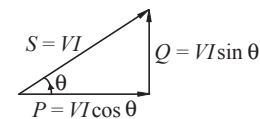
Reactive power Q (vars) is defined by

$$Q = (1/2)V_{max} I_{max} \sin \theta = V_{rms} I_{rms} \sin \theta$$

Complex power \mathbf{S} (volt-amperes) is defined by

$$\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{VI}^* = P + jQ,$$

where \mathbf{I}^* is the complex conjugate of the phasor current.



Complex Power Triangle (Inductive Load)

For resistors, $\theta = 0$, so the real power is

$$P = V_{rms} I_{rms} = V_{rms}^2 / R = I_{rms}^2 R$$

Balanced Three-Phase (3- ϕ) Systems

The 3-phase line-phase relations are

for a delta

$$V_L = V_P$$

$$I_L = \sqrt{3} I_P$$

for a wye

$$V_L = \sqrt{3} V_P = \sqrt{3} V_{LN}$$

$$I_L = I_P$$

where subscripts L and P denote line and phase respectively.

A balanced 3- ϕ , delta-connected load impedance can be converted to an equivalent wye-connected load impedance using the following relationship

$$\mathbf{Z}_\Delta = 3\mathbf{Z}_Y$$

The following formulas can be used to determine 3- ϕ power for balanced systems.

$$\mathbf{S} = P + jQ$$

$$|\mathbf{S}| = 3V_P I_P = \sqrt{3} V_L I_L$$

$$\mathbf{S} = 3V_P I_P^* = \sqrt{3} V_L I_L (\cos\theta_P + j\sin\theta_P)$$

For balanced 3- ϕ , wye- and delta-connected loads

$$\mathbf{S} = \frac{V_L^2}{Z_Y^*} \quad \mathbf{S} = 3 \frac{V_L^2}{Z_\Delta^*}$$

where

\mathbf{S} = total 3- ϕ complex power (VA)

$|\mathbf{S}|$ = total 3- ϕ apparent power (VA)

P = total 3- ϕ real power (W)

Q = total 3- ϕ reactive power (var)

θ_P = power factor angle of each phase

V_L = rms value of the line-to-line voltage

V_{LN} = rms value of the line-to-neutral voltage

I_L = rms value of the line current

I_P = rms value of the phase current

For a 3- ϕ , wye-connected source or load with line-to-neutral voltages and a positive phase sequence

$$\mathbf{V}_{an} = V_P \angle 0^\circ$$

$$\mathbf{V}_{bn} = V_P \angle -120^\circ$$

$$\mathbf{V}_{cn} = V_P \angle 120^\circ$$

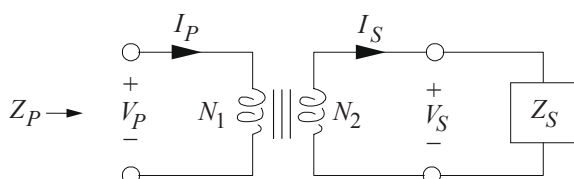
The corresponding line-to-line voltages are

$$\mathbf{V}_{ab} = \sqrt{3} V_P \angle 30^\circ$$

$$\mathbf{V}_{bc} = \sqrt{3} V_P \angle -90^\circ$$

$$\mathbf{V}_{ca} = \sqrt{3} V_P \angle 150^\circ$$

Transformers (Ideal)



Turns Ratio

$$a = N_1/N_2$$

$$a = \left| \frac{\mathbf{V}_P}{\mathbf{V}_S} \right| = \left| \frac{\mathbf{I}_S}{\mathbf{I}_P} \right|$$

The impedance seen at the input is

$$\mathbf{Z}_P = a^2 \mathbf{Z}_S$$

AC Machines

The synchronous speed n_s for ac motors is given by

$$n_s = 120f/p, \text{ where}$$

f = the line voltage frequency (Hz)

p = the number of poles

The slip for an induction motor is

$$\text{slip} = (n_s - n)/n_s, \text{ where}$$

n = the rotational speed (rpm)

DC Machines

The armature circuit of a dc machine is approximated by a series connection of the armature resistance R_a , the armature inductance L_a , and a dependent voltage source of value

$$V_a = K_a n \phi \text{ volts, where}$$

K_a = constant depending on the design

n = armature speed (rpm)

ϕ = the magnetic flux generated by the field

The field circuit is approximated by the field resistance R_f in series with the field inductance L_f . Neglecting saturation, the magnetic flux generated by the field current I_f is

$$\phi = K_f I_f \text{ webers}$$

The mechanical power generated by the armature is

$$P_m = V_a I_a \text{ watts}$$

where I_a is the armature current. The mechanical torque produced is

$$T_m = (60/2\pi) K_a \phi I_a \text{ newton-meters.}$$

Servomotors and Generators

Servomotors are electrical motors tied to a feedback system to obtain precise control. Smaller servomotors typically are dc motors.

A permanent magnet dc generator can be used to convert mechanical energy to electrical energy, as in a tachometer.

DC motor suppliers may provide data sheets with speed torque curves, motor torque constants (K_T), and motor voltage constants (K_E). An idealized dc motor at steady state exhibits the following relationships:

$$V = IR + K_E \omega$$

$$T = K_T I$$

where

V = voltage at the motor terminals

I = current through the motor

T = torque applied by the motor

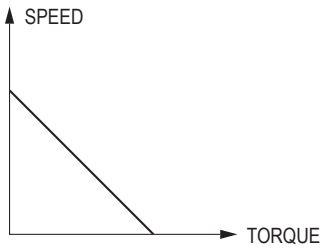
R = resistance of the windings

ω = rotational speed

When using consistent SI units [N•m/A and V/(rad/s)],

$$K_T = K_E.$$

An ideal speed-torque curve for a servomotor, with constant V , would look like this:



Voltage Regulation

The percent voltage regulation of a power supply is defined as

$$\% \text{ Regulation} = \frac{|V_{NL}| - |V_{FL}|}{|V_{FL}|} \times 100\%$$

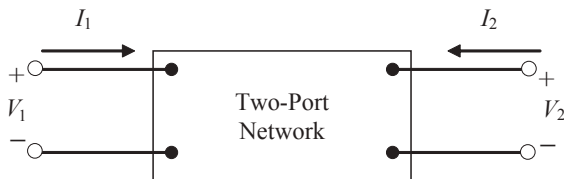
where

V_{NL} = voltage under no load conditions

V_{FL} = voltage under full load conditions

TWO-PORT PARAMETERS

A two-port network consists of two input and two output terminals as shown.



A two-port network may be represented by an equivalent circuit using a set of two-port parameters. Three commonly used sets of parameters are impedance, admittance, and hybrid parameters. The following table describes the equations used for each of these sets of parameters.

| Parameter Type | Equations | Definitions |
|--------------------|---|---|
| Impedance (z) | $V_1 = z_{11}I_1 + z_{12}I_2$ $V_2 = z_{21}I_1 + z_{22}I_2$ | $z_{11} = \frac{V_1}{I_1} \Big _{I_2=0} \quad z_{12} = \frac{V_1}{I_2} \Big _{I_1=0} \quad z_{21} = \frac{V_2}{I_1} \Big _{I_2=0} \quad z_{22} = \frac{V_2}{I_2} \Big _{I_1=0}$ |
| Admittance (y) | $I_1 = y_{11}V_1 + y_{12}V_2$ $I_2 = y_{21}V_1 + y_{22}V_2$ | $y_{11} = \frac{I_1}{V_1} \Big _{V_2=0} \quad y_{12} = \frac{I_1}{V_2} \Big _{V_1=0} \quad y_{21} = \frac{I_2}{V_1} \Big _{V_2=0} \quad y_{22} = \frac{I_2}{V_2} \Big _{V_1=0}$ |
| Hybrid (h) | $V_1 = h_{11}I_1 + h_{12}V_2$ $I_2 = h_{21}I_1 + h_{22}V_2$ | $h_{11} = \frac{V_1}{I_1} \Big _{V_2=0} \quad h_{12} = \frac{V_1}{V_2} \Big _{I_1=0} \quad h_{21} = \frac{I_2}{I_1} \Big _{V_2=0} \quad h_{22} = \frac{I_2}{V_2} \Big _{I_1=0}$ |

ELECTROMAGNETIC DYNAMIC FIELDS

The integral and point form of Maxwell's equations are

$$\oint \mathbf{E} \cdot d\boldsymbol{\ell} = -\iint_S (\partial \mathbf{B} / \partial t) \cdot d\mathbf{S}$$

$$\oint \mathbf{H} \cdot d\boldsymbol{\ell} = I_{\text{enc}} + \iint_S (\partial \mathbf{D} / \partial t) \cdot d\mathbf{S}$$

$$\oiint_{S_V} \mathbf{D} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = \iiint_V \rho dv$$

$$\oiint_{S_V} \mathbf{B} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = 0$$

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{E} = -\partial \mathbf{B} / \partial t$$

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{H} = \mathbf{J} + \partial \mathbf{D} / \partial t$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{D} = \rho$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$$

LOSSLESS TRANSMISSION LINES

The wavelength, λ , of a sinusoidal signal is defined as the distance the signal will travel in one period.

$$\lambda = \frac{U}{f}$$

where U is the velocity of propagation and f is the frequency of the sinusoid.

The characteristic impedance, \mathbf{Z}_0 , of a transmission line is the input impedance of an infinite length of the line and is given by

$$\mathbf{Z}_0 = \sqrt{L/C}$$

where L and C are the per unit length inductance and capacitance of the line.

The reflection coefficient at the load is defined as

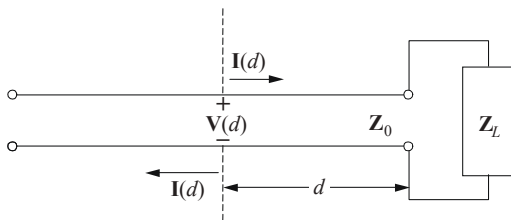
$$\Gamma = \frac{V^-}{V^+} = \frac{\mathbf{Z}_L - \mathbf{Z}_0}{\mathbf{Z}_L + \mathbf{Z}_0}$$

and the standing wave ratio SWR is

$$\text{SWR} = \frac{1 + |\Gamma|}{1 - |\Gamma|}$$

β = Propagation constant = $\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}$

For sinusoidal voltages and currents:



Voltage across the transmission line:

$$\mathbf{V}(d) = \mathbf{V}^+ e^{j\beta d} + \mathbf{V}^- e^{-j\beta d}$$

Current along the transmission line:

$$\mathbf{I}(d) = \mathbf{I}^+ e^{j\beta d} + \mathbf{I}^- e^{-j\beta d}$$

where $\mathbf{I}^+ = \mathbf{V}^+ / \mathbf{Z}_0$ and $\mathbf{I}^- = -\mathbf{V}^- / \mathbf{Z}_0$

Input impedance at d

$$\mathbf{Z}_{\text{in}}(d) = \mathbf{Z}_0 \frac{\mathbf{Z}_L + j\mathbf{Z}_0 \tan(\beta d)}{\mathbf{Z}_0 + j\mathbf{Z}_L \tan(\beta d)}$$

DIFFERENCE EQUATIONS

Difference equations are used to model discrete systems. Systems which can be described by difference equations include computer program variables iteratively evaluated in a loop, sequential circuits, cash flows, recursive processes, systems with time-delay components, etc. Any system whose input $x(t)$ and output $y(t)$ are defined only at the equally spaced intervals $t = kT$ can be described by a difference equation.

First-Order Linear Difference Equation

A first-order difference equation is

$$y[k] + a_1 y[k-1] = x[k]$$

Second-Order Linear Difference Equation

A second-order difference equation is

$$y[k] + a_1 y[k-1] + a_2 y[k-2] = x[k]$$

z-Transforms

The transform definition is

$$F(z) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} f[k] z^{-k}$$

The inverse transform is given by the contour integral

$$f[k] = \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint_{\Gamma} F(z) z^{k-1} dz$$

and it represents a powerful tool for solving linear shift-invariant difference equations. A limited unilateral list of z -transform pairs assuming zero initial conditions follows:

| $f[k]$ | $F(z)$ |
|------------------------------------|---|
| $\delta[k]$, Impulse at $k=0$ | 1 |
| $u[k]$, Step at $k=0$ | $1/(1-z^{-1})$ |
| β^k | $1/(1-\beta z^{-1})$ |
| $y[k-1]$ | $z^{-1}Y(z)$ |
| $y[k-2]$ | $z^{-2}Y(z)$ |
| $y[k+1]$ | $zY(z) - zy[0]$ |
| $y[k+2]$ | $z^2Y(z) - z^2y[0] - zy[1]$ |
| $\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} x[k-m]h[m]$ | $H(z)X(z)$ |
| $\lim_{k \rightarrow 0} f[k]$ | $\lim_{z \rightarrow \infty} F(z)$ |
| $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} f[k]$ | $\lim_{z \rightarrow 1} (1-z^{-1})F(z)$ |

[Note: The last two transform pairs represent the Initial Value Theorem (I.V.T.) and the Final Value Theorem (F.V.T.) respectively.]

CONVOLUTION

Continuous-time convolution:

$$v(t) = x(t) * y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau)y(t - \tau) d\tau$$

Discrete-time convolution:

$$v[n] = x[n] * y[n] = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x[k]y[n - k]$$

DIGITAL SIGNAL PROCESSING

A discrete-time, linear, time-invariant (DTLTI) system with a single input $x[n]$ and a single output $y[n]$ can be described by a linear difference equation with constant coefficients of the form

$$y[n] + \sum_{i=1}^k b_i y[n - i] = \sum_{i=0}^l a_i x[n - i]$$

If all initial conditions are zero, taking a z -transform yields a transfer function

$$H(z) = \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} = \frac{\sum_{i=0}^l a_i z^{-i}}{1 + \sum_{i=1}^k b_i z^{-i}}$$

Two common discrete inputs are the unit-step function $u[n]$ and the unit impulse function $\delta[n]$, where

$$u[n] = \begin{cases} 0 & n < 0 \\ 1 & n \geq 0 \end{cases} \text{ and } \delta[n] = \begin{cases} 1 & n = 0 \\ 0 & n \neq 0 \end{cases}$$

The impulse response $h[n]$ is the response of a discrete-time system to $x[n] = \delta[n]$.

A finite impulse response (FIR) filter is one in which the impulse response $h[n]$ is limited to a finite number of points:

$$h[n] = \sum_{i=0}^k a_i \delta[n - i]$$

The corresponding transfer function is given by

$$H(z) = \sum_{i=0}^k a_i z^{-i}$$

where k is the order of the filter.

An infinite impulse response (IIR) filter is one in which the impulse response $h[n]$ has an infinite number of points:

$$h[n] = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_i \delta[n - i]$$

COMMUNICATION THEORY AND CONCEPTS

The following concepts and definitions are useful for communications systems analysis.

Functions

| | |
|--|--|
| Unit step, $u(t)$ | $u(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & t < 0 \\ 1 & t > 0 \end{cases}$ |
| Rectangular pulse, $\Pi(t/\tau)$ | $\Pi(t/\tau) = \begin{cases} 1 & t/\tau < \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & t/\tau > \frac{1}{2} \end{cases}$ |
| Triangular pulse, $\Lambda(t/\tau)$ | $\Lambda(t/\tau) = \begin{cases} 1 - t/\tau & t/\tau < 1 \\ 0 & t/\tau > 1 \end{cases}$ |
| Sinc, $\text{sinc}(at)$ | $\text{sinc}(at) = \frac{\sin(a\pi t)}{a\pi t}$ |
| Unit impulse, $\delta(t)$ | $\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} x(t + t_0)\delta(t) dt = x(t_0)$ for every $x(t)$ defined and continuous at $t = t_0$. This is equivalent to $\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} x(t)\delta(t - t_0) dt = x(t_0)$ |

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) * h(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} x(\lambda)h(t - \lambda) d\lambda \\ &= h(t) * x(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} h(\lambda)x(t - \lambda) d\lambda \end{aligned}$$

In particular,

$$x(t) * \delta(t - t_0) = x(t - t_0)$$

The Fourier Transform and its Inverse

$$X(f) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} x(t) e^{-j2\pi ft} dt$$

$$x(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} X(f) e^{j2\pi ft} df$$

$x(t)$ and $X(f)$ form a *Fourier transform pair*:

$$x(t) \leftrightarrow X(f)$$

Frequency Response and Impulse Response

The *frequency response* $H(f)$ of a system with input $x(t)$ and output $y(t)$ is given by

$$H(f) = \frac{Y(f)}{X(f)}$$

This gives

$$Y(f) = H(f)X(f)$$

The response $h(t)$ of a linear time-invariant system to a unit-impulse input $\delta(t)$ is called the *impulse response* of the system. The response $y(t)$ of the system to any input $x(t)$ is the convolution of the input $x(t)$ with the impulse response $h(t)$:

$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= x(t) * h(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} x(\lambda)h(t - \lambda)d\lambda \\ &= h(t) * x(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} h(\lambda)x(t - \lambda)d\lambda \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the impulse response $h(t)$ and frequency response $H(f)$ form a Fourier transform pair:

$$h(t) \leftrightarrow H(f)$$

Parseval's Theorem

The total energy in an energy signal (finite energy) $x(t)$ is given by

$$E = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} |X(f)|^2 df$$

Parseval's Theorem for Fourier Series

A periodic signal $x(t)$ with period T_0 and fundamental frequency $f_0 = 1/T_0 = \omega_0/2\pi$ can be represented by a complex-exponential Fourier series

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{n=+\infty} X_n e^{jn2\pi f_0 t}$$

The average power in the dc component and the first N harmonics is

$$P = \sum_{n=-N}^{n=+N} |X_n|^2 = X_0^2 + 2 \sum_{n=0}^{n=N} |X_n|^2$$

The total average power in the periodic signal $x(t)$ is given by *Parseval's theorem*:

$$P = \frac{1}{T_0} \int_{t_0}^{t_0 + T_0} |x(t)|^2 dt = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{n=+\infty} |X_n|^2$$

Decibels and Bode Plots

Decibels is a technique to measure the ratio of two powers:

$$\text{dB} = 10 \log_{10} (P_2/P_1)$$

The definition can be modified to measure the ratio of two voltages:

$$\text{dB} = 20 \log_{10} (V_2/V_1)$$

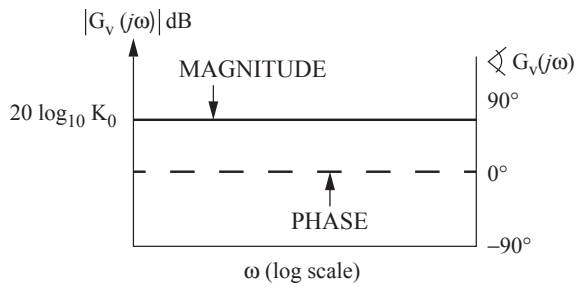
Bode plots use a logarithmic scale for the frequency

when plotting magnitude and phase response, where the magnitude is plotted in dB using a straight-line (asymptotic) approximation.

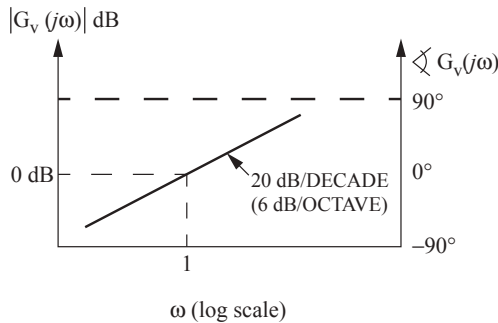
The information below summarizes Bode plots for several terms commonly encountered when determining voltage gain, $G_v(j\omega)$. Since logarithms are used to convert gain to decibels, the decibel response when these various terms are multiplied together can be added to determine the overall response.

| Term | Magnitude Response $ G_v(j\omega) _{\text{dB}}$ | Phase Response $\angle G_v(j\omega)$ | Plot |
|----------------------------------|---|---|-------|
| K_0 | $20 \log_{10}(K_0)$ | 0° | a |
| $(j\omega)^{\pm 1}$ | $\pm 20 \log_{10}(\omega)$ | $\pm 90^\circ$ | b & c |
| $(1 + j\omega/\omega_c)^{\pm 1}$ | 0 for $\omega \ll \omega_c$ $\pm 3 \text{ dB}$ for $\omega = \omega_c$ $\pm 20 \log_{10}(\omega)$ for $\omega \gg \omega_c$ | 0° for $\omega \ll \omega_c$ $\pm 45^\circ$ for $\omega = \omega_c$ $\pm 90^\circ$ for $\omega \gg \omega_c$ | d & e |

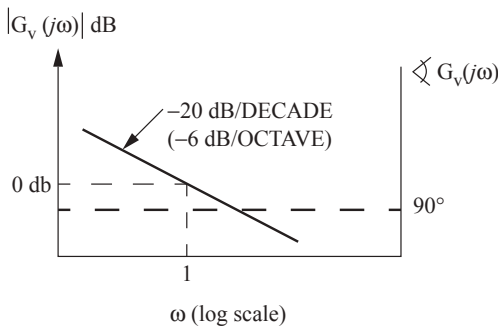
(a) K_0



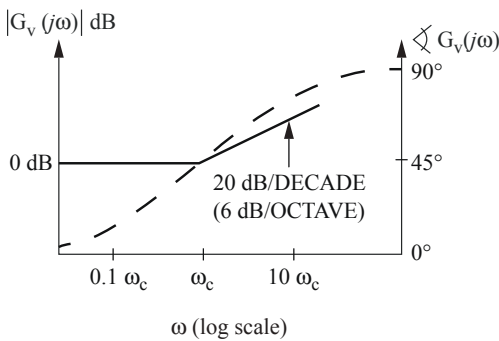
(b) $j\omega$



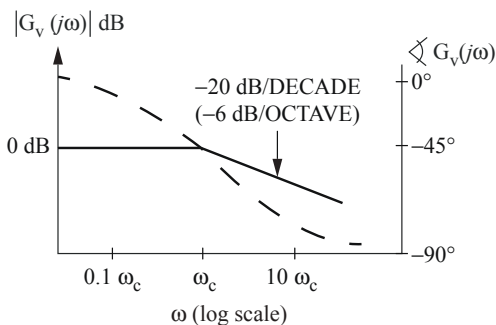
(c) $(j\omega)^{-1}$



(d) $(1 + j\omega/\omega_c)$



(e) $(1 + j\omega/\omega_c)^{-1}$



Amplitude Modulation (AM)

$$x_{AM}(t) = A_c [A + m(t)] \cos(2\pi f_c t)$$

$$= A'_c [1 + a m_n(t)] \cos(2\pi f_c t)$$

The *modulation index* is a , and the normalized message is

$$m_n(t) = \frac{m(t)}{\max|m(t)|}$$

The *efficiency* η is the percent of the total transmitted power that contains the message.

$$\eta = \frac{a^2 \langle m_n^2(t) \rangle}{1 + a^2 \langle m_n^2(t) \rangle} 100 \text{ percent}$$

where the mean-squared value or normalized average power in $m_n(t)$ is

$$\langle m_n^2(t) \rangle = \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^{+T} |m_n(t)|^2 dt$$

If $M(f) = 0$ for $|f| > W$, then the *bandwidth* of $x_{AM}(t)$ is $2W$. AM signals can be demodulated with an envelope detector or a synchronous demodulator.

Double-Sideband Modulation (DSB)

$$x_{DSB}(t) = A_c m(t) \cos(2\pi f_c t)$$

If $M(f) = 0$ for $|f| > W$, then the bandwidth of $m(t)$ is W and the bandwidth of $x_{DSB}(t)$ is $2W$. DSB signals must be demodulated with a synchronous demodulator. A Costas loop is often used.

Single-Sideband Modulation (SSB)

Lower Sideband:

$$x_{LSB}(t) \leftrightarrow X_{LSB}(f) = X_{DSB}(f) \Pi\left(\frac{f}{2f_c}\right)$$

Upper Sideband:

$$x_{USB}(t) \leftrightarrow X_{USB}(f) = X_{DSB}(f) \left[1 - \Pi\left(\frac{f}{2f_c}\right)\right]$$

In either case, if $M(f) = 0$ for $|f| > W$, then the bandwidth of $x_{LSB}(t)$ or of $x_{USB}(t)$ is W . SSB signals can be demodulated with a synchronous demodulator or by carrier reinsertion and envelope detection.

Angle Modulation

$$x_{Ang}(t) = A_c \cos[2\pi f_c t + \phi(t)]$$

The *phase deviation* $\phi(t)$ is a function of the message $m(t)$.

The *instantaneous phase* is

$$\phi_i(t) = 2\pi f_c t + \phi(t) \text{ rad}$$

The *instantaneous frequency* is

$$\omega_i(t) = \frac{d}{dt} \phi_i(t) = 2\pi f_c + \frac{d}{dt} \phi(t) \text{ rad/s}$$

The *frequency deviation* is

$$\Delta\omega(t) = \frac{d}{dt}\phi(t) \text{ rad/s}$$

The *phase deviation* is

$$\phi(t) = k_p m(t) \text{ rad}$$

The *complete* bandwidth of an angle-modulated signal is infinite.

A discriminator or a phase-lock loop can demodulate angle-modulated signals.

Frequency Modulation (FM)

The *phase deviation* is

$$\phi(t) = k_F \int_{-\infty}^t m(\lambda) d\lambda \text{ rad}$$

The *frequency-deviation ratio* is

$$D = \frac{k_F \max |m(t)|}{2\pi W}$$

where W is the message bandwidth. If $D \ll 1$ (narrowband FM), the 98% power bandwidth B is

$$B \cong 2W$$

If $D > 1$, (wideband FM) the 98% power bandwidth B is given by *Carson's rule*:

$$B \cong 2(D + 1)W$$

Sampled Messages

A low-pass message $m(t)$ can be exactly reconstructed from uniformly spaced samples taken at a sampling frequency of $f_s = 1/T_s$

$$f_s > 2W \text{ where } M(f) = 0 \text{ for } f > W$$

The frequency $2W$ is called the *Nyquist frequency*. Sampled messages are typically transmitted by some form of pulse modulation. The minimum bandwidth B required for transmission of the modulated message is inversely proportional to the pulse length τ .

$$B \propto \frac{1}{\tau}$$

Frequently, for approximate analysis

$$B \cong \frac{1}{2\tau}$$

is used as the *minimum* bandwidth of a pulse of length τ .

Ideal-Impulse Sampling

$$\begin{aligned} x_\delta(t) &= m(t) \sum_{n=-\infty}^{n=+\infty} \delta(t - nT_s) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{n=+\infty} m(nT_s) \delta(t - nT_s) \\ X_\delta(f) &= M(f) * \left[\sum_{k=-\infty}^{k=+\infty} \delta(f - kf_s) \right] \\ &= \sum_{k=-\infty}^{k=+\infty} M(f - kf_s) \end{aligned}$$

The message $m(t)$ can be recovered from $x_\delta(t)$ with an ideal low-pass filter of bandwidth W if $f_s > 2W$.

(PAM) Pulse-Amplitude Modulation—Natural Sampling

A PAM signal can be generated by multiplying a message by a pulse train with pulses having duration τ and period

$$T_s = 1/f_s$$

$$\begin{aligned} x_N(t) &= m(t) \sum_{n=-\infty}^{n=+\infty} \Pi\left[\frac{t - nT_s}{\tau}\right] = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{n=+\infty} m(t) \Pi\left[\frac{t - nT_s}{\tau}\right] \\ X_N(f) &= \tau f_s \sum_{k=-\infty}^{k=+\infty} \text{sinc}(k\tau f_s) M(f - kf_s) \end{aligned}$$

The message $m(t)$ can be recovered from $x_N(t)$ with an ideal low-pass filter of bandwidth W .

Pulse-Code Modulation (PCM)

PCM is formed by sampling a message $m(t)$ and digitizing

the sample values with an A/D converter. For an n -bit binary word length, transmission of a pulse-code-modulated low-pass message $m(t)$, with $M(f) = 0$ for $f \geq W$, requires the transmission of at least $2nW$ binary pulses per second. A binary word of length n bits can represent q quantization levels:

$$q = 2^n$$

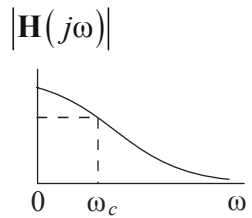
The minimum bandwidth required to transmit the PCM message will be

$$B \propto 2nW = 2W \log_2 q$$

ANALOG FILTER CIRCUITS

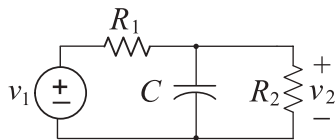
Analog filters are used to separate signals with different frequency content. The following circuits represent simple analog filters used in communications and signal processing.

First-Order Low-Pass Filters



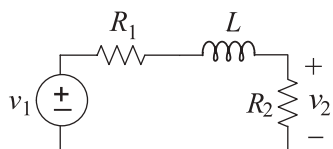
$$|H(j\omega_c)| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |H(0)|$$

Frequency Response



$$\mathbf{H}(s) = \frac{\mathbf{V}_2}{\mathbf{V}_1} = \frac{R_P}{R_1} \cdot \frac{1}{1 + sR_P C}$$

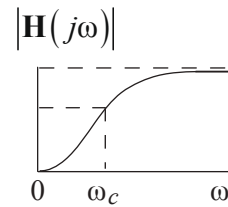
$$R_P = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1 + R_2} \quad \omega_c = \frac{1}{R_P C}$$



$$\mathbf{H}(s) = \frac{\mathbf{V}_2}{\mathbf{V}_1} = \frac{R_2}{R_S} \cdot \frac{1}{1 + sL/R_S}$$

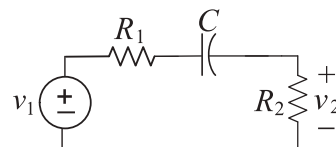
$$R_S = R_1 + R_2 \quad \omega_c = \frac{R_S}{L}$$

First-Order High-Pass Filters



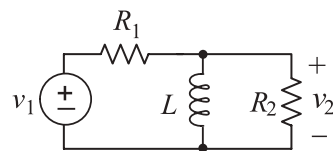
$$|H(j\omega_c)| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |H(j\infty)|$$

Frequency Response



$$\mathbf{H}(s) = \frac{\mathbf{V}_2}{\mathbf{V}_1} = \frac{R_2}{R_S} \cdot \frac{sR_S C}{1 + sR_S C}$$

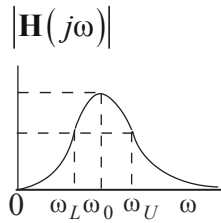
$$R_S = R_1 + R_2 \quad \omega_c = \frac{1}{R_S C}$$



$$\mathbf{H}(s) = \frac{\mathbf{V}_2}{\mathbf{V}_1} = \frac{R_P}{R_1} \cdot \frac{sL/R_P}{1 + sL/R_P}$$

$$R_P = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1 + R_2} \quad \omega_c = \frac{R_P}{L}$$

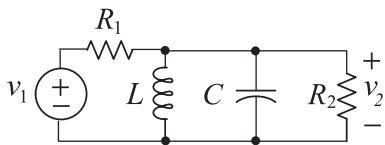
Band-Pass Filters



$$|\mathbf{H}(j\omega_L)| = |\mathbf{H}(j\omega_U)| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |\mathbf{H}(j\omega_0)|$$

$$\text{3-dB Bandwidth} = BW = \omega_U - \omega_L$$

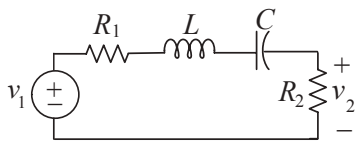
Frequency Response



$$\mathbf{H}(s) = \frac{\mathbf{V}_2}{\mathbf{V}_1} = \frac{1}{R_1 C} \cdot \frac{s}{s^2 + s/R_P C + 1/LC}$$

$$R_P = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1 + R_2} \quad \omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}$$

$$|\mathbf{H}(j\omega_0)| = \frac{R_2}{R_1 + R_2} = \frac{R_P}{R_1} \quad BW = \frac{1}{R_P C}$$

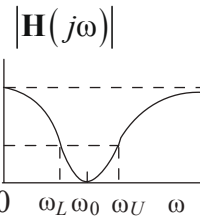


$$\mathbf{H}(s) = \frac{\mathbf{V}_2}{\mathbf{V}_1} = \frac{R_2}{L} \cdot \frac{s}{s^2 + sR_S/L + 1/LC}$$

$$R_S = R_1 + R_2 \quad \omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}$$

$$|\mathbf{H}(j\omega_0)| = \frac{R_2}{R_1 + R_2} = \frac{R_2}{R_S} \quad BW = \frac{R_S}{L}$$

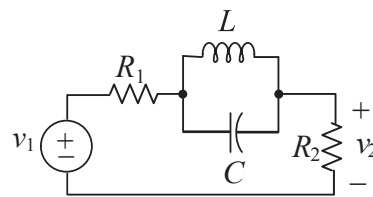
Band-Reject Filters



$$|\mathbf{H}(j\omega_L)| = |\mathbf{H}(j\omega_U)| = \left[1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right] |\mathbf{H}(0)|$$

$$\text{3-dB Bandwidth} = BW = \omega_U - \omega_L$$

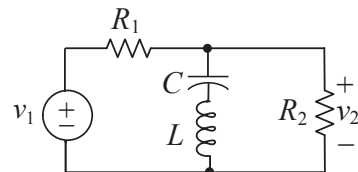
Frequency Response



$$\mathbf{H}(s) = \frac{\mathbf{V}_2}{\mathbf{V}_1} = \frac{R_2}{R_S} \cdot \frac{s^2 + 1/LC}{s^2 + s/R_S C + 1/LC}$$

$$R_S = R_1 + R_2 \quad \omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}$$

$$|\mathbf{H}(0)| = \frac{R_2}{R_1 + R_2} = \frac{R_2}{R_S} \quad BW = \frac{1}{R_S C}$$



$$\mathbf{H}(s) = \frac{\mathbf{V}_2}{\mathbf{V}_1} = \frac{R_P}{R_1} \cdot \frac{s^2 + 1/LC}{s^2 + sR_P/L + 1/LC}$$

$$R_P = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1 + R_2} \quad \omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}$$

$$|\mathbf{H}(0)| = \frac{R_2}{R_1 + R_2} = \frac{R_P}{R_1} \quad BW = \frac{R_P}{L}$$

OPERATIONAL AMPLIFIERS

Ideal

$$v_0 = A(v_1 - v_2)$$

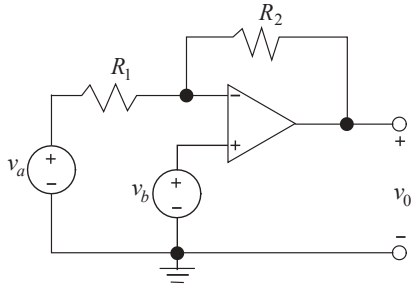
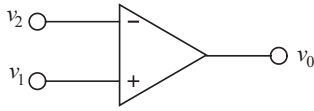
where

A is large ($> 10^4$), and

$v_1 - v_2$ is small enough so as not to saturate the amplifier.

For the ideal operational amplifier, assume that the input currents are zero and that the gain A is infinite so when operating linearly $v_2 - v_1 = 0$.

For the two-source configuration with an ideal operational amplifier,



$$v_0 = -\frac{R_2}{R_1} v_a + \left(1 + \frac{R_2}{R_1}\right) v_b$$

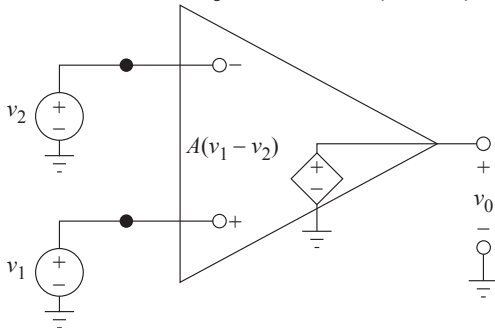
If $v_a = 0$, we have a non-inverting amplifier with

$$v_0 = \left(1 + \frac{R_2}{R_1}\right) v_b$$

If $v_b = 0$, we have an inverting amplifier with

$$v_0 = -\frac{R_2}{R_1} v_a$$

Common Mode Rejection Ratio (CMRR)



Equivalent Circuit of an Ideal Op Amp

In the op amp circuit shown the differential input is defined as:

$$v_{id} = v_1 - v_2$$

The common-mode input voltage is defined as:

$$v_{icm} = (v_1 + v_2)/2$$

The output voltage is given by:

$$v_O = A v_{id} + A_{cm} v_{icm}$$

In an ideal op amp $A_{cm} = 0$. In a non-ideal op amp the $CMRR$ is used to measure the relative degree of rejection between the differential gain and common-mode gain.

$$CMRR = \frac{|A|}{|A_{cm}|}$$

$CMRR$ is usually expressed in decibels as:

$$CMRR = 20 \log_{10} \left[\frac{|A|}{|A_{cm}|} \right]$$

SOLID-STATE ELECTRONICS AND DEVICES

Conductivity of a semiconductor material:

$$\sigma = q(n\mu_n + p\mu_p), \text{ where}$$

μ_n \equiv electron mobility

μ_p \equiv hole mobility

n \equiv electron concentration

p \equiv hole concentration

q \equiv charge on an electron ($1.6 \times 10^{-19} \text{C}$)

Doped material:

p -type material; $p_p \approx N_a$

n -type material; $n_n \approx N_d$

Carrier concentrations at equilibrium

$$(p)(n) = n_i^2, \text{ where}$$

n_i \equiv intrinsic concentration.

Built-in potential (contact potential) of a p - n junction:

$$V_0 = \frac{kT}{q} \ln \frac{N_a N_d}{n_i^2}$$

Thermal voltage

$$V_T = \frac{kT}{q} \approx 0.026 \text{ V at } 300\text{K}$$

N_a = acceptor concentration

N_d = donor concentration

T = temperature (K)

k = Boltzmann's Constant = $1.38 \times 10^{-23} \text{ J/K}$

Capacitance of abrupt p - n junction diode

$$C(V) = C_0 / \sqrt{1 - V/V_{bi}}, \text{ where:}$$

C_0 = junction capacitance at $V = 0$

V = potential of anode with respect to cathode

V_{bi} = junction contact potential

Resistance of a diffused layer is

$$R = R_s (L/W), \text{ where:}$$

R_s = sheet resistance = ρ/d in ohms per square

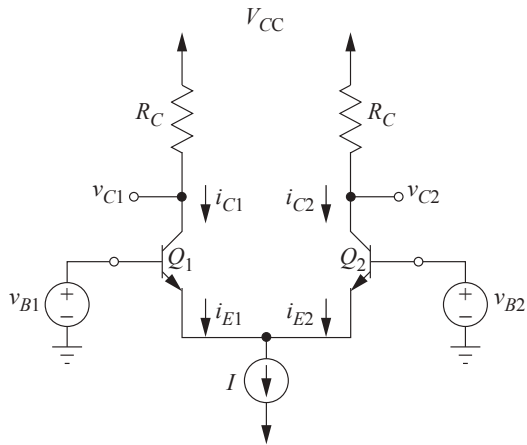
ρ = resistivity

d = thickness

L = length of diffusion

W = width of diffusion

◆ **Differential Amplifier**



A Basic BJT Differential Amplifier

A basic BJT differential amplifier consists of two matched transistors whose emitters are connected and that are biased by a constant-current source. The following equations govern the operation of the circuit given that neither transistor is operating in the saturation region.

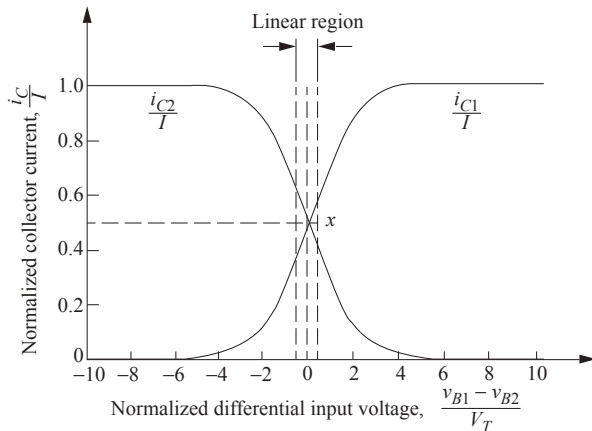
$$\frac{i_{E1}}{i_{E2}} = e^{(v_{B1} - v_{B2})/V_T}$$

$$i_{E1} + i_{E2} = I$$

$$i_{E1} = \frac{I}{1 + e^{(v_{B2} - v_{B1})/V_T}} \quad i_{E2} = \frac{I}{1 + e^{(v_{B1} - v_{B2})/V_T}}$$

$$i_{C1} = \alpha I_{E1} \quad i_{C2} = \alpha I_{E2}$$

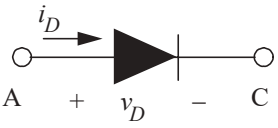
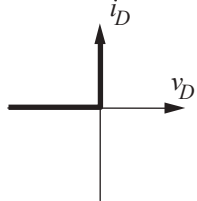
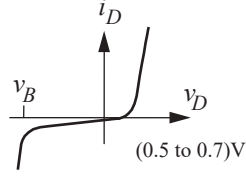
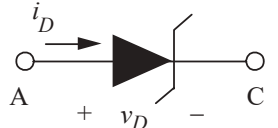
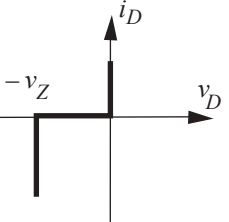
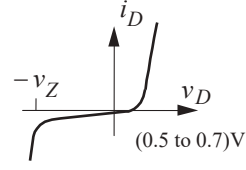
The following figure shows a plot of two normalized collector currents versus normalized differential input voltage for a circuit using transistors with $\alpha \cong 1$.



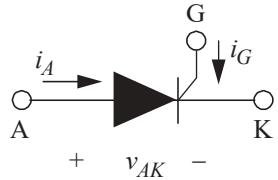
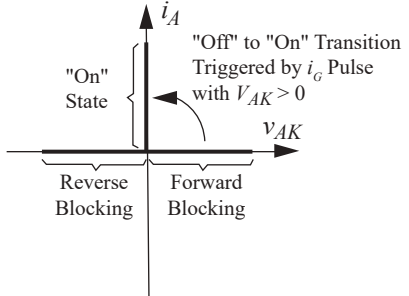
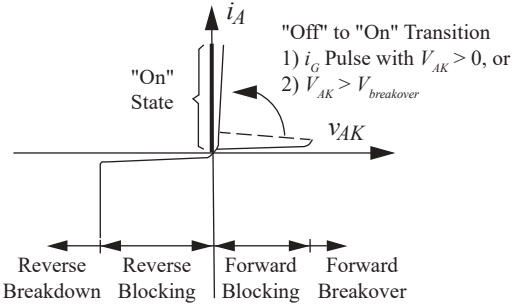
Transfer characteristics of the BJT differential amplifier with $\alpha \cong 1$

◆ Sedra, Adel, and Kenneth Smith, *Microelectronic Circuits*, 3rd ed., ©1991, pp. 408 and 412, by permission of Oxford University Press.

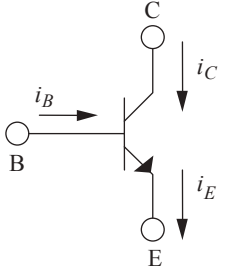
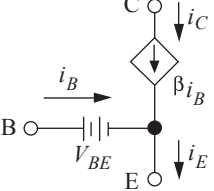
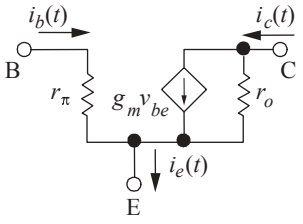
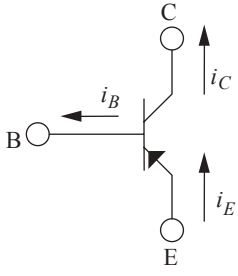
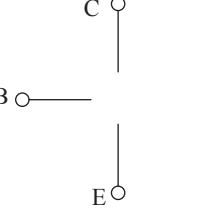
DIODES

| Device and Schematic Symbol | Ideal $I-V$ Relationship | Piecewise-Linear Approximation of the $I-V$ Relationship | Mathematical $I-V$ Relationship |
|---|---|---|---|
| <p>(Junction Diode)</p>  |  |  <p>v_B = breakdown voltage</p> | <p align="center">Shockley Equation</p> $i_D \approx I_s \left[e^{(v_D/\eta V_T)} - 1 \right]$ <p>where I_s = saturation current η = emission coefficient, typically 1 for Si V_T = thermal voltage = $\frac{kT}{q}$</p> |
| <p>(Zener Diode)</p>  |  |  <p>v_Z = Zener voltage</p> | <p>Same as above.</p> |

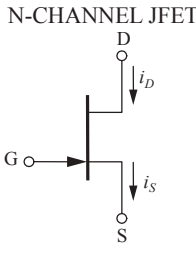
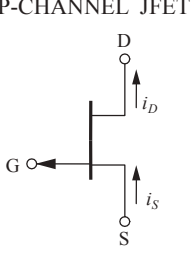
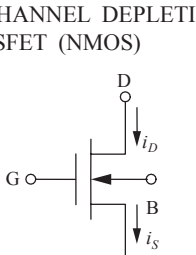
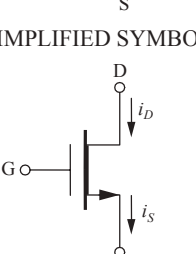
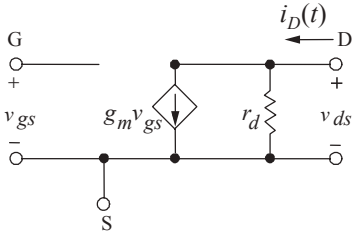
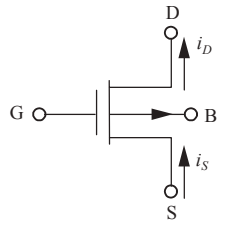
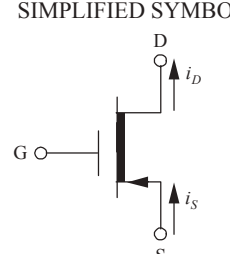
Thyristor or Silicon Controlled Rectifier (SCR)

| Schematic Symbol | Ideal $I-V$ Relationship | Piecewise-Linear Approximation of the $I-V$ Relationship |
|---|---|--|
|  |  <p>"Off" to "On" Transition Triggered by i_G Pulse with $V_{AK} > 0$</p> |  <p>"Off" to "On" Transition 1) i_G Pulse with $V_{AK} > 0$, or 2) $V_{AK} > V_{breakover}$</p> |

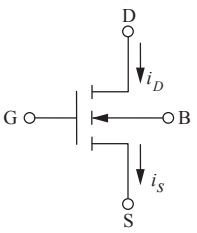
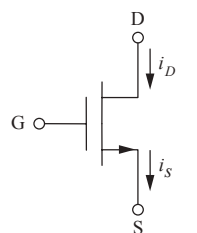
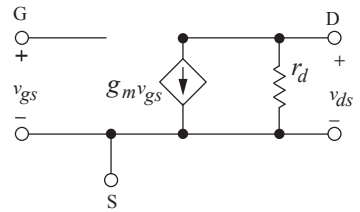
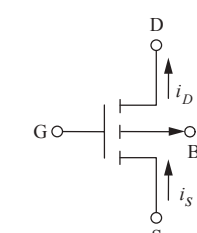
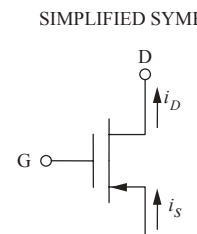
NPN Bipolar Junction Transistor (BJT)

| Schematic Symbol | Mathematical Relationships | Large-Signal (DC) Equivalent Circuit | Low-Frequency Small-Signal (AC) Equivalent Circuit |
|--|--|--|--|
|  <p style="text-align: center;">NPN – Transistor</p> | $i_E = i_B + i_C$ $i_C = \beta i_B$ $i_C = \alpha i_E$ $\alpha = \beta / (\beta + 1)$ $i_C \approx I_S e^{(V_{BE}/V_T)}$ $I_S = \text{emitter saturation current}$ $V_T = \text{thermal voltage}$ <p><u>Note:</u> These relationships are valid in the active mode of operation.</p> | <p><u>Active Region:</u> base emitter junction forward biased; base collector junction reverse biased</p>  | <p><u>Low Frequency:</u></p> $g_m \approx I_{CQ}/V_T$ $r_\pi \approx \beta/g_m,$ $r_o = \left[\frac{\partial v_{CE}}{\partial i_c} \right]_{Q_{point}} \approx \frac{V_A}{I_{CQ}}$ <p>where I_{CQ} = dc collector current at the Q_{point} V_A = Early voltage</p>  |
|  <p style="text-align: center;">PNP – Transistor</p> | <p>Same as for NPN with current directions and voltage polarities reversed.</p> | <p><u>Cutoff Region:</u> both junctions reverse biased</p>  | <p>Same as for NPN.</p> |
| | | <p>Same as NPN with current directions and voltage polarities reversed</p> | |

**N-Channel Junction Field Effect Transistors (JFETs)
and Depletion MOSFETs (Low and Medium Frequency)**

| Schematic Symbol | Mathematical Relationships | Small-Signal (AC) Equivalent Circuit |
|--|---|--|
| <p>N-CHANNEL JFET</p>  <p>P-CHANNEL JFET</p>  <p>N-CHANNEL DEPLETION MOSFET (NMOS)</p>  <p>SIMPLIFIED SYMBOL</p>  | <p><u>Cutoff Region:</u> $v_{GS} < V_p$ $i_D = 0$</p> <p><u>Triode Region:</u> $v_{GS} > V_p$ and $v_{GD} > V_p$ $i_D = (I_{DSS}/V_p^2)[2v_{DS}(v_{GS} - V_p) - v_{DS}^2]$</p> <p><u>Saturation Region:</u> $v_{GS} > V_p$ and $v_{GD} < V_p$ $i_D = I_{DSS}(1 - v_{GS}/V_p)^2$</p> <p>where I_{DSS} = drain current with $v_{GS} = 0$ (in the saturation region) $= KV_p^2$, K = conductivity factor</p> <p>For JFETs, V_p = pinch-off voltage</p> <p>For MOSFETs, $V_p = V_T$ = threshold voltage</p> | <p>$g_m = \frac{2\sqrt{I_{DSS}I_D}}{ V_p }$ in saturation region</p>  <p>where</p> $r_d = \left. \frac{\partial v_{ds}}{\partial i_d} \right _{Q_{point}}$ |
| <p>P-CHANNEL DEPLETION MOSFET (PMOS)</p>  <p>SIMPLIFIED SYMBOL</p>  | <p>Same as for N-Channel with current directions and voltage polarities reversed.</p> | <p>Same as for N-Channel.</p> |

Enhancement MOSFET (Low and Medium Frequency)

| Schematic Symbol | Mathematical Relationships | Small-Signal (AC) Equivalent Circuit |
|--|--|--|
| <p>N-CHANNEL ENHANCEMENT MOSFET (NMOS)</p>  <p>SIMPLIFIED SYMBOL</p>  | <p><u>Cutoff Region:</u> $v_{GS} < V_t$ $i_D = 0$</p> <p><u>Triode Region:</u> $v_{GS} > V_t$ and $v_{GD} > V_t$ $i_D = K [2v_{DS}(v_{GS} - V_t) - v_{DS}^2]$</p> <p><u>Saturation Region:</u> $v_{GS} > V_t$ and $v_{GD} < V_t$ $i_D = K (v_{GS} - V_t)^2$ where $K =$ conductivity factor $V_t =$ threshold voltage</p> | <p>$g_m = 2K(v_{GS} - V_t)$ in saturation region</p>  <p>where</p> $r_d = \left. \frac{\partial v_{ds}}{\partial i_d} \right _{Q_{point}}$ |
| <p>P-CHANNEL ENHANCEMENT MOSFET (PMOS)</p>  <p>SIMPLIFIED SYMBOL</p>  | <p>Same as for N-channel with current directions and voltage polarities reversed.</p> | <p>Same as for N-channel.</p> |

NUMBER SYSTEMS AND CODES

An unsigned number of base- r has a decimal equivalent D defined by

$$D = \sum_{k=0}^n a_k r^k + \sum_{i=1}^m a_i r^{-i}, \text{ where}$$

a_k = the $(k + 1)$ digit to the left of the radix point and

a_i = the i th digit to the right of the radix point.

Binary Number System

In digital computers, the base-2, or binary, number system is normally used. Thus the decimal equivalent, D , of a binary number is given by

$$D = a_k 2^k + a_{k-1} 2^{k-1} + \dots + a_0 + a_{-1} 2^{-1} + \dots$$

Since this number system is so widely used in the design of digital systems, we use a short-hand notation for some powers of two:

$2^{10} = 1,024$ is abbreviated "k" or "kilo"

$2^{20} = 1,048,576$ is abbreviated "M" or "mega"

Signed numbers of base- r are often represented by the radix complement operation. If M is an N -digit value of base- r , the radix complement $R(M)$ is defined by

$$R(M) = r^N - M$$

The 2's complement of an N -bit binary integer can be written

$$2\text{'s Complement}(M) = 2^N - M$$

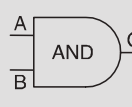
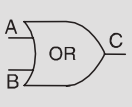
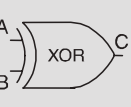
This operation is equivalent to taking the 1's complement (inverting each bit of M) and adding one.

The following table contains equivalent codes for a four-bit binary value.

| Binary Base-2 | Decimal Base-10 | Hexa-decimal Base-16 | Octal Base-8 | BCD Code | Gray Code |
|---------------|-----------------|----------------------|--------------|----------|-----------|
| 0000 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0000 |
| 0001 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0001 |
| 0010 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 0011 |
| 0011 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 0010 |
| 0100 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 0110 |
| 0101 | 5 | 5 | 5 | 5 | 0111 |
| 0110 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 0101 |
| 0111 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 0100 |
| 1000 | 8 | 8 | 10 | 8 | 1100 |
| 1001 | 9 | 9 | 11 | 9 | 1101 |
| 1010 | 10 | A | 12 | --- | 1111 |
| 1011 | 11 | B | 13 | --- | 1110 |
| 1100 | 12 | C | 14 | --- | 1010 |
| 1101 | 13 | D | 15 | --- | 1011 |
| 1110 | 14 | E | 16 | --- | 1001 |
| 1111 | 15 | F | 17 | --- | 1000 |

LOGIC OPERATIONS AND BOOLEAN ALGEBRA

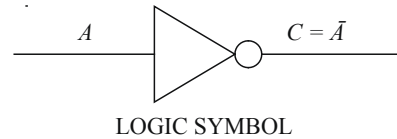
Three basic logic operations are the "AND (\bullet)," "OR (+)," and "Exclusive-OR (\oplus)" functions. The definition of each function, its logic symbol, and its Boolean expression are given in the following table.

| Function |  |  |  |
|----------|--|---|---|
| Inputs | A B | A B | A B |
| | $C = A \bullet B$ | $C = A + B$ | $C = A \oplus B$ |
| 0 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 0 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 1 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 1 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |

As commonly used, A AND B is often written AB or $A \bullet B$.

The not operator inverts the sense of a binary value ($0 \rightarrow 1, 1 \rightarrow 0$)

| NOT OPERATOR | |
|--------------|---------------|
| Input | Output |
| A | $C = \bar{A}$ |
| 0 | 1 |
| 1 | 0 |



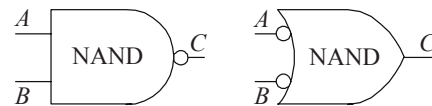
De Morgan's Theorems

first theorem: $\overline{A + B} = \bar{A} \bullet \bar{B}$

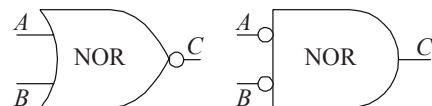
second theorem: $\overline{A \bullet B} = \bar{A} + \bar{B}$

These theorems define the NAND gate and the NOR gate. Logic symbols for these gates are shown below.

NAND Gates: $\overline{A \bullet B} = \bar{A} + \bar{B}$

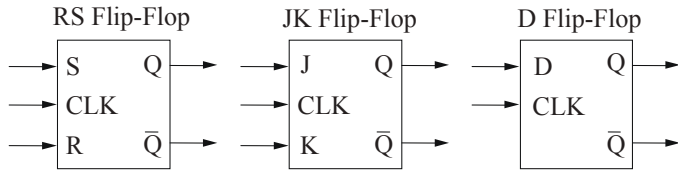


NOR Gates: $\overline{A + B} = \bar{A} \bullet \bar{B}$



FLIP-FLOPS

A flip-flop is a device whose output can be placed in one of two states, 0 or 1. The flip-flop output is synchronized with a clock (CLK) signal. Q_n represents the value of the flip-flop output before CLK is applied, and Q_{n+1} represents the output after CLK has been applied. Three basic flip-flops are described below.



| SR | Q_{n+1} | JK | Q_{n+1} | D | Q_{n+1} |
|----|-----------------|----|--------------------|---|-----------|
| 00 | Q_n no change | 00 | Q_n no change | 0 | 0 |
| 01 | 0 | 01 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 10 | 1 | 10 | 1 | | |
| 11 | x invalid | 11 | \bar{Q}_n toggle | | |

| Composite Flip-Flop State Transition | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|
| Q_n | Q_{n+1} | S | R | J | K | D |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | x | 0 | x | 0 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | x | 1 |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | x | 1 | 0 |
| 1 | 1 | x | 0 | x | 0 | 1 |

Switching Function Terminology

Minterm, m_i – A product term which contains an occurrence of every variable in the function.

Maxterm, M_i – A sum term which contains an occurrence of every variable in the function.

Implicant – A Boolean algebra term, either in sum or product form, which contains one or more minterms or maxterms of a function.

Prime Implicant – An implicant which is not entirely contained in any other implicant.

Essential Prime Implicant – A prime implicant which contains a minterm or maxterm which is not contained in any other prime implicant.

A function can be described as a sum of minterms using the notation

$$F(ABCD) = \sum m(h, i, j, \dots) \\ = m_h + m_i + m_j + \dots$$

A function can be described as a product of maxterms using the notation

$$G(ABCD) = \prod M(h, i, j, \dots) \\ = M_h \cdot M_i \cdot M_j \cdot \dots$$

A function represented as a sum of minterms only is said to be in *canonical sum of products* (SOP) form. A function represented as a product of maxterms only is said to be in *canonical product of sums* (POS) form. A function in canonical SOP form is often represented as a *minterm list*, while a function in canonical POS form is often represented as a *maxterm list*.

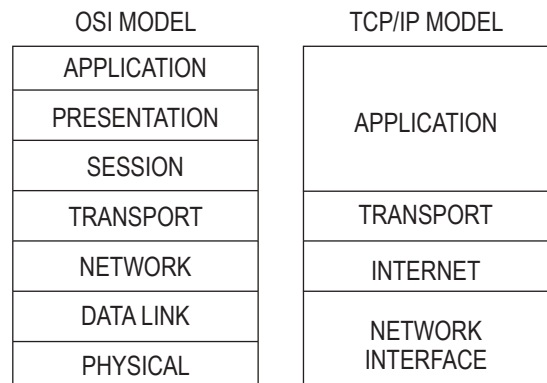
A *Karnaugh Map* (K-Map) is a graphical technique used to represent a truth table. Each square in the K-Map represents one minterm, and the squares of the K-Map are arranged so that the adjacent squares differ by a change in exactly one variable. A four-variable K-Map with its corresponding minterms is shown below. K-Maps are used to simplify switching functions by visually identifying all essential prime implicants.

| AB \ CD | 00 | 01 | 11 | 10 |
|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 00 | m_0 | m_1 | m_3 | m_2 |
| 01 | m_4 | m_5 | m_7 | m_6 |
| 11 | m_{12} | m_{13} | m_{15} | m_{14} |
| 10 | m_8 | m_9 | m_{11} | m_{10} |

COMPUTER NETWORKING

Modern computer networks are primarily packet switching networks. This means that the messages in the system are broken down, or segmented into packets, and the packets are transmitted separately into the network. The primary purpose of the network is to exchange messages between endpoints of the network called hosts or nodes, typically computers, servers, or handheld devices. At the host, the packets are reassembled into the message and delivered to a software application, e.g., a browser, email, or video player.

Two widely used abstract models for modern computer networks are the open systems interconnect (OSI) model and the TCP/IP model shown in the figure below.



Tanenbaum, Andrew S., *Computer Networks*, 3 ed., Prentice Hall, 1996, p. 36.

The application layer on the TCP/IP model corresponds to the three upper layers (application, presentation, and session) of the OSI model. The network interface layer of the TCP/IP model corresponds to the bottom two layers (data link and physical) of the OSI model.

The application layer is the network layer closest to the end user, which means both the application layer and the user interact directly with the software application. This layer interacts with software applications that implement a communicating component.

In the OSI model, the application layer interacts with the presentation layer. The presentation layer is responsible for the delivery and formatting of information to the application layer for further processing or display. It relieves the application layer of concern regarding syntactical differences in data representation within the end-user systems.

The OSI session layer provides the mechanism for opening, closing, and managing a session between end-user application processes. It provides for full-duplex, half-duplex, or simplex operation, and establishes checkpointing, adjournment, termination, and restart procedures.

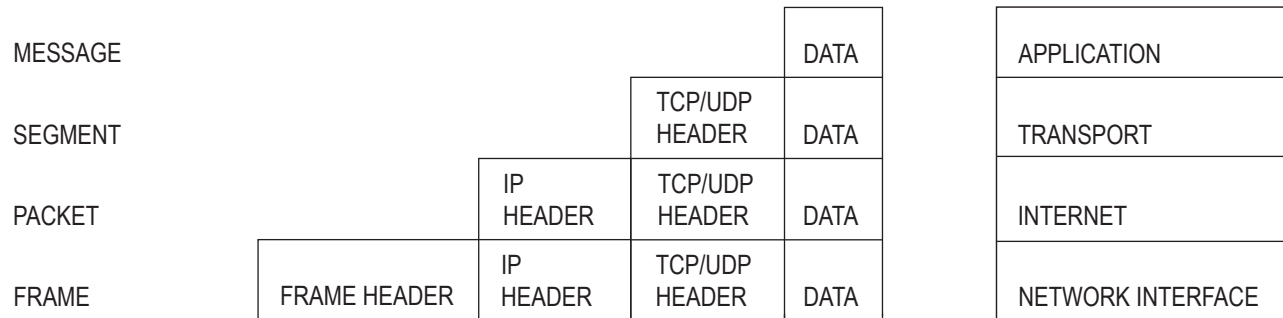
The transport layer adds a transport header normally containing TCP and UDP protocol information. The transport layer provides logical process-to-process communication primitives. Optionally, it may provide other services, such as reliability, in-order delivery, flow control, and congestion control.

The network layer or Internet layer adds another header normally containing the IP protocol; the main role of the networking layer is finding appropriate routes between end hosts, and forwarding the packets along these routes.

The link layer or data link layer contains protocols for transmissions between devices on the same link and usually handles error detection and correction and medium-access control.

The physical layer specifies physical transmission parameters (e.g., modulation, coding, channels, data rates) and governs the transmission of frames from one network element to another sharing a common link.

Hosts, routers, and link-layer switches showing the four-layer protocol stack with different sets of layers for hosts, a switch, and a router are shown in the figure below.



ENCAPSULATION OF APPLICATION DATA THROUGH EACH LAYER

In computer networking, encapsulation is a method of designing modular communication protocols in which logically separate functions in the network are abstracted from their underlying structures by inclusion or information hiding within higher-level objects. For example, a network layer packet is encapsulated in a data link layer frame.

Acronyms

- ACK Acknowledge
- ARQ Automatic request
- BW Bandwidth
- CRC Cyclic redundancy code
- DHCP Dynamic host configuration protocol
- IP Internet protocol
- LAN Local area network
- NAK Negative acknowledgement
- OSI Open systems interconnect
- TCP Transmission control protocol

Protocol Definitions

- TCP/IP is the basic communication protocol suite for communication over the Internet.
- Internet Protocol (IP) provides end-to-end addressing and is used to encapsulate TCP or UDP datagrams. Both version 4 (IPv4) and version 6 (IPv6) are used and can co-exist on the same network.
- Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) is a connection-oriented protocol that detects lost packets, duplicated packets, or packets that are received out of order and has mechanisms to correct these problems.
- User Datagram Protocol (UDP), is a connectionless-oriented protocol that has less network overhead than TCP but provides no guarantee of delivery, ordering, or duplicate protection.
- Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) is a supporting protocol used to send error messages and operational information.

Local Area Network (LAN)

There are different methods for assigning IP addresses for devices entering a network.

- Dynamic host configuration protocol (DHCP) is a networking protocol that allows a router to assign the IP address and other configuration information for all stations joining a network.
- Static IP addressing implies each station joining a network is manually configured with its own IP address.
- Stateless address autoconfiguration (SLAAC) allows for hosts to automatically configure themselves when connecting to an IPv6 network.

Error Coding

Error coding is a method of detecting and correcting errors that may have been introduced into a frame during data transmission. A system that is capable of detecting errors may be able to detect single or multiple errors at the receiver based on the error coding method. Below are a few examples of error detecting error coding methods.

Parity – For parity bit coding, a parity bit value is added to the transmitted frame to make the total number of ones odd (odd parity) or even (even parity). Parity bit coding can detect single bit errors.

Cyclical Redundancy Code (CRC) – CRC can detect multiple errors. To generate the transmitted frame from the receiver, the following equation is used:

$$T(x)/G(x) = E(x)$$

where $T(x)$ is the frame, $G(x)$ is the generator, and $E(x)$ is the remainder. The transmitted code is $T(x) + E(x)$.

On the receiver side, if

$$[T(x) + E(x)]/G(x) = 0$$

then no errors were detected.

To detect and correct errors, redundant bits need to be added to the transmitted data. Some error detecting and correcting algorithms include block code, Hamming code, and Reed Solomon.

Delays in Computer Networks

Transmission Delay – the time it takes to transmit the bits in the packet on the transmission link:

$$d_{\text{trans}} = L/R$$

where L is the packet size in bits/packet and

R is the rate of transmission in bits/sec.

Propagation Delay – the time taken for a bit to travel from one end of the link to the other:

$$d_{\text{prop}} = d/s$$

where d is the distance or length of the link and s is the propagation speed

The propagation speed is usually somewhere between the speed of light c and $2/3 c$.

Nodal Processing Delay – It takes time to examine the packet's header and determine where to direct the packet to its destination.

Queueing Delay – The packet may experience delay as it waits to be transmitted onto the link.

Ignoring nodal and queueing delays, the round-trip delay of delivering a packet from one node to another in the stop-and-wait system is

$$D = 2 d_{\text{prop}} + d_{\text{transAck}} + d_{\text{transData}}$$

Because the sending host must wait until the ACK packet is received before sending another packet, this leads to a very poor utilization, U , of resources for stop-and-wait links with relatively large propagation delays:

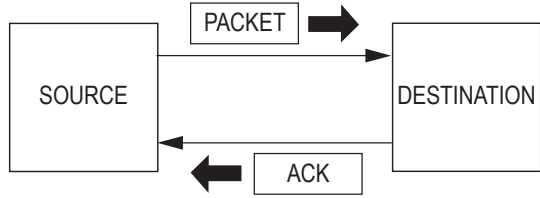
$$U = d_{\text{trans}}/D$$

For this reason, for paths with large propagation delays, most computer networking systems use a pipelining system called go-back- N , in which N packets are transmitted in sequence before the transmitter receives an ACK for the first packet.

Automatic Request for Retransmission (ARQ)

Links in the network are most often twisted pair, optical fiber, coaxial cable, or wireless channels. These are all subject to errors and are often unreliable. The ARQ system is designed to provide reliable communications over these unreliable links. In ARQ, each packet contains an error detection process (at the link layer). If no errors are detected in the packet, the host (or intermediate switch) transmits a positive acknowledgement (ACK) packet back to the transmitting element indicating that the packet was received correctly. If any error is detected, the receiving host (or switch) automatically discards the packet and sends a negative acknowledgement (NAK) packet back to the originating element (or stays silent, allowing the transmitter to timeout). Upon receiving the NAK packet or by the trigger of a timeout, the transmitting host (or switch)

retransmits the message packet that was in error. A diagram of a simple stop and wait ARQ system with a positive acknowledgement is shown below.



Transmission Algorithms

Sliding window protocol is used where delivery of data is required while maximizing channel capacity. In the sliding window protocol, each outbound frame contains a sequence number. When the transmitted frame is received, the receiver is required to transmit an ACK for each received frame before an additional frame can be transmitted. If the frame is not received, the receiver will transmit a NAK message indicating the frame was not received after an appropriate time has expired. Sliding window protocols automatically adjust the transmission speed to both the speed of the network and the rate at which the receiver sends new acknowledgements.

Shannon Channel Capacity Formula

$$C = BW \log_2 (1+S/N)$$

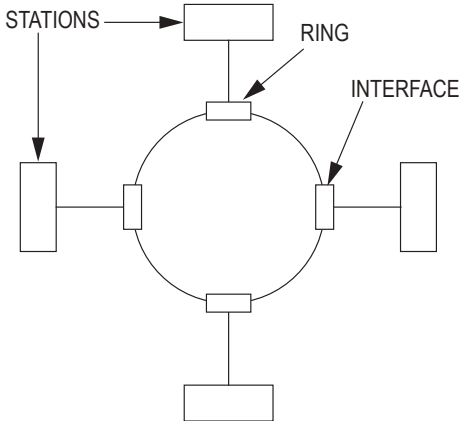
where BW is bandwidth, S is the power of the signal at the transmitting device, and N is the noise received at the destination

Network Topologies

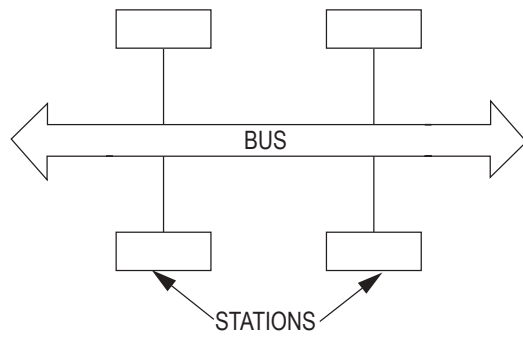
Point-to-Point



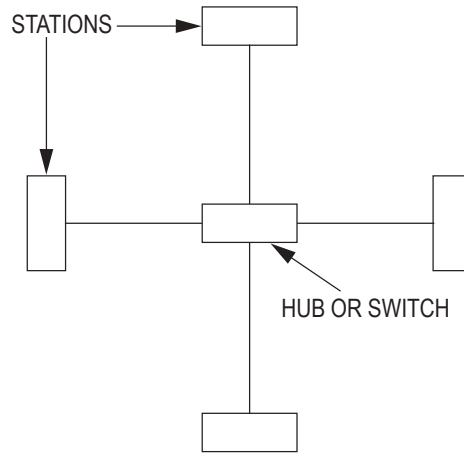
Token Ring



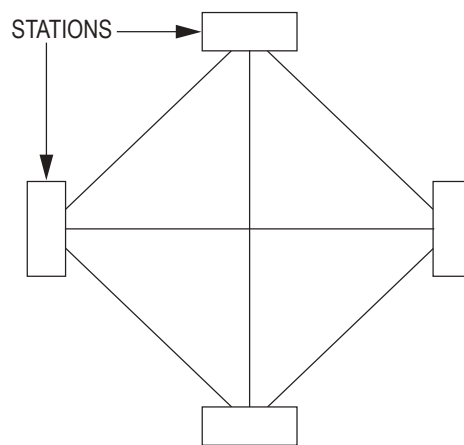
Bus



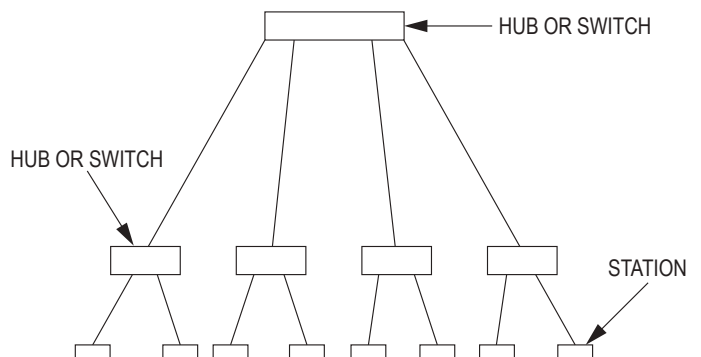
Star



Mesh



Tree



COMPUTER SYSTEMS

Memory/Storage Types

RAM – Primary memory system in computing systems, volatile

Cache – faster, but smaller segment of memory used for buffering immediate data from slower memories

- L1: Level 1 cache, fastest memory available
- L2: Level 2 cache, next level away from CPU. May or may not be exclusive of L1 depending on architecture

ROM – nonvolatile. Contains system instructions or constant data for the system

Replacement Policy – For set associative and fully associative caches, if there is a miss and the set or cache (respectively) is full, then a block must be selected for replacement. The replacement policy determines which block is replaced. Common replacement policies are:

- Least recently used (LRU): Replace the least recently used block.
- Most recently used (MRU): Replace the most recently used block.
- First-in, first-out (FIFO): Replace blocks based on the order in which they were fetched into the set or cache.
- Random: Choose a block at random for replacement.
- Least frequently used (LFU): Replace the block that had the fewest references among the candidate blocks.

Write Policy – With caches, multiple copies of a memory block may exist in the system (e.g., a copy in the cache and a copy in main memory). There are two possible write policies.

- Write-through: Write to both the cache's copy and the main memory's copy.
- Write-back: Write only to the cache's copy. This requires adding a "dirty bit" for each block in the cache. When a block in the cache is written to, its dirty bit is set to indicate that the main memory's copy is stale. When a dirty block is evicted from the cache (due to a replacement), the entire block must be written back to main memory. Clean blocks need not be written back when they are evicted.

Cache Size – $C \text{ (bytes)} = S * A * B$

where S = Number of sets

A = Set associativity

B = Block size (bytes)

To search for the requested block in the cache, the CPU will generally divide the address into three fields: the tag, index, and block offset.

| | | |
|-----|-------|--------------|
| TAG | INDEX | BLOCK OFFSET |
|-----|-------|--------------|

- **Tag** – These are the most significant bits of the address, which are checked against the current row (the row that has been retrieved by index) to see if it is the one needed or another, irrelevant memory location that happened to have the same index bits as the one wanted.

$$\# \text{ tag bits} = \# \text{ address bits} - \# \text{ index bits} - \# \text{ block offset bits}$$

- **Index** – These bits specify which cache row (set) that the data has been put in.

$$\# \text{ index bits} = \log_2(\# \text{ sets}) = \log_2(S)$$

- **Block Offset** – These are the lower bits of the address that select a byte within the block.

$$\# \text{ block offset bits} = \log_2(\text{block size}) = \log_2(B)$$

Pipeline Type

The following is a basic five-stage pipeline in a RISC machine:

| INSTR. NO. | PIPELINE STAGE | | | | | | |
|-------------|----------------|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| | IF | ID | EX | MEM | WB | | |
| 1 | IF | ID | EX | MEM | WB | | |
| 2 | | IF | ID | EX | MEM | WB | |
| 3 | | | IF | ID | EX | MEM | WB |
| 4 | | | | IF | ID | EX | MEM |
| 5 | | | | | IF | ID | EX |
| CLOCK CYCLE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |

IF = Instruction Fetch

ID = Instruction Decode

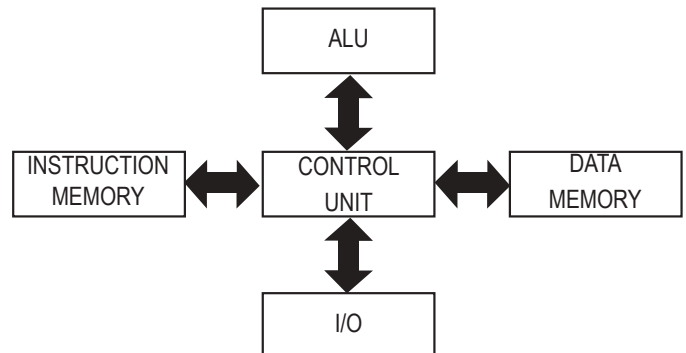
EX = Execute

MEM = Memory Access

WB = Register Write Back

In the fourth clock cycle (the highlighted column), the earliest instruction is in MEM stage, and the latest instruction has not yet entered the pipeline.

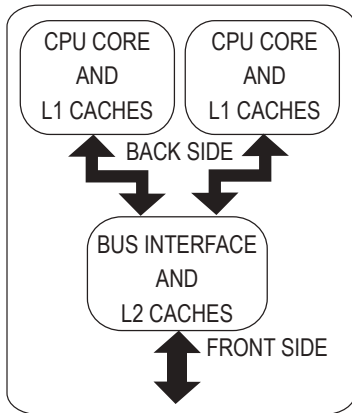
Microprocessor Architecture – Harvard



Multicore

A multicore processor is a single computing component with two or more independent actual processing units (called cores), which are the units that read and execute program instructions. The instructions are ordinary CPU instructions such as Add, Move Data, and Branch, but the multiple cores can run multiple instructions at the same time, increasing overall speed for programs amenable to parallel computing.

A multicore processor implements multiprocessing in a single physical package. Designers may couple cores in a multicore device tightly or loosely. For example, cores may or may not share caches, and they may implement message passing or shared memory intercore communication methods. Common network topologies to interconnect cores include bus, ring, two-dimensional mesh, and crossbar. Homogeneous multicore systems include only identical cores; heterogeneous multicore systems have cores that are not identical. Just as with single-processor systems, cores in multicore systems may implement architectures such as superscalar, VLIW, vector processing, SIMD, or multithreading.



Generic dual-core processor, with CPU-local level 1 caches, and a shared, on-die level 2 cache

Threading

In computer science, a thread of execution is the smallest sequence of programmed instructions that can be managed independently by a scheduler, which is typically a part of the operating system. The implementation of threads and processes differs between operating systems, but in most cases a thread is a component of a process. Multiple threads can exist within the same process and share resources such as memory, while different processes do not share these resources. In particular, the threads of a process share its instructions (executable code) and its context (the values of its variables at any given moment).

On a single processor, multithreading is generally implemented by time-division multiplexing (as in multitasking), and the CPU switches between different software threads. This context switching generally happens frequently enough that the user perceives the threads or tasks as running at the same time. On a multiprocessor or multicore system, threads can be executed in a true concurrent manner, with every processor or core executing a separate thread simultaneously. To implement

multiprocessing, the operating system may use hardware threads that exist as a hardware-supported method for better utilization of a particular CPU. These are different from the software threads that are a pure software construct with no CPU-level representation.

Acronyms

| | |
|------|-----------------------------------|
| CISC | Complex instruction set computing |
| CPU | Central processing unit |
| FIFO | First-in, first out |
| I/O | Input/output |
| LFU | Least frequently used |
| LRU | Least recently used |
| MRU | Most recently used |
| RISC | Reduced instruction set computing |
| RAM | Random access memory |
| ROM | Read only memory |

SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT

Algorithm Efficiency (Big-O)

The concept of Big O Notation is used in software engineering to determine the efficiency of an algorithm. Big O equations are written as:

$$O(n) = f(n)$$

When comparing the efficiency of two algorithms, compare two $O(n)$ values as n approaches infinity.

Endian-ness

MSB – most significant bit first. Also known as Big-endian.

LSB – least significant bit first. Also known as Little-endian.

Pointers

A pointer is a reference to an object. The literal value of a pointer is the object's location in memory. Extracting the object referenced by a pointer is defined as dereferencing.

Object Oriented

Object-oriented programming constructs systems in terms of objects that represent things in the real world naturally and effectively. This makes the software system easier to understand for designers, programmers, and users.

- *Class* – a collection of members, which can be defined as variables and methods. Members can be public, protected, or private.
- *Derived Class* – a class with members that have been inherited from another class
- *Base Class* – a class with one or more derived classes associated with it
- *Abstract Class* – a base class that cannot be implemented
- *Interface* – a collection of public methods that are not defined. A class that implements an interface must define these methods.

Algorithms

An algorithm is a specific sequence of steps that describe a process.

Sorting Algorithm – an algorithm that transforms a random collection of elements into a sorted collection of elements.

Examples include:

- Bubble Sort
- Insertion Sort
- Merge Sort
- Heap Sort
- Quick Sort

Searching Algorithm – an algorithm that determines if an element exists in a collection of elements. If the element does exist, its location is also returned. Examples include:

- Binary search
- Hashing

Data Structures

Collection – a grouping of elements that are stored and accessed using algorithms. Examples include:

- Array
- Simple list
- Linked list
- Queue
- Stack
- Map
- Set
- Tree
- Graph

Tree Traversal

There are three primary algorithms that are used to traverse a binary tree data structure.

Pre-Order Traversal

1. Traverse the left sub-tree.
2. Visit the root node.
3. Traverse the right sub-tree.

In-Order Traversal

1. Visit the root node.
2. Traverse the left sub-tree.
3. Traverse the right sub-tree.

Post-Order Traversal

1. Traverse the left sub-tree.
2. Traverse the right sub-tree.
3. Visit the root node.

Graph Traversal

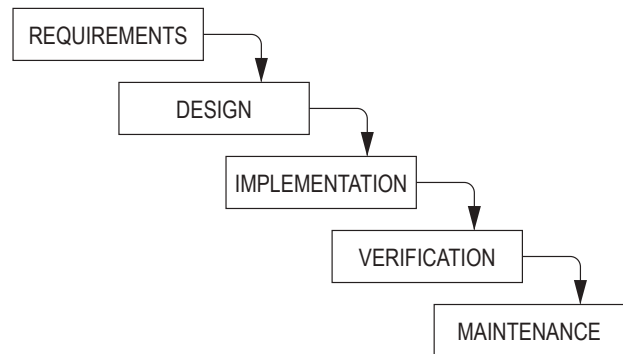
A graph is a collection of nodes (also called vertices) that are connected by edges (also known as arcs or lines). It can be useful to parse through each node in the graph. Primarily two algorithms will perform this task.

Breadth First Search–Beginning at a given node, the algorithm visits all connected nodes that have not been visited. The algorithm repeats for each visited node. The output of the algorithm is a list of nodes in the order that they have been visited. A queue data structure can be used to facilitate this algorithm.

Depth First Search–Beginning at a given node, the algorithm visits one connected node that has not been visited. This is repeated until a node does not have any connected nodes that have not been visited. At this point the algorithm backtracks to the last visited node and repeats the algorithm. The output of the algorithm is a list of nodes in the order that they have been visited. A stack can be used to facilitate this algorithm.

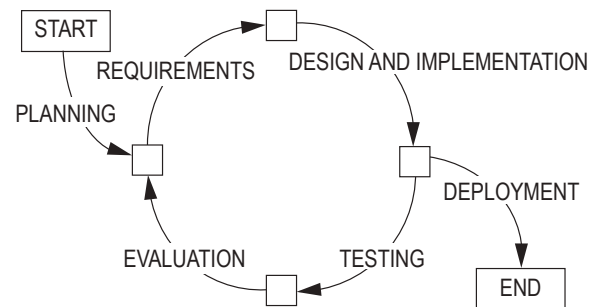
Software Process Flows

Waterfall

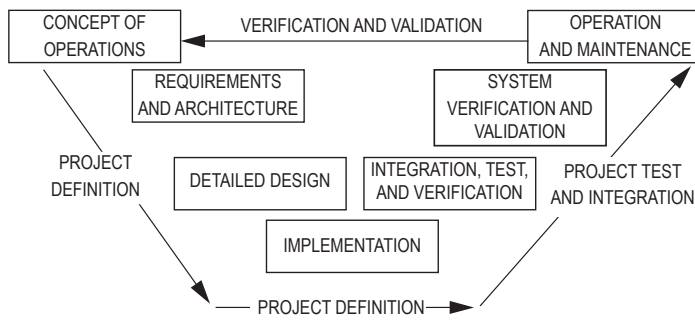


Westfall, Linda, *The Certified Software Quality Engineer Handbook*, Milwaukee, Quality Press, 2010, p. 131.

Iterative



V-Model



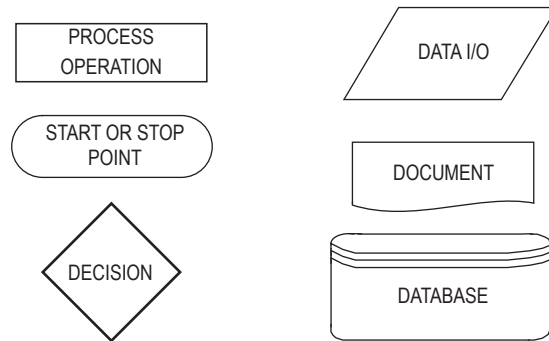
Clarus Concept of Operations, Publication No. FHWA-JPO-05-072, Federal Highway Administration, 2005.

Software Syntax Guidelines

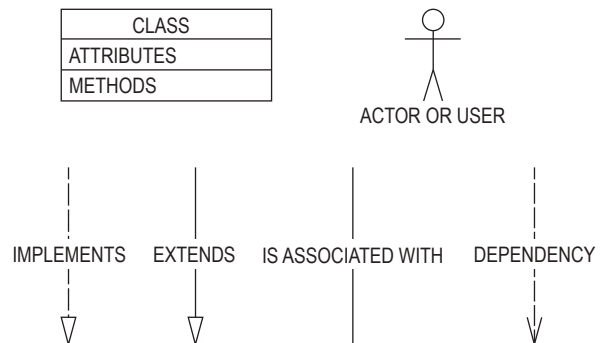
- Code is pseudocode, no specific language
- No end-of-line punctuation (e.g., semicolon) is used
- Comments are indicated with "--" double hyphen
- Loop structures end with "end" followed by structure name, e.g., "end while"
- "do-while" begins with "do" and ends with "while"—no "end" per se
- "if-then" statements have both "if" and "then"
- "else if" is a substitute for the "end" on the preceding "if"
- "=" is used to designate assignment. "==" refers to comparison in a conditional statement.
- Not equals is represented by \neq
- Logical "and" and "or" are spelled out as "and" and "or"
- Variable and argument declarations are Pascal style—"name: type"
- Numeric data types are "integer" and "float"
- Text is a procedural variable, unless specified to be an object of type String
- Variables can be constant, and are declared with the "const" modifier
- Variables whose type is object and the exact specification of that object is not critical to the problem must have the data type obj
- Array indices are designated with square brackets [], not parentheses
- Unless otherwise specified, arrays begin at 1 (one)
- Compilation units are "procedure" and "function". "Module" is not a compilation unit
- Function parameters are designated with parentheses ()
- Unless specified, procedures and functions must have the return type "void"
- Arguments in a function/procedure call are separated by semicolons

- Class definitions start with "cls" (e.g., clsClassName)
- Classes, properties, and procedures are by default public and may be optionally modified by "private" or "protected"
- To instantiate an object, the follow syntax must be used: new clsName objName
- For input, read ("filename.ext", <variable list>)—if reading from console, do not use the first argument
- For output, write ("filename.ext", <expression list>)—if writing to console, do not use the first argument
- The Boolean data type is "boolean"; the return result of all comparison operators is a boolean type
- The operator "*" in front of a variable is used to return the data at the address location within that variable
- The operator "&" in front of a variable is used to return the address of a given variable. The declaration of "pointer_to" is used to define a variable of a pointer type

Flow Chart Definition



UML Definition



Key Equations

Assume that "*" implies multiplication.

McCabe's Cyclomatic Complexity

$$c = e - n + 2$$

where for a single program graph, n is the number of nodes, e is the number of edges, and c is the cyclomatic complexity.

The RSA Public-Key Cryptosystem

$n = p * q$ where p and q are both primes.

$e * d = 1 \pmod{t}$, where t = least common multiple (p - 1, q - 1)

- The encrypted cyphertext c of a message m is $c = m^e \pmod{n}$
- The decrypted message is $m = c^d \pmod{n}$
- The signature s of a message m is $s = m^d \pmod{n}$

Diffie-Hellman Key-Exchange Protocol

A sender and receiver separately select private keys x and y. Generator value g and prime number p is shared between the two. Their shared secret key k is:

$$k = (g^x)^y \pmod{p} = (g^y)^x \pmod{p}.$$

INDUSTRIAL AND SYSTEMS ENGINEERING

LINEAR PROGRAMMING

The general linear programming (LP) problem is:

$$\text{Maximize } Z = c_1x_1 + c_2x_2 + \dots + c_nx_n$$

Subject to:

$$a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \dots + a_{1n}x_n \leq b_1$$

$$a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \dots + a_{2n}x_n \leq b_2$$

⋮

$$a_{m1}x_1 + a_{m2}x_2 + \dots + a_{mn}x_n \leq b_m$$

$$x_1, \dots, x_n \geq 0$$

An LP problem is frequently reformulated by inserting non-negative slack and surplus variables. Although these variables usually have zero costs (depending on the application), they can have non-zero cost coefficients in the objective function. A slack variable is used with a "less than" inequality and transforms it into an equality. For example, the inequality $5x_1 + 3x_2 + 2x_3 \leq 5$ could be changed to $5x_1 + 3x_2 + 2x_3 + s_1 = 5$ if s_1 were chosen as a slack variable. The inequality $3x_1 + x_2 - 4x_3 \geq 10$ might be transformed into $3x_1 + x_2 - 4x_3 - s_2 = 10$ by the addition of the surplus variable s_2 . Computer printouts of the results of processing an LP usually include values for all slack and surplus variables, the dual prices, and the reduced costs for each variable.

Dual Linear Program

Associated with the above linear programming problem is another problem called the dual linear programming problem. If we take the previous problem and call it the primal problem, then in matrix form the primal and dual problems are respectively:

| | |
|--|--|
| <u>Primal</u> | <u>Dual</u> |
| Maximize $Z = \mathbf{c}\mathbf{x}$ | Minimize $W = \mathbf{y}\mathbf{b}$ |
| Subject to: $\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} \leq \mathbf{b}$ | Subject to: $\mathbf{y}\mathbf{A} \geq \mathbf{c}$ |
| $\mathbf{x} \geq 0$ | $\mathbf{y} \geq 0$ |

It is assumed that if \mathbf{A} is a matrix of size $[m \times n]$, then \mathbf{y} is a $[1 \times m]$ vector, \mathbf{c} is a $[1 \times n]$ vector, \mathbf{b} is an $[m \times 1]$ vector, and \mathbf{x} is an $[n \times 1]$ vector.

Network Optimization

Assume we have a graph $G(N, A)$ with a finite set of nodes N and a finite set of arcs A . Furthermore, let

$$N = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$$

$$x_{ij} = \text{flow from node } i \text{ to node } j$$

$$c_{ij} = \text{cost per unit flow from } i \text{ to } j$$

$$u_{ij} = \text{capacity of arc } (i, j)$$

$$b_i = \text{net flow generated at node } i$$

We wish to minimize the total cost of sending the available supply through the network to satisfy the given demand. The minimal cost flow model is formulated as follows:

$$\text{Minimize } Z = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n c_{ij}x_{ij}$$

subject to

$$\sum_{j=1}^n x_{ij} - \sum_{j=1}^n x_{ji} = b_i \text{ for each node } i \in N$$

and

$$0 \leq x_{ij} \leq u_{ij} \text{ for each arc } (i, j) \in A$$

The constraints on the nodes represent a conservation of flow relationship. The first summation represents total flow out of node i , and the second summation represents total flow into node i . The net difference generated at node i is equal to b_i .

Many models, such as shortest-path, maximal-flow, assignment and transportation models, can be reformulated as minimal-cost network flow models.

PROCESS CAPABILITY

Actual Capability

$$PCR_k = C_{pk} = \min\left(\frac{\mu - LSL}{3\sigma}, \frac{USL - \mu}{3\sigma}\right)$$

Potential Capability (i.e., Centered Process)

$$PCR = C_p = \frac{USL - LSL}{6\sigma}, \text{ where}$$

μ and σ are the process mean and standard deviation, respectively, and LSL and USL are the lower and upper specification limits, respectively.

QUEUEING MODELS

Definitions

P_n = probability of n units in system

L = expected number of units in the system

L_q = expected number of units in the queue

W = expected waiting time in system

W_q = expected waiting time in queue

λ = mean arrival rate (constant)

$\tilde{\lambda}$ = effective arrival rate

μ = mean service rate (constant)

ρ = server utilization factor

s = number of servers

Kendall notation for describing a queueing system:

$$A / B / s / M$$

A = the arrival process

B = the service time distribution

s = the number of servers

M = the total number of customers including those in service

Fundamental Relationships

$$L = \lambda W$$

$$L_q = \lambda W_q$$

$$W = W_q + 1/\mu$$

$$\rho = \lambda/(s\mu)$$

Single Server Models ($s = 1$)

Poisson Input—Exponential Service Time: $M = \infty$

$$P_0 = 1 - \lambda/\mu = 1 - \rho$$

$$P_n = (1 - \rho)\rho^n = P_0\rho^n$$

$$L = \rho/(1 - \rho) = \lambda/(\mu - \lambda)$$

$$L_q = \lambda^2/[\mu(\mu - \lambda)]$$

$$W = 1/[\mu(1 - \rho)] = 1/(\mu - \lambda)$$

$$W_q = W - 1/\mu = \lambda/[\mu(\mu - \lambda)]$$

Finite queue: $M < \infty$

$$\tilde{\lambda} = \lambda(1 - P_m)$$

$$P_0 = (1 - \rho)/(1 - \rho^{M+1})$$

$$P_n = [(1 - \rho)/(1 - \rho^{M+1})]\rho^n$$

$$L = \rho/(1 - \rho) - (M + 1)\rho^{M+1}/(1 - \rho^{M+1})$$

$$L_q = L - (1 - P_0)$$

$$W = L/\tilde{\lambda}$$

$$W = W_q + 1/\mu$$

Poisson Input—Arbitrary Service Time

Variance σ^2 is known. For constant service time, $\sigma^2 = 0$.

$$P_0 = 1 - \rho$$

$$L_q = (\lambda^2\sigma^2 + \rho^2)/[2(1 - \rho)]$$

$$L = \rho + L_q$$

$$W_q = L_q/\lambda$$

$$W = W_q + 1/\mu$$

Poisson Input—Erlang Service Times, $\sigma^2 = 1/(k\mu^2)$

$$L_q = [(1 + k)/(2k)][(\lambda^2)/(\mu(\mu - \lambda))]$$

$$= [\lambda^2/(k\mu^2) + \rho^2]/[2(1 - \rho)]$$

$$W_q = [(1 + k)/(2k)]\{\lambda/[\mu(\mu - \lambda)]\}$$

$$W = W_q + 1/\mu$$

Multiple Server Model ($s > 1$)

Poisson Input—Exponential Service Times

$$P_0 = \left[\sum_{n=0}^{s-1} \frac{(\frac{\lambda}{\mu})^n}{n!} + \frac{(\frac{\lambda}{\mu})^s}{s!} \left(\frac{1}{1 - \frac{\lambda}{s\mu}} \right) \right]^{-1}$$

$$= 1 / \left[\sum_{n=0}^{s-1} \frac{(s\rho)^n}{n!} + \frac{(s\rho)^s}{s!(1 - \rho)} \right]$$

$$L_q = \frac{P_0 \left(\frac{\lambda}{\mu} \right)^s \rho}{s!(1 - \rho)^2}$$

$$= \frac{P_0 s^s \rho^{s+1}}{s!(1 - \rho)^2}$$

$$P_n = P_0 (\lambda/\mu)^n / n! \quad 0 \leq n \leq s$$

$$P_n = P_0 (\lambda/\mu)^n / (s!s^{n-s}) \quad n \geq s$$

$$W_q = L_q/\lambda$$

$$W = W_q + 1/\mu$$

$$L = L_q + \lambda/\mu$$

Calculations for P_0 and L_q can be time consuming; however, the following table gives formulas for 1, 2, and 3 servers.

| s | P_0 | L_q |
|-----|---|--|
| 1 | $1 - \rho$ | $\rho^2/(1 - \rho)$ |
| 2 | $(1 - \rho)/(1 + \rho)$ | $2\rho^3/(1 - \rho^2)$ |
| 3 | $\frac{2(1 - \rho)}{2 + 4\rho + 3\rho^2}$ | $\frac{9\rho^4}{2 + 2\rho - \rho^2 - 3\rho^3}$ |

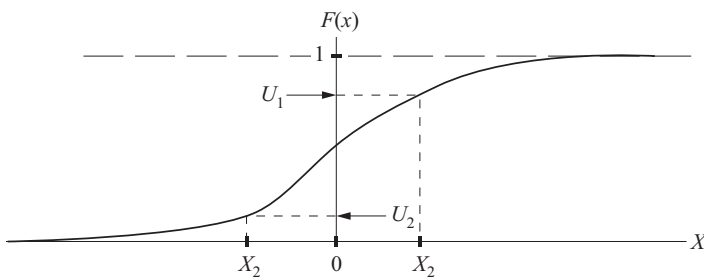
SIMULATION

1. Random Variate Generation

The linear congruential method of generating pseudo-random numbers U_i between 0 and 1 is obtained using $Z_n = (aZ_{n-1} + C) \pmod{m}$ where a , C , m , and Z_0 are given nonnegative integers and where $U_i = Z_i/m$. Two integers are equal \pmod{m} if their remainders are the same when divided by m .

2. Inverse Transform Method

If X is a continuous random variable with cumulative distribution function $F(x)$, and U_i is a random number between 0 and 1, then the value of X_i corresponding to U_i can be calculated by solving $U_i = F(x_i)$ for x_i . The solution obtained is $x_i = F^{-1}(U_i)$, where F^{-1} is the inverse function of $F(x)$.



Inverse Transform Method for Continuous Random Variables

FORECASTING

Moving Average

$$\hat{d}_t = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n d_{t-i}}{n}, \text{ where}$$

\hat{d}_t = forecasted demand for period t

d_{t-i} = actual demand for i th period preceding t

n = number of time periods to include in the moving average

Exponentially Weighted Moving Average

$$\hat{d}_t = \alpha d_{t-1} + (1 - \alpha) \hat{d}_{t-1}, \text{ where}$$

\hat{d}_t = forecasted demand for t

α = smoothing constant, $0 \leq \alpha \leq 1$

2ⁿ FACTORIAL EXPERIMENTS

Factors: X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n

Levels of each factor: 1, 2 (sometimes these levels are represented by the symbols – and +, respectively)

r = number of observations for each experimental condition (treatment)

E_i = estimate of the effect of factor X_i , $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$

E_{ij} = estimate of the effect of the interaction between factors X_i and X_j

\bar{Y}_{ik} = average response value for all $r2^{n-1}$ observations having X_i set at level k , $k = 1, 2$

\bar{Y}_{ij}^{km} = average response value for all $r2^{n-2}$ observations having X_i set at level k , $k = 1, 2$, and X_j set at level m , $m = 1, 2$.

$$E_i = \bar{Y}_{i2} - \bar{Y}_{i1}$$

$$E_{ij} = \frac{(\bar{Y}_{ij}^{22} - \bar{Y}_{ij}^{21}) - (\bar{Y}_{ij}^{12} - \bar{Y}_{ij}^{11})}{2}$$

ANALYSIS OF VARIANCE FOR 2ⁿ FACTORIAL DESIGNS

Main Effects

Let E be the estimate of the effect of a given factor, let L be the orthogonal contrast belonging to this effect. It can be proved that

$$E = \frac{L}{2^{n-1}}$$

$$L = \sum_{c=1}^m a_{(c)} \bar{Y}_{(c)}$$

$$SS_L = \frac{rL^2}{2^n}, \text{ where}$$

m = number of experimental conditions ($m = 2^n$ for n factors)

$a_{(c)} = -1$ if the factor is set at its low level (level 1) in experimental condition c

$a_{(c)} = +1$ if the factor is set at its high level (level 2) in experimental condition c

r = number of replications for each experimental condition

$\bar{Y}_{(c)}$ = average response value for experimental condition c

SS_L = sum of squares associated with the factor

Interaction Effects

Consider any group of two or more factors.

$a_{(c)} = +1$ if there is an even number (or zero) of factors in the group set at the low level (level 1) in experimental condition $c = 1, 2, \dots, m$

$a_{(c)} = -1$ if there is an odd number of factors in the group set at the low level (level 1) in experimental condition $c = 1, 2, \dots, m$

It can be proved that the interaction effect E for the factors in the group and the corresponding sum of squares SS_L can be determined as follows:

$$E = \frac{L}{2^{n-1}}$$

$$L = \sum_{c=1}^m a_{(c)} \bar{Y}_{(c)}$$

$$SS_L = \frac{rL^2}{2^n}$$

Sum of Squares of Random Error

The sum of the squares due to the random error can be computed as

$$SS_{\text{error}} = SS_{\text{total}} - \sum_i SS_i - \sum_i \sum_j SS_{ij} - \dots - SS_{12 \dots n}$$

where SS_i is the sum of squares due to factor X_i , SS_{ij} is the sum of squares due to the interaction of factors X_i and X_j , and so on. The total sum of squares is equal to

$$SS_{\text{total}} = \sum_{c=1}^m \sum_{k=1}^r Y_{ck}^2 - \frac{T^2}{N}$$

where Y_{ck} is the k th observation taken for the c th experimental condition, $m = 2^n$, T is the grand total of all observations, and $N = r2^n$.

RELIABILITY

If P_i is the probability that component i is functioning, a reliability function $R(P_1, P_2, \dots, P_n)$ represents the probability that a system consisting of n components will work.

For n independent components connected in series,

$$R(P_1, P_2, \dots, P_n) = \prod_{i=1}^n P_i$$

For n independent components connected in parallel,

$$R(P_1, P_2, \dots, P_n) = 1 - \prod_{i=1}^n (1 - P_i)$$

LEARNING CURVES

The time to do the repetition N of a task is given by

$$T_N = KN^s, \text{ where}$$

K = constant

s = $\ln(\text{learning rate, as a decimal})/\ln 2$; or, learning rate = 2^s

If N units are to be produced, the average time per unit is given by

$$T_{\text{avg}} = \frac{K}{N(1+s)} \left[(N+0.5)^{(1+s)} - 0.5^{(1+s)} \right]$$

INVENTORY MODELS

For instantaneous replenishment (with constant demand rate, known holding and ordering costs, and an infinite stockout cost), the economic order quantity is given by

$$EOQ = \sqrt{\frac{2AD}{h}}, \text{ where}$$

A = cost to place one order

D = number of units used per year

h = holding cost per unit per year

Under the same conditions as above with a finite replenishment rate, the economic manufacturing quantity is given by

$$EMQ = \sqrt{\frac{2AD}{h(1-D/R)}}, \text{ where}$$

R = the replenishment rate

FACILITY PLANNING

Equipment Requirements

$$M_j = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{P_i T_{ij}}{C_{ij}} \text{ where}$$

M_j = number of machines of type j required per production period

P_{ij} = desired production rate for product i on machine j , measured in pieces per production period

T_{ij} = production time for product i on machine j , measured in hours per piece

C_{ij} = number of hours in the production period available for the production of product i on machine j

n = number of products

People Requirements

$$A_j = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{P_i T_{ij}}{C_{ij}}, \text{ where}$$

A_j = number of crews required for assembly operation j

P_{ij} = desired production rate for product i and assembly operation j (pieces per day)

T_{ij} = standard time to perform operation j on product i (minutes per piece)

C_{ij} = number of minutes available per day for assembly operation j on product i

n = number of products

Standard Time Determination

$$ST = NT \times AF$$

where

NT = normal time

AF = allowance factor

Case 1: Allowances are based on the *job time*.

$$AF_{\text{job}} = 1 + A_{\text{job}}$$

A_{job} = allowance fraction (percentage/100) based on *job time*.

Case 2: Allowances are based on *workday*.

$$AF_{\text{time}} = 1/(1 - A_{\text{day}})$$

A_{day} = allowance fraction (percentage/100) based on *workday*.

◆ Predetermined time systems are useful in cases where either (1) the task does not yet exist or (2) changes to a task are being designed and normal times have not yet been established for all elements of the new task or changed task. In such cases no opportunity exists to measure the element time. Unfortunately, there is no scientific basis for predicting element times without breaking them down into motion-level parts. A task consists of elements. An organization may develop its own database of normal element durations, and normal times for new or changed tasks may be predicted if the tasks consist entirely of elements whose normal times are already in the database. But new elements can be decomposed into motions, for which scientifically predetermined times exist in databases called MTM-1, MTM-2, and MTM-3. These databases and software to manipulate them are commercially available. To use one of them effectively requires about 50 hours of training.

Plant Location

The following is one formulation of a discrete plant location problem.

Minimize

$$z = \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^n c_{ij} y_{ij} + \sum_{j=1}^n f_j x_j$$

subject to

$$\sum_{i=1}^m y_{ij} \leq mx_j, \quad j = 1, \dots, n$$

$$\sum_{j=1}^n y_{ij} = 1, \quad i = 1, \dots, m$$

$$y_{ij} \geq 0, \text{ for all } i, j$$

$$x_j = (0, 1), \text{ for all } j, \text{ where}$$

m = number of customers

n = number of possible plant sites

y_{ij} = fraction or proportion of the demand of customer i which is satisfied by a plant located at site j ; $i = 1, \dots, m$; $j = 1, \dots, n$

$x_j = 1$, if a plant is located at site j

$x_j = 0$, otherwise

c_{ij} = cost of supplying the entire demand of customer i from a plant located at site j

f_j = fixed cost resulting from locating a plant at site j

Material Handling

Distances between two points (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) under different metrics:

Euclidean:

$$D = \sqrt{(x_1 - x_2)^2 + (y_1 - y_2)^2}$$

Rectilinear (or Manhattan):

$$D = |x_1 - x_2| + |y_1 - y_2|$$

Chebyshev (simultaneous x and y movement):

$$D = \max(|x_1 - x_2|, |y_1 - y_2|)$$

Line Balancing

$$N_{\min} = \left(OR \times \sum_i t_i / OT \right)$$

= theoretical minimum number of stations

$$\text{Idle Time/Station} = CT - ST$$

$$\text{Idle Time/Cycle} = \sum (CT - ST)$$

Percent Idle Time = $\frac{\text{Idle Time/Cycle}}{N_{\text{actual}} \times CT} \times 100$, where

CT = cycle time (time between units)

OT = operating time/period

OR = output rate/period

ST = station time (time to complete task at each station)

t_i = individual task times

N = number of stations

Job Sequencing

Two Work Centers—Johnson's Rule

1. Select the job with the shortest time, from the list of jobs, and its time at each work center.
2. If the shortest job time is the time at the first work center, schedule it first, otherwise schedule it last. Break ties arbitrarily.
3. Eliminate that job from consideration.
4. Repeat 1, 2, and 3 until all jobs have been scheduled.

CRITICAL PATH METHOD (CPM)

d_{ij} = duration of activity (i, j)

CP = critical path (longest path)

T = duration of project

$$T = \sum_{(i,j) \in CP} d_{ij}$$

◆ Kennedy, W.J., and Daniel P. Rogers, *Review for the Professional Engineers' Examination in Industrial Engineering*, 2012.

PERT

(a_{ij}, b_{ij}, c_{ij}) = (optimistic, most likely, pessimistic) durations for activity (i, j)

μ_{ij} = mean duration of activity (i, j)

σ_{ij} = standard deviation of the duration of activity (i, j)

μ = project mean duration

σ = standard deviation of project duration

$$\mu_{ij} = \frac{a_{ij} + 4b_{ij} + c_{ij}}{6}$$

$$\sigma_{ij} = \frac{c_{ij} - a_{ij}}{6}$$

$$\mu = \sum_{(i,j) \in CP} \mu_{ij}$$

$$\sigma^2 = \sum_{(i,j) \in CP} \sigma_{ij}^2$$

TAYLOR TOOL LIFE FORMULA

$VT^n = C$, where

V = speed in surface feet per minute

T = tool life in minutes

C, n = constants that depend on the material and on the tool

WORK SAMPLING FORMULAS

$$D = Z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{p(1-p)}{n}} \text{ and } R = Z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{1-p}{pn}}, \text{ where}$$

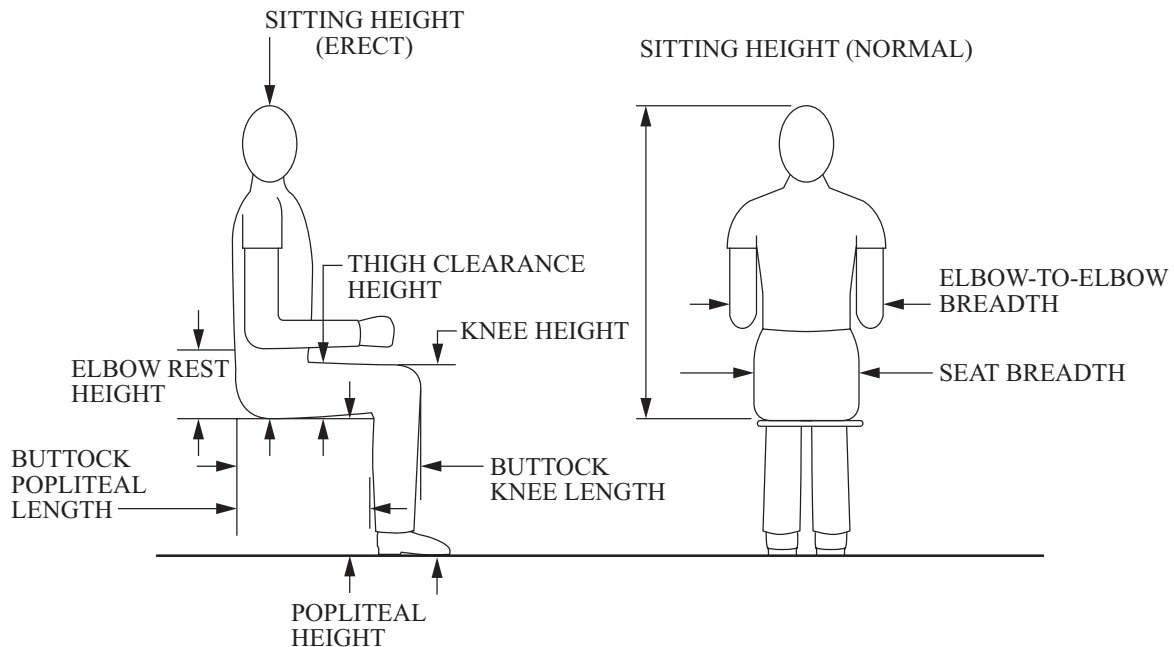
p = proportion of observed time in an activity

D = absolute error

R = relative error ($R = D/p$)

n = sample size

ANTHROPOMETRIC MEASUREMENTS



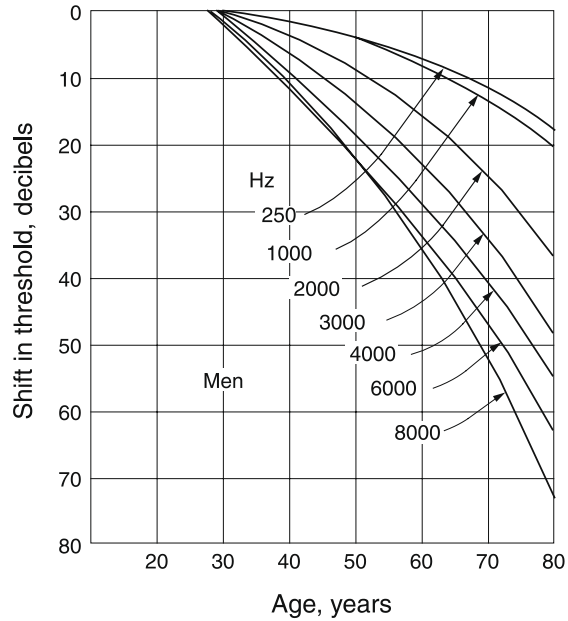
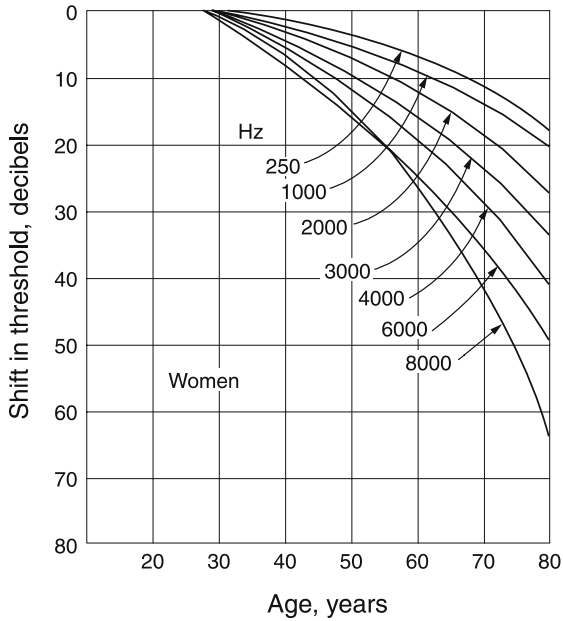
After Sanders and McCormick, *Human Factors In Design*, McGraw-Hill, 1987.

| U.S. Civilian Body Dimensions, Female/Male, for Ages 20 to 60 Years (Centimeters) | | | | |
|--|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| (See Anthropometric Measurements Figure) | Percentiles | | | |
| | 5th | 50th | 95th | Std. Dev. |
| HEIGHTS | | | | |
| Stature (height) | 149.5 / 161.8 | 160.5 / 173.6 | 171.3 / 184.4 | 6.6 / 6.9 |
| Eye height | 138.3 / 151.1 | 148.9 / 162.4 | 159.3 / 172.7 | 6.4 / 6.6 |
| Shoulder (acromion) height | 121.1 / 132.3 | 131.1 / 142.8 | 141.9 / 152.4 | 6.1 / 6.1 |
| Elbow height | 93.6 / 100.0 | 101.2 / 109.9 | 108.8 / 119.0 | 4.6 / 5.8 |
| Knuckle height | 64.3 / 69.8 | 70.2 / 75.4 | 75.9 / 80.4 | 3.5 / 3.2 |
| Height, sitting (erect) | 78.6 / 84.2 | 85.0 / 90.6 | 90.7 / 96.7 | 3.5 / 3.7 |
| Eye height, sitting | 67.5 / 72.6 | 73.3 / 78.6 | 78.5 / 84.4 | 3.3 / 3.6 |
| Shoulder height, sitting | 49.2 / 52.7 | 55.7 / 59.4 | 61.7 / 65.8 | 3.8 / 4.0 |
| Elbow rest height, sitting | 18.1 / 19.0 | 23.3 / 24.3 | 28.1 / 29.4 | 2.9 / 3.0 |
| Knee height, sitting | 45.2 / 49.3 | 49.8 / 54.3 | 54.5 / 59.3 | 2.7 / 2.9 |
| Popliteal height, sitting | 35.5 / 39.2 | 39.8 / 44.2 | 44.3 / 48.8 | 2.6 / 2.8 |
| Thigh clearance height | 10.6 / 11.4 | 13.7 / 14.4 | 17.5 / 17.7 | 1.8 / 1.7 |
| DEPTHS | | | | |
| Chest depth | 21.4 / 21.4 | 24.2 / 24.2 | 29.7 / 27.6 | 2.5 / 1.9 |
| Elbow-fingertip distance | 38.5 / 44.1 | 42.1 / 47.9 | 46.0 / 51.4 | 2.2 / 2.2 |
| Buttock-knee length, sitting | 51.8 / 54.0 | 56.9 / 59.4 | 62.5 / 64.2 | 3.1 / 3.0 |
| Buttock-popliteal length, sitting | 43.0 / 44.2 | 48.1 / 49.5 | 53.5 / 54.8 | 3.1 / 3.0 |
| Forward reach, functional | 64.0 / 76.3 | 71.0 / 82.5 | 79.0 / 88.3 | 4.5 / 5.0 |
| BREADTHS | | | | |
| Elbow-to-elbow breadth | 31.5 / 35.0 | 38.4 / 41.7 | 49.1 / 50.6 | 5.4 / 4.6 |
| Seat (hip) breadth, sitting | 31.2 / 30.8 | 36.4 / 35.4 | 43.7 / 40.6 | 3.7 / 2.8 |
| HEAD DIMENSIONS | | | | |
| Head breadth | 13.6 / 14.4 | 14.54 / 15.42 | 15.5 / 16.4 | 0.57 / 0.59 |
| Head circumference | 52.3 / 53.8 | 54.9 / 56.8 | 57.7 / 59.3 | 1.63 / 1.68 |
| Interpupillary distance | 5.1 / 5.5 | 5.83 / 6.20 | 6.5 / 6.8 | 0.4 / 0.39 |
| HAND DIMENSIONS | | | | |
| Hand length | 16.4 / 17.6 | 17.95 / 19.05 | 19.8 / 20.6 | 1.04 / 0.93 |
| Breadth, metacarpal | 7.0 / 8.2 | 7.66 / 8.88 | 8.4 / 9.8 | 0.41 / 0.47 |
| Circumference, metacarpal | 16.9 / 19.9 | 18.36 / 21.55 | 19.9 / 23.5 | 0.89 / 1.09 |
| Thickness, metacarpal III | 2.5 / 2.4 | 2.77 / 2.76 | 3.1 / 3.1 | 0.18 / 0.21 |
| Digit 1 | | | | |
| Breadth, interphalangeal | 1.7 / 2.1 | 1.98 / 2.29 | 2.1 / 2.5 | 0.12 / 0.13 |
| Crotch-tip length | 4.7 / 5.1 | 5.36 / 5.88 | 6.1 / 6.6 | 0.44 / 0.45 |
| Digit 2 | | | | |
| Breadth, distal joint | 1.4 / 1.7 | 1.55 / 1.85 | 1.7 / 2.0 | 0.10 / 0.12 |
| Crotch-tip length | 6.1 / 6.8 | 6.88 / 7.52 | 7.8 / 8.2 | 0.52 / 0.46 |
| Digit 3 | | | | |
| Breadth, distal joint | 1.4 / 1.7 | 1.53 / 1.85 | 1.7 / 2.0 | 0.09 / 0.12 |
| Crotch-tip length | 7.0 / 7.8 | 7.77 / 8.53 | 8.7 / 9.5 | 0.51 / 0.51 |
| Digit 4 | | | | |
| Breadth, distal joint | 1.3 / 1.6 | 1.42 / 1.70 | 1.6 / 1.9 | 0.09 / 0.11 |
| Crotch-tip length | 6.5 / 7.4 | 7.29 / 7.99 | 8.2 / 8.9 | 0.53 / 0.47 |
| Digit 5 | | | | |
| Breadth, distal joint | 1.2 / 1.4 | 1.32 / 1.57 | 1.5 / 1.8 | 0.09 / 0.12 |
| Crotch-tip length | 4.8 / 5.4 | 5.44 / 6.08 | 6.2 / 6.99 | 0.44 / 0.47 |
| FOOT DIMENSIONS | | | | |
| Foot length | 22.3 / 24.8 | 24.1 / 26.9 | 26.2 / 29.0 | 1.19 / 1.28 |
| Foot breadth | 8.1 / 9.0 | 8.84 / 9.79 | 9.7 / 10.7 | 0.50 / 0.53 |
| Lateral malleolus height | 5.8 / 6.2 | 6.78 / 7.03 | 7.8 / 8.0 | 0.59 / 0.54 |
| Weight (kg) | 46.2 / 56.2 | 61.1 / 74.0 | 89.9 / 97.1 | 13.8 / 12.6 |

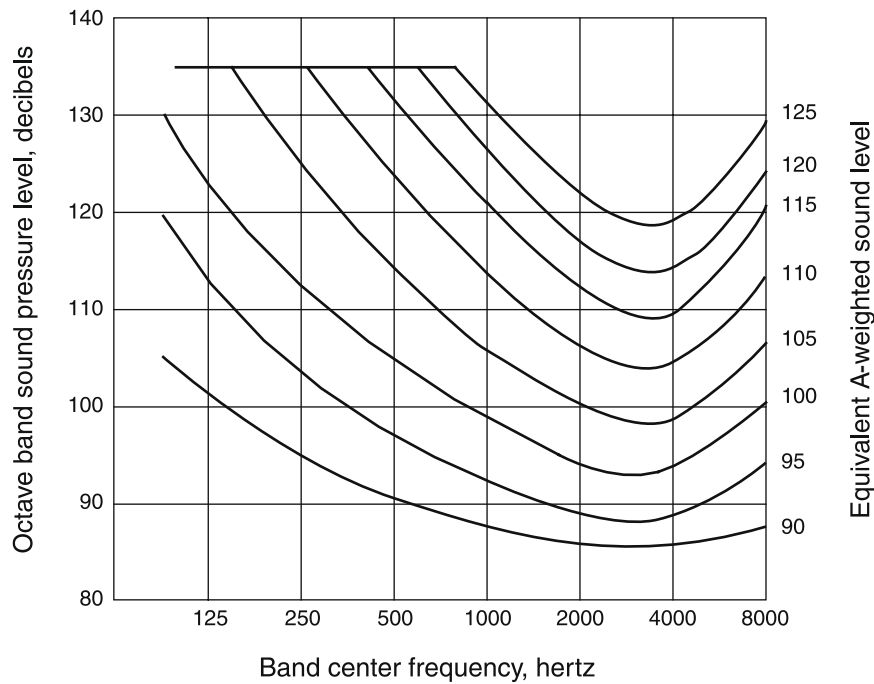
Kroemer, Karl H. E., "Engineering Anthropometry," *Ergonomics*, Vol. 32, No. 7, pp. 779-780, 1989.

ERGONOMICS—HEARING

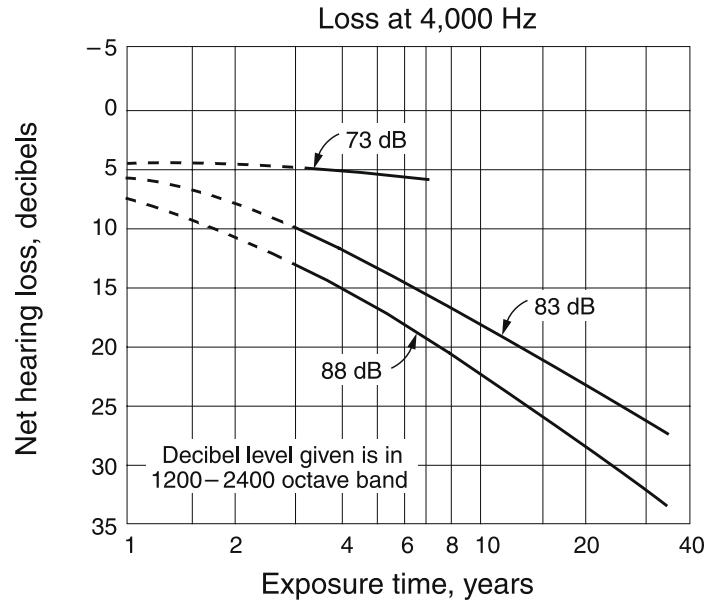
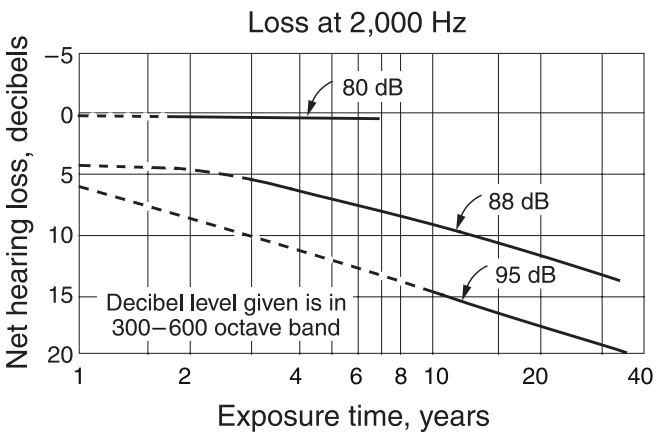
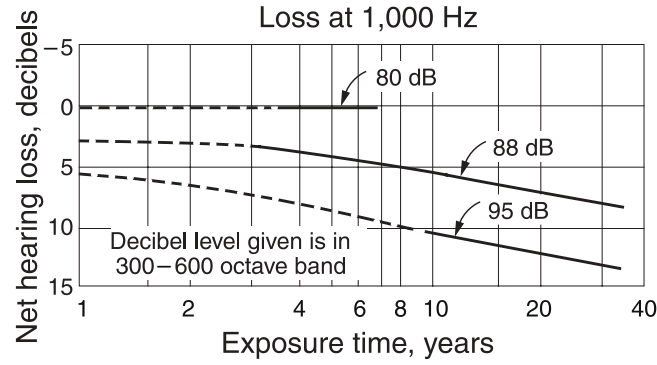
The average shifts with age of the threshold of hearing for pure tones of persons with "normal" hearing, using a 25-year-old group as a reference group.



Equivalent sound-level contours used in determining the A-weighted sound level on the basis of an octave-band analysis. The curve at the point of the highest penetration of the noise spectrum reflects the A-weighted sound level.



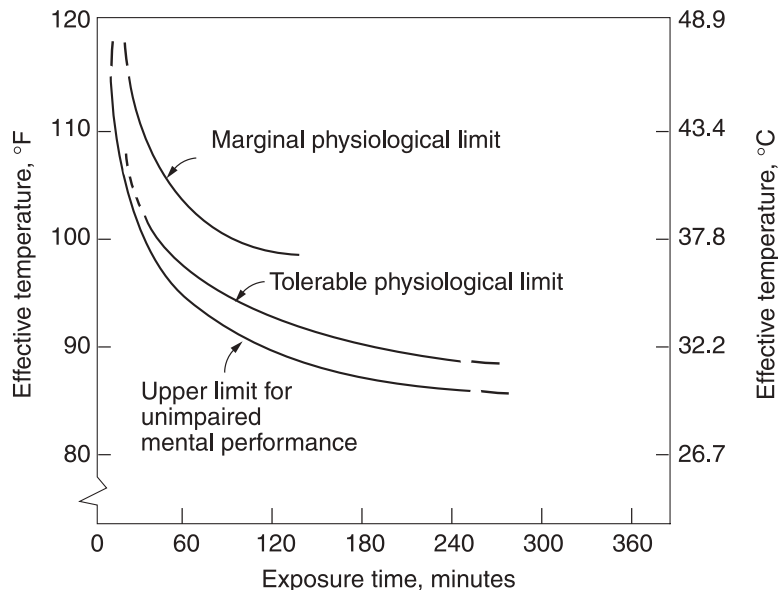
Estimated average trend curves for net hearing loss at 1,000, 2,000, and 4,000 Hz after continuous exposure to steady noise. Data are corrected for age, but not for temporary threshold shift. Dotted portions of curves represent extrapolation from available data.



"The Relations of Hearing Loss to Noise Exposure," Exploratory Subcommittee Z24-X-2 of the American Standards Association Z24 Special Committee on Acoustics, Vibration, and Mechanical Shock, sponsored by the Acoustical Society of America, American Standards Association, 1954, pp. 31-33.

Tentative upper limit of effective temperature (ET) for unimpaired mental performance as related to exposure time; data are based on an analysis of 15 studies. Comparative curves of tolerable and marginal physiological limits are also given.

Atmospheric Conditions



Effective temperature (ET) is the dry bulb temperature at 50% relative humidity, which results in the same physiological effect as the present conditions.

MECHANICAL ENGINEERING

MECHANICAL DESIGN AND ANALYSIS

Springs

Mechanical Springs

Helical Linear Springs: The shear stress in a helical linear spring is

$$\tau = K_s \frac{8FD}{\pi d^3}, \text{ where}$$

d = wire diameter

F = applied force

D = mean spring diameter

$$K_s = (2C + 1)/(2C)$$

$$C = D/d$$

The deflection and force are related by $F = kx$ where the spring rate (spring constant) k is given by

$$k = \frac{d^4 G}{8D^3 N}$$

where G is the shear modulus of elasticity and N is the number of active coils.

Spring Material: The minimum tensile strength of common spring steels may be determined from

$$S_{ut} = A/d^m$$

where S_{ut} is the tensile strength in MPa, d is the wire diameter in millimeters, and A and m are listed in the following table:

| Material | ASTM | m | A |
|-------------------|------|-------|------|
| Music wire | A228 | 0.163 | 2060 |
| Oil-tempered wire | A229 | 0.193 | 1610 |
| Hard-drawn wire | A227 | 0.201 | 1510 |
| Chrome vanadium | A232 | 0.155 | 1790 |
| Chrome silicon | A401 | 0.091 | 1960 |

Maximum allowable torsional stress for static applications may be approximated as

$$S_{sy} = \tau = 0.45S_{ut} \text{ cold-drawn carbon steel (A227, A228, A229)}$$

$$S_{sy} = \tau = 0.50S_{ut} \text{ hardened and tempered carbon and low-alloy steels (A232, A401)}$$

Compression Spring Dimensions

| Term | Type of Spring Ends | |
|---------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| | Plain | Plain and Ground |
| End coils, N_e | 0 | 1 |
| Total coils, N_t | N | $N + 1$ |
| Free length, L_0 | $pN + d$ | $p(N + 1)$ |
| Solid length, L_s | $d(N_t + 1)$ | dN_t |
| Pitch, p | $(L_0 - d)/N$ | $L_0/(N + 1)$ |

| Term | Type of Spring Ends | |
|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| | Squared or Closed | Squared and Ground |
| End coils, N_e | 2 | 2 |
| Total coils, N_t | $N + 2$ | $N + 2$ |
| Free length, L_0 | $pN + 3d$ | $pN + 2d$ |
| Solid length, L_s | $d(N_t + 1)$ | dN_t |
| Pitch, p | $(L_0 - 3d)/N$ | $(L_0 - 2d)/N$ |

Helical Torsion Springs: The bending stress is given as

$$\sigma = K_i [32Fr/(\pi d^3)]$$

where F is the applied load and r is the radius from the center of the coil to the load.

K_i = correction factor

$$= (4C^2 - C - 1) / [4C(C - 1)]$$

$$C = D/d$$

The deflection θ and moment Fr are related by

$$Fr = k\theta$$

where the spring rate k is given by

$$k = \frac{d^4 E}{64DN}$$

where k has units of N•m/rad and θ is in radians.

Spring Material: The strength of the spring wire may be found as shown in the section on linear springs. The allowable stress σ is then given by

$$S_y = \sigma = 0.78S_{ut} \text{ cold-drawn carbon steel (A227, A228, A229)}$$

$$S_y = \sigma = 0.87S_{ut} \text{ hardened and tempered carbon and low-alloy steel (A232, A401)}$$

Bearings

Ball/Roller Bearing Selection

The minimum required *basic load rating* (load for which 90% of the bearings from a given population will survive 1 million revolutions) is given by

$$C = PL^{1/a}, \text{ where}$$

C = minimum required basic load rating

P = design radial load

L = design life (in millions of revolutions)

a = 3 for ball bearings, 10/3 for roller bearings

When a ball bearing is subjected to both radial and axial loads, an equivalent radial load must be used in the equation above.

The equivalent radial load is

$$P_{eq} = XVF_r + YF_a, \text{ where}$$

P_{eq} = equivalent radial load

F_r = applied constant radial load

F_a = applied constant axial (thrust) load

For radial contact, deep-groove ball bearings:

V = 1 if inner ring rotating, 1.2 if outer ring rotating,

If $F_a/(VF_r) > e$,

$$X = 0.56, \text{ and } Y = 0.840 \left(\frac{F_a}{C_0} \right)^{-0.247}$$

$$\text{where } e = 0.513 \left(\frac{F_a}{C_0} \right)^{0.236}$$

C_0 = basic static load rating from bearing catalog

If $F_a/(VF_r) \leq e$, $X = 1$ and $Y = 0$.

Power Screws

Square Thread Power Screws: The torque required to raise, T_R , or to lower, T_L , a load is given by

$$T_R = \frac{Fd_m}{2} \left(\frac{l + \pi\mu d_m}{\pi d_m - \mu l} \right) + \frac{F\mu_c d_c}{2}$$

$$T_L = \frac{Fd_m}{2} \left(\frac{\pi\mu d_m - l}{\pi d_m + \mu l} \right) + \frac{F\mu_c d_c}{2}, \text{ where}$$

d_c = mean collar diameter

d_m = mean thread diameter

l = lead

F = load

μ = coefficient of friction for thread

μ_c = coefficient of friction for collar

The efficiency of a power screw may be expressed as

$$\eta = Fl/(2\pi T)$$

Power Transmission

Shafts and Axles

Static Loading: The maximum shear stress and the von Mises stress may be calculated in terms of the loads from

$$\tau_{\max} = \frac{2}{\pi d^3} \left[(8M + Fd)^2 + (8T)^2 \right]^{1/2},$$

$$\sigma' = \frac{4}{\pi d^3} \left[(8M + Fd)^2 + 48T^2 \right]^{1/2}, \text{ where}$$

M = the bending moment

F = the axial load

T = the torque

d = the diameter

Fatigue Loading: Using the maximum-shear-stress theory combined with the Soderberg line for fatigue, the diameter and safety factor are related by

$$\frac{\pi d^3}{32} = n \left[\left(\frac{M_m}{S_y} + \frac{K_f M_a}{S_e} \right)^2 + \left(\frac{T_m}{S_y} + \frac{K_{fs} T_a}{S_e} \right)^2 \right]^{1/2}$$

where

d = diameter

n = safety factor

M_a = alternating moment

M_m = mean moment

T_a = alternating torque

T_m = mean torque

S_e = fatigue limit

S_y = yield strength

K_f = fatigue strength reduction factor

K_{fs} = fatigue strength reduction factor for shear

Gearing

Involute Gear Tooth Nomenclature

Circular pitch $p_c = \pi d/N$

Base pitch $p_b = p_c \cos \phi$

Module $m = d/N$

Center distance $C = (d_1 + d_2)/2$

where

N = number of teeth on pinion or gear

d = pitch circle diameter

ϕ = pressure angle

Gear Trains: Velocity ratio, m_v , is the ratio of the output velocity to the input velocity. Thus, $m_v = \omega_{\text{out}}/\omega_{\text{in}}$. For a two-gear train, $m_v = -N_{\text{in}}/N_{\text{out}}$ where N_{in} is the number of teeth on the input gear and N_{out} is the number of teeth on the output gear. The negative sign indicates that the output gear rotates in the opposite sense with respect to the input gear. In a *compound gear train*, at least one shaft carries more than one gear (rotating at the same speed). The velocity ratio for a compound train is:

$$m_v = \pm \frac{\text{product of number of teeth on driver gears}}{\text{product of number of teeth on driven gears}}$$

A simple planetary gearset has a sun gear, an arm that rotates about the sun gear axis, one or more gears (planets) that rotate about a point on the arm, and a ring (internal) gear that is concentric with the sun gear. The planet gear(s) mesh with the sun gear on one side and with the ring gear on the other. A planetary gearset has two independent inputs and one output (or two outputs and one input, as in a differential gearset).

Often one of the inputs is zero, which is achieved by grounding either the sun or the ring gear. The velocities in a planetary set are related by

$$\frac{\omega_L - \omega_{\text{arm}}}{\omega_f - \omega_{\text{arm}}} = \pm m_v, \text{ where}$$

ω_f = speed of the first gear in the train

ω_L = speed of the last gear in the train

ω_{arm} = speed of the arm

Neither the first nor the last gear can be one that has planetary motion. In determining m_v , it is helpful to invert the mechanism by grounding the arm and releasing any gears that are grounded.

Dynamics of Mechanisms

Gearing

Loading on Straight Spur Gears: The load, W , on straight spur gears is transmitted along a plane that, in edge view, is called the *line of action*. This line makes an angle with a tangent line to the pitch circle that is called the *pressure angle* ϕ . Thus, the contact force has two components: one in the tangential direction, W_t , and one in the radial direction, W_r . These components are related to the pressure angle by

$$W_r = W_t \tan(\phi).$$

Only the tangential component W_t transmits torque from one gear to another. Neglecting friction, the transmitted force may be found if either the transmitted torque or power is known:

$$W_t = \frac{2T}{d} = \frac{2T}{mN},$$

$$W_t = \frac{2H}{d\omega} = \frac{2H}{mN\omega}, \text{ where}$$

W_t = transmitted force (newtons)

T = torque on the gear (newton-mm)

d = pitch diameter of the gear (mm)

N = number of teeth on the gear

m = gear module (mm) (same for both gears in mesh)

H = power (kW)

ω = speed of gear (rad/s)

Joining Methods

Threaded Fasteners: The load carried by a bolt in a threaded connection is given by

$$F_b = CP + F_i \quad F_m < 0$$

while the load carried by the members is

$$F_m = (1 - C)P - F_i \quad F_m < 0, \text{ where}$$

C = joint coefficient

$$= k_b / (k_b + k_m)$$

F_b = total bolt load

F_i = bolt preload

F_m = total material load

P = externally applied load

k_b = effective stiffness of the bolt or fastener in the grip

k_m = effective stiffness of the members in the grip

Bolt stiffness may be calculated from

$$k_b = \frac{A_d A_t E}{A_d l_t + A_t l_d}, \text{ where}$$

A_d = major-diameter area

A_t = tensile-stress area

E = modulus of elasticity

l_d = length of unthreaded shank

l_t = length of threaded shank contained within the grip

If all members within the grip are of the same material, *member stiffness* may be obtained from

$$k_m = dEAe^{b(d/l)}, \text{ where}$$

d = bolt diameter

E = modulus of elasticity of members

l = grip length

Coefficients A and b are given in the table below for various joint member materials.

| Material | A | b |
|----------------|---------|---------|
| Steel | 0.78715 | 0.62873 |
| Aluminum | 0.79670 | 0.63816 |
| Copper | 0.79568 | 0.63553 |
| Gray cast iron | 0.77871 | 0.61616 |

The approximate tightening torque required for a given preload F_i and for a steel bolt in a steel member is given by $T = 0.2 F_i d$.

Threaded Fasteners – Design Factors: The bolt load factor is

$$n_b = (S_p A_t - F_i) / CP, \text{ where}$$

S_p = proof strength

The factor of safety guarding against joint separation is

$$n_s = F_i / [P(1 - C)]$$

Threaded Fasteners – Fatigue Loading: If the externally applied load varies between zero and P , the alternating stress is

$$\sigma_a = CP/(2A_t)$$

and the mean stress is

$$\sigma_m = \sigma_a + F_i/A_t$$

Bolted and Riveted Joints Loaded in Shear:

Failure by Pure Shear

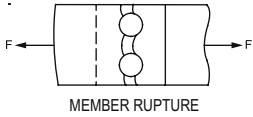


$$\tau = F/A, \text{ where}$$

F = shear load

A = cross-sectional area of bolt or rivet

Failure by Rupture

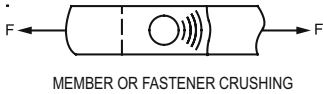


$$\sigma = F/A, \text{ where}$$

F = load

A = net cross-sectional area of thinnest member

Failure by Crushing of Rivet or Member

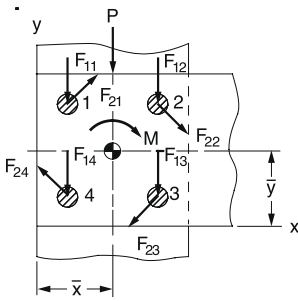


$$\sigma = F/A, \text{ where}$$

F = load

A = projected area of a single rivet

Fastener Groups in Shear



The location of the centroid of a fastener group with respect to any convenient coordinate frame is:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n A_i x_i}{\sum_{i=1}^n A_i}, \quad \bar{y} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n A_i y_i}{\sum_{i=1}^n A_i}, \text{ where}$$

n = total number of fasteners

i = the index number of a particular fastener

A_i = cross-sectional area of the i th fastener

x_i = x -coordinate of the center of the i th fastener

y_i = y -coordinate of the center of the i th fastener

The total shear force on a fastener is the **vector** sum of the force due to direct shear P and the force due to the moment M acting on the group at its centroid.

The magnitude of the direct shear force due to P is

$$|F_{1i}| = \frac{P}{n}.$$

This force acts in the same direction as P .

The magnitude of the shear force due to M is

$$|F_{2i}| = \frac{M r_i}{\sum_{i=1}^n r_i^2}.$$

This force acts perpendicular to a line drawn from the group centroid to the center of a particular fastener. Its sense is such that its moment is in the same direction (CW or CCW) as M .

Press/Shrink Fits

The interface pressure induced by a press/shrink fit is

$$p = \frac{0.5\delta}{\frac{r}{E_o} \left(\frac{r_o^2 + r^2}{r_o^2 - r^2} + \nu_o \right) + \frac{r}{E_i} \left(\frac{r^2 + r_i^2}{r^2 - r_i^2} - \nu_i \right)}$$

where the subscripts i and o stand for the inner and outer member, respectively, and

p = inside pressure on the outer member and outside pressure on the inner member

δ = the diametral interference

r = nominal interference radius

r_i = inside radius of inner member

r_o = outside radius of outer member

E = Young's modulus of respective member

ν = Poisson's ratio of respective member

The *maximum torque* that can be transmitted by a press fit joint is approximately

$$T = 2\pi r^2 \mu p l,$$

where r and p are defined above,

T = torque capacity of the joint

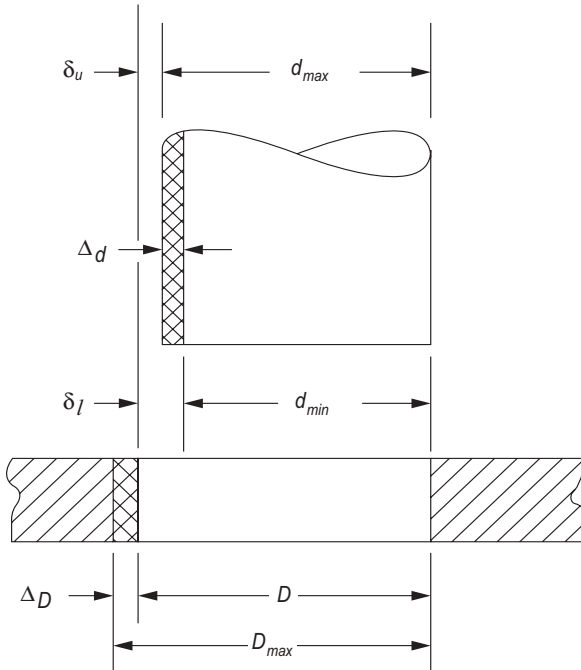
μ = coefficient of friction at the interface

l = length of hub engagement

MANUFACTURABILITY

Limits and Fits

The designer is free to adopt any geometry of fit for shafts and holes that will ensure intended function. Over time, sufficient experience with common situations has resulted in the development of a standard. The metric version of the standard is newer and will be presented. The standard specifies that uppercase letters always refer to the hole, while lowercase letters always refer to the shaft.



Definitions

Basic Size or nominal size, D or d , is the size to which the limits or deviations are applied. It is the same for both components.

Deviation is the algebraic difference between the actual size and the corresponding basic size.

Upper Deviation, δ_u , is the algebraic difference between the maximum limit and the corresponding basic size.

Lower Deviation, δ_l , is the algebraic difference between the minimum limit and the corresponding basic size.

Fundamental Deviation, δ_F , is the upper or lower deviation, depending on which is closer to the basic size.

Tolerance, Δ_D or Δ_d , is the difference between the maximum and minimum size limits of a part.

International tolerance (IT) grade numbers designate groups of tolerances such that the tolerance for a particular IT number will have the same relative accuracy for a basic size.

Hole basis represents a system of fits corresponding to a basic hole size. The fundamental deviation is H.

Some Preferred Fits

| Clearance | |
|--|---------|
| <i>Free running fit:</i> not used where accuracy is essential but good for large temperature variations, high running speeds, or heavy journal loads. | H9/d9 |
| <i>Sliding fit:</i> where parts are not intended to run freely but must move and turn freely and locate accurately. | H7/g6 |
| <i>Locational clearance fit:</i> provides snug fit for location of stationary parts, but can be freely assembled and disassembled. | H7/h6 |
| <i>Loose running fit:</i> for wide commercial tolerances or allowances on external members | H11/c11 |
| <i>Close running fit:</i> for running on accurate machines and for accurate location at moderate speeds and journal pressures | H8/f7 |
| Transition | |
| <i>Locational transition fit:</i> for accurate location, a compromise between clearance and interference | H7/k6 |
| <i>Locational transition fit:</i> for more accurate location where greater interface is permissible | H7/n6 |
| Interference | |
| <i>Location interference fit:</i> for parts requiring rigidity and alignment with prime accuracy of location but without special bore pressure requirements. | H7/p6 |
| <i>Medium drive fit:</i> for ordinary steel parts or shrink fits on light sections. The tightest fit usable on cast iron. | H7/s6 |
| <i>Force fit:</i> suitable for parts which can be highly stressed or for shrink fits where the heavy pressing forces required are impractical. | H7/u6 |

For the hole

$$D_{\max} = D + \Delta_D$$

$$D_{\min} = D$$

For a shaft with clearance fits d , g , h , c , or f

$$d_{\max} = d + \delta_F$$

$$d_{\min} = d_{\max} - \Delta_d$$

For a shaft with transition or interference fits k , p , s , u , or n

$$d_{\min} = d + \delta_F$$

$$d_{\max} = d_{\min} + \Delta_d$$

where

D = basic size of hole

d = basic size of shaft

δ_u = upper deviation

δ_l = lower deviation

δ_F = fundamental deviation

Δ_D = tolerance grade for hole

Δ_d = tolerance grade for shaft

International Tolerance (IT) Grades

Lower limit < Basic Size ≤ Upper Limit
All values in mm

| Basic Size | Tolerance Grade, (Δ_D or Δ_d) | | |
|------------|---|-------|-------|
| | IT6 | IT7 | IT9 |
| 0–3 | 0.006 | 0.010 | 0.025 |
| 3–6 | 0.008 | 0.012 | 0.030 |
| 6–10 | 0.009 | 0.015 | 0.036 |
| 10–18 | 0.011 | 0.018 | 0.043 |
| 18–30 | 0.013 | 0.021 | 0.052 |
| 30–50 | 0.016 | 0.025 | 0.062 |

Source: Preferred Metric Limits and Fits, ANSI B4.2-1978

Deviations for shafts

Lower limit < Basic Size ≤ Upper Limit
All values in mm

| Basic Size | Upper Deviation Letter, (δ_u) | | | | | Lower Deviation Letter, (δ_l) | | | | |
|------------|--|--------|--------|--------|---|--|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | c | d | f | g | h | k | n | p | s | u |
| 0–3 | -0.060 | -0.020 | -0.006 | -0.002 | 0 | 0 | +0.004 | +0.006 | +0.014 | +0.018 |
| 3–6 | -0.070 | -0.030 | -0.010 | -0.004 | 0 | +0.001 | +0.008 | +0.012 | +0.019 | +0.023 |
| 6–10 | -0.080 | -0.040 | -0.013 | -0.005 | 0 | +0.001 | +0.010 | +0.015 | +0.023 | +0.028 |
| 10–14 | -0.095 | -0.050 | -0.016 | -0.006 | 0 | +0.001 | +0.012 | +0.018 | +0.028 | +0.033 |
| 14–18 | -0.095 | -0.050 | -0.016 | -0.006 | 0 | +0.001 | +0.012 | +0.018 | +0.028 | +0.033 |
| 18–24 | -0.110 | -0.065 | -0.020 | -0.007 | 0 | +0.002 | +0.015 | +0.022 | +0.035 | +0.041 |
| 24–30 | -0.110 | -0.065 | -0.020 | -0.007 | 0 | +0.002 | +0.015 | +0.022 | +0.035 | +0.048 |
| 30–40 | -0.120 | -0.080 | -0.025 | -0.009 | 0 | +0.002 | +0.017 | +0.026 | +0.043 | +0.060 |
| 40–50 | -0.130 | -0.080 | -0.025 | -0.009 | 0 | +0.002 | +0.017 | +0.026 | +0.043 | +0.070 |

Source: ASME B4.2:2009

As an example, 34H7/s6 denotes a basic size of $D = d = 34$ mm, an IT class of 7 for the hole, and an IT class of 6 and an "s" fit class for the shaft.

Maximum Material Condition (MMC)

The maximum material condition defines the dimension of a part such that the part weighs the most. The MMC of a shaft is at the maximum size of the shaft while the MMC of a hole is at the minimum size of the hole.

Least Material Condition (LMC)

The least material condition or minimum material condition defines the dimensions of a part such that the part weighs the least. The LMC of a shaft is the minimum size of the shaft while the LMC of a hole is at the maximum size of the hole.

Intermediate- and Long-Length Columns

For both intermediate and long columns, the effective column length depends on the end conditions. The AISI recommended design values for the effective lengths of columns are, for: rounded-rounded or pinned-pinned ends, $l_{eff} = l$; fixed-free, $l_{eff} = 2.1l$; fixed-pinned, $l_{eff} = 0.80l$; fixed-fixed, $l_{eff} = 0.65l$. The effective column length should be used when calculating the slenderness ratio.

The slenderness ratio of a column is $S_r = l/r$, where l is the length of the column and r is the radius of gyration. The radius of gyration of a column cross-section is, $r = \sqrt{I/A}$ where I is the area moment of inertia and A is the cross-sectional area of the column. A column is considered to be intermediate if its slenderness ratio is less than or equal to $(S_r)_D$, where

$$(S_r)_D = \pi \sqrt{\frac{2E}{S_y}}, \text{ and}$$

E = Young's modulus of respective member
 S_y = yield strength of the column material

For intermediate columns, the critical load is

$$P_{cr} = A \left[S_y - \frac{1}{E} \left(\frac{S_y S_r}{2\pi} \right)^2 \right], \text{ where}$$

P_{cr} = critical buckling load

A = cross-sectional area of the column

S_y = yield strength of the column material

E = Young's modulus of respective member

S_r = slenderness ratio

For long columns, the critical load is

$$P_{cr} = \frac{\pi^2 EA}{S_r^2}$$

where the variables are as defined above.

STATIC LOADING FAILURE THEORIES

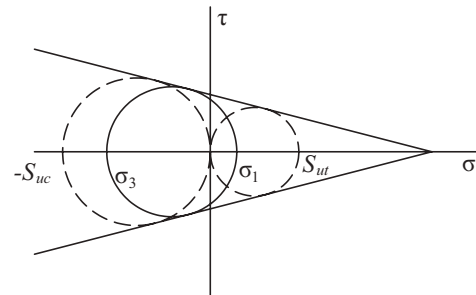
Brittle Materials

Maximum-Normal-Stress Theory

The maximum-normal-stress theory states that failure occurs when one of the three principal stresses equals the strength of the material. If $\sigma_1 \geq \sigma_2 \geq \sigma_3$, then the theory predicts that failure occurs whenever $\sigma_1 \geq S_{ut}$ or $\sigma_3 \leq -S_{uc}$ where S_{ut} and S_{uc} are the tensile and compressive strengths, respectively.

Coulomb-Mohr Theory

The Coulomb-Mohr theory is based upon the results of tensile and compression tests. On the σ, τ coordinate system, one circle is plotted for S_{ut} and one for S_{uc} . As shown in the figure, lines are then drawn tangent to these circles. The Coulomb-Mohr theory then states that fracture will occur for any stress situation that produces a circle that is either tangent to or crosses the envelope defined by the lines tangent to the S_{ut} and S_{uc} circles.



If $\sigma_1 \geq \sigma_2 \geq \sigma_3$ and $\sigma_3 < 0$, then the theory predicts that yielding will occur whenever

$$\frac{\sigma_1}{S_{ut}} - \frac{\sigma_3}{S_{uc}} \geq 1$$

Ductile Materials

Maximum-Shear-Stress Theory

The maximum-shear-stress theory states that yielding begins when the maximum shear stress equals the maximum shear stress in a tension-test specimen of the same material when that specimen begins to yield. If $\sigma_1 \geq \sigma_2 \geq \sigma_3$, then the theory predicts that yielding will occur whenever $\tau_{\max} \geq S_y/2$ where S_y is the yield strength.

$$\tau_{\max} = \frac{\sigma_1 - \sigma_3}{2}$$

Distortion-Energy Theory

The distortion-energy theory states that yielding begins whenever the distortion energy in a unit volume equals the distortion energy in the same volume when uniaxially stressed to the yield strength. The theory predicts that yielding will occur whenever

$$\left[\frac{(\sigma_1 - \sigma_2)^2 + (\sigma_2 - \sigma_3)^2 + (\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)^2}{2} \right]^{1/2} \geq S_y$$

The term on the left side of the inequality is known as the effective or Von Mises stress. For a biaxial stress state the effective stress becomes

$$\sigma' = (\sigma_A^2 - \sigma_A \sigma_B + \sigma_B^2)^{1/2}$$

or

$$\sigma' = (\sigma_x^2 - \sigma_x \sigma_y + \sigma_y^2 + 3\tau_{xy}^2)^{1/2}$$

where σ_A and σ_B are the two nonzero principal stresses and σ_x , σ_y , and τ_{xy} are the stresses in orthogonal directions.

VARIABLE LOADING FAILURE THEORIES

Modified Goodman Theory: The modified Goodman criterion states that a fatigue failure will occur whenever

$$\frac{\sigma_a}{S_e} + \frac{\sigma_m}{S_{ut}} \geq 1 \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\sigma_{\max}}{S_y} \geq 1, \quad \sigma_m \geq 0,$$

where

S_e = fatigue strength

S_{ut} = ultimate strength

S_y = yield strength

σ_a = alternating stress

σ_m = mean stress

$\sigma_{\max} = \sigma_m + \sigma_a$

Soderberg Theory: The Soderberg theory states that a fatigue failure will occur whenever

$$\frac{\sigma_a}{S_e} + \frac{\sigma_m}{S_y} \geq 1 \quad \sigma_m \geq 0$$

Endurance Limit for Steels: When test data is unavailable, the endurance limit for steels may be estimated as

$$S'_e = \begin{cases} 0.5 S_{ut}, S_{ut} \leq 1,400 \text{ MPa} \\ 700 \text{ MPa}, S_{ut} > 1,400 \text{ MPa} \end{cases}$$

Endurance Limit Modifying Factors: Endurance limit modifying factors are used to account for the differences between the endurance limit as determined from a rotating beam test, S'_e , and that which would result in the real part, S_e .

$$S_e = k_a k_b k_c k_d k_e S'_e$$

where

Surface Factor, $k_a = aS_{ut}^b$

| Surface Finish | Factor a | | Exponent b |
|----------------|------------|-------|--------------|
| | kpsi | MPa | |
| Ground | 1.34 | 1.58 | -0.085 |
| Machined or CD | 2.70 | 4.51 | -0.265 |
| Hot rolled | 14.4 | 57.7 | -0.718 |
| As forged | 39.9 | 272.0 | -0.995 |

Size Factor, k_b :

For bending and torsion:

$$d \leq 8 \text{ mm}; \quad k_b = 1$$

$$8 \text{ mm} \leq d \leq 250 \text{ mm}; \quad k_b = 1.189d_{\text{eff}}^{-0.097}$$

$$d > 250 \text{ mm}; \quad 0.6 \leq k_b \leq 0.75$$

For axial loading: $k_b = 1$

Load Factor, k_c :

$k_c = 0.923$ axial loading, $S_{ut} \leq 1,520 \text{ MPa}$

$k_c = 1$ axial loading, $S_{ut} > 1,520 \text{ MPa}$

$k_c = 1$ bending

$k_c = 0.577$ torsion

Temperature Factor, k_d :

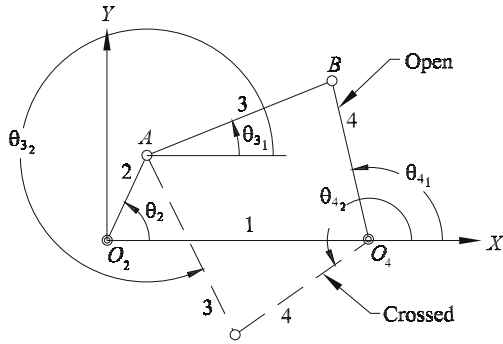
for $T \leq 450^\circ\text{C}$, $k_d = 1$

Miscellaneous Effects Factor, k_e : Used to account for strength reduction effects such as corrosion, plating, and residual stresses. In the absence of known effects, use $k_e = 1$.

KINEMATICS, DYNAMICS, AND VIBRATIONS

Kinematics of Mechanisms

Four-Bar Linkage



The four-bar linkage shown above consists of a reference (usually grounded) link (1), a crank (input) link (2), a coupler link (3), and an output link (4). Links 2 and 4 rotate about the fixed pivots O_2 and O_4 , respectively. Link 3 is joined to link 2 at the moving pivot A and to link 4 at the moving pivot B . The lengths of links 2, 3, 4, and 1 are a , b , c , and d , respectively.

Taking link 1 (ground) as the reference (X -axis), the angles that links 2, 3, and 4 make with the axis are θ_2 , θ_3 , and θ_4 , respectively. It is possible to assemble a four-bar in two different configurations for a given position of the input link (2). These are known as the "open" and "crossed" positions or circuits.

Position Analysis. Given a , b , c , and d , and θ_2

$$\theta_{4,2} = 2 \arctan \left(\frac{-B \pm \sqrt{B^2 - 4AC}}{2A} \right)$$

where $A = \cos \theta_2 - K_1 - K_2 \cos \theta_2 + K_3$

$$B = -2 \sin \theta_2$$

$$C = K_1 - (K_2 + 1) \cos \theta_2 + K_3$$

$$K_1 = \frac{d}{a}, K_2 = \frac{d}{c}, K_3 = \frac{a^2 - b^2 + c^2 + d^2}{2ac}$$

In the equation for θ_4 , using the minus sign in front of the radical yields the open solution. Using the plus sign yields the crossed solution.

$$\theta_{3,2} = 2 \arctan \left(\frac{-E \pm \sqrt{E^2 - 4DF}}{2D} \right)$$

where $D = \cos \theta_2 - K_1 + K_4 \cos \theta_2 + K_5$

$$E = -2 \sin \theta_2$$

$$F = K_1 + (K_4 - 1) \cos \theta_2 + K_5$$

$$K_4 = \frac{d}{b}, K_5 = \frac{c^2 - d^2 - a^2 - b^2}{2ab}$$

In the equation for θ_3 , using the minus sign in front of the radical yields the open solution. Using the plus sign yields the crossed solution.

Velocity Analysis. Given a , b , c , and d , θ_2 , θ_3 , θ_4 , and ω_2

$$\omega_3 = \frac{a\omega_2 \sin(\theta_4 - \theta_2)}{b \sin(\theta_3 - \theta_4)}$$

$$\omega_4 = \frac{a\omega_2 \sin(\theta_2 - \theta_3)}{c \sin(\theta_4 - \theta_3)}$$

$$V_{Ax} = -a\omega_2 \sin \theta_2, \quad V_{Ay} = a\omega_2 \cos \theta_2$$

$$V_{BAx} = -b\omega_3 \sin \theta_3, \quad V_{BAy} = b\omega_3 \cos \theta_3$$

$$V_{Bx} = -c\omega_4 \sin \theta_4, \quad V_{By} = c\omega_4 \cos \theta_4$$

Acceleration Analysis. Given a , b , c , and d , θ_2 , θ_3 , θ_4 , and ω_2 , ω_3 , ω_4 , and α_2

$$\alpha_3 = \frac{CD - AF}{AE - BD}, \quad \alpha_4 = \frac{CE - BF}{AE - BD}, \text{ where}$$

$$A = c \sin \theta_4, B = b \sin \theta_3$$

$$C = a\alpha_2 \sin \theta_2 + a\omega_2^2 \cos \theta_2 + b\omega_3^2 \cos \theta_3 - c\omega_4^2 \cos \theta_4$$

$$D = c \cos \theta_4, E = b \cos \theta_3$$

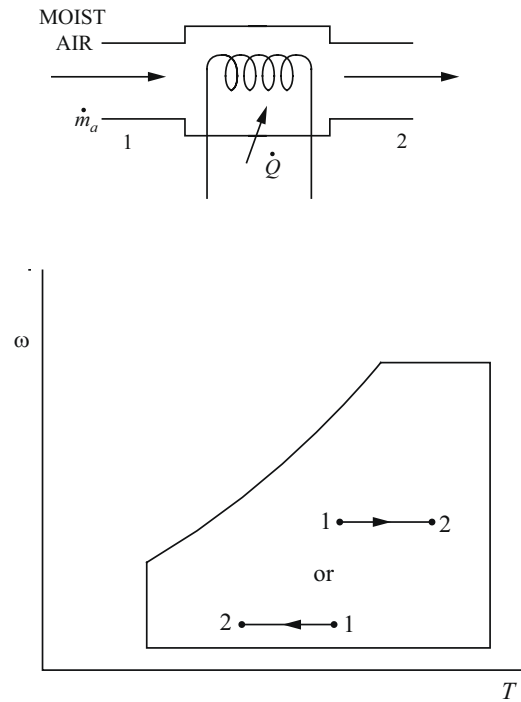
$$F = a\alpha_2 \cos \theta_2 - a\omega_2^2 \sin \theta_2 - b\omega_3^2 \sin \theta_3 + c\omega_4^2 \sin \theta_4$$

HVAC

Nomenclature

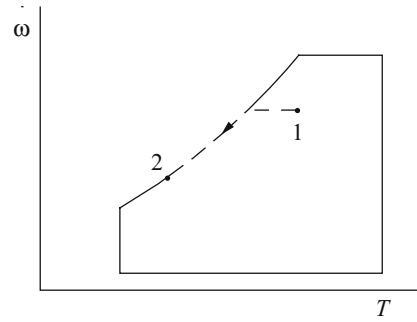
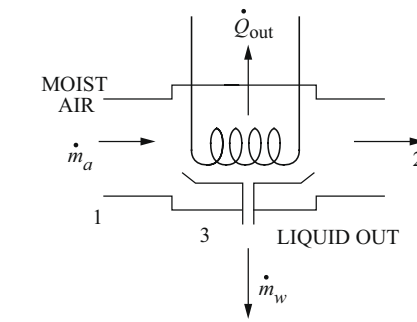
- h = specific enthalpy
- h_f = specific enthalpy of saturated liquid
- \dot{m}_a = mass flowrate of dry air
- \dot{m}_w = mass flowrate of water
- \dot{Q} = rate of heat transfer
- T_{wb} = wet bulb temperature
- ω = specific humidity (absolute humidity, humidity ratio)

HVAC—Pure Heating and Cooling



$$\dot{Q} = \dot{m}_a(h_2 - h_1)$$

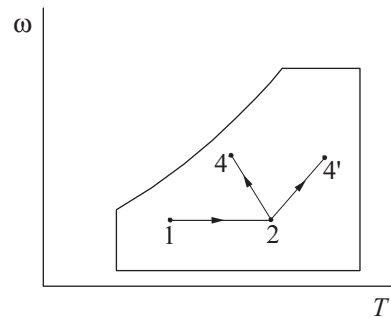
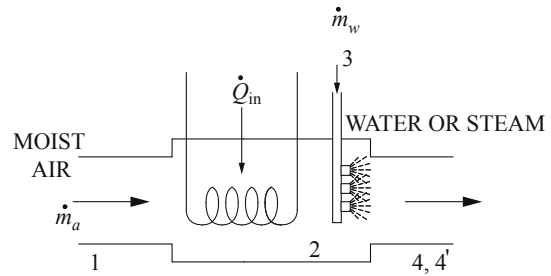
Cooling and Dehumidification



$$\dot{Q}_{out} = \dot{m}_a[(h_1 - h_2) - h_{f3}(\omega_1 - \omega_2)]$$

$$\dot{m}_w = \dot{m}_a(\omega_1 - \omega_2)$$

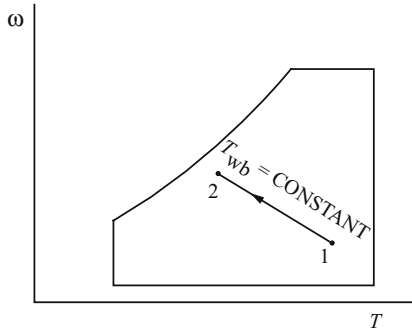
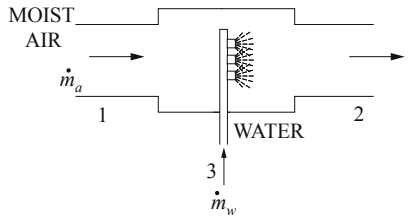
Heating and Humidification



$$\dot{Q}_{in} = \dot{m}_a(h_2 - h_1)$$

$$\dot{m}_w = \dot{m}_a(\omega_{4'} - \omega_2) \text{ or } \dot{m}_w = \dot{m}_a(\omega_4 - \omega_2)$$

Adiabatic Humidification (evaporative cooling)

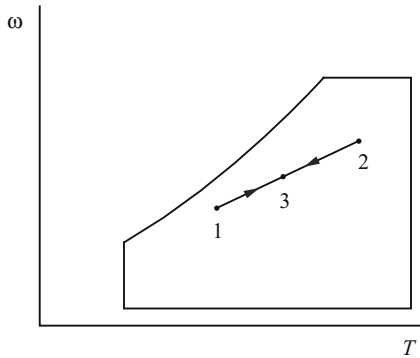
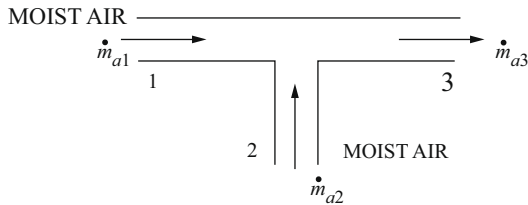


$$h_2 = h_1 + h_3(\omega_2 - \omega_1)$$

$$\dot{m}_w = \dot{m}_a(\omega_2 - \omega_1)$$

$$h_3 = h_f \text{ at } T_{wb}$$

Adiabatic Mixing



$$\dot{m}_{a3} = \dot{m}_{a1} + \dot{m}_{a2}$$

$$h_3 = \frac{\dot{m}_{a1}h_1 + \dot{m}_{a2}h_2}{\dot{m}_{a3}}$$

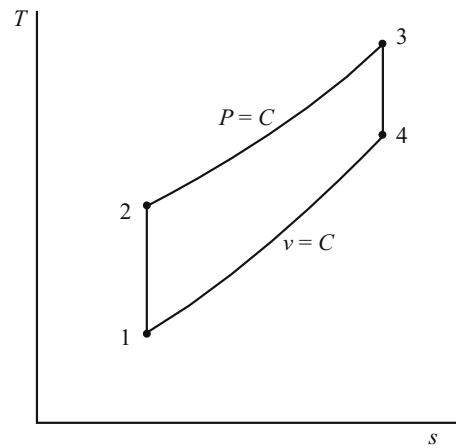
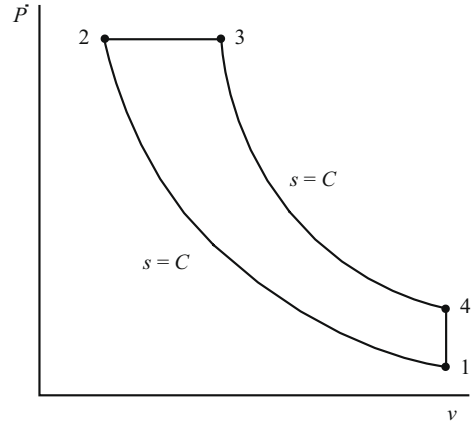
$$\omega_3 = \frac{\dot{m}_{a1}\omega_1 + \dot{m}_{a2}\omega_2}{\dot{m}_{a3}}$$

distance $\overline{13} = \frac{\dot{m}_{a2}}{\dot{m}_{a3}} \times \text{distance } \overline{12}$ measured on psychrometric chart

Cycles and Processes

Internal Combustion Engines

Diesel Cycle



$$r = V_1/V_2$$

$$r_c = V_3/V_2$$

$$\eta = 1 - \frac{1}{r^{k-1}} \left[\frac{r_c^k - 1}{k(r_c - 1)} \right]$$

$$k = c_p/c_v$$

Brake Power

$$\dot{W}_b = 2\pi TN = 2\pi FRN, \text{ where}$$

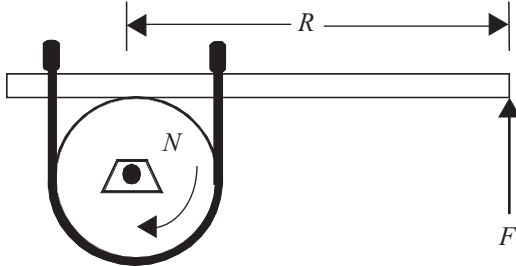
\dot{W}_b = brake power (W)

T = torque (N•m)

N = rotation speed (rev/s)

F = force at end of brake arm (N)

R = length of brake arm (m)



Indicated Power

$$\dot{W}_i = \dot{W}_b + \dot{W}_f, \text{ where}$$

\dot{W}_i = indicated power (W)

\dot{W}_f = friction power (W)

Brake Thermal Efficiency

$$\eta_b = \frac{\dot{W}_b}{\dot{m}_f(HV)}, \text{ where}$$

η_b = brake thermal efficiency

\dot{m}_f = fuel consumption rate (kg/s)

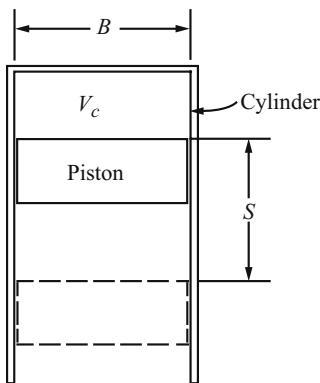
HV = heating value of fuel (J/kg)

Indicated Thermal Efficiency

$$\eta_i = \frac{\dot{W}_i}{\dot{m}_f(HV)}$$

Mechanical Efficiency

$$\eta_i = \frac{\dot{W}_b}{\dot{W}_i} = \frac{\eta_b}{\eta_i}$$



Displacement Volume

$$V_d = \frac{\pi B^2 S}{4}, \text{ m}^3 \text{ for each cylinder}$$

$$\text{Total volume} = V_t = V_d + V_c \text{ (m}^3\text{)}$$

$$V_c = \text{clearance volume (m}^3\text{)}$$

Compression Ratio

$$r_c = V_t/V_c$$

Mean Effective Pressure (mep)

$$mep = \frac{\dot{W}n_s}{V_d n_c N}, \text{ where}$$

n_s = number of crank revolutions per power stroke

n_c = number of cylinders

V_d = displacement volume per cylinder

mep can be based on brake power ($bmep$), indicated power ($imep$), or friction power (fmp).

Volumetric Efficiency

$$\eta_v = \frac{2\dot{m}_a}{\rho_a V_d n_c N} \quad (\text{four-stroke cycles only})$$

where

\dot{m}_a = mass flow rate of air into engine (kg/s)

ρ_a = density of air (kg/m³)

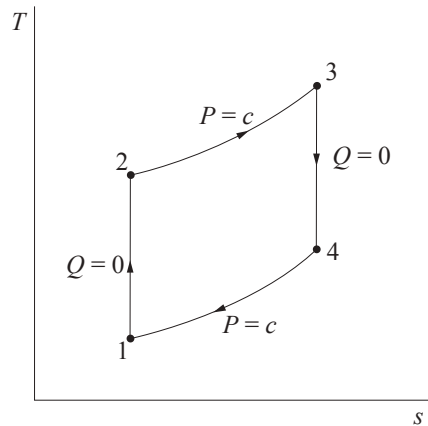
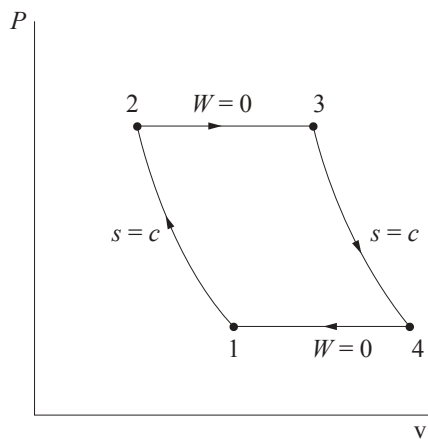
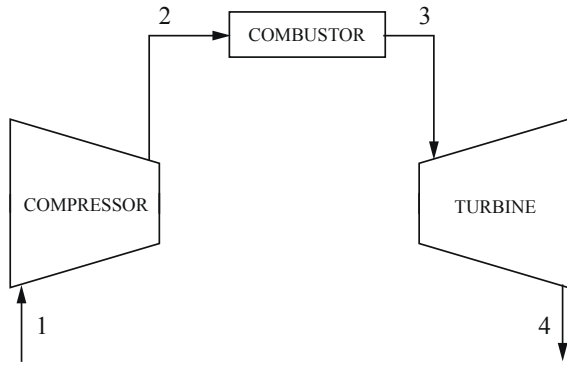
Specific Fuel Consumption (SFC)

$$sfc = \frac{\dot{m}_f}{\dot{W}} = \frac{1}{\eta HV}, \text{ kg/J}$$

Use η_b and \dot{W}_b for $bsfc$ and η_i and \dot{W}_i for $isfc$.

Gas Turbines

Brayton Cycle (Steady-Flow Cycle)



$$w_{12} = h_1 - h_2 = c_p (T_1 - T_2)$$

$$w_{34} = h_3 - h_4 = c_p (T_3 - T_4)$$

$$w_{\text{net}} = w_{12} + w_{34}$$

$$q_{23} = h_3 - h_2 = c_p (T_3 - T_2)$$

$$q_{41} = h_1 - h_4 = c_p (T_1 - T_4)$$

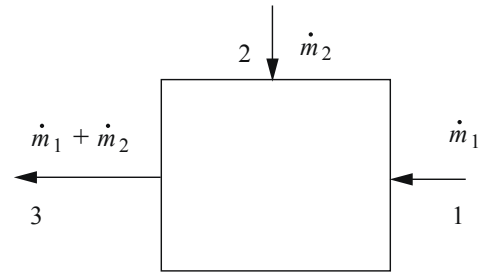
$$q_{\text{net}} = q_{23} + q_{41}$$

$$\eta = w_{\text{net}} / q_{23}$$

Steam Power Plants

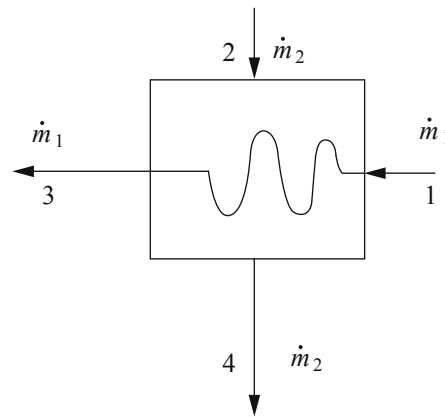
Feedwater Heaters

- Open (mixing)



$$\dot{m}_1 h_1 + \dot{m}_2 h_2 = h_3 (\dot{m}_1 + \dot{m}_2)$$

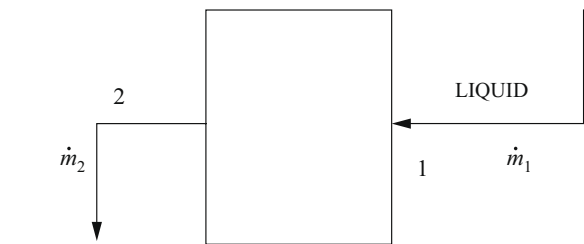
- Closed (no mixing)



$$\dot{m}_1 h_1 + \dot{m}_2 h_2 = \dot{m}_1 h_3 + \dot{m}_2 h_4$$

Steam Trap

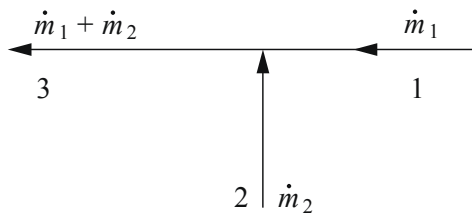
A steam trap removes condensate from steam piping or a heat exchanger.



LIQUID + VAPOR

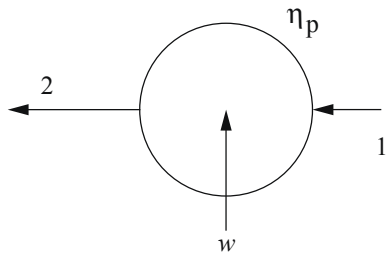
$$h_2 = h_1 \text{ (if adiabatic)}$$

Junction



$$\dot{m}_1 h_1 + \dot{m}_2 h_2 = h_3 (\dot{m}_1 + \dot{m}_2)$$

Pump



$$w = h_1 - h_2 = (h_1 - h_{2S}) / \eta_P$$

$$h_{2S} - h_1 = v(P_2 - P_1)$$

$$w = - \frac{v(P_2 - P_1)}{\eta_P}$$

Symbols

2n factorial design and experiments 236
 χ^2 - distribution 44

A

absorption (packed columns) 148
 ac circuits 207
 acids, bases, and pH 59
 ac machines 209
 ac power 208
 activated carbon adsorption 198
 aerobic digestion 197
 aerodynamics 118
 airfoil theory 118
 air pollution 185
 air stripping 198
 alcohols 61
 aldehydes 61
 algebra of complex numbers 28
 algorithm efficiency 230
 algorithms 231
 amorphous materials 70
 amplitude modulation 214
 anaerobic digestion 197
 analog filter circuits 216
 analog-to-digital conversion 132
 angle modulation 214
 angular momentum or moment of momentum 80
 anion 64
 anode 64
 anode reaction (oxidation) of a typical metal, M 65
 ANOVA table 46, 47
 approximations 57
 aqueous solutions 59
 area formulas 182
 arithmetic progression 35
 associative law 42
 ASTM grain size 68
 atmospheric dispersion modeling 185
 atomic bonding 65
 atomic number 59
 average and range charts 57
 average value 207
 Avogadro's number 59

B

baghouse 189
 balanced three-phase systems 209
 basic cycles 95
 basic freeway segment highway capacity 176
 basic heat transfer rate equations 122
 batch reactor, constant volume 144
 batch reactor, variable volume 145
 Bayes' theorem 43
 beams 87, 163
 beams--flexure 160
 beams--shear 160

beam stiffness and moment carryover 158
 bearings 244
 belt friction 73
 benefit-cost analysis 137
 binary number system 224
 binary phase diagrams 71
 binomial distribution 44
 biomechanics of the human body 25
 biotower 197
 boiling 124
 boiling point elevation 59
 bonds 137
 book value 137
 break-even analysis 136
 break-through time for leachate to penetrate a clay liner 192
 brittle materials 248

C

capacitors and inductors 206
 capacitors and inductors in parallel and series 207
 capitalized costs 137
 carboxylic acids 61
 carcinogens 19
 Cartesian coordinates 77
 catalyst 59
 cathode 64
 cation 64
 centroids and moments of inertia 35
 centroids of masses, areas, lengths, and volumes 72
 chemical reaction engineering 144
 chemical reaction equilibrium 98
 circular pipe head loss equation 174
 circular sector 30
 circular segment 30
 Clapeyron equation 98
 clarifier 199
 Clausius' statement of second law 96
 closed-system exergy (availability) 96
 closed thermodynamic system 94
 codes of ethics 3
 columns 88, 163
 combustion processes 97
 common mode rejection ratio 218
 common thermodynamic cycles 104
 communication theory and concepts 212
 complex power 208
 composite materials 68
 composite sections 88
 computer networking 225
 computer systems 229
 concentrations of vaporized liquids 23
 concept of weight 79
 concrete 70
 concurrent forces 73
 conduction 122
 conduction through a cylindrical wall 122
 conduction through a plane wall 122

confidence interval for intercept 45
 confidence interval for slope 45
 confidence intervals, sample distributions and sample size 49
 confined space safety 17
 conic section equation 32
 conic sections 31
 conservation of angular momentum 83
 constant acceleration 78
 construction 183
 control systems 132
 convection 122, 123, 146
 conversion 98
 conversion factors 2
 convolution 212
 corrosion 65
 cost estimation 150
 CPM precedence relationships 183
 critical path method 238
 cumulative distribution functions 43
 current 205
 cycles 105
 cycles and processes 252
 cyclone 188
 cylindrical pressure vessel 85

D

Darcy's law 171
 data structures 231
 dc machines 209
 decibels and Bode plots 213
 deflection of beams 88
 delays in computer networks 227
 De Morgan's law 42
 De Morgan's theorems 224
 depreciation 137
 derivatives and indefinite integrals 34
 design column strength, tied columns 161
 design of reinforced concrete components (ACI 318-11) 159
 design of steel components (ANSI/AISC 360-10) 163
 determinants 40
 deviations for shafts 248
 difference equations 41, 211
 differential amplifier 219
 differential calculus 32
 differential equations 35
 diffusion 65, 146
 diffusion coefficient 65
 digital signal processing 212
 dimensional homogeneity 117
 directed graphs, or digraphs, of relation 27
 discrete math 27
 disinfection 202
 dispersion, mean, median, and mode values 42
 distillation 147
 distributive law 42
 dose-response curves 18
 double-sideband modulation 214
 dual linear program 234
 ductile materials 249

Dupuit's formula 171
 dynamics of mechanisms 245

E

earned-value analysis 184
 earthwork formulas 182
 effective half-life 193
 effective or rms values 207
 effect of overburden pressure 192
 elastic stain energy 88
 electrical safety 18
 electrical units 205
 electrochemistry 64
 electromagnetic dynamic fields 211
 electrostatic fields 205
 electrostatic precipitator efficiency 189
 electrostatics 205
 ellipse 29
 endian-ness 230
 endurance limit for steels 249
 endurance limit modifying factors 249
 engineering economics definitions 136
 engineering strain 85
 entropy 96
 equations of state (EOS) 93
 equilibrium constant of a chemical reaction 59
 equilibrium requirements 72
 ergonomics 24
 ergonomics--hearing 241
 error coding 227
 essential prime implicant 225
 ethers 61
 ethics 3
 Euler's approximation 41
 Euler's identity 28
 exergy (availability) 96
 expected values 43
 exponentially weighted moving average 236
 external flow 123

F

facility planning 237
 facultative pond 197
 Faraday's law 59
 fate and transport 190
 film condensation of a pure vapor 125
 filtration equations 200
 finite queue 235
 finite state machine 27
 fins 123
 fire hydrant discharging to atmosphere 174
 fire sprinkler discharge 174
 first law of thermodynamics 93
 first-order linear difference equation 41, 211
 first-order linear homogeneous differential equations
 with constant coefficients 36
 first-order linear nonhomogeneous differential
 equations 36
 flammability 16

flat bars or angles, bolted or welded 164
 flip-flops 225
 flow chart definition 232
 flow nets 152
 flow reactors, steady state 145
 force 72
 forecasting 184, 236
 formula for calculating rated capacity at 20 psi from fire hydrant 174
 Fourier series 37
 Fourier transform 36
 Fourier transform and its inverse 212
 Fourier transform pairs 38
 Fourier transform theorems 38
 frame deflection by unit load method 158
 free vibration 83
 freezing point depression 59
 frequency modulation 215
 frequency response and impulse response 213
 friction 73, 81
 fundamental constants 1
 fundamental relationships 235

G

gamma function 44
 gas flux 193
 gauge factor (GF) 130
 geometric progression 35
 geotechnical 152
 Gibbs free energy 96
 Gibbs phase rule 98
 Globally Harmonized System (GHS) of Classification 12
 granular storage and process safety 17
 gravity model 177
 Greenshields model 177

H

half-life 193
 hazard assessments 12
 hazard communication standard (HCS) 15
 Hazardous Waste Compatibility Chart 20
 Hazen-Williams equation 112, 174
 heat exchangers 126
 heats of reaction 96
 heats of reaction, solution, formation, and combustion 59
 Helmholtz free energy 96
 highway pavement design 179
 hollow, thin-walled shafts 87
 Hooke's law 86
 horizontal curve formulas 181
 horizontal stress profiles and forces 155
 HVAC 251
 hydraulic elements graph 172
 hydraulic jump 173
 hydraulic residence time 196
 hydrology/water resources 171
 hypothesis testing 45

I

ideal gas constants 1
 ideal gas mixtures 93
 ideal-impulse sampling 215
 impact test 69
 impulse and momentum 80
 incidence variable values 26
 incineration 189
 indices 184
 induced voltage 205
 inflation 137
 integral calculus 33
 intellectual property 10
 interaction effects 236
 interest rate tables 139
 intermediate- and long-length columns 248
 internal flow 124
 international tolerance grades 248
 inventory models 237
 inverse transform method 236
 iron-iron carbide phase diagram 71
 irreversibility 96
 iterative 231

J

job safety analysis 11
 job sequencing 238
 joining methods 245

K

Kelvin-Planck statement of second law 96
 ketones 61
 key equations 233
 kiln formula 189
 kinematics, dynamics, and vibrations 250
 kinematics of a rigid body 81
 kinematics of mechanisms 250
 kinetic energy 80
 kinetics of a rigid body 82
 Kirchhoff's laws 206
 Kline-McClintock equation 132

L

landfill 192
 Laplace transforms 39
 lateral-torsional buckling 163
 law of compound or joint probability 43
 laws of probability 42
 learning curves 237
 least squares 45
 Le Chatelier's principle for chemical equilibrium 59
 Le Chatelier's Rule 17
 lever rule 71
 L'Hospital's Rule 33
 lime-soda softening equations 200
 limiting reactant 98
 limits and fits 247
 limits for main reinforcements 161
 linear combinations 45

linear programming 234
 linear regression and goodness of fit 45
 line balancing 238
 live load reduction 159
 load combinations using strength design (LRFD, USD) 159
 local area network 227
 logarithms 28
 logic operations and Boolean algebra 224
 logit models 178
 lossless transmission lines 211

M

magnetic fields 205
 Manning's equation 111, 173
 manufacturability 247
 mass calculations 190
 mass moment of inertia 82
 mass transfer 146
 material handling 238
 material properties 89
 matrices 39
 matrix of relation 27
 maximum power-transfer theorem 208
 maxterm 225
 measurement error 44
 measurement uncertainty 45, 132
 mechanical design and analysis 243
 member fixed-end moments (magnitudes) 158
 memory/storage types 229
 mensuration of areas and volumes 29
 microbial kinetics 190
 minimum heat flux 125
 minterm 225
 Model Rules 3
 modified accelerated cost recovery system (MACRS) 137
 Mohr's Circle--Stress, 2D 86
 molality of solutions 59
 molarity of solutions 59
 molar volume of an ideal gas 59
 mole fraction of a substance 59
 moment of inertia 72
 moment of inertia parallel axis theorem 73
 moments (couples) 72
 momentum depth diagram 173
 Moody diagram 120
 moving average 236
 moving concentrated load sets 158
 multicore 230
 multiple server model 235

N

natural (free) convection 126
 Nernst equation 59
 net energy exchange by radiation between two bodies 127
 network optimization 234
 network topologies 228
 Newton's second law for a particle 79

NIOSH formula 24
 noise pollution 26
 non-annual compounding 136
 noncarcinogens 19
 non-constant acceleration 79
 normal and tangential components 78
 normal and tangential kinetics for planar problems 79
 normal distribution (Gaussian distribution) 44
 normality of solutions 59
 NRCS (SCS) rainfall-runoff 171
 number systems and codes 224
 numerical methods 41

O

object oriented 230
 one-dimensional motion of a particle (constant mass) 79
 one-way analysis of variance (ANOVA) 45
 open-channel flow 173
 open-system exergy (availability) 96
 open thermodynamic system 94
 operational amplifiers 218
 oxidation 64

P

parabola 29
 paraboloid of revolution 31
 parallelogram 30
 parallel resonance 208
 Parseval's theorem 213
 particle curvilinear motion 77
 particle kinematics 77
 particle kinetics 79
 particle rectilinear motion 77
 partition coefficients 191
 peak heat flux 125
 peak hour factor (PHF) 175
 people requirements 237
 percent elongation 85
 percent reduction in area (RA) 85
 periodic table of elements 60
 permissible noise exposure 26
 permutations and combinations 42
 pert 239
 phase relations 98
 phasor transforms of sinusoids 207
 pH sensor 131
 pictograms, GHS 13, 14, 15
 piezoelectric transducers 131
 pipeline type 229
 plane circular motion 78
 plane frame 159
 plane motion of a rigid body 81
 plane truss 158
 plane truss: method of joints 73
 plane truss: method of sections 73
 plant location 238
 pointers 230
 polar coordinate system 28
 polymer additives 70
 polymers 70

population modeling 193
 population projection equations 193
 possible cathode reactions (reduction) 65
 potential energy 80
 power absorbed by a resistive element 206
 power and efficiency 80
 power screws 244
 power series 35
 power transmission 244
 pressure sensors 131
 primary bonds 65
 prime implicant 225
 principal stresses 86
 principle of angular impulse and momentum 83
 principle of work and energy 79
 prismoid 30
 probability density function 43
 probability functions, distributions, and expected values 43
 process capability 234
 product of inertia 73
 progressions and series 35
 projectile motion 79
 propagation of error 44
 properties for two-phase (vapor-liquid) systems 92
 properties of materials 65
 properties of series 35
 properties of single-component systems 92
 protocol definitions 227
 psychrometric chart 106, 107
 psychrometrics 95
 pulse-amplitude modulation--natural sampling 215
 pulse-code modulation 215
 PVT behavior 92

Q

quadratic equation 27
 quadric surface (sphere) 27
 queueing models 234

R

radial and transverse components for planar motion 77
 radiation 122, 127, 193
 radius of gyration 73
 randomized complete block design 45
 random variate generation 236
 Raoult's law for vapor-liquid equilibrium 97
 rapid mix and flocculator design 201
 rate-of-return 137
 rate of transfer as a function of gradients at the wall 149
 rational formula 171
 RC and RL transients 208
 real gas 93
 reduction 64
 reference dose 19
 refrigerant diagram 101
 refrigeration and HVAC 105
 regular polygon 30
 relationship between hardness and tensile strength 68
 relative motion 77
 reliability 237

representative values of fracture toughness 68
 residual 45
 resistance factors 160
 resistance temperature detector (RTD) 129
 resistivity 206
 resistors in series and parallel 206
 resolution of a force 72
 resonance 208
 resultant (two dimensions) 72
 reverse osmosis 201
 Reynolds number 110
 right circular cone 30
 right circular cylinder 31
 rigorous vapor-liquid equilibrium 97
 risk 136
 risk assessment/toxicology 18
 roots 28
 Rules of Professional Conduct 3

S

safety 11
 safety data sheet (SDS) 15
 sample correlation coefficient and coefficient of determination 45
 sampled messages 215
 sample size 49
 sampling 132
 sampling and monitoring 194
 screw thread 73
 second law of thermodynamics 96
 second-order linear difference equation 211
 second-order linear homogeneous differential equations with
 constant coefficients 36
 selected properties of air 185
 selected rules of nomenclature in organic chemistry 61
 selectivity 98
 series resonance 208
 servomotors and generators 209
 sets 42
 settling equations 200
 Shannon channel capacity formula 228
 shape factor (view factor, configuration factor) relations 127
 shear 163
 shearing force and bending moment sign conventions 87
 shear stress-strain 85
 short columns 161
 sight distance 175
 signal conditioning 132
 signal words 16
 similitude 117
 simulation 236
 sine-cosine relations and trigonometric identities 207
 single server models 235
 single-sideband modulation 214
 singly-reinforced beams 160
 Soderberg theory 249
 software development 230
 software process flows 231
 software syntax guidelines 232
 soil classification 156
 soil landfill cover water balance 193

solid-state electronics and devices 218
 solubility product 59
 source equivalents 206
 specific energy diagram 173
 sphere 30
 springs 243
 sprinkler K factors 175
 stability, determinacy, and classification of structures 158
 standard deviation charts 57
 standard error of estimate 45
 standard time determination 237
 state functions (properties) 92
 statically determinate truss 73
 static loading failure theories 248
 statistical quality control 57
 steady-flow systems 94
 steam tables 99
 stopping sight distance 175
 straight line 27
 strain gauge 130
 stress and strain 86
 stresses in beams 87
 stress-strain curve for mild steel 85
 structural analysis 158
 structural design 159
 sum of squares of random error 237
 superpave 180
 sweep-through concentration change in a vessel 23
 switching function terminology 225
 systems of forces 72

T

taxation 137
 Taylor's series 35
 Taylor tool life formula 239
 t-distribution 44
 tension members 164
 tests for out of control 57
 test statistics 50
 Theim equation 171
 thermal and mechanical processing 65
 thermal and physical property tables 102
 thermal deformations 85
 thermal properties 70
 thermal resistance (R) 122
 thermocouple (TC) 129
 threading 230
 threshold limit value (TLV) 19
 torsion 87
 torsional strain 87
 torsional vibration 83
 traffic flow relationships 177
 traffic safety equations 178
 transducer 129
 transformers 209
 transient conduction using the lumped capacitance model 123
 transmission algorithms 228
 transportation 175
 transport phenomena--momentum, heat, and mass-transfer
 analogy 149

trigonometry 28
 truss deflection by unit load method 158
 turns ratio 209
 two-port parameters 210
 types of bodies 127

U

ultimate bearing capacity 155
 ultrafiltration 202
 UML definition 232
 uniaxial loading and deformation 85
 uniaxial stress-strain 85
 unified design provisions 160
 units in FE exam 1

V

vapor-liquid equilibrium (VLE) 97, 148
 variable loading failure theories 249
 variances 184
 vectors 40
 vehicle signal change interval 175
 vertical curve formulas 182
 vertical stress profiles 155
 vertical stress profiles with surcharge 155
 V-model 232
 voltage 205

W

wastewater treatment and technologies 196
 water treatment technologies 198
 weir formulas 173
 well drawdown 171
 Wheatstone bridge 131
 work 80
 work sampling formulas 239

X**Y**

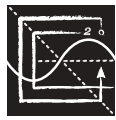
yield 98
 yielding 163

Z

z-transforms 211

**APPENDIX
FE EXAM SPECIFICATIONS**

Chemical 264
Civil..... 267
Electrical and Computer..... 271
Environmental 274
Industrial and Systems 277
Mechanical 280
Other Disciplines..... 284



NCEES

*advancing licensure for
engineers and surveyors*

Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) CHEMICAL CBT Exam Specifications

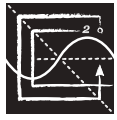
Effective Beginning with the January 2014 Examinations

- The FE exam is a computer-based test (CBT). It is closed book with an electronic reference.
- Examinees have 6 hours to complete the exam, which contains 110 multiple-choice questions. The 6-hour time also includes a tutorial and an optional scheduled break.
- The FE exam uses both the International System of Units (SI) and the US Customary System (USCS).

| Knowledge | Number of Questions |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. Mathematics | 8–12 |
| A. Analytic geometry | |
| B. Roots of equations | |
| C. Calculus | |
| D. Differential equations | |
| 2. Probability and Statistics | 4–6 |
| A. Probability distributions (e.g., discrete, continuous, normal, binomial) | |
| B. Expected value (weighted average) in decision making | |
| C. Hypothesis testing | |
| D. Measures of central tendencies and dispersions (e.g., mean, mode, standard deviation) | |
| E. Estimation for a single mean (e.g., point, confidence intervals) | |
| F. Regression and curve fitting | |
| 3. Engineering Sciences | 4–6 |
| A. Applications of vector analysis (e.g., statics) | |
| B. Basic dynamics (e.g., friction, force, mass, acceleration, momentum) | |
| C. Work, energy, and power (as applied to particles or rigid bodies) | |
| D. Electricity and current and voltage laws (e.g., charge, energy, current, voltage, power, Kirchhoff, Ohm) | |
| 4. Computational Tools | 4–6 |
| A. Numerical methods and concepts (e.g., convergence, tolerance) | |
| B. Spreadsheets for chemical engineering calculations | |
| C. Simulators | |
| 5. Materials Science | 4–6 |
| A. Chemical, electrical, mechanical, and physical properties (e.g., effect of temperature, pressure, stress, strain) | |
| B. Material types and compatibilities (e.g., engineered materials, ferrous and nonferrous metals) | |
| C. Corrosion mechanisms and control | |

- 6. Chemistry** **8–12**
- A. Inorganic chemistry (e.g., molarity, normality, molality, acids, bases, redox reactions, valence, solubility product, pH, pK, electrochemistry, periodic table)
 - B. Organic chemistry (e.g., nomenclature, structure, qualitative and quantitative analyses, balanced equations, reactions, synthesis, basic biochemistry)
- 7. Fluid Mechanics/Dynamics** **8–12**
- A. Fluid properties
 - B. Dimensionless numbers (e.g., Reynolds number)
 - C. Mechanical energy balance (e.g., pipes, valves, fittings, pressure losses across packed beds, pipe networks)
 - D. Bernoulli equation (hydrostatic pressure, velocity head)
 - E. Laminar and turbulent flow
 - F. Flow measurement (e.g., orifices, Venturi meters)
 - G. Pumps, turbines, and compressors
 - H. Compressible flow and non-Newtonian fluids
- 8. Thermodynamics** **8–12**
- A. Thermodynamic properties (e.g. specific volume, internal energy, enthalpy, entropy, free energy)
 - B. Properties data and phase diagrams (e.g. steam tables, psychrometric charts, T-s, P-h, x-y, T-x-y)
 - C. Thermodynamic laws (e.g., 1st law, 2nd law)
 - D. Thermodynamic processes (e.g., isothermal, adiabatic, isentropic)
 - E. Cyclic processes and efficiency (e.g., power, refrigeration, heat pump)
 - F. Phase equilibrium (e.g., fugacity, activity coefficient)
 - G. Chemical equilibrium
 - H. Heats of reaction and mixing
- 9. Material/Energy Balances** **8–12**
- A. Mass balance (steady and unsteady state)
 - B. Energy balance (steady and unsteady state)
 - C. Recycle/bypass processes
 - D. Reactive systems (e.g., combustion)
- 10. Heat Transfer** **8–12**
- A. Conductive heat transfer
 - B. Convective heat transfer (natural and forced)
 - C. Radiation heat transfer
 - D. Heat transfer coefficients (e.g., overall, local, fouling)
 - E. Heat transfer equipment, operation, and design (e.g., double pipe, shell and tube, fouling, number of transfer units, log-mean temperature difference, flow configuration)
- 11. Mass Transfer and Separation** **8–12**
- A. Molecular diffusion (e.g., steady and unsteady state, physical property estimation)
 - B. Convective mass transfer (e.g., mass transfer coefficient, eddy diffusion)
 - C. Separation systems (e.g., distillation, absorption, extraction, membrane processes)

- D. Equilibrium stage methods (e.g., graphical methods, McCabe-Thiele, efficiency)
 - E. Continuous contact methods (e.g., number of transfer units, height equivalent to a theoretical plate, height of transfer unit, number of theoretical plates)
 - F. Humidification and drying
- 12. Chemical Reaction Engineering** **8–12**
- A. Reaction rates and order
 - B. Rate constant (e.g., Arrhenius function)
 - C. Conversion, yield, and selectivity
 - D. Type of reactions (e.g., series, parallel, forward, reverse, homogeneous, heterogeneous, catalysis, biocatalysis)
 - E. Reactor types (e.g., batch, semibatch, continuous stirred tank, plug flow, gas phase, liquid phase)
- 13. Process Design and Economics** **8–12**
- A. Process flow diagrams and piping and instrumentation diagrams
 - B. Equipment selection (e.g., sizing and scale-up)
 - C. Cost estimation
 - D. Comparison of economic alternatives (e.g., net present value, discounted cash flow, rate of return, expected value and risk)
 - E. Process design and optimization (e.g., sustainability, efficiency, green engineering, inherently safer design, evaluation of specifications)
- 14. Process Control** **5–8**
- A. Dynamics (e.g., time constants and 2nd order, underdamped, and transfer functions)
 - B. Control strategies (e.g., feedback, feed-forward, cascade, ratio, and PID)
 - C. Control loop design and hardware (e.g., matching measured and manipulated variables, sensors, control valves, and conceptual process control)
- 15. Safety, Health, and Environment** **5–8**
- A. Hazardous properties of materials (e.g., corrosivity, flammability, toxicity, reactivity, handling and storage), including MSDS
 - B. Industrial hygiene (e.g., noise, PPE, ergonomics)
 - C. Process safety and hazard analysis [e.g., layer of protection analysis, hazard and operability studies (HazOps), fault-tree analysis or event tree]
 - D. Overpressure and underpressure protection (e.g., relief, redundant control, intrinsically safe)
 - E. Waste minimization, waste treatment, and regulation (e.g., air, water, solids, RCRA, CWA, EPA, OSHA)
- 16. Ethics and Professional Practice** **2–3**
- A. Codes of ethics (professional and technical societies)
 - B. Agreements and contracts
 - C. Ethical and legal considerations
 - D. Professional liability
 - E. Public protection issues (e.g., licensing boards)



Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) CIVIL CBT Exam Specifications

Effective Beginning with the January 2014 Examinations

- The FE exam is a computer-based test (CBT). It is closed book with an electronic reference.
- Examinees have 6 hours to complete the exam, which contains 110 multiple-choice questions. The 6-hour time also includes a tutorial and an optional scheduled break.
- The FE exam uses both the International System of Units (SI) and the US Customary System (USCS).

| Knowledge | Number of Questions |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. Mathematics | 7–11 |
| A. Analytic geometry | |
| B. Calculus | |
| C. Roots of equations | |
| D. Vector analysis | |
| 2. Probability and Statistics | 4–6 |
| A. Measures of central tendencies and dispersions (e.g., mean, mode, standard deviation) | |
| B. Estimation for a single mean (e.g., point, confidence intervals) | |
| C. Regression and curve fitting | |
| D. Expected value (weighted average) in decision making | |
| 3. Computational Tools | 4–6 |
| A. Spreadsheet computations | |
| B. Structured programming (e.g., if-then, loops, macros) | |
| 4. Ethics and Professional Practice | 4–6 |
| A. Codes of ethics (professional and technical societies) | |
| B. Professional liability | |
| C. Licensure | |
| D. Sustainability and sustainable design | |
| E. Professional skills (e.g., public policy, management, and business) | |
| F. Contracts and contract law | |
| 5. Engineering Economics | 4–6 |
| A. Discounted cash flow (e.g., equivalence, PW, equivalent annual worth, FW, rate of return) | |
| B. Cost (e.g., incremental, average, sunk, estimating) | |
| C. Analyses (e.g., breakeven, benefit-cost, life cycle) | |
| D. Uncertainty (e.g., expected value and risk) | |
| 6. Statics | 7–11 |
| A. Resultants of force systems | |
| B. Equivalent force systems | |
| C. Equilibrium of rigid bodies | |
| D. Frames and trusses | |

| | |
|---|-------------|
| E. Centroid of area | |
| F. Area moments of inertia | |
| G. Static friction | |
| 7. Dynamics | 4–6 |
| A. Kinematics (e.g., particles and rigid bodies) | |
| B. Mass moments of inertia | |
| C. Force acceleration (e.g., particles and rigid bodies) | |
| D. Impulse momentum (e.g., particles and rigid bodies) | |
| E. Work, energy, and power (e.g., particles and rigid bodies) | |
| 8. Mechanics of Materials | 7–11 |
| A. Shear and moment diagrams | |
| B. Stresses and strains (e.g., axial, torsion, bending, shear, thermal) | |
| C. Deformations (e.g., axial, torsion, bending, thermal) | |
| D. Combined stresses | |
| E. Principal stresses | |
| F. Mohr's circle | |
| G. Column analysis (e.g., buckling, boundary conditions) | |
| H. Composite sections | |
| I. Elastic and plastic deformations | |
| J. Stress-strain diagrams | |
| 9. Materials | 4–6 |
| A. Mix design (e.g., concrete and asphalt) | |
| B. Test methods and specifications (e.g., steel, concrete, aggregates, asphalt, wood) | |
| C. Physical and mechanical properties of concrete, ferrous and nonferrous metals, masonry, wood, engineered materials (e.g., FRP, laminated lumber, wood/plastic composites), and asphalt | |
| 10. Fluid Mechanics | 4–6 |
| A. Flow measurement | |
| B. Fluid properties | |
| C. Fluid statics | |
| D. Energy, impulse, and momentum equations | |
| 11. Hydraulics and Hydrologic Systems | 8–12 |
| A. Basic hydrology (e.g., infiltration, rainfall, runoff, detention, flood flows, watersheds) | |
| B. Basic hydraulics (e.g., Manning equation, Bernoulli theorem, open-channel flow, pipe flow) | |
| C. Pumping systems (water and wastewater) | |
| D. Water distribution systems | |
| E. Reservoirs (e.g., dams, routing, spillways) | |
| F. Groundwater (e.g., flow, wells, drawdown) | |
| G. Storm sewer collection systems | |
| 12. Structural Analysis | 6–9 |
| A. Analysis of forces in statically determinant beams, trusses, and frames | |
| B. Deflection of statically determinant beams, trusses, and frames | |
| C. Structural determinacy and stability analysis of beams, trusses, and frames | |

- D. Loads and load paths (e.g., dead, live, lateral, influence lines and moving loads, tributary areas)
 - E. Elementary statically indeterminate structures
- 13. Structural Design** **6–9**
- A. Design of steel components (e.g., codes and design philosophies, beams, columns, beam-columns, tension members, connections)
 - B. Design of reinforced concrete components (e.g., codes and design philosophies, beams, slabs, columns, walls, footings)
- 14. Geotechnical Engineering** **9–14**
- A. Geology
 - B. Index properties and soil classifications
 - C. Phase relations (air-water-solid)
 - D. Laboratory and field tests
 - E. Effective stress (buoyancy)
 - F. Stability of retaining walls (e.g., active pressure/passive pressure)
 - G. Shear strength
 - H. Bearing capacity (cohesive and noncohesive)
 - I. Foundation types (e.g., spread footings, deep foundations, wall footings, mats)
 - J. Consolidation and differential settlement
 - K. Seepage/flow nets
 - L. Slope stability (e.g., fills, embankments, cuts, dams)
 - M. Soil stabilization (e.g., chemical additives, geosynthetics)
 - N. Drainage systems
 - O. Erosion control
- 15. Transportation Engineering** **8–12**
- A. Geometric design of streets and highways
 - B. Geometric design of intersections
 - C. Pavement system design (e.g., thickness, subgrade, drainage, rehabilitation)
 - D. Traffic safety
 - E. Traffic capacity
 - F. Traffic flow theory
 - G. Traffic control devices
 - H. Transportation planning (e.g., travel forecast modeling)
- 16. Environmental Engineering** **6–9**
- A. Water quality (ground and surface)
 - B. Basic tests (e.g., water, wastewater, air)
 - C. Environmental regulations
 - D. Water supply and treatment
 - E. Wastewater collection and treatment

- 17. Construction** **4–6**
- A. Construction documents
 - B. Procurement methods (e.g., competitive bid, qualifications-based)
 - C. Project delivery methods (e.g., design-bid-build, design build, construction management, multiple prime)
 - D. Construction operations and methods (e.g., lifting, rigging, dewatering and pumping, equipment production, productivity analysis and improvement, temporary erosion control)
 - E. Project scheduling (e.g., CPM, allocation of resources)
 - F. Project management (e.g., owner/contractor/client relations)
 - G. Construction safety
 - H. Construction estimating
- 18. Surveying** **4–6**
- A. Angles, distances, and trigonometry
 - B. Area computations
 - C. Earthwork and volume computations
 - D. Closure
 - E. Coordinate systems (e.g., state plane, latitude/longitude)
 - F. Leveling (e.g., differential, elevations, percent grades)



NCEES

advancing licensure for
engineers and surveyors

Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) ELECTRICAL AND COMPUTER CBT Exam Specifications

Effective Beginning with the January 2014 Examinations

- The FE exam is a computer-based test (CBT). It is closed book with an electronic reference.
- Examinees have 6 hours to complete the exam, which contains 110 multiple-choice questions. The 6-hour time also includes a tutorial and an optional scheduled break.
- The FE exam uses both the International System of Units (SI) and the US Customary System (USCS).

| Knowledge | Number of Questions |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. Mathematics | 11–17 |
| A. Algebra and trigonometry | |
| B. Complex numbers | |
| C. Discrete mathematics | |
| D. Analytic geometry | |
| E. Calculus | |
| F. Differential equations | |
| G. Linear algebra | |
| H. Vector analysis | |
| 2. Probability and Statistics | 4–6 |
| A. Measures of central tendencies and dispersions (e.g., mean, mode, standard deviation) | |
| B. Probability distributions (e.g., discrete, continuous, normal, binomial) | |
| C. Expected value (weighted average) in decision making | |
| D. Estimation for a single mean (e.g., point, confidence intervals, conditional probability) | |
| 3. Ethics and Professional Practice | 3–5 |
| A. Codes of ethics (professional and technical societies) | |
| B. NCEES <i>Model Law</i> and <i>Model Rules</i> | |
| C. Intellectual property (e.g., copyright, trade secrets, patents) | |
| 4. Engineering Economics | 3–5 |
| A. Time value of money (e.g., present value, future value, annuities) | |
| B. Cost estimation | |
| C. Risk identification | |
| D. Analysis (e.g., cost-benefit, trade-off, breakeven) | |
| 5. Properties of Electrical Materials | 4–6 |
| A. Chemical (e.g., corrosion, ions, diffusion) | |
| B. Electrical (e.g., conductivity, resistivity, permittivity, magnetic permeability) | |
| C. Mechanical (e.g., piezoelectric, strength) | |
| D. Thermal (e.g., conductivity, expansion) | |

| | |
|--|--------------|
| 6. Engineering Sciences | 6–9 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Work, energy, power, heat B. Charge, energy, current, voltage, power C. Forces (e.g., between charges, on conductors) D. Work done in moving a charge in an electric field (relationship between voltage and work) E. Capacitance F. Inductance | |
| 7. Circuit Analysis (DC and AC Steady State) | 10–15 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. KCL, KVL B. Series/parallel equivalent circuits C. Thevenin and Norton theorems D. Node and loop analysis E. Waveform analysis (e.g., RMS, average, frequency, phase, wavelength) F. Phasors G. Impedance | |
| 8. Linear Systems | 5–8 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Frequency/transient response B. Resonance C. Laplace transforms D. Transfer functions E. 2-port theory | |
| 9. Signal Processing | 5–8 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Convolution (continuous and discrete) B. Difference equations C. Z-transforms D. Sampling (e.g., aliasing, Nyquist theorem) E. Analog filters F. Digital filters | |
| 10. Electronics | 7–11 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Solid-state fundamentals (e.g., tunneling, diffusion/drift current, energy bands, doping bands, p-n theory) B. Discrete devices (diodes, transistors, BJT, CMOS) and models and their performance C. Bias circuits D. Amplifiers (e.g., single-stage/common emitter, differential) E. Operational amplifiers (ideal, non-ideal) F. Instrumentation (e.g., measurements, data acquisition, transducers) G. Power electronics | |
| 11. Power | 8–12 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Single phase and three phase B. Transmission and distribution C. Voltage regulation D. Transformers E. Motors and generators F. Power factor (pf) | |

| | |
|--|-------------|
| 12. Electromagnetics | 5–8 |
| A. Maxwell equations | |
| B. Electrostatics/magnetostatics (e.g., measurement of spatial relationships, vector analysis) | |
| C. Wave propagation | |
| D. Transmission lines (high frequency) | |
| E. Electromagnetic compatibility | |
| 13. Control Systems | 6–9 |
| A. Block diagrams (feed-forward, feedback) | |
| B. Bode plots | |
| C. Closed-loop and open-loop response | |
| D. Controller performance (gain, PID), steady-state errors | |
| E. Root locus | |
| F. Stability | |
| G. State variables | |
| 14. Communications | 5–8 |
| A. Basic modulation/demodulation concepts (e.g., AM, FM, PCM) | |
| B. Fourier transforms/Fourier series | |
| C. Multiplexing (e.g., time division, frequency division) | |
| D. Digital communications | |
| 15. Computer Networks | 3–5 |
| A. Routing and switching | |
| B. Network topologies/frameworks/models | |
| C. Local area networks | |
| 16. Digital Systems | 7–11 |
| A. Number systems | |
| B. Boolean logic | |
| C. Logic gates and circuits | |
| D. Logic minimization (e.g., SOP, POS, Karnaugh maps) | |
| E. Flip-flops and counters | |
| F. Programmable logic devices and gate arrays | |
| G. State machine design | |
| H. Data path/controller design | |
| I. Timing (diagrams, asynchronous inputs, races, hazards) | |
| 17. Computer Systems | 4–6 |
| A. Architecture (e.g., pipelining, cache memory) | |
| B. Microprocessors | |
| C. Memory technology and systems | |
| D. Interfacing | |
| 18. Software Development | 4–6 |
| A. Algorithms | |
| B. Data structures | |
| C. Software design methods (structured, object-oriented) | |
| D. Software implementation (e.g., procedural, scripting languages) | |
| E. Software testing | |



NCEES

*advancing licensure for
engineers and surveyors*

Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) ENVIRONMENTAL CBT Exam Specifications

Effective Beginning with the January 2014 Examinations

- The FE exam is a computer-based test (CBT). It is closed book with an electronic reference.
- Examinees have 6 hours to complete the exam, which contains 110 multiple-choice questions. The 6-hour time also includes a tutorial and an optional scheduled break.
- The FE exam uses both the International System of Units (SI) and the US Customary System (USCS).

| Knowledge | Number of Questions |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. Mathematics | 4–6 |
| A. Analytic geometry | |
| B. Numerical methods | |
| C. Roots of equations | |
| D. Calculus | |
| E. Differential equations | |
| 2. Probability and Statistics | 3–5 |
| A. Measures of central tendencies and dispersions (e.g., mean, mode, standard deviation) | |
| B. Probability distributions (e.g., discrete, continuous, normal, binomial) | |
| C. Estimation (point, confidence intervals) for a single mean | |
| D. Regression and curve fitting | |
| E. Expected value (weighted average) in decision making | |
| F. Hypothesis testing | |
| 3. Ethics and Professional Practice | 5–8 |
| A. Codes of ethics (professional and technical societies) | |
| B. Agreements and contracts | |
| C. Ethical and legal considerations | |
| D. Professional liability | |
| E. Public protection issues (e.g., licensing boards) | |
| F. Regulations (e.g., water, wastewater, air, solid/hazardous waste, groundwater/soils) | |
| 4. Engineering Economics | 4–6 |
| A. Discounted cash flow (e.g., life cycle, equivalence, PW, equivalent annual worth, FW, rate of return) | |
| B. Cost (e.g., incremental, average, sunk, estimating) | |
| C. Analyses (e.g., breakeven, benefit-cost) | |
| D. Uncertainty (expected value and risk) | |
| 5. Materials Science | 3–5 |
| A. Properties (e.g., chemical, electrical, mechanical, physical) | |
| B. Corrosion mechanisms and controls | |
| C. Material selection and compatibility | |

| | |
|---|--------------|
| 6. Environmental Science and Chemistry | 11–17 |
| A. Reactions (e.g., equilibrium, acid base, oxidation-reduction, precipitation) | |
| B. Stoichiometry | |
| C. Kinetics (chemical, microbiological) | |
| D. Organic chemistry (e.g., nomenclature, functional group reactions) | |
| E. Ecology (e.g., Streeter-Phelps, fluviology, limnology, eutrophication) | |
| F. Multimedia equilibrium partitioning (e.g., Henry’s law, octonal partitioning coefficient) | |
| 7. Risk Assessment | 5–8 |
| A. Dose-response toxicity (carcinogen, noncarcinogen) | |
| B. Exposure routes | |
| 8. Fluid Mechanics | 9–14 |
| A. Fluid statics | |
| B. Closed conduits (e.g., Darcy-Weisbach, Hazen-Williams, Moody) | |
| C. Open channel (Manning) | |
| D. Pumps (e.g., power, operating point, parallel and series) | |
| E. Flow measurement (e.g., weirs, orifices, flowmeters) | |
| F. Blowers (e.g., power, operating point, parallel, and series) | |
| 9. Thermodynamics | 3–5 |
| A. Thermodynamic laws (e.g., 1st law, 2nd law) | |
| B. Energy, heat, and work | |
| C. Ideal gases | |
| D. Mixture of nonreacting gases | |
| E. Heat transfer | |
| 10. Water Resources | 10–15 |
| A. Demand calculations | |
| B. Population estimations | |
| C. Runoff calculations (e.g., land use, land cover, time of concentration, duration, intensity, frequency) | |
| D. Reservoir sizing | |
| E. Routing (e.g., channel, reservoir) | |
| F. Water quality and modeling (e.g., erosion, channel stability, stormwater quality management) | |
| 11. Water and Wastewater | 14–21 |
| A. Water and wastewater characteristics | |
| B. Mass and energy balances | |
| C. Conventional water treatment processes (e.g., clarification, disinfection, filtration, flocculation, softening, rapid mix) | |
| D. Conventional wastewater treatment processes (e.g., activated sludge, decentralized wastewater systems, fixed-film system, disinfection, flow equalization, headworks, lagoons) | |
| E. Alternative treatment process (e.g., conservation and reuse, membranes, nutrient removal, ion exchange, activated carbon, air stripping) | |
| F. Sludge treatment and handling (e.g., land application, sludge digestion, sludge dewatering) | |

- 12. Air Quality** **10–15**
- A. Chemical principles (e.g., ideal gas, mole fractions, stoichiometry, Henry’s law)
 - B. Mass balances
 - C. Emissions (factors, rates)
 - D. Atmospheric sciences (e.g., stability classes, dispersion modeling, lapse rates)
 - E. Gas handling and treatment technologies (e.g., hoods, ducts, coolers, biofiltration, scrubbers, adsorbers, incineration)
 - F. Particle handling and treatment technologies (e.g., baghouses, cyclones, electrostatic precipitators, settling velocity)
- 13. Solid and Hazardous Waste** **10–15**
- A. Composting
 - B. Mass balances
 - C. Compatibility
 - D. Landfilling (e.g., siting, design, leachate, material and energy recovery)
 - E. Site characterization and remediation
 - F. Hazardous waste treatment (e.g., physical, chemical, thermal)
 - G. Radioactive waste treatment and disposal
- 14. Groundwater and Soils** **9–14**
- A. Basic hydrogeology (e.g., aquifers, permeability, water table, hydraulic conductivity, saturation, soil characteristics)
 - B. Drawdown (e.g., Jacob, Theis, Thiem)
 - C. Groundwater flow (e.g., Darcy’s law, specific capacity, velocity, gradient)
 - D. Soil and groundwater remediation



Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) INDUSTRIAL AND SYSTEMS CBT Exam Specifications

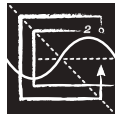
Effective Beginning with the January 2014 Examinations

- The FE exam is a computer-based test (CBT). It is closed book with an electronic reference.
- Examinees have 6 hours to complete the exam, which contains 110 multiple-choice questions. The 6-hour time also includes a tutorial and an optional scheduled break.
- The FE exam uses both the International System of Units (SI) and the US Customary System (USCS).

| Knowledge | Number of Questions |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. Mathematics | 6–9 |
| A. Analytic geometry | |
| B. Calculus | |
| C. Matrix operations | |
| D. Vector analysis | |
| E. Linear algebra | |
| 2. Engineering Sciences | 5–8 |
| A. Work, energy, and power | |
| B. Material properties and selection | |
| C. Charge, energy, current, voltage, and power | |
| 3. Ethics and Professional Practice | 5–8 |
| A. Codes of ethics and licensure | |
| B. Agreements and contracts | |
| C. Professional, ethical, and legal responsibility | |
| D. Public protection and regulatory issues | |
| 4. Engineering Economics | 10–15 |
| A. Discounted cash flows (PW, EAC, FW, IRR, amortization) | |
| B. Types and breakdown of costs (e.g., fixed, variable, direct and indirect labor) | |
| C. Cost analyses (e.g., benefit-cost, breakeven, minimum cost, overhead) | |
| D. Accounting (financial statements and overhead cost allocation) | |
| E. Cost estimation | |
| F. Depreciation and taxes | |
| G. Capital budgeting | |
| 5. Probability and Statistics | 10–15 |
| A. Combinatorics (e.g., combinations, permutations) | |
| B. Probability distributions (e.g., normal, binomial, empirical) | |
| C. Conditional probabilities | |
| D. Sampling distributions, sample sizes, and statistics (e.g., central tendency, dispersion) | |
| E. Estimation (e.g., point, confidence intervals) | |
| F. Hypothesis testing | |
| G. Regression (linear, multiple) | |

- H. System reliability (e.g., single components, parallel and series systems)
 - I. Design of experiments (e.g., ANOVA, factorial designs)
- 6. Modeling and Computations** **8–12**
- A. Algorithm and logic development (e.g., flow charts, pseudocode)
 - B. Databases (e.g., types, information content, relational)
 - C. Decision theory (e.g., uncertainty, risk, utility, decision trees)
 - D. Optimization modeling (e.g., decision variables, objective functions, and constraints)
 - E. Linear programming (e.g., formulation, primal, dual, graphical solutions)
 - F. Mathematical programming (e.g., network, integer, dynamic, transportation, assignment)
 - G. Stochastic models (e.g., queuing, Markov, reliability)
 - H. Simulation
- 7. Industrial Management** **8–12**
- A. Principles (e.g., planning, organizing, motivational theory)
 - B. Tools of management (e.g., MBO, reengineering, organizational structure)
 - C. Project management (e.g., scheduling, PERT, CPM)
 - D. Productivity measures
- 8. Manufacturing, Production, and Service Systems** **8–12**
- A. Manufacturing processes
 - B. Manufacturing systems (e.g., cellular, group technology, flexible)
 - C. Process design (e.g., resources, equipment selection, line balancing)
 - D. Inventory analysis (e.g., EOQ, safety stock)
 - E. Forecasting
 - F. Scheduling (e.g., sequencing, cycle time, material control)
 - G. Aggregate planning
 - H. Production planning (e.g., JIT, MRP, ERP)
 - I. Lean enterprises
 - J. Automation concepts (e.g., robotics, CIM)
 - K. Sustainable manufacturing (e.g., energy efficiency, waste reduction)
 - L. Value engineering
- 9. Facilities and Logistics** **8–12**
- A. Flow measurements and analysis (e.g., from/to charts, flow planning)
 - B. Layouts (e.g., types, distance metrics, planning, evaluation)
 - C. Location analysis (e.g., single- and multiple-facility location, warehouses)
 - D. Process capacity analysis (e.g., number of machines and people, trade-offs)
 - E. Material handling capacity analysis
 - F. Supply chain management and design
- 10. Human Factors, Ergonomics, and Safety** **8–12**
- A. Hazard identification and risk assessment
 - B. Environmental stress assessment (e.g., noise, vibrations, heat)
 - C. Industrial hygiene
 - D. Design for usability (e.g., tasks, tools, displays, controls, user interfaces)
 - E. Anthropometry
 - F. Biomechanics
 - G. Cumulative trauma disorders (e.g., low back injuries, carpal tunnel syndrome)

- H. Systems safety
 - I. Cognitive engineering (e.g., information processing, situation awareness, human error, mental models)
- 11. Work Design** **8–12**
- A. Methods analysis (e.g., charting, workstation design, motion economy)
 - B. Time study (e.g., time standards, allowances)
 - C. Predetermined time standard systems (e.g., MOST, MTM)
 - D. Work sampling
 - E. Learning curves
- 12. Quality** **8–12**
- A. Six sigma
 - B. Management and planning tools (e.g., fishbone, Pareto, QFD, TQM)
 - C. Control charts
 - D. Process capability and specifications
 - E. Sampling plans
 - F. Design of experiments for quality improvement
 - G. Reliability engineering
- 13. Systems Engineering** **8–12**
- A. Requirements analysis
 - B. System design
 - C. Human systems integration
 - D. Functional analysis and allocation
 - E. Configuration management
 - F. Risk management
 - G. Verification and assurance
 - H. System life-cycle engineering



NCEES

*advancing licensure for
engineers and surveyors*

Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) MECHANICAL CBT Exam Specifications

Effective Beginning with the January 2014 Examinations

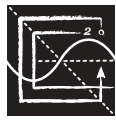
- The FE exam is a computer-based test (CBT). It is closed book with an electronic reference.
- Examinees have 6 hours to complete the exam, which contains 110 multiple-choice questions. The 6-hour time also includes a tutorial and an optional scheduled break.
- The FE exam uses both the International System of Units (SI) and the US Customary System (USCS).

| Knowledge | Number of Questions |
|---|---------------------|
| 1. Mathematics | 6–9 |
| A. Analytic geometry | |
| B. Calculus | |
| C. Linear algebra | |
| D. Vector analysis | |
| E. Differential equations | |
| F. Numerical methods | |
| 2. Probability and Statistics | 4–6 |
| A. Probability distributions | |
| B. Regression and curve fitting | |
| 3. Computational Tools | 3–5 |
| A. Spreadsheets | |
| B. Flow charts | |
| 4. Ethics and Professional Practice | 3–5 |
| A. Codes of ethics | |
| B. Agreements and contracts | |
| C. Ethical and legal considerations | |
| D. Professional liability | |
| E. Public health, safety, and welfare | |
| 5. Engineering Economics | 3–5 |
| A. Time value of money | |
| B. Cost, including incremental, average, sunk, and estimating | |
| C. Economic analyses | |
| D. Depreciation | |
| 6. Electricity and Magnetism | 3–5 |
| A. Charge, current, voltage, power, and energy | |
| B. Current and voltage laws (Kirchhoff, Ohm) | |
| C. Equivalent circuits (series, parallel) | |
| D. AC circuits | |
| E. Motors and generators | |

| | |
|---|-------------|
| 7. Statics | 8–12 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Resultants of force systems B. Concurrent force systems C. Equilibrium of rigid bodies D. Frames and trusses E. Centroids F. Moments of inertia G. Static friction | |
| 8. Dynamics, Kinematics, and Vibrations | 9–14 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Kinematics of particles B. Kinetic friction C. Newton’s second law for particles D. Work-energy of particles E. Impulse-momentum of particles F. Kinematics of rigid bodies G. Kinematics of mechanisms H. Newton’s second law for rigid bodies I. Work-energy of rigid bodies J. Impulse-momentum of rigid bodies K. Free and forced vibrations | |
| 9. Mechanics of Materials | 8–12 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Shear and moment diagrams B. Stress types (axial, bending, torsion, shear) C. Stress transformations D. Mohr’s circle E. Stress and strain caused by axial loads F. Stress and strain caused by bending loads G. Stress and strain caused by torsion H. Stress and strain caused by shear I. Combined loading J. Deformations K. Columns | |
| 10. Material Properties and Processing | 8–12 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Properties, including chemical, electrical, mechanical, physical, and thermal B. Stress-strain diagrams C. Engineered materials D. Ferrous metals E. Nonferrous metals F. Manufacturing processes G. Phase diagrams H. Phase transformation, equilibrium, and heat treating I. Materials selection J. Surface conditions K. Corrosion mechanisms and control L. Thermal failure | |

| | |
|---|--------------|
| M. Ductile or brittle behavior | |
| N. Fatigue | |
| O. Crack propagation | |
| 11. Fluid Mechanics | 9–14 |
| A. Fluid properties | |
| B. Fluid statics | |
| C. Energy, impulse, and momentum | |
| D. Internal flow | |
| E. External flow | |
| F. Incompressible flow | |
| G. Compressible flow | |
| H. Power and efficiency | |
| I. Performance curves | |
| J. Scaling laws for fans, pumps, and compressors | |
| 12. Thermodynamics | 13–20 |
| A. Properties of ideal gases and pure substances | |
| B. Energy transfers | |
| C. Laws of thermodynamics | |
| D. Processes | |
| E. Performance of components | |
| F. Power cycles, thermal efficiency, and enhancements | |
| G. Refrigeration and heat pump cycles and coefficients of performance | |
| H. Nonreacting mixtures of gases | |
| I. Psychrometrics | |
| J. Heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning (HVAC) processes | |
| K. Combustion and combustion products | |
| 13. Heat Transfer | 9–14 |
| A. Conduction | |
| B. Convection | |
| C. Radiation | |
| D. Thermal resistance | |
| E. Transient processes | |
| F. Heat exchangers | |
| G. Boiling and condensation | |
| 14. Measurements, Instrumentation, and Controls | 5–8 |
| A. Sensors | |
| B. Block diagrams | |
| C. System response | |
| D. Measurement uncertainty | |
| 15. Mechanical Design and Analysis | 9–14 |
| A. Stress analysis of machine elements | |
| B. Failure theories and analysis | |
| C. Deformation and stiffness | |
| D. Springs | |
| E. Pressure vessels | |
| F. Beams | |
| G. Piping | |

- H. Bearings
- I. Power screws
- J. Power transmission
- K. Joining methods
- L. Manufacturability
- M. Quality and reliability
- N. Hydraulic components
- O. Pneumatic components
- P. Electromechanical components



Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) OTHER DISCIPLINES CBT Exam Specifications

Effective Beginning with the January 2014 Examinations

- The FE exam is a computer-based test (CBT). It is closed book with an electronic reference.
- Examinees have 6 hours to complete the exam, which contains 110 multiple-choice questions. The 6-hour time also includes a tutorial and an optional scheduled break.
- The FE exam uses both the International System of Units (SI) and the US Customary System (USCS).

| Knowledge | Number of Questions |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. Mathematics and Advanced Engineering Mathematics | 12–18 |
| A. Analytic geometry and trigonometry | |
| B. Calculus | |
| C. Differential equations (e.g., homogeneous, nonhomogeneous, Laplace transforms) | |
| D. Numerical methods (e.g., algebraic equations, roots of equations, approximations, precision limits) | |
| E. Linear algebra (e.g., matrix operations) | |
| 2. Probability and Statistics | 6–9 |
| A. Measures of central tendencies and dispersions (e.g., mean, mode, variance, standard deviation) | |
| B. Probability distributions (e.g., discrete, continuous, normal, binomial) | |
| C. Estimation (e.g., point, confidence intervals) | |
| D. Expected value (weighted average) in decision making | |
| E. Sample distributions and sizes | |
| F. Goodness of fit (e.g., correlation coefficient, least squares) | |
| 3. Chemistry | 7–11 |
| A. Periodic table (e.g., nomenclature, metals and nonmetals, atomic structure of matter) | |
| B. Oxidation and reduction | |
| C. Acids and bases | |
| D. Equations (e.g., stoichiometry, equilibrium) | |
| E. Gas laws (e.g., Boyle's and Charles' Laws, molar volume) | |
| 4. Instrumentation and Data Acquisition | 4–6 |
| A. Sensors (e.g., temperature, pressure, motion, pH, chemical constituents) | |
| B. Data acquisition (e.g., logging, sampling rate, sampling range, filtering, amplification, signal interface) | |
| C. Data processing (e.g., flow charts, loops, branches) | |
| 5. Ethics and Professional Practice | 3–5 |
| A. Codes of ethics | |
| B. NCEES <i>Model Law</i> and <i>Model Rules</i> | |
| C. Public protection issues (e.g., licensing boards) | |

- | | |
|--|-------------|
| 6. Safety, Health, and Environment | 4–6 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Industrial hygiene (e.g., carcinogens, toxicology, MSDS, lower exposure limits) B. Basic safety equipment (e.g., pressure relief valves, emergency shut-offs, fire prevention and control, personal protective equipment) C. Gas detection and monitoring (e.g., O₂, CO, CO₂, CH₄, H₂S, Radon) D. Electrical safety | |
| 7. Engineering Economics | 7–11 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Time value of money (e.g., present worth, annual worth, future worth, rate of return) B. Cost (e.g., incremental, average, sunk, estimating) C. Economic analyses (e.g., breakeven, benefit-cost, optimal economic life) D. Uncertainty (e.g., expected value and risk) E. Project selection (e.g., comparison of unequal life projects, lease/buy/make, depreciation, discounted cash flow) | |
| 8. Statics | 8–12 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Resultants of force systems and vector analysis B. Concurrent force systems C. Force couple systems D. Equilibrium of rigid bodies E. Frames and trusses F. Area properties (e.g., centroids, moments of inertia, radius of gyration) G. Static friction | |
| 9. Dynamics | 7–11 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Kinematics B. Linear motion (e.g., force, mass, acceleration) C. Angular motion (e.g., torque, inertia, acceleration) D. Mass moment of inertia E. Impulse and momentum (linear and angular) F. Work, energy, and power G. Dynamic friction H. Vibrations | |
| 10. Strength of Materials | 8–12 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Stress types (e.g., normal, shear, bending, torsion) B. Combined stresses C. Stress and strain caused by axial loads, bending loads, torsion, or shear D. Shear and moment diagrams E. Analysis of beams, trusses, frames, and columns F. Deflection and deformations (e.g., axial, bending, torsion) G. Elastic and plastic deformation H. Failure theory and analysis (e.g., static/dynamic, creep, fatigue, fracture, buckling) | |

- 11. Materials Science** **6–9**
- A. Physical, mechanical, chemical, and electrical properties of ferrous metals
 - B. Physical, mechanical, chemical, and electrical properties of nonferrous metals
 - C. Physical, mechanical, chemical, and electrical properties of engineered materials (e.g., polymers, concrete, composites)
 - D. Corrosion mechanisms and control
- 12. Fluid Mechanics and Dynamics of Liquids** **8–12**
- A. Fluid properties (e.g., Newtonian, non-Newtonian)
 - B. Dimensionless numbers (e.g., Reynolds number, Froude number)
 - C. Laminar and turbulent flow
 - D. Fluid statics
 - E. Energy, impulse, and momentum equations (e.g., Bernoulli equation)
 - F. Pipe flow and friction losses (e.g., pipes, valves, fittings, Darcy-Weisbach equation, Hazen-Williams equation)
 - G. Open-channel flow (e.g., Manning equation, drag)
 - H. Fluid transport systems (e.g., series and parallel operations)
 - I. Flow measurement
 - J. Turbomachinery (e.g., pumps, turbines)
- 13. Fluid Mechanics and Dynamics of Gases** **4–6**
- A. Fluid properties (e.g., ideal and non-ideal gases)
 - B. Dimensionless numbers (e.g., Reynolds number, Mach number)
 - C. Laminar and turbulent flow
 - D. Fluid statics
 - E. Energy, impulse, and momentum equations
 - F. Duct and pipe flow and friction losses
 - G. Fluid transport systems (e.g., series and parallel operations)
 - H. Flow measurement
 - I. Turbomachinery (e.g., fans, compressors, turbines)
- 14. Electricity, Power, and Magnetism** **7–11**
- A. Electrical fundamentals (e.g., charge, current, voltage, resistance, power, energy)
 - B. Current and voltage laws (Kirchhoff, Ohm)
 - C. DC circuits
 - D. Equivalent circuits (series, parallel, Norton’s theorem, Thevenin’s theorem)
 - E. Capacitance and inductance
 - F. AC circuits (e.g., real and imaginary components, complex numbers, power factor, reactance and impedance)
 - G. Measuring devices (e.g., voltmeter, ammeter, wattmeter)

15. Heat, Mass, and Energy Transfer

9–14

- A. Energy, heat, and work
- B. Thermodynamic laws (e.g., 1st law, 2nd law)
- C. Thermodynamic equilibrium
- D. Thermodynamic properties (e.g., entropy, enthalpy, heat capacity)
- E. Thermodynamic processes (e.g., isothermal, adiabatic, reversible, irreversible)
- F. Mixtures of nonreactive gases
- G. Heat transfer (e.g., conduction, convection, and radiation)
- H. Mass and energy balances
- I. Property and phase diagrams (e.g., T-s, P-h)
- J. Phase equilibrium and phase change
- K. Combustion and combustion products (e.g., CO, CO₂, NO_x, ash, particulates)
- L. Psychrometrics (e.g., relative humidity, wet-bulb)